





485

AN INTRODUCTION TO  
PLANT ANATOMY

Sum.  
195

# McGRAW-HILL PUBLICATIONS IN THE BOTANICAL SCIENCES

Edmund W. Sinnott, *Consulting Editor*

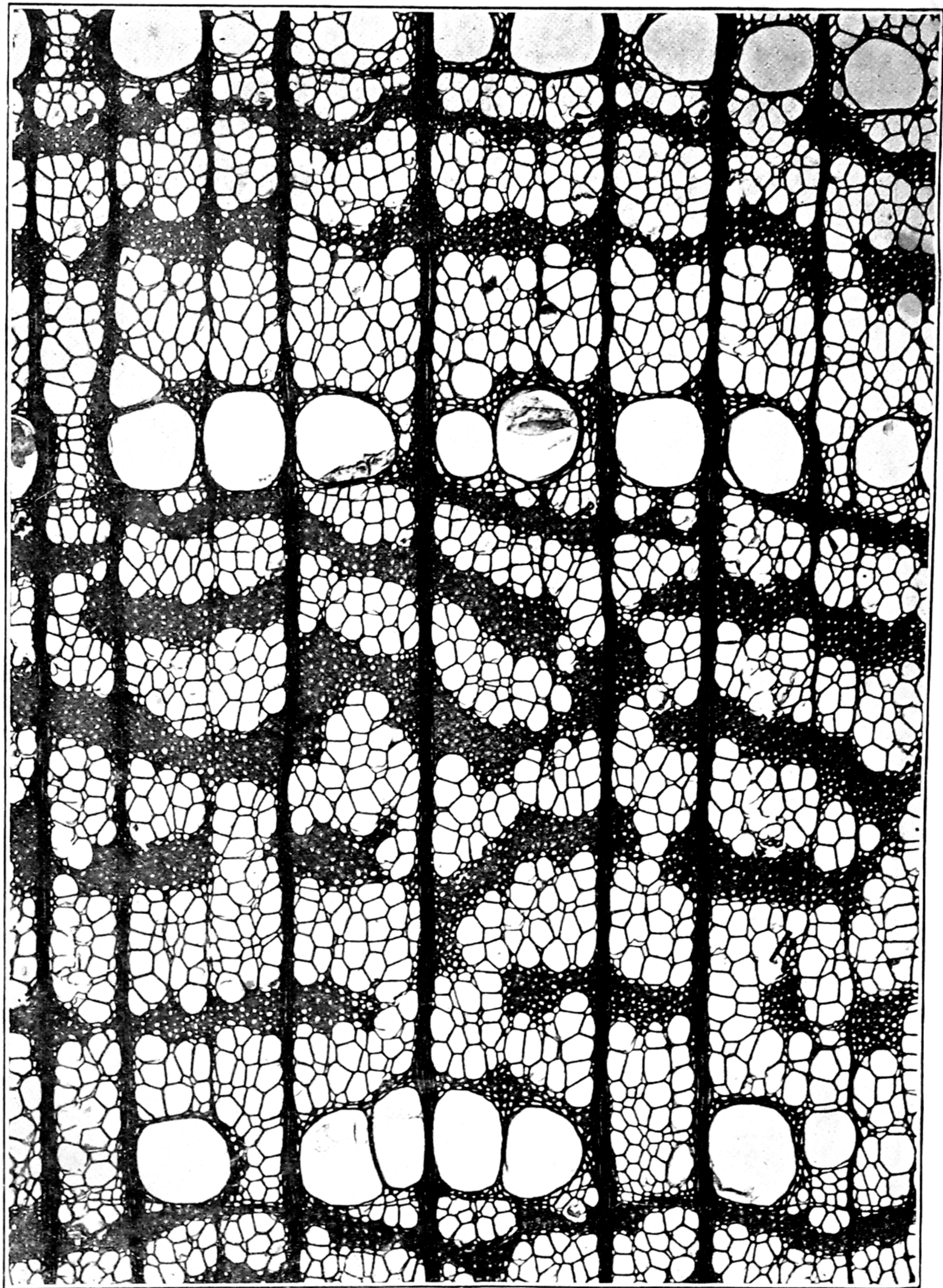
---

- ARNOLD    An Introduction to Paleobotany  
BABCOCK AND CLAUSEN    Genetics  
CURTIS AND CLARK    An Introduction to Plant Physiology  
EAMES    Morphology of Vascular Plants  
EAMES AND MACDANIELS    An Introduction to Plant Anatomy  
FITZPATRICK    The Lower Fungi  
GATES    Field Manual of Plant Ecology  
GÄUMANN AND DODGE    Comparative Morphology of Fungi  
HAUPT    An Introduction to Botany  
HAUPT    Laboratory Manual of Elementary Botany  
HAUPT    Plant Morphology  
HILL    Economic Botany  
HILL, OVERHOLTS, AND POPP    Botany  
JOHANSEN    Plant Microtechnique  
KRAMER    Plant and Soil Water Relationships  
LILLY AND BARNETT    Physiology of the Fungi  
MAHESHWARI    An Introduction to the Embryology of the Angiosperms  
MILLER    Plant Physiology  
POOL    Flowers and Flowering Plants  
SHARP    Fundamentals of Cytology  
SHARP    Introduction to Cytology  
SINNOTT, DUNN, AND DOBZHANSKY    Principles of Genetics  
SINNOTT AND WILSON    Botany: Principles and Problems  
SMITH    Cryptogamic Botany  
          Vol. I.    Algae and Fungi  
          Vol. II.    Bryophytes and Pteridophytes  
SMITH    The Fresh-water Algae of the United States  
SWINGLE    Textbook of Systematic Botany  
WEAVER AND CLEMENTS    Plant Ecology

There are also the related series of McGraw-Hill Publications in the Zoological Sciences, of which E. J. Boell is Consulting Editor, and in the Agricultural Sciences, of which R. A. Brink is Consulting Editor.







Frontispiece.—Transverse section of secondary wood of *Ulmus americana*.  $\times 50$ .  
(Courtesy, U. S. Forest Products Laboratory.)

"The Staple of the Stuff is so exquisitely fine, that no Silk-worm is able to draw anything near so fine a Thread. So that one who walks about with the meanest Stick, holds a piece of Natures Handicraft, which far surpasses the most elaborate Woof or Needle Work in the World."—Nehemiah Grew.



# AN INTRODUCTION TO PLANT ANATOMY

BY

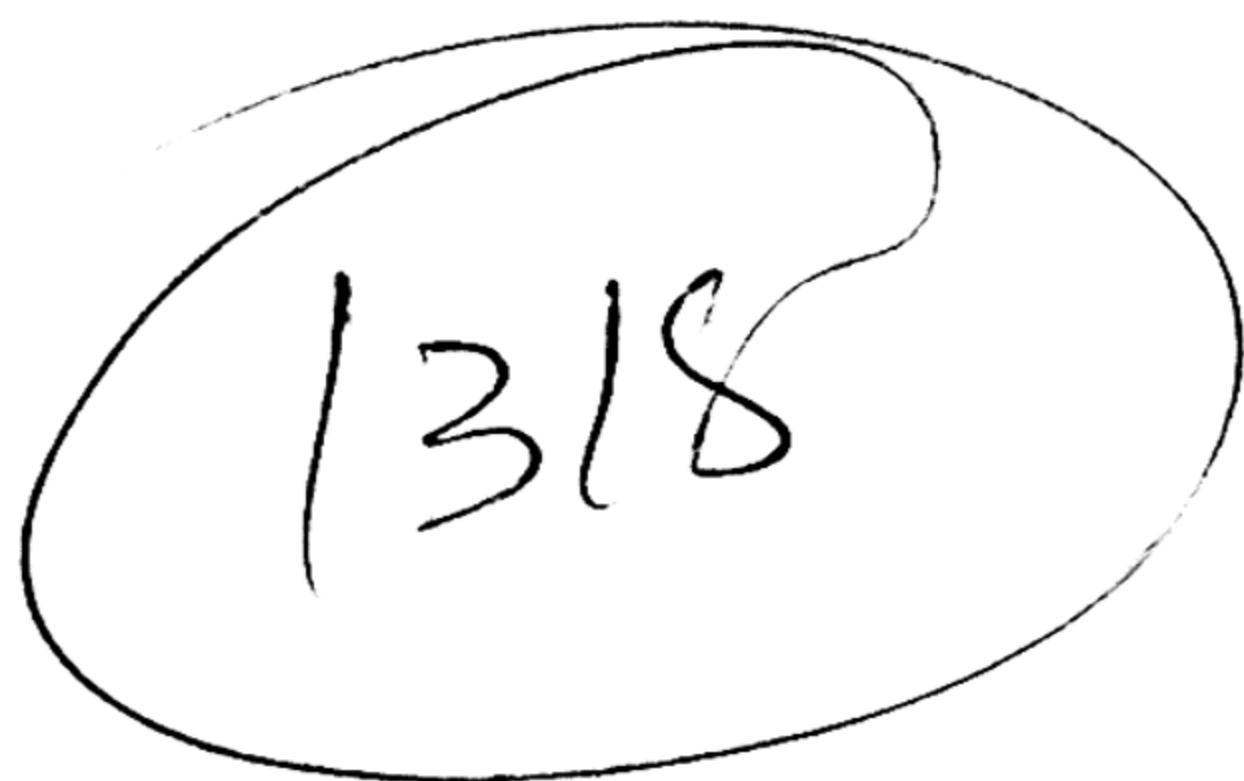
ARTHUR J. EAMES

*Professor of Botany, Cornell University*

AND

LAURENCE H. MACDANIELS

*Professor of Horticulture, Cornell University*



SECOND EDITION

McGRAW-HILL BOOK COMPANY, INC.

NEW YORK AND LONDON

1947



AN INTRODUCTION TO PLANT ANATOMY

COPYRIGHT, 1925, 1947, BY THE  
MCGRAW-HILL BOOK COMPANY, INC.

COPYRIGHT RENEWED 1953, by ARTHUR J. EAMES AND LAURENCE H. MCDANIELS  
PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

*All rights reserved. This book, or  
parts thereof, may not be reproduced  
in any form without permission of  
the publishers.*

581.4

Ea 62 P

X

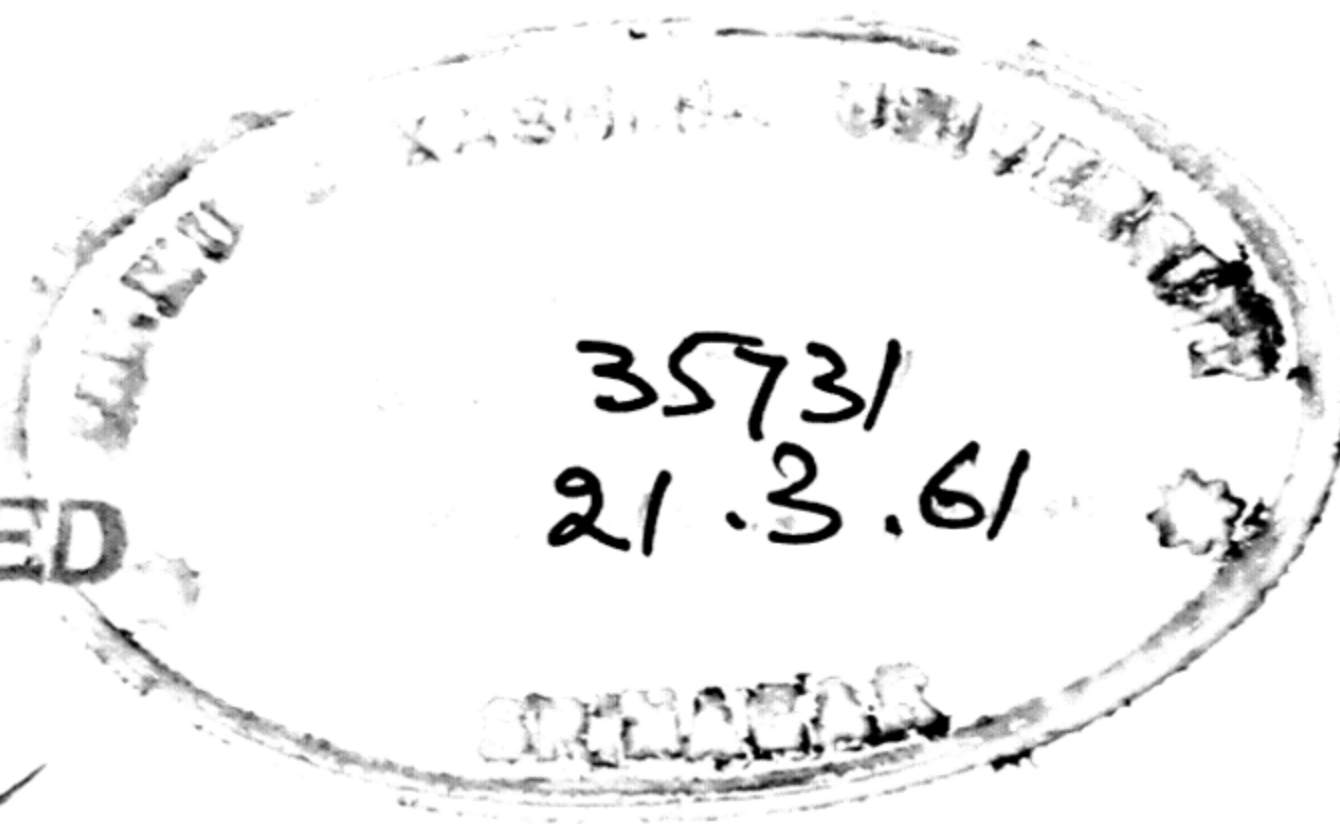
ST 01

R61

Acc No 35731

KS CHECKED

*dr*



*for*



1318

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

In the second edition of this textbook the authors have maintained the viewpoint and the aims of the first edition: a textbook, introductory in level, that will serve primarily for classroom use, and only secondarily as a reference text. They have been mindful of the request that the new edition present greater amounts of detailed description and that it cover aspects of the field not treated in the first edition—that it include, for example, “full details of meristem development” and a discussion of the structure of chimeras and their significance. The inclusion of such additions is obviously impossible in a book of this type and size.

Since the preparation of the first edition, there has been marked progress in our knowledge of certain fields of plant anatomy, especially cell-wall origin, development, and structure; meristems; phloem; leaf development; abscission; flower and fruit structure. The authors have incorporated into the new edition as much from this material as in their opinion properly belongs in this book. These additions have increased the length of most of the chapters, and in an effort to keep the book at approximately its original size, Chap. XV—A Sketch of the History of Plant Anatomy—has been omitted because, although of general interest, it is not essential to the student in gaining a working knowledge of plant anatomy.

A few changes have been made in the terminology used in the first edition. Some changes have been made because the structure of certain cells and tissues, such as the phloem, is more fully understood today than in 1925; other changes have been made so that the terminology of the textbook conforms with a glossary of terms used in describing wood, adopted by the International Association of Wood Anatomists.

The authors wish to acknowledge the help of Dr. Antoinette M. Wilkinson and Dr. H. W. Blaser, who were especially helpful in the preparation and reading of the manuscript. They are also greatly indebted to Mrs. Rita B. Eames for her assistance with the preparation and improvement of the illustrations and her supervision of the manuscript. The authors also wish to thank W. R. Fisher for his interest and cooperation in making many of the photographs in this book.

ARTHUR J. EAMES  
LAURENCE H. MACDANIELS

ITHACA, N.Y.,  
*July, 1947.*







## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION

In presenting this book the authors hope to fill a need for a textbook in plant anatomy of a type at present not available—a need which they, as teachers in this field, have keenly felt. Not only, however, in their opinion, is there need for a book for class study and guidance, but also for one which shall serve as a reference text for workers in fields of applied botany, and for teachers and students in other fields of pure botany. A double purpose, therefore, has been kept in mind in the preparation of the book. In the treatment of the subject matter, however, emphasis has been placed on adaptability to classroom use from the standpoint of the student beginning anatomical study. Thus, the book is, first of all, a textbook in the elements of plant anatomy—an introduction to the field. It presupposes an acquaintance only with the fundamental structure and activities of plants—an acquaintance such as is ordinarily obtained from a first course in botany.

Though the book is thus introductory in nature, it is believed to embody a fairly comprehensive treatment of the fundamental facts and aspects of anatomy—to be, in fact, so inclusive as to provide a working basis for independent study. Yet it does not lay claim to the exposition, in detail, of the known facts and the theories concerning any structural features. So great is the number of recorded facts, and so confused is the terminology of anatomy, that a treatise approaching completeness in the presentation thereof would not be usable as a textbook. Further, the anatomy of vascular plants, especially that of the angiosperms is, in detail and in some broader features, still largely unknown. It is thus obviously impossible to present data covering the facts and structural features which will be met by the student in later work. It is, further, the firm opinion of the authors that the student of anatomy should not learn facts primarily, but should be taught self-reliance in the study of plant structure through training in power of observation and interpretation. Therefore, the book is not a compendium of facts.

Training which results in independence in the study of anatomy is, of course, secured only by laboratory practice. On such practice the authors believe emphasis must be placed, and not on lectures, text study, nor, in the beginning, on reading. For laboratory teaching the present book should provide a background of facts, terms, history, etc.; it may, indeed, be used, in part, as a laboratory guide. The sequence of subjects adopted is that which in the experience of the authors has been



found most satisfactory in laboratory work. Such material as is specifically mentioned, or is used for illustration, suggests only in a general way the range and the amount of material that may be used in a first course in plant anatomy. It is not necessary, nor is it even desirable, that the same plants be used in the classroom. Any available material may be used, and, by comparison with the descriptions and illustrations of the text, the teaching can be made more effective. The authors in their own classes use considerable material, sufficient to cover so far as possible the range and type of variation in each structure. An acquaintance with variation is thus acquired by the student, and a power of interpretation is given by practice with many examples, so that he is enabled thereafter to interpret wholly new material.

As a reference book, the synoptical treatment of the more important facts, usage of terms, present status of opinion, etc. should render the book generally useful. More detailed information may be obtained, of course, from the larger reference works, though often it is only to be found in papers and articles of limited scope. A certain small amount of material embodied in the book represents the result of unpublished research and observation on the part of the authors, or represents their personal opinions.

Except for an occasional mention of lower forms, the structure of vascular plants only is considered, since the histological structure of the thallophytes is usually not complex. Where it is, the method of study and the terms applied to cells and tissues in higher plants may generally be used. In the selection of forms for illustration there have been chosen, so far as available material has permitted, well-known or economically important plants.

The viewpoint of the treatment is fundamentally that of descriptive morphology, that is, of existent form and structure. Physiological anatomy regards form but little; yet an understanding of form and of structural relationship must precede all valuable anatomical study. The physiological aspects and the practical bearing of the subject matter are discussed briefly, and incidentally to the general treatment. Comparative morphology is made use of whenever an understanding of phylogenetic development helps to make structural complexity clear. A textbook written on the basis of descriptive morphology the authors believe to be most generally useful. For students going beyond the introductory steps in anatomy, however—either into the various fields of applied subjects, such as pathology and horticulture, or into any field of the pure science—a complete understanding of morphological modification and variation can be obtained only through the consideration of the phylogenetic history of the structure in question.



The book does not pretend to present the historical development of our knowledge of the field, or of any phase or part thereof; nor are the contributions of prominent students brought out as the work of individuals. The present status of knowledge and opinion is made the first aspect of treatment; secondarily, other viewpoints are considered. Chapter XV, however, outlines the history of the subject, and deals briefly with the contributions of some of the earlier prominent students of anatomy. This historical sketch is placed at the end of the book, since the beginning student may best make use of it only when he has acquired an understanding of the subject matter.

Owing to the state of confusion which exists in the terminology of anatomy, it has in many cases been necessary to evaluate the different uses of terms. For use in the book, those terms have been accepted which seem best on a basis first of morphological usefulness and secondly, of priority; in a few instances the history and the use of a term are briefly discussed.

Since the book is primarily an elementary text and not a text for research reference nor for the use of advanced students, the bibliography has been kept at a minimum. After each chapter there are listed a few of the more recent and more important books and articles—and sometimes those valuable for their own bibliographies—dealing with the subjects discussed in that chapter. By reference to these, students may obtain longer lists. Such a method of citation naturally often excludes the older, “classic” treatments. To the first chapter is appended a list of texts which are generally useful for some or for many phases of the subject. Reference to these texts is not repeated after the various chapters, except where the book in question deals particularly with the subject matter of a chapter.

The common names of plants have for the most part been omitted from the text. They may be sought in the index, as such, and also under the generic names with which they are associated.

In present-day botany, the terms “anatomy” and “histology” are often loosely used. To many botanists the study of the internal structure of plants is unfortunately known as histology. This is doubtless due in part to the fact that histology deals with the structure of cells and tissues—internal structure meaning this and little more—and in part to the fact that the grosser internal structures, such as steles and traces, have been consistently neglected in courses in “histology.” The study of these features of grosser internal structure, and sometimes of those of external make-up also, have been looked upon as “anatomy.” Anatomy, however, deals with the structure of organisms, structure both gross and minute, external and internal. Histology, which deals with the minute

structure of organisms, is, therefore, a part of the broader field of anatomy. An understanding of the structure of a plant obviously cannot be obtained from the study of minute features alone. Thus, a treatment such as is here presented is anatomical rather than histological, and the book is, therefore, a text in Plant Anatomy.

In so far as the treatment in its histological aspects deals with the structure of cells—especially wherever the protoplast is concerned—it enters the field of cytology; and cytology in recent years has become an independent division of biological science. Cytological aspects of anatomy, therefore, need not be considered, and have been omitted from the discussion except in so far as they are essential to histological study. An arbitrary limit has necessarily been set to the description of the cell. The protoplast is very briefly discussed, except for the paragraphs on plasmodesma, plastids, and cell inclusions; nuclear division is omitted since it is ordinarily taught in first courses in botany, and again in greater detail in cytology. The wall, however, which, aside from aspects of origin and early development, is usually considered by cytologists as a histological feature, is more fully treated.

The illustrations have in large part been made directly from the material itself. The explanation of the figures is placed chiefly in the legends. With a few exceptions, the drawings are the work of the authors themselves and of Mrs. Rita Ballard Eames to whom the authors are greatly indebted for invaluable assistance and suggestions. The helpful criticism of their colleagues the authors also desire to acknowledge.

ARTHUR J. EAMES  
LAURENCE H. MACDANIELS

ITHACA, N.Y.,  
*July, 1925.*



# CONTENTS

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION . . . . .	vii
PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION . . . . .	ix

## INTRODUCTORY

### Chapter I

GENERAL STRUCTURE OF THE PLANT BODY—AN OUTLINE. . . . .	1
Fundamental parts—The axis—The stele—Primary and secondary growth—Constitution of the plant body—Methods of study—General references for plant anatomy.	

## GENERAL HISTOLOGY

### Chapter II

THE CELL . . . . .	6
Uses of the term "cell"—Cellular complexity of plants: arrangement, shape, size, development, adjustment during growth—The protoplast: organization, plasma membrane, plastids, vacuoles and cell sap, inclusions—The cell wall: nature, origin, gross structure, minute structure of the wall and middle lamella, sculpture and modification, chemical nature—Cuticle—References for Chap. II: general, the protoplast, plasmodesmata, ergastic substances, the cell wall.	

### Chapter III

✓ MERISTEMS . . . . .	60
✓ Meristematic and permanent cells and tissues—Classification based on: stage or method of development, history of initiating cells, position in plant body, function—Theories of structural development and differentiation: apical cell theory, histogen theory, tunica-corpus theory—Types of stem apices—Discussion of tunica-corpus theory—The floral apex—The root apex—Types of root-tip development—References for Chap. III.	



## Chapter IV

## TISSUES AND TISSUE SYSTEMS . . . . . 81

Tissues based on stage of development: meristematic, permanent—Tissues based on kind of constituent cells: simple (parenchyma, collenchyma, sclerenchyma); the important complex tissues (xylem, phloem, “transfusion tissue”)—Tissue systems—Secretory tissue—References for Chap. IV.

*THE PRIMARY BODY*

## Chapter V

## THE PRIMARY BODY . . . . . 123

Primary tissues and tissue systems—Ontogeny of the axis—Primary vascular tissue: procambium, protophloem and protoxylem, primary phloem, primary xylem, arrangement of cells in primary vascular tissues, primary xylem types, types of vascular bundles—The primary vascular skeleton: the stele, stelar types, leaf traces, branch traces, leaf and branch gaps, the dissection of the vascular cylinder by reduction, general structure of the primary vascular cylinder—The pith: structure, the medullary sheath, of roots, duration—The pericycle—The endodermis: occurrence and position, function as related to structure—The cortex—The epidermis: ontogeny and duration, function, root hairs, the stoma, hairs—References for Chap. V.

*THE SECONDARY BODY*

## Chapter VI

## THE ORIGIN AND DEVELOPMENT OF THE SECONDARY BODY AND ITS RELATION TO THE PRIMARY BODY. THE CAMBIUM. . . . . 175

Origin from procambium—Fascicular and interfascicular cambium—Time of development: in stems, in roots—Extent—Duration—Effect of cambial activity upon the primary body—Relation of secondary growth to leaf traces—Relation of secondary growth to leaf and branch gaps—Function of cambium—Structure of cambium: size of cells, structure of cells, cell division—Gliding and intrusive growth of cambial cells and cambial derivatives—Ontogeny of secondary vascular tissues—



Time of cambial activity—Burial of branch bases—Cambium growth about wounds—Cambium in budding and grafting—Cambium in monocotyledons—References for Chap. VI.

## Chapter VII

### SECONDARY XYLEM. . . . . 204

Gross structure: xylem rays, annual rings, growth rings, early and late wood, false annual rings, ring-porous and diffuse-porous wood—Histological structure: cell types and cell arrangement, wood-parenchyma distribution, structure of gymnosperm wood, structure of angiosperm wood, xylem rays, ray tracheids, marginal ray cells of angiosperms, tyloses—Sapwood and heartwood—Relation of microscopic structure to properties and uses of wood: weight, strength, durability, other properties—Penetrability by preservatives—Grain of wood—Compression wood—Pith-ray flecks—Gummosis—References for Chap. VII.

## Chapter VIII

### SECONDARY PHLOEM . . . . . 231

Extent and amount—Structure: sieve cells and sieve tubes, companion cells, phloem parenchyma, phloem fibers and sclereids, phloem rays, seasonal rings—Function—Cessation of function—Economic importance—References for Chap. VIII.

## Chapter IX

### PERIDERM AND ABSCISSION . . . . . 248

PERIDERM. Structure: phellogen, phellem, phelloderm—Origin—Extent—Duration—Commercial cork—Morphology of the periderm—Protective layers in the monocotyledons—Storied cork—Function of periderm—Wound cork—Lenticels: distribution, origin, structure, duration.

ABSCISSION. Of leaves—Of floral parts—Of stems: immature and herbaceous, woody—References for Chap. IX.

## THE ORGANS

### Chapter X

### THE ROOT. . . . . 277

Function—Gross morphology—Primary and secondary roots—Ontogeny—Root cap—Root hairs—Cortex—Pericycle—Pri-



mary vascular tissues—Secondary growth—Formation of lateral roots—Adventitious roots—Periderm—References for Chap. X.

## Chapter XI

### THE STEM. . . . . 293

Origin—Root-stem transition—Types: woody, herbaceous, monocotyledonous, vine—"Medullary rays" of vines and herbs—Internal (or intraxylary) phloem—The vascular bundle: size, shape, histological structure—Anomalous structure in stems—Interxylary phloem—Accessory cambium: formation and activity—References for Chap. XI.

## Chapter XII

### THE LEAF. . . . . 317

Morphology—Arrangement—Ontogeny—Duration of leaf development—Vascular tissue development, orientation, xylem, and phloem elements, bundle ends—Bundle sheath—Mechanical support—Mesophyll—Epidermis—Distribution of stomata—The monocotyledonous leaf—The grass leaf: sclerenchyma, bundle sheaths, mesophyll, epidermis, arrangement of stomata—Persistence of leaves—References for Chap. XII.

## Chapter XIII

### THE FLOWER—THE FRUIT—THE SEED . . . . . 341

THE FLOWER. Ontogeny—Vascular skeleton: the floral stele, traces of the floral appendages—Anatomy of simple flowers—Anatomy of more complex flowers: fusion in the floral skeleton, fusion under cohesion and under adnation, the inferior ovary, adnation of flowers to other flowers and other organs—Placental vascular supply—Vestigial vascular tissue—Reduction of vascular supply within an organ—Sepal and petal—Stamen and carpel.

THE FRUIT. Morphology—Ontogeny—Structure—Vascular skeleton—Epidermis—Periderm—Fleshy fruits—Dry fruits—The placenta—Accessory fruit parts—Dehiscence.

THE SEED. Seed coats: morphology, histological structure, vascular bundles—Embryo and endosperm—References for Chap. XIII: flower, fruit, seed.



ECOLOGY

Chapter XIV

ECOLOGICAL ANATOMY . . . . . 380

Xerophytes: xerophytic environments, structural modifications (lignification and cutinization, sclerenchyma, hairs, rolling of leaves, stomatal structure, reduced leaf surface, needle leaves of gymnosperms, fleshy xerophytes)—Epiphytes—Hydrophytes: epidermis, dissected leaves, air chambers, absence of sclerenchyma, reduction of vascular and absorbing tissues—Shade leaves—Parasites—"Saprophytes"—References for Chap. XIV.

INDEX . . . . . 397

"I know it will be difficult to make observations of this kind upon the *Organical Parts of Plants*, severally. . . . For what we obtain of *Nature*, we must not do it by commanding, but by courting of Her . . . I mean, that where ever Men will go beyond Phansie and Imagination, . . . they must Labour, Hope and Persevere . . . And as the means propounded, are all necessary, so they may, in some measure, prove effectual. How far, I promise not; the Way is long and dark . . . If but little should be effected, yet to design more, can do us no harm: For although a Man shall never be able to hit *Stars* by shooting at them; yet he shall come much nearer to them, than another that throws at *Apples*."—Nehemiah Grew, *The Anatomy of Plants*, 1682.

## CHAPTER I

### GENERAL STRUCTURE OF THE PLANT BODY—AN OUTLINE

Among vascular plants there is very great diversity in size, form, and structure; yet, underlying the variations in form and the complexities in structure in the plant body, there is a simple, uniform, structural plan. The body consists fundamentally of a cylindrical *axis* which bears lateral appendages. The more or less free branching of the axis and the variety and complexity of the appendages, however, often conceal this simplicity of plan.

**Fundamental Parts of the Plant Body.**—The axis, though a continuous structure, consists of two parts, different structurally and physiologically, and clearly morphologically distinct: that portion which is normally aerial is known as the *stem*, and that portion which is subterranean is called the *root* (Fig. 1). The appendages are of three ranks. Those into which pass strands of vascular tissue may be said to be of the first rank, and are known as *leaves*. Appendages of this type are characteristic of the stem and do not occur on the root. They are arranged in a definite manner, and bear an intimate structural relation to the skeleton of the axis. The leaf may be looked upon from the standpoint of the present treatment as a lateral expansion of the stem, continuous with it, in the formation of which all fundamental parts of the stem are concerned. In the appendages of the second rank only the outermost layers of the stem, the cortex and the epidermis, are usually present. These are known as *emergences*; the prickles of the rose are a familiar example. In appendages of the third rank, projections of the outermost layer of cells only are present; these form *hairs*. Emergences and hairs occur on both axis and leaves, usually without definite arrangement.

**The Axis.**—The axis itself consists of a central core with a surrounding, ensheathing layer. This core serves chiefly the important functions of conduction and support; it contains the *vascular tissue* and the larger part of all the supporting and conducting cells of the mature axis. Because of its shape and its position in the axis, this central unit mass is known as the *central cylinder*, or *stele* (Fig. 2). The surrounding layer, which serves for protection, support, storage, and for other purposes, is the *cortex*; the outermost layer of cells is the *epidermis*.

**The Stele.**—Primarily, the stele is composed of vascular tissue of two types: that which conducts water and other substances absorbed



from the soil, the *xylem*; and that which carries the food (and possibly mineral nutrients), the *phloem*. Xylem and phloem nearly always occur together, usually side by side radially, the phloem outermost (Fig. 2). These tissues together may form a solid rod, a hollow cylinder, a sheath

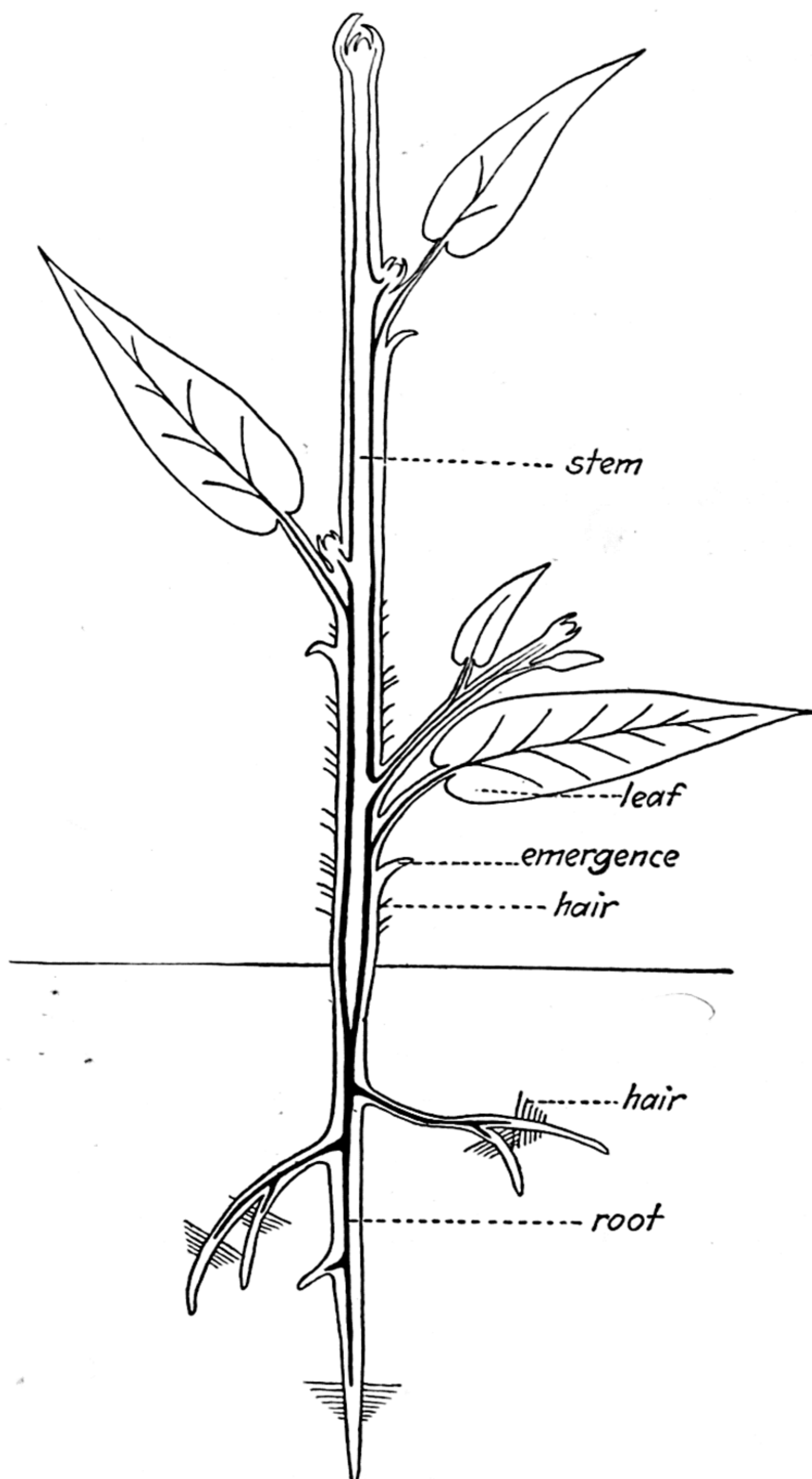


FIG. 1.—Diagram of plant body, showing fundamental parts.

of more or less symmetrically placed strands (Fig. 66), or a group of scattered strands (each consisting of xylem and phloem). Where the arrangement of the vascular tissues is such that they enclose tissue of a different type, usually soft and loose, a central portion, the *pith*, is set off. Outside the external conducting cells and forming the outermost

part of the stele are a few layers of nonconducting cells, the *pericycle*. The pericycle is usually limited externally by a definite uniseriate sheet of cells of peculiar structure, the *endodermis*. The vascular core is thus ensheathed by the pericycle in a way similar to that in which the stele is enveloped by the cortex.

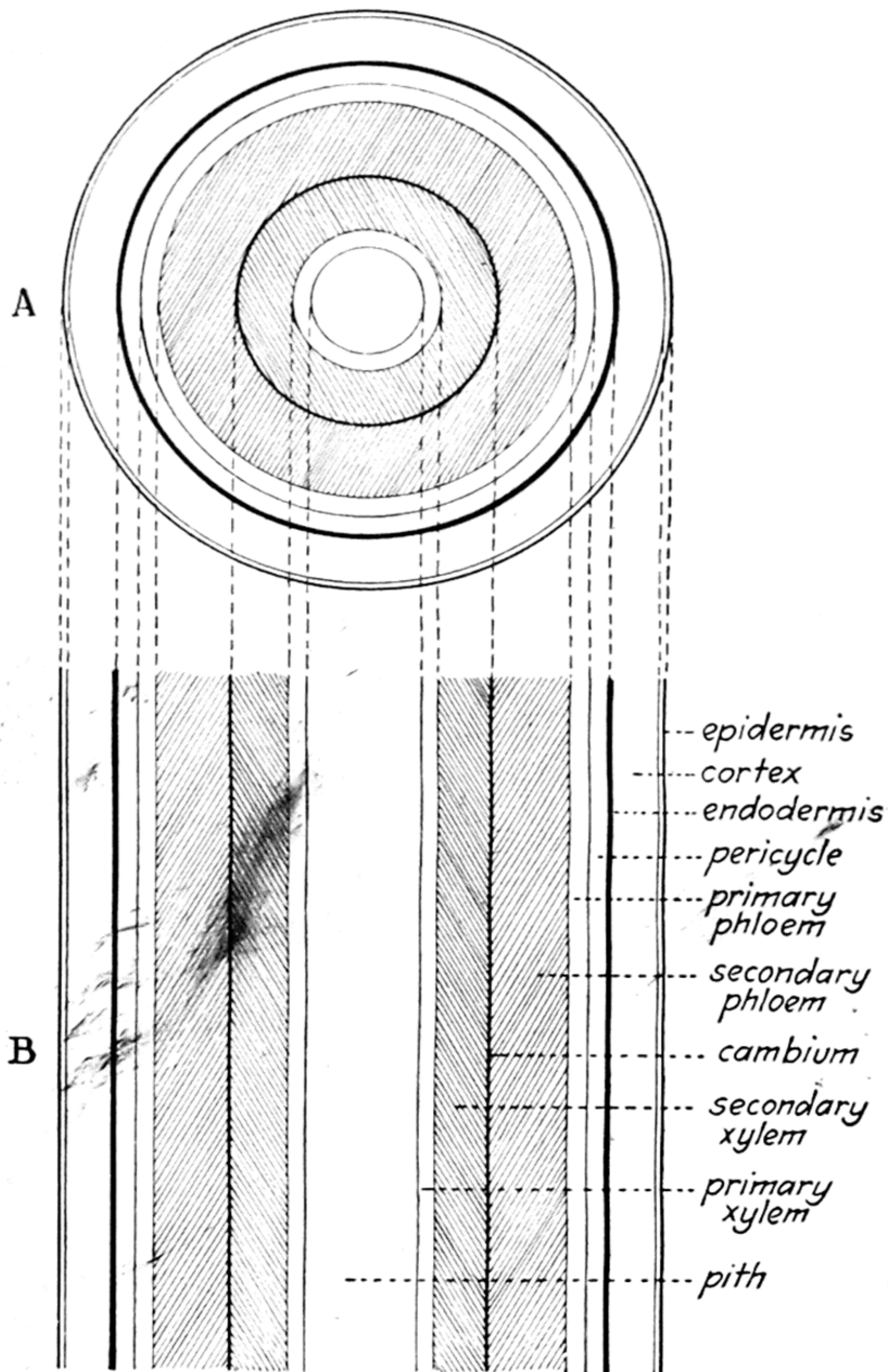


FIG. 2.—Diagram showing structure of axis. A, transverse section; B, longitudinal section.

**Primary and Secondary Growth.**—An axis complete in all the structural features above mentioned and with complete appendages is built up by growth at the growing points, situated at the tips of the axis. This first-formed body is known as the *primary body*, since it is built up by first, or *primary*, growth. Its tissues are, for the same reason, known as *primary tissues*; for example, the first-formed xylem is called *primary xylem*. In many vascular plants the primary body is reinforced by a different sort of growth, which because it begins later and adds to



the original primary tissues is called *secondary growth*. The tissues thus formed are termed *secondary tissues*. Secondary growth does not usually form new types of cells, but merely increases the bulk of the plant, especially of the vascular tissues, providing new conducting cells and additional support and protection. It does not fundamentally change the structure of the primary body. Primary growth increases the length of the axis, laying down its branching system and adding its appendages; that is, it builds up the new, or young, parts of the plant body. After

the parts thus formed have attained full size, additional increase in diameter is secured only by secondary growth.

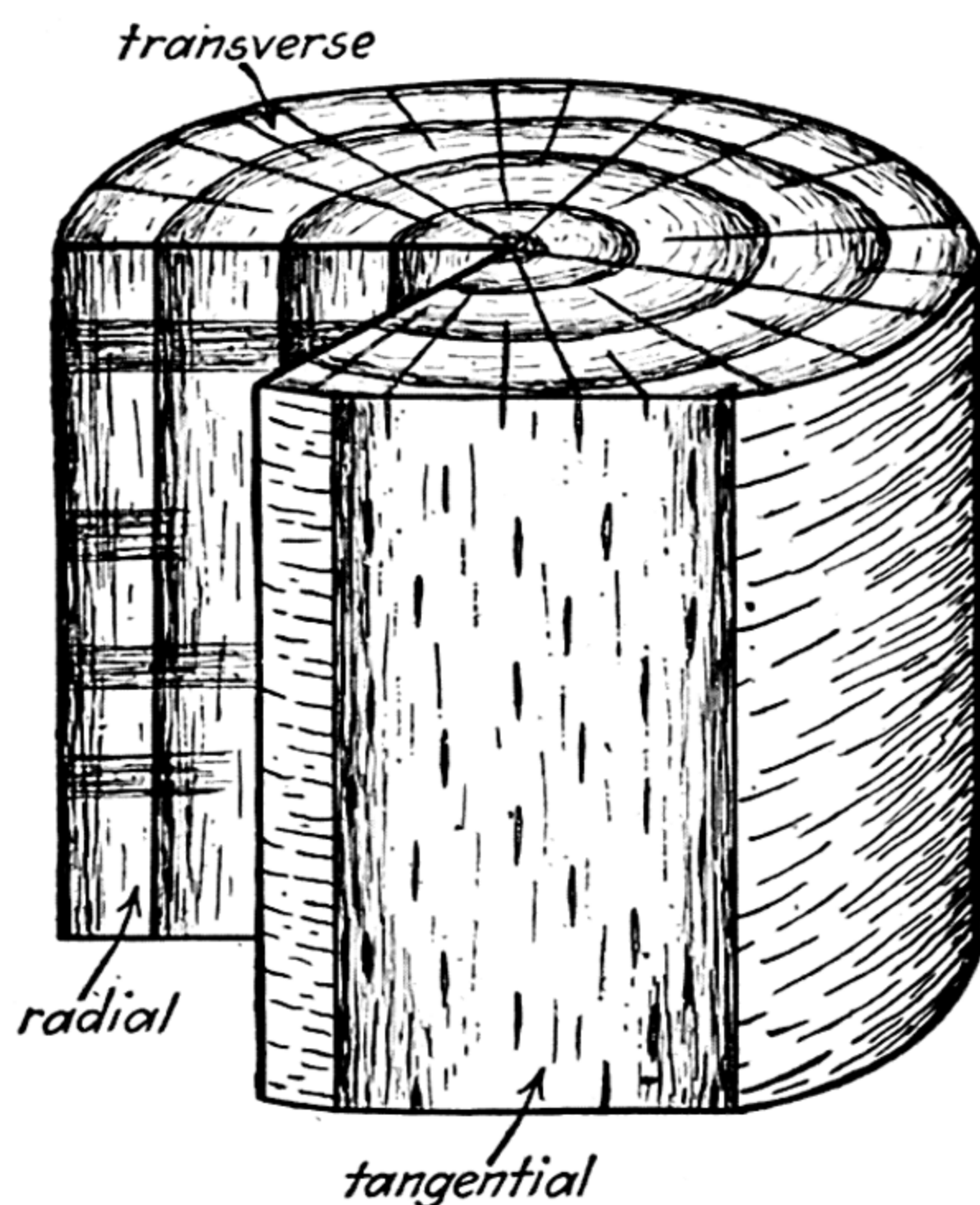


FIG. 3.—Diagrammatic sketch of a cylinder of wood, to show transverse, radial, and tangential planes of section.

primary phloem and all other tissues outside the cambium are forced outward by secondary growth and may be ultimately more or less distorted or destroyed. The primary growth of a given region is completed in a relatively brief period, whereas secondary growth continues for a longer time, and in perennial axes may persist indefinitely.

**Constitution of the Plant Body.**—The root, stem, and leaves of a plant constitute its *organs*. These perform distinct, general functions for which they are adapted by the kinds, proportion, and arrangement of the *tissues* of which they are composed. The tissues have more restricted functions, which are determined by the kinds of *cells* that constitute them. The plant body thus consists of cells that, aggregated, form tissues; these grouped together, form organs.

**Methods of Studying the Anatomy of the Plant.**—The principal methods of studying the minute structure of the plant body are by means of thin sections of plant material and macerations in which the individual



cells are freed from one another. Moreover, for adequate comprehension of the complex structure of most parts of the plant, study of sections cut in more than one plane is necessary. For the axis—a cylindrical structure—three planes, each at right angles to the other two, are most useful. One plane is transverse to the long axis; the others are parallel with the long axis, that is, longitudinal. Of the two longitudinal planes, that dividing the cylinder radially is the radial plane, and that at right angles to the radial plane is the tangential plane (Fig. 3). Sections cut in these planes are known as *transverse* (or *cross*), *radial*, and *tangential sections* respectively.

#### General References for Use with All Chapters

- BONNIER, G., and LECLERC DU SABLON: "Cours de botanique," Paris, 1905.
- DE BARY, A.: "Comparative Anatomy of the Phanerogams and Ferns," Engl. transl., Oxford, 1884.
- BOWER, F. O.: "Size and Form in Plants (with Special References to the Primary Conducting Tracts)," London, 1930.
- COMMITTEE ON NOMENCLATURE, INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF WOOD ANATOMISTS: Glossary of terms used in describing woods, *Trop. Woods*, **36**, Dec., 1933.
- FOSTER, A. S.: "Practical Plant Anatomy," New York, 1942.
- GUILLIERMOND, A.: "The Cytoplasm of the Plant Cell," Engl. transl. by L. R. Atkinson, Waltham, Mass., 1941.
- HABERLANDT, G.: "Physiological Plant Anatomy," Engl. transl. of 4th Germ. ed., London, 1914.
- : "Physiologische Pflanzenanatomie," 5th Germ. ed., Leipzig, 1918.
- HAYWARD, H. E.: "The Structure of Economic Plants," New York, 1938.
- JEFFREY, E. C.: "The Anatomy of Woody Plants," Chicago, 1917.
- SHARP, L. W.: "Fundamentals of Cytology," New York, 1943.
- SIFTON, H. B.: Developmental morphology of vascular plants, *New Phyt.*, **43**, 87–129, 1944.
- SOLEREDER, H.: "Systematic Anatomy of the Dicotyledons," Engl. transl., Oxford, 1908.
- , and F. J. MEYER: "Systematische Anatomie der Monocotyledonen," Berlin. I, 1928; III, 1929; IV, 1930; VI, 1933.
- STRASBURGER, E.: "Histologische Beiträge," III, Jena, 1891.
- TROLL, W.: "Vergleichende Morphologie der höheren Pflanzen. I. Vegetationsorgane." Lief. 1. Berlin, 1935.
- TSCHIRCH, A.: "Angewandte Pflanzenanatomie," Vienna, 1889.
- VAN TIEGHEM, P.: "Traité de botanique," Paris, 1891.



## CHAPTER II

### THE CELL

Plants and animals are made up of living substance, *protoplasm*, and its secretions. The body of an organism, fundamentally a protoplasmic structure, is of complex organization in that, except in the simpler forms, it consists of many more or less independent parts or units. These parts, which are clearly units both of structure and of function, are termed *cells*. The structural distinctness of the cell—in plants especially—is due in large part to the presence of an outer layer, or coat, the *cell wall*, which in plants is usually firm, and often hard and thick; in animals, delicate or lacking. The functional distinctness of the cell depends in part upon the presence and properties of an outer, limiting layer of specialized protoplasm lying just within the wall, the *plasma membrane* (page 13). The cell wall closely invests the protoplasmic unit, thus separating the protoplasm of one cell from that of adjacent cells. This separation is incomplete, however, since very minute perforations occur in the wall. Through these perforations extend thread-like processes of protoplasm, the *plasmodesmata* (page 35), which secure the continuity of the living matter of one cell with that of contiguous cells. The protoplasmic body of an organism is thus a continuous living system, though its individual parts, the cells, are definitely set apart by cell walls.

**Uses of the Term "Cell."**—The term "cell" has, in its different uses, sometimes included and sometimes excluded the cell wall. Early students of plant anatomy, seeing cells only when the walls were thick and visible at low magnification, called these structures "cells," "pores," "bladders," and described their contents as nutritive juices. The walls were the prominent part of these "receptacles." When the cell content was recognized as the essential part of the cell, attention turned to it as "the cell." Following this recognition of the protoplast as the fundamental unit, the term "cell" was often used to designate the protoplast alone. In the more common sense, however, the term implies protoplast plus wall—these together constituting the obvious unit of structure (Fig. 4), a unit for which there exists no term if "cell" is restricted in use to the protoplast alone. The term is further applied even to units of wall alone, as, for example, to the tracheid where the protoplast has disappeared, leaving within the walls a cavity, the *lumen*. The use of the term "cell" to indicate both protoplast and wall is desirable in view of the difficulties



of expression otherwise involved and also in view of the intimate relationship between the two. The closeness of this relationship is not yet fully understood. Possibly the wall of a living cell is not merely a nonliving, external secretion of the protoplast, but is itself partly protoplasmic in nature. The use of the term to include both protoplast and wall is, of course, less strict than that underlying the frequently used definition of the cell as "an organized and more or less independent mass of protoplasm constituting the structural unit of an organism." Nevertheless, from the standpoint of anatomy, the term is better used in the looser and more comprehensive sense; it is so used in this text.

#### Cellular Complexity of Plants.—

The primitive organism was doubtless unicellular or, in a sense, noncellular. The larger body of more advanced types is multicellular and the cells are limited by walls. The walls perhaps separate regions of activity of individual nuclei but certainly serve also for protection and support to the individual protoplasts and to the entire organism. Apparently, this walled condition is of great importance in large plant bodies both from the standpoint of mechanical stability and of physiological delimitation. Clearly, adaptation to a terrestrial and aerial habitat and the maintenance of a large body under conditions unfavorable to protoplasm have resulted in the specialization of the cell along various lines, especially those involving elaboration of the wall. Hence, among higher plants there are many kinds of cells with much variety in function, structure, arrangement, and with a great deal of complexity of wall structure. Variety, both structural and functional, in kind of cell; variety in relation of cells to one another; variety in arrangement of cells and of systems of cells with relation to one another and to the body as a whole—these give great cellular complexity to the more highly organized plants. Indeed, it may be said that in a general way the higher the plant, phylogenetically, the more complex its cellular structure.

**Cell Arrangement.**—Regularity of arrangement of cells is brought about by successive divisions in the same plane (Figs. 41, 92). Such



FIG. 4.—Diagrammatic representation of mature mesophyll cell opened to show central vacuole (filled with cell sap), nucleus and plastids embedded in the peripheral cytoplasm; wall thin. (Based on Zea.)



arrangement is characteristic of secondary tissues (those formed by a cambium or similar meristem) (Chap. VI) and is occasional in primary tissues (page 62), especially those of pith and cortex. But most primary tissues lack symmetrical arrangement and secondary tissues may lose this during development. (Regardless of regularity or irregularity of arrangement and of the method of origin, a group of cells may be compactly arranged forming a close tissue continuous in one or more planes or they may be more or less free from one another, with the resulting formation of *intercellular spaces* (page 29) between them (Figs. 43, 173). Such spaces vary in shape with the shape and arrangement of the surrounding cells, in continuity, in abundance, and in size from microscopically minute openings to very large spaces which render the tissue in which they lie loose, spongy, and light (Figs. 149, 183). Such large intercellular spaces are known as *air chambers*, *canals*, *lacunae*, etc. These terms are applied rather loosely—the larger spaces being called chambers and the much elongated ones canals. Spaces formed by the separation of walls followed by the retraction of the separated parts or by spatial movements of the cells are said to be *schizogenous*; for example, the resin canal of *Pinus* (Fig. 55B) and the spaces of the aerenchyma of *Decodon* (Fig. 184). Others, developed by the destruction of cells formerly occupying the position of the cavity are called *lysigenous*; for example, the oil cavities of citrus fruits (Fig. 55F). Some cavities are formed by a combination of these two methods and have been called *schizolysigenous*. Some protoxylem lacunae (Fig. 64c) are of the last type. The intercellular spaces of a region may be without uniformity in size and shape or in arrangement of the cells surrounding them; they may, on the other hand, form definite structural features of a tissue or organ because of the development about them of specialized limiting or supporting “walls,” or layers of cells, such as the diaphragms of many aquatic plants. Intercellular spaces commonly form definite systems and constitute, perhaps, functionally conducting or aerating systems. Special types of intercellular-space systems form ducts and canals (Chap. IV) with cells regularly arranged about them forming a sort of epithelial lining.

**Cell Shape.**—Because protoplasm is of semifluid nature, cells when free and independent tend to be spherical. But where young cells of the same type and essentially the same age lie together and grow in size, mutual contact and compression render them polyhedral with diameters nearly alike. Further growth toward individual or group specialization in relation to specific function leads to great variety in form—ovoid, ellipsoid, cylindrical, tabular, prismatic, lamelliform, fiber-like, and stellate or otherwise lobed or branched. There are, however, two chief types: the *subglobose*, or *polyhedral*, with diameters equal or only slightly



different; and the *elongate*, with one diameter many times that of the others. Transitional types are, of course, numerous.

Undifferentiated or unspecialized cells, in continuous mass, when surrounded and closely compressed by other cells of similar type and size, are on the average 14-sided. They approach in shape the orthic tetrakaidecahedron, a mathematically determined form for bodies of uniform volume and minimal surface that fill space without interstices. This form has 14 surfaces of contact—8 hexagonal and 6 quadrilateral. In plants, uniform cells of this shape are probably never formed. The closest approach is perhaps in parenchyma cells of pith that are arranged in columns. The surface cells of a mass of such cells have an average of 11 faces. Epidermal cells, for example, have about that number of contact faces. When intercellular spaces are present, the number of sides is less—the larger the spaces, the fewer the sides in contact with other cells. Where similar cells of different sizes lie together under these conditions, the larger cells have more than 14, the smaller less than 14 faces. The shape of newly formed cells is dependent upon that of the mother cell and upon the plane and frequency of division.

**Cell Size.**—Cells vary greatly in size; size, like shape, is in part related to function. Extremely small cells do not occur among the higher plants. Parenchyma cells serving the usual functions, with normal protoplasm, have a transverse diameter of 0.01 to 0.1 mm. In pith and fleshy fruits, the diameter of parenchyma cells may reach 1 mm or more, and the cells then become readily visible to the naked eye. Fibers of wood and phloem range in length chiefly from 1 to 3 mm in the angiosperms, and from 2 to 8 mm in the gymnosperms. Cortical, pericyclic, and primary-phloem fibers are often much longer, and—partly because of their considerable length—are of particular economic importance, as, for example, those of flax and hemp. Fibers of excessive length—20 to 550 mm—occur in the Urticaceae and in certain monocotyledons. The largest cells known are latex cells of the type which form branching systems throughout a plant body (Chap. IV). However, such cells are perhaps not individuals morphologically, since they are coenocytic and continue to grow almost indefinitely. Latex vessels consist of cells united ontogenetically in series.

**Cell Development.**—All cells are formed from preexisting cells—or from nucleated protoplasmic masses—by division. Cell division is a complex process during which the nucleus and cytoplasm are each divided into two parts, usually equal and alike. In this division, the wall is not directly involved. In the newly formed cells, plasma membranes and intercellular substance are not readily distinguishable, and hence a visible plane of separation is at first lacking or scarcely detectable.



But very early, new walls appear along this plane as delicate membranes. Cells, therefore, while still very young, are provided with walls. The small daughter cells soon enlarge to about the size of the mother cell.

Young cells are of more nearly uniform size and shape than mature cells and are simple in structure. Elaborate shape, complex structure, and very large size are not found among young cells. Growth of cells involves increase in size and the development of special shape and structure. Since the wall is present from a very early stage, both protoplast and wall are involved in these changes. As the active part of the cell, the protoplast initiates the changes, the wall being modified with the changing protoplast. While changes in size and shape are taking place, the physical and chemical nature of the wall is usually such that these accommodations are readily made; only after cell maturity is attained is a fully developed and unchanging wall present. In the maturing of the protoplast many changes occur. These are, briefly, the reduction of the proportionate size of the nucleus; the development, usually, of less dense or less richly granular cytoplasm; the appearance of vacuoles that increase in size, and, in most cases, ultimately fuse to form one large central vacuole which restricts the cytoplasm to a peripheral position adjacent to the wall; changes in size and type of vacuole, where vacuoles are already present in the mother cell, for example, in cambium initials and their daughter cells; the increase of plastids in size and number, and the development of special types of plastids. In the maturing of the wall there occurs increase in extent and thickness accompanied by complexity of form and changes in chemical and physical structure (see Cell Wall).

**Cellular Adjustment during Growth.**—Growth frequently brings about changes in the relationships of contact and position among neighboring cells. The changes may involve all surfaces of a cell or be localized. In many cells the rate of growth of the wall is unequal in different areas, and in areas of greater or more rapid growth there are commonly greater changes in intercellular contacts. Development of elaborate or extreme shape and size—especially in such cells as large vessel elements, fibers, and some types of sclereids—brings about great changes. These may involve the deep penetration of cell tips or lobes between adjacent or nearby cells and into intercellular chambers. The steps in these changes are not fully understood. As new contacts are made by a penetrating tip and cell walls are separated, the intercellular cementing substance must be modified or removed. The plasmodesmata of the region are ruptured and the primary pit-fields and even partly developed pit-pairs are divided.

There is lack of agreement as to the manner in which these new wall contacts are made. *Gliding* (or *sliding*) *growth* has commonly been



described as the basis of these changes. *Intrusive growth* and *symplastic growth* have recently been proposed as supplanting gliding growth in part or wholly. None of these three methods alone seems to cover the conditions met in all tissue and cell types.

By *gliding growth* is understood the slipping, during growth, of the wall of a cell over the wall of a contiguous cell along the surface of contact so that new areas of contact are made with the same cell and with nearby cells with which no contact previously existed. It has been generally assumed that real movement takes place in this type of growth, that the wall is increasing in area over more than the points of new contact, sometimes throughout, and that a sliding therefore occurs. Examples of apparent gliding growth are to be found (*a*) in the formation of new cambium initials with increase in the girth of the cambium—size, form, and position of the new cells are evidence of growth throughout the cell walls and of slipping and the making of new contacts (Fig. 89); (*b*) in the development from cambium derivatives of mature phloem and xylem elements—nonmatching pit-fields in the phloem and pits without complementary pits in the xylem are evidence here. The development of the lobes or arms of some types of sclereids is an example of gliding growth of parts of the cell wall.

Gliding growth has also been assumed to cover extreme changes in cell contacts brought about by the forcing, under pressure, of cells into new positions and distorted forms (Fig. 46*D*). As an example of this, the distortion in developing secondary xylem of cell arrangement and form about enlarging vessel elements has been cited. In ring-porous woods such as that of *Quercus*, the rapid and very great increase in diameter of a vessel element results in compression, or stretching, even tearing apart, of the smaller cells nearby (Fig. 92*A*). These cells find new positions, and their new contacts must often involve large areas of their wall surfaces. A sliding of cells on one another is the obvious method of change. Continuing growth cannot explain so great a change of position. It has been claimed that these changes are the result of cell multiplication among the smaller cells, but no cell division is found at this stage and the addition of new cells in the area would not explain extreme distortion of form.

By *intrusive growth* is understood *differential* expansion of the wall—the increase of cell size locally, with the projection of the newly formed parts of the cell between adjacent cells or their extension into intercellular spaces. The parts of other cells with which there is new contact may or may not also be enlarging. In this type of change it is understood that no real slipping occurs; the new contacts of a cell are those made by new areas of the wall as they form. The elongation of the apices of fibers,



tracheids, and vessel elements has been called intrusive growth, but it is perhaps gliding rather than intrusive growth, or, more likely, it involves changes of both these types. An example of extreme continuation of intrusive growth is found in the latex cells of the milkweeds—Apocynaceae and Asclepiadaceae—whose rapidly growing apices maintain their position in apical meristems throughout the plant.

Most gliding and intrusive growth undoubtedly occurs while the cells are very young, but some apparently takes place after the walls are partly mature. In secondary xylem, walls of contiguous cells, already so mature that secondary walls and the beginnings of pits are present, may be split apart by the developing tips of adjacent partly mature cells. Such pits become functionless and are present in mature cells as *blind pits* (pits without complementary pits in the adjacent cell wall). Blind pits may even lead toward an intercellular space; the matching pit may be found across the space. (In sections pit-pairs often appear to extend only part way through the wall; these are usually parts of a pit-pair cut obliquely.) Intrusive growth may bring about a wrinkling of the wall of the intruding cell tip.

By *symplastic growth* is understood growth in size throughout a group of young cells with mutual adjustment in shape by all members of the group. The entire walls are growing. New shapes are formed and new spatial positions taken, but there are no new contacts and no movement either gliding or intrusive. The group of cells grows throughout with their walls forming a framework that is continuously adjusted under pressure and tension. Differences in rate of division and rate of enlargement play a prominent part in symplastic growth. Growth of the derivatives of the initials in an apical meristem is an example of symplastic growth.

All three types of growth doubtless occur. Symplastic growth is characteristic of groups or masses of cells in early stages of growth. Evidence in support of the occurrence of typical gliding growth in many tissues is strong. Distinction between gliding and intrusive growth is doubtless one of degree rather than kind—the difference depends upon the definition of “tips” of the cell. If only a small part of the cell at the apex is growing and making new contacts with the walls of other cells, growth is intrusive; if there is growth in regions other than the tips, there must be movement of the gliding type.

### THE PROTOPLAST

The cell may be considered separable, both structurally and functionally, into the central protoplasmic unit, the *protoplast*, and the surrounding *cell wall*. The protoplast is the cellular unit of the body of protoplasm that fundamentally constitutes the organism. The protoplast may be



further described as an organized protoplasmic unit which contains specialized protoplasmic structures of various kinds, and also nonliving *inclusions*, organic or inorganic. Under the heading of inclusions are starch grains, oil globules, protein granules, crystals of many kinds, and the cell sap. These nonprotoplasmic materials are commonly known as *ergastic substances*. They are often considered not a part of the protoplast but, aside from the intimate relation of these substances to the physiological activities of the protoplast, they constitute a part of the protoplast as a structural unit, if only as inclusions. The cell wall is usually considered definitely distinct from the protoplast; that it may not be so, however, is possible. In the discussion of the nature of the wall (page 23), this aspect of cell structure is further treated.

**Organization of the Protoplast.**—The protoplast nearly always possesses a highly organized part, the *nucleus*. This is proportionately small, usually more or less nearly spherical or disk-shaped, and functionally of the greatest importance in the activities of the cell. Nuclei of extreme shape—linear, spindle-shape, vermiform—are frequent in elongate, slender cells. Bi- and multinucleate cells are occasionally found, but most reports of such cells (in apical meristems and in cambium initials and their derivatives) are based on misinterpretation of material. To the remaining protoplasmic material the term *cytoplasm* is given. The cytoplasm itself has portions of different degrees of specialization which are associated with segregated functions.

**Plasma Membrane.**—A film of extreme delicacy—of ultramicroscopic thinness—the *plasma membrane*, forms a limiting layer on the surface of the cytoplasm. This has been likened to the film that limits a free drop of water and forms the surface of a quiet body of water, preventing the immediate merging of the drop with the larger body upon which it falls. The plasma membrane completely covers the protoplast, including its plasmodesmata extensions, where it probably merges with that of adjoining cells. It has a close, perhaps intimate, association with the wall, possibly even penetrating its inner layers. (It is not shown in Figs. 4 and 8.) The semipermeable nature of the plasma membrane is of the greatest physiological significance in the functions of the cell.

**Plastids.**—The *plastids* are differentiated bits of protoplasm—"organs," or areas, of metabolic activity associated with particular functions. They have a limiting, apparently semipermeable membrane and complex internal structure. They are often colored and usually conspicuous. In size they are small, and generally many occur in a cell (Figs. 4, 5, 6, 7). They are variable in shape, but rounded types are most common. Spherical, ovoid, diskoid, granular, rod-like plastids all occur frequently. Large plastids of peculiar shape are present in many



of the algae and rarely elsewhere. They may be found in all living cells of a plant and probably are present in every cell in its early stages of development. Later they become restricted to certain cells and are abundant only in those which have specialized functions, such as photosynthesis, storage, and color manifestation.

*Origin.*—Plastids are present in large numbers in young meristematic cells (Fig. 5) where they are minute, the smallest being at the limit of

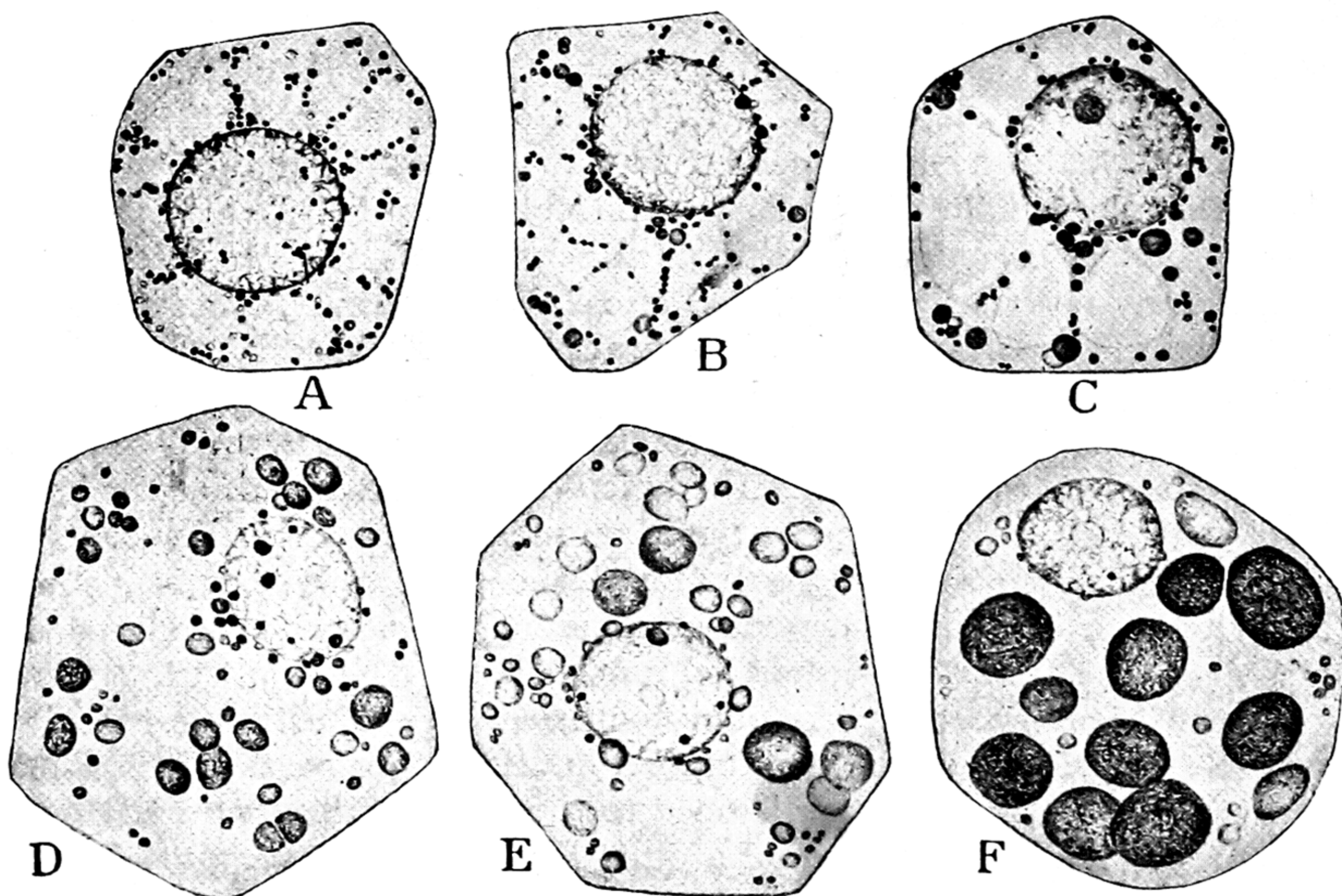


FIG. 5.—The development of a mesophyll cell in *Zea*. A–F, successive stages: the nucleus decreases in proportionate size; vacuoles appear, enlarge, and fuse; chloroplasts develop from proplastids. (After Randolph.)

microscopic visibility. At this stage, when they are known as *proplastids*, they are rounded bodies that do not resemble plastids. As the cell grows, proplastids multiply freely and mature plastids gradually develop. Increase in number by division continues at all stages but less frequently in mature plastids. Probably plastids arise only from preexisting plastids.

*Types of Plastids.*—Several fairly distinct types of plastids occur, but all are of similar fundamental nature. They fall into two chief classes: colored plastids, *chromoplasts*, and colorless plastids, *leucoplasts*. Green, chlorophyll-bearing chromoplasts are known as *chloroplasts* and are commonly set apart as a third major type because of their important function



in food manufacture. This leaves the term “chromoplast” to cover all colored plastids except chloroplasts, and this is its general use.

*Chloroplasts.*—The chloroplasts of the higher plants are mostly uniform in size and chiefly flattened-ellipsoid or disk-like in shape. They are numerous—from a few to very many in a cell—and small, averaging 5 micra in diameter. They multiply by constriction, and may at other times change shape, appearing as though semiliquid. The chlorophyll is wholly or largely restricted to numerous small granules known as *grana* (Fig. 6). Apparently these deeply colored bodies are commonly so arranged and so closely packed that the plastid appears structurally homogeneous. Sometimes an obscure layering can be seen (Fig. 6C).

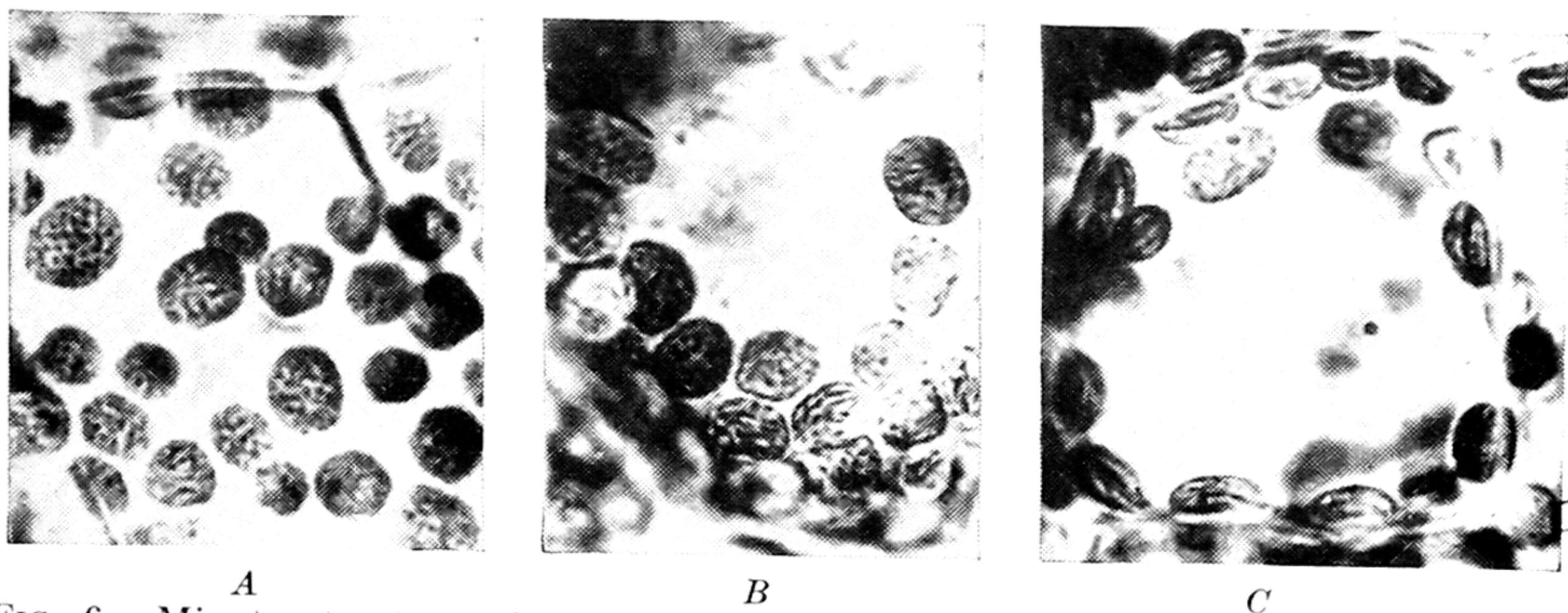


FIG. 6.—Minute structure of chloroplasts. A, *Aponogeton*; B, C, *Todea superba*. A, B, grana large and free; C, grana small and aggregated in plate-like layers. (After Heitz.)

Chloroplasts of shade leaves are somewhat larger than those of leaves in full light on the same plant and their chlorophyll content is possibly greater per unit volume.

*Chromoplasts.*—Nongreen chromoplasts range in color through yellow, orange, and yellow-red. The color is given chiefly by xanthophyll, carotin, and carotinoids. Chromoplasts show great variety in shape but are chiefly irregular; granular, angular, acicular, and forked types occur (Fig. 7). The irregular and sharp-pointed shapes are believed to be caused in part by the presence of the colored substances, especially carotin and carotinoids, in crystalline form, as in the root of *Daucus* (Fig. 7A). The functions of these plastids are obscure. They are associated with color in flowers and fruits but occur also in other regions such as roots. Chromoplasts commonly represent transformed chloroplasts, but may form directly from small leucoplasts.

*Leucoplasts.*—The term “leucoplasts” covers various types of colorless plastids. The early stages of all plastids are called leucoplasts but such young plastids are best called *proplastids*, and only mature colorless plastids should be called leucoplasts. Like chromoplasts, leucoplasts vary



in shape; extreme forms are rod-like. They change shape readily and are probably always highly plastic. They are concerned with food storage and doubtless have other unknown functions. The type of leucoplast associated with starch-grain formation in storage regions is known as *amyloplast*. Leucoplasts related to the formation and storage of oils and fatty substances are known as *elaioplasts*. These are at least

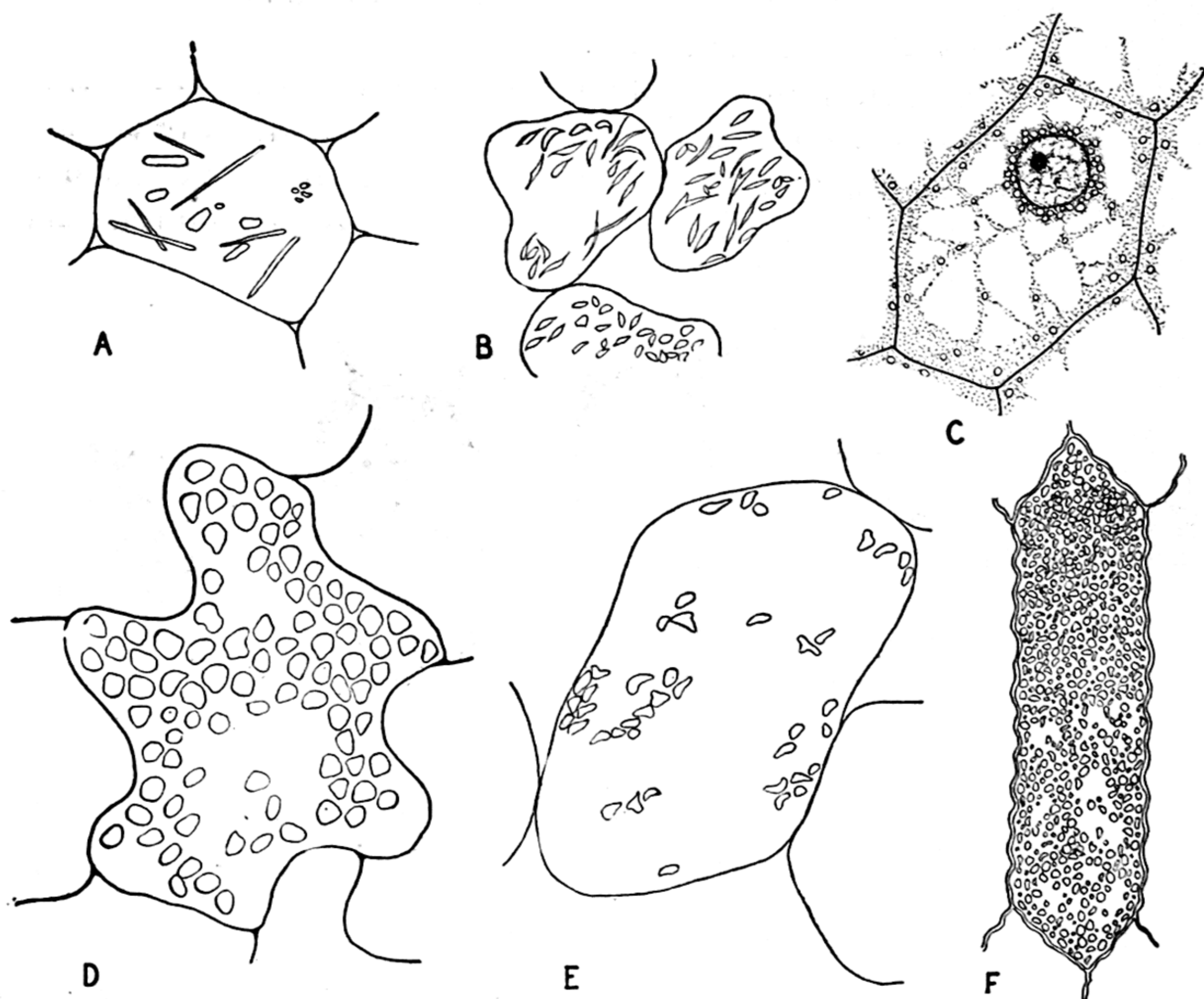


FIG. 7.—Plastids. Chromoplasts: A, in cortex cell of root of *Daucus*; B, in pulp cells of fruit of *Arisaema*; D, in cell of petal of *Forsythia*; E, in pulp cells of fruit of *Lycopersicon*; F, in cell of corolla of *Taraxacum*. Leucoplasts: C, in young endosperm cells of *Zea*.

in part amyloplasts that vary in function at certain times. The leucoplasts of hairs and of other epidermal cells are probably degenerate or dormant plastids of other types.

That all plastids are alike in nature is clear from the readiness with which one type is transformed into another. For example, the chloroplasts of young fruits and of developing petals may become the chromoplasts of the ripe fruit and of the mature flower respectively; the leucoplasts of a potato tuber become chloroplasts on exposure to light.

**Occurrence of Plastid Types.**—Chloroplasts may occur in any part of a plant that is exposed to the light; they also occur in some tissues that are apparently without light, such as the wood of many Rosaceae and



Ericaceae, and in embryos and endosperm, as in the seeds of some citrus fruits. Red and yellow chromoplasts likewise may occur in any organ of the plant, and their presence is not related to the presence of light. They are chiefly to be found, of course, in flowers and fruits. Leucoplasts occur mostly in parts not exposed to light. Further statements concerning the distribution and the function of plastids are to be found in the discussion of various tissues, tissue systems, and organs, such as collenchyma, the cortex, the leaf, and the petal.

Many protoplasmic bodies smaller than plastids occur in cytoplasm; these are known as *chondriosomes* and *mitochondria*. Some of those known as chondriosomes are doubtless proplastids. The nature and distribution of these smaller cytoplasmic structures lie outside the field of the present treatment.

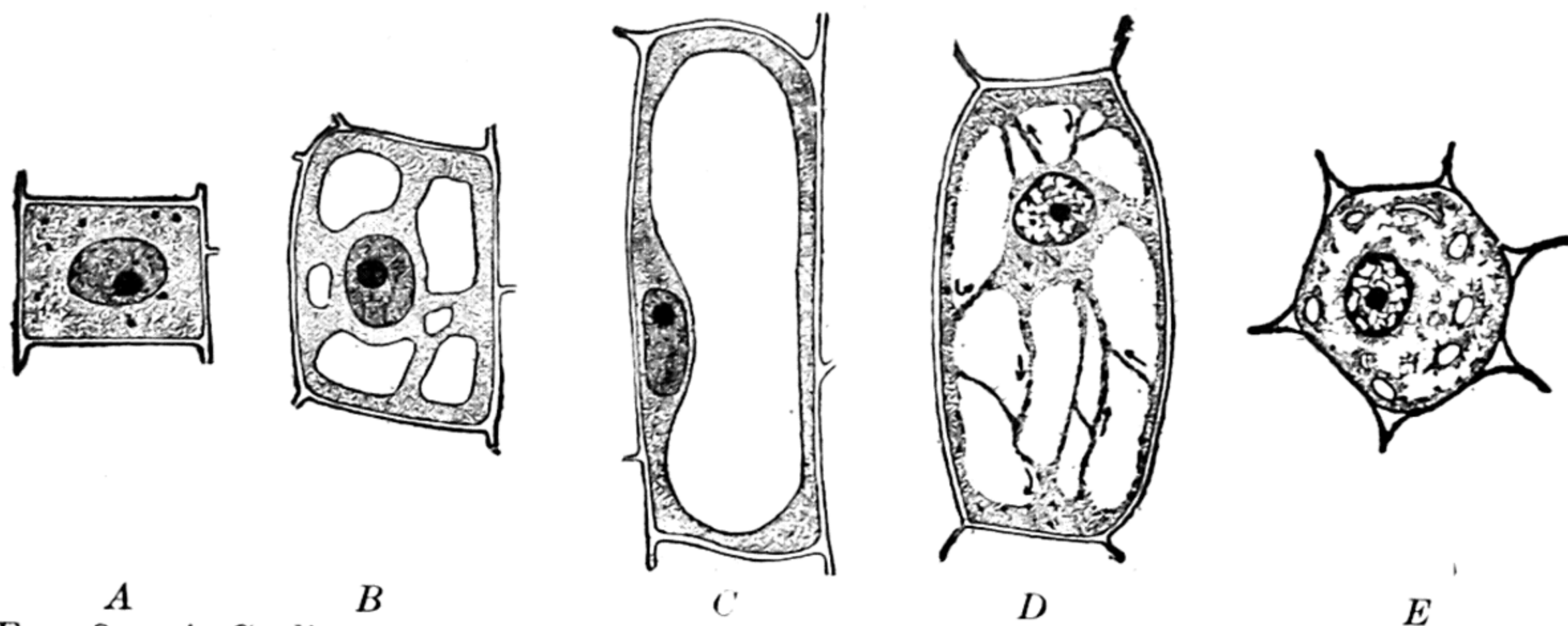


FIG. 8.—A–C, diagram of a plant cell in three successive stages of development: the vacuoles increase in volume and fuse and the cytoplasm becomes limited to the parietal region. D, cell of stamen hair of *Tradescantia*, indicating direction of streaming movements in the cytoplasmic strands. E, parenchyma cell from cortex of *Polygonella*, showing nucleus, plastids, and scanty cytoplasm. (After Sharp.)

**Vacuoles and Cell Sap.**—The cytoplasm of mature and of many young cells contains one or more cavities known as *vacuoles*. Conspicuous cavities usually develop as the cell matures, beginning as one or several small cavities and enlarging and fusing until in the mature cell there is usually one large central vacuole which restricts the cytoplasm to a thin layer lining the wall (Figs. 4, 8C). The nucleus, plastids, and most inclusions are contained in this peripheral layer. Frequently strands of the cytoplasm extend from the outer layer as irregularly anastomosing branches through the central vacuole; under these conditions the nucleus may occupy a median position in the cell. The vacuoles and their liquid content, the *cell sap*, constitute the *cell vacuome*.

The cell sap is a watery, nonprotoplasmic liquid consisting of water with various substances in solution—inorganic salts, carbohydrates, proteins, amides, alkaloids, pigments, etc. These substances may be



mineral nutrients, elaborated food, waste products, or substances of unknown relation to metabolism.) In the physiology of the cell the significance of these substances dissolved in the cell sap is not well understood.

**Color in Cells.**—Substances that give color to cells are found chiefly in the plastids and the cell sap. The cell wall, cytoplasm, and nucleus are commonly nearly colorless. The green coloring substance of chloroplasts is *chlorophyll*, in two forms known as *a* and *b*. With the chlorophyll, but masked by it, are yellow pigments, *carotinoids*. Included in the carotinoids are carotins, carotenes, and xanthophylls. These substances give the yellow color of “golden” varieties of plants (where the chlorophyll content is low) and of leaves variegated with yellow. Leaves variegated with white have little or no color in the plastids of the pale areas. Abundant carotinoids (sometimes in crystalline form) in chromoplasts give yellow, orange, and yellow-red colors to flowers and fruits. Another group of pigments, the *flavones*, are water-soluble and color the cell sap. In some genera, for example, *Verbascum*, they give yellow color to corollas. The *anthocyanins*, oxidation products of flavones, also water-soluble, color cell sap and give red, purple, and blue color to many flowers and fruits. A reddish, anthocyanin-colored cell sap, together with the green color of the chloroplasts, gives the bronze or purple color to the leaves of purple-leaved forms of many plants. Anthocyanins are also present in young twigs and leaves, especially if growth is taking place at low temperatures. Other color-bearing substances may be present, and lower groups of plants—algae and bacteria—possess some distinctly different substances. In white floral parts there is no color, and light is reflected from the many semitransparent cells separated by intercellular spaces.

**Autumn Color.**—In slowly dying leaves chlorophyll breaks down into colorless substances. Green leaves become yellow as the *xanthophyll* is thus unmasked. Xanthophyll in the disorganizing chloroplasts in this way gives much of the yellow color seen in autumn foliage. Reds and purples are cell-sap colors, resulting from oxidation of flavones, and are especially brilliant when formed in the presence of sugars and abundant sunshine. These cell-sap colors, in combination with some persisting chlorophyll, xanthophyll, browning cell walls, tannins, and less common color-giving substances, give great variety in autumn color. The changes from green foliage are not caused by frost, although frost may hasten the process. Many plants whose leaves color brilliantly in cool temperate climates show equally bright color when grown in frostless climates. Dying branches of trees often show full “autumn” color in midsummer.



**Inclusions of the Protoplast (Ergastic Substances).**—Many kinds of solid particles, organic and inorganic, as well as such substances as oils, gums, resins, etc., are frequently present within the protoplast, either in the cytoplasm or in the vacuole. These represent, like the dissolved substances, food products, such as starch and aleurone grains; waste products, such as crystals; and other substances of doubtful or unknown function, such as rubber, mucilages, tannins, latex, alkaloids. Gums, resins, tannins, etc., are often present in the lumina of nonliving cells; for example, in the heartwood of *Sequoia* (Fig. 99) and mahogany (*Swietenia*), and in cork cells of many trees. Some of these substances, for example, starch, occur in most plants; others are characteristic of certain large or small groups of plants, and are lacking in others.

**Crystals.**—Crystals of various chemical nature occur freely in plant cells—of these, salts of calcium, chiefly calcium oxalate, constitute the majority. Crystals of other salts of calcium and of various other inorganic substances, such as silica and gypsum, occur less frequently; crystals of many organic substances, such as carotin, berberin, and saponin, are frequent. All parts of the plant may contain crystals, though these structures are more abundant in certain regions, as in the pith, cortex, and phloem, than in others. There are many forms of crystals (Fig. 9). Of these, solitary, rhombohedral crystals, sheaf-like bundles of long acicular crystals known as *raphides* (Fig. 9E), and clustered crystals in globose masses called *druses* (Fig. 9A,B,D,F) are most common. The individual crystals of druses may be raphides. Solitary raphides, small prismatic crystals, and minute crystals called *crystal sand* are other frequent types. *Cystoliths*, often considered crystalline bodies, consist in large part of cell-wall substance.

One form of crystal may occur in a given cell—the usual condition where crystals are clustered—or two or more types may be found in the same protoplast. Many inorganic crystals appear to involve organic matter in the course of their formation. The larger crystals of xylem often show this condition (Fig. 9G,H,K,L), and druses frequently contain a prominent organic center (Fig. 9F).

The large crystals of somewhat various shapes—prismatic, rhomboid, etc.—occur chiefly in fibers of xylem and of phloem and in parenchyma cells associated with fibers. Raphides occur in thin-walled, mucilage-containing parenchyma-cells of soft tissues, such as storage parenchyma of underground parts, fruit pulp, and the tissues of aquatic plants generally. They are present in monocotyledons chiefly. Druses are characteristic of parenchyma cells of cortex and pith, especially of stems and petioles; they also are abundant in phloem.

Crystals lie in the protoplast—usually in the vacuoles—or in the lumen

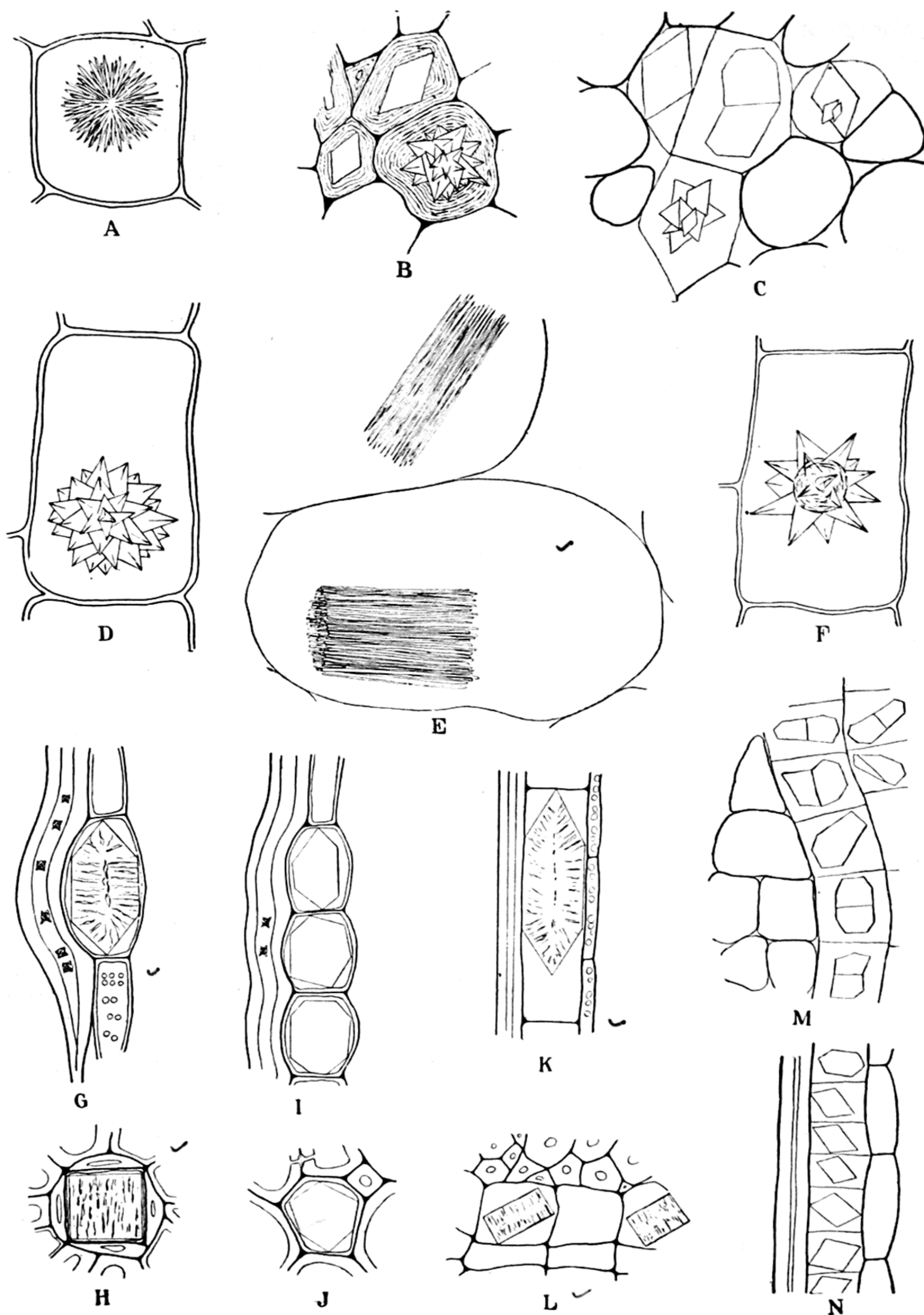


FIG. 9.—Crystals. A, druse in cortical cell of stem of *Viburnum Lentago*; B, druse and rhombohedral crystals in stone cells of nutshell of *Carya glabra*; C, solitary and grouped crystals in pith cells of *Populus grandidentata*; D, druse in cortical cells of *Carica Papaya*; E, "bundles" of raphides in pulp cells of fruit of *Smilacina racemosa*; F, druse with organic center, in phloem parenchyma cell of *Juglans nigra*; G, H, longitudinal and transverse sections of crystal in wood parenchyma of *Carya Pecan*; I, J, longitudinal and transverse sections of crystals in wood parenchyma of *Juglans nigra*; K, L, longitudinal and transverse sections of crystals in phloem parenchyma of *Tilia americana*; M, various forms of crystals in phloem parenchyma of *Malus pumila*; N, rhombohedral crystals in phloem parenchyma of *Salix nigra*.



when the protoplast has disappeared, as in fibers. Occasionally, they are partly or wholly embedded in the cell wall; more frequently they are suspended in the lumen by projections of the walls. These projections are rod-like; or they are sac-like, covering the crystal and holding it in a central position. Large crystals may fill the lumen and then determine the interior contour of the wall (Fig. 9B); in elongate cells the lumen may be filled at a given level only (Fig. 9K).

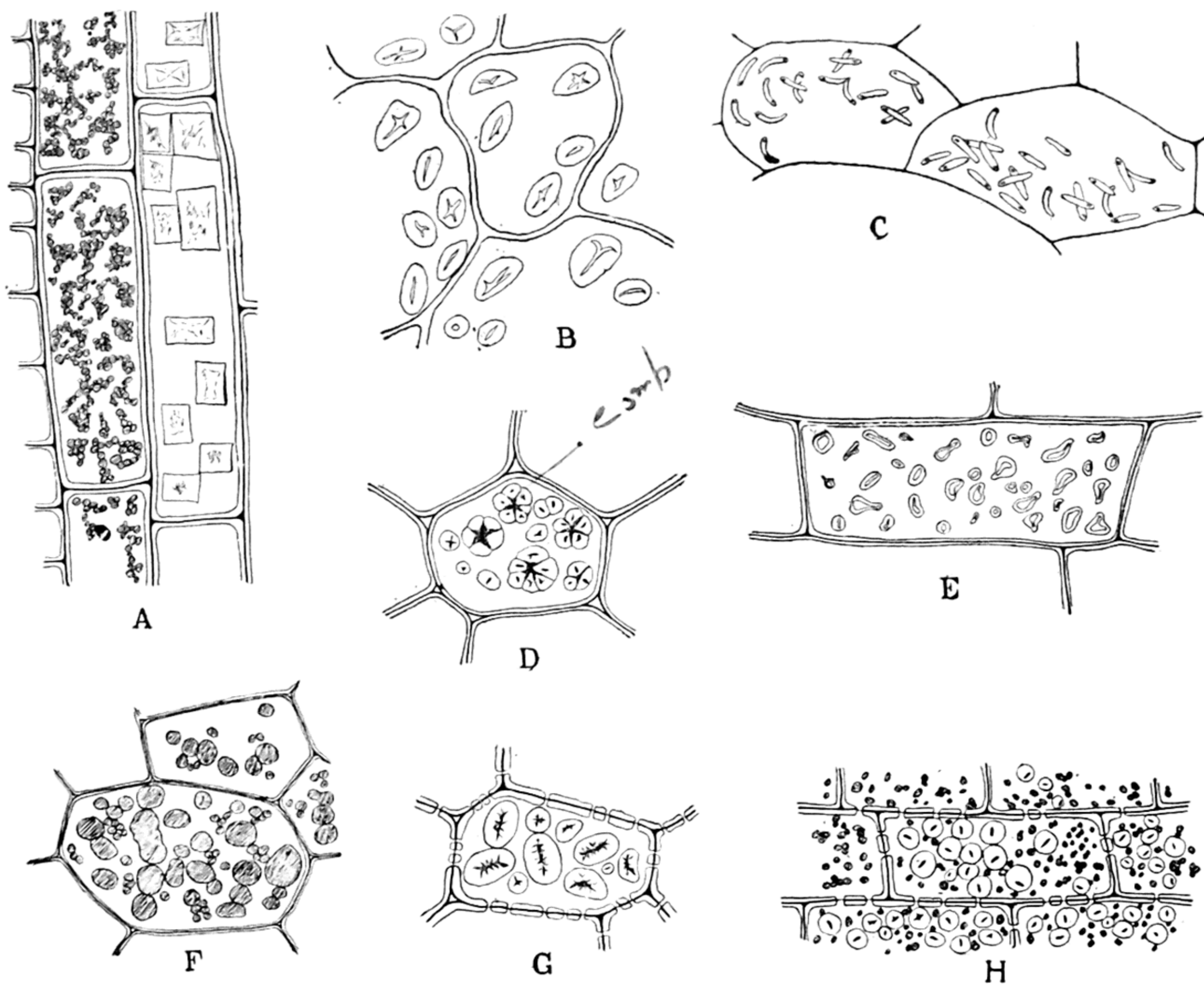


FIG. 10.—Starch grains and tannin. Tannin: A, in phloem parenchyma of *Pinus* (also crystals); F, in pith cells of *Fragaria*; H, in ray cells of wood of *Malus pumila* (also starch grains). Starch grains: B, in pith cells of *Alsophila*; C, in outer pericarp of *Musa*; D, in cotyledon of *Pisum*; E, in ray cell of phloem of *Ailanthus*; G, in cotyledon of *Phaseolus*.

Cells may be given over entirely to crystal storage, and the protoplasts become much reduced or disappear, but typical active cells may also contain abundant crystals. The early stages of crystals are found in very young cells; apical meristems often contain young druses.

In large part, inorganic crystals are probably waste products, the result of metabolic processes. Their development in tissues which soon cease to be functional, such as pith, cortex, and secondary phloem, is suggestive of this.



*Starch*.—Food materials are present either as transitory material or in the more or less permanent form of storage particles. Newly formed food may be in solution or exist as solid particles. Starch grains are the most common kind of solid food material found. They are of numerous types and vary in size and in form over a considerable range (Fig. 10). In shape they are mostly rounded or oval. Crowding results in the formation of angular shapes, and symmetrical, polyhedral grains are characteristic of some plants. Other plants possess compound grains which closely resemble simple grains, but show their compound nature when broken up into their constituent parts which are minute simple grains. All grains in a cell may be simple or compound, or both types may occur in the same cell (Fig. 10D). Structurally the grain is made up of radially arranged tapering needles of amylose. The needles lie with their tips at the center, their bases fused to form a border. Both the central area, the *hilum*, and the border are highly refractive. Concentric layering about the hilum is commonly seen, although this may be obscure without special treatment. The layering may become strongly excentric in the larger grains of some plants, for example, the potato. The layered appearance is probably the result of variation in the amount of water in the amylose; and this variation is due to alternations in growing conditions—in light intensity, temperature, and humidity. Grains formed under constant growth conditions are not lamellated. The hilum is rounded or angular, sometimes lobed, forked, or stellate, and is highly refractive to light. By the presence of hila and by staining properties, starch grains may be distinguished from plastids and other protoplasmic bodies, and from other solid particles.

Starch grains are first formed within chloroplasts and are often found in that position; leucoplasts in storage cells build up starch grains within themselves from translocated food brought from green cells. Starch grains are thus formed both primarily and secondarily within plastids. It is not known with certainty whether, when a grain is mature, it is freed from the plastid or is still surrounded by a very delicate layer of plastid substance.

*Nitrogenous Inclusions*.—Solid nitrogenous particles such as *crystalloids*, or *protein crystals*, are frequent in seeds and in other storage organs, such as bulbs and tubers, as in the potato tuber; and *aleurone* grains are often found in seeds, where definite layers of cells are filled with them, as in the corn fruit (Fig. 11). *Crystalloids* and *aleurone* grains are rare elsewhere. *Tanniferous* bodies are abundant in many plants, especially in the cortex and phloem (Fig. 10A). They occur chiefly in parenchyma cells but may be found in other cells, such as those of *collenchyma* and cork. Their abundance in the phloem of oak, hemlock, and other trees



- SHARP, L. W.: "Introduction to Cytology," 3d ed., New York, 1934.  
 ———: "Fundamentals of Cytology," New York, 1943.  
 SINNOTT, E. W.: Structural problems at the meristem, *Bot. Gaz.*, **99**, 803–813, 1938.  
 THOMPSON, D'A. W.: "On Growth and Form," 2d ed., Cambridge, 1942.

# THE PROTOPLAST

- BAILEY, I. W.: The cambium and its derivative tissues, V. A reconnaissance of the vacuome in living cells, *Zeitschr. Zellforsch. Mikr. Anat.*, **10**, 651–682, 1930.  
 BAILEY, I. W., and C. ZIRKLE: The cambium and its derivative tissues, VI. The effects of hydrogen-ion concentration in vital staining, *Jour. Gen. Phys.*, **14**, 363–383, 1931.  
 FAULL, A. F.: Elaioplasts in *Iris*: a morphological study, *Journ. Arnold Arboretum*, **16**, 225–267, 1935.  
 GUILLIERMOND, A.: Observations vitales sur le chondriome des chromoplastides et le mode de formation des pigments xanthophylliens et carotiniens. *Rév. Gén. Bot.*, **31**, 372–413, 446–508, 532–603, 635–770, 1919.  
 ———: "The Cytoplasm of the Plant Cell," Engl. transl. by L. R. Atkinson, Waltham, Mass., 1941.  
 HEITZ, E.: Untersuchungen über den Bau der Plastiden, I. Die gerichteten chlorophyllscheiben der Chloroplasten, *Planta*, **26**, 134–163, 1936.  
 LUBIMENKO, V.: Les pigmentes des plastes et leur transformation dans les tissus vivantes de la plante, *Rév. Gén. Bot.*, **39**, 40, 1927, 1928.  
 MEYER, F. J.: Das trophische Parenchym, A. Assimilationsgewebe. In Linsbauer, K.: "Handbuch der Pflanzenanatomie," IV, 1923.  
 MOULTON, F. R. (Ed.): The cell and protoplasm, Publ. No. 14, *Amer. Assoc. Adv. Sci.*, 1940.  
 NEWCOMER, E. H.: Concerning the duality of the mitochondria and the validity of the osmiophilic platelets in plants, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **33**, 684–697, 1946.  
 RABINOWITCH, E. I.: "Photosynthesis and Related Processes," I, Chaps. XIV, XV, XVI, New York, 1945.  
 RANDOLPH, L. F.: Cytology of chlorophyll types of maize, *Bot. Gaz.*, **73**, 337–375, 1922.  
 SCHÜRHOFF, P. N.: Die Plastiden, In Linsbauer, K.: "Handbuch der Pflanzenanatomie," I, 1924.  
 SINNOTT, E. W., and R. BLOCH: Division in vacuolate plant cells, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **28**, 225–232, 1941.  
 STRAUS, W.: Recherches sur les chromatophores, IV. Sur la structure des chromatophores de la carotte, *Helvetica Chim. Acta*, **25**, 1370–1383, 1943.  
 WEIER, E.: The structure of the chloroplast, *Bot. Rev.*, **4**, 497–530, 1938.  
 ZIRKLE, C.: The structure of the chloroplast in certain higher plants, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **13**, 301–320, 1926.  
 ———: The growth and development of plastids in *Lunularia vulgaris*, *Elodea canadensis*, and *Zea mays*, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **14**, 429–445, 1927.  
 ———: Vacuoles in primary meristems, *Zeitschr. Zellforsch. Mikr. Anat.*, **16**, 26–47, 1932.

# PLASMODESMATA

- CRAFTS, A. S.: A technic for demonstrating plasmodesmata, *Stain Tech.*, **6**, 127–129, 1931.  
 GARDINER, W., and A. W. HILL: The histology of the cell wall with special reference to the mode of connection of cells, *Phil. Trans. Roy. Soc. London*, **194B**, 83–125, 1901.



- HUME, M.: On the presence of connecting threads in graft hybrids, *New Phyt.*, **12**, 216-225, 1913.
- KUHLE, F.: Die Plasmaverbindungen bei *Viscum album*, *Bot. Zeit.*, **58**, 29-58, 1900.
- LIVINGSTON, L. G.: The nature and distribution of plasmodesmata in the tobacco plant, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **22**, 75-87, 1935.
- MEEUSE, A. D. J.: On the nature of plasmodesmata, *Protoplasma*, **35**, 143-151, 1941.
- : Plasmodesmata, *Bot. Rev.*, **7**, 249-262, 1941.
- MÜHLDOERF, A.: Das plasmatische Wesen der pflanzlichen Zellbrücken, *Beih. Bot. Centralbl.*, **56**, 171-364, 1937.
- POIRAULT, G.: Recherches anatomiques sur les cryptogames vasculaires, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 7 sér., **18**, 113-256, 1893.
- PRIESTLEY, J. H.: The physiology of cambial activity, II. The concept of "sliding growth." *New Phyt.*, **29**, 96-140, 1931.

#### ERGASTIC SUBSTANCES

- BLACK, O. F.: Calcium oxalate in the dasheen, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **5**, 447-451, 1918.
- FUCHS, P. C. A.: Untersuchungen über den Bau der Raphidenzelle, *Oester. Bot. Zeitschr.*, **48**, 324-332, 1898.
- NETOLITZKY, F.: Die Kieselkörper, Die Kalksalze als Zellinhaltskörper, In Linsbauer, K.: "Handbuch der Pflanzenanatomie," III, 1929.
- PFITZER, E.: Über die Einlagerung von Kalkoxalat-Krystallen in die pflanzliche Zellhaut, *Flora*, **1872**, 97-102, 129-136, 113-120, 1872.
- SAFFORD, W. E.: The useful plants of the island of Guam, *Contr. U.S. Nat. Museum*, **9**, 67-71, 1905.
- VAN DE SANDE-BAKHUYSEN, H. L.: The structure of starch grains from wheat grown under constant conditions, *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. Med.*, **23**, 302-305, 1926.

#### THE CELL WALL

- AJELLO, L.: Cytology and cellular interrelations of cystolith formation in *Ficus elastica*, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **28**, 589-593, 1941.
- ALDABA, V. C.: The structure and development of the cell wall in plants, I. Bast fibers of *Boehmeria* and *Linum*, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **14**, 16-24, 1927.
- ANDERSON, D. B.: A microchemical study of the structure and development of flax fibers, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **14**, 187-211, 1927.
- : The structure of the walls of the higher plants, *Bot. Rev.*, **1**, 52-75, 1935.
- ANDERSON, D. B., and T. KERR: Growth and structure of the cotton fiber, *Ind. Eng. Chem.*, **30**, 48-54, 1938.
- ARZT, T.: Untersuchungen über das Vorkommen einer Kuticula in den Blättern dikotylen Pflanzen, *Ber. Deutsch. Bot. Ges.*, **51**, 471-500, 1933.
- BAILEY, I. W.: The structure of the bordered pits of conifers and its bearing on the tension hypothesis of the ascent of sap in plants, *Bot. Gaz.*, **62**, 133-142, 1916.
- : Structure, development, and distribution of so-called rims or bars of Sanio, *Bot. Gaz.*, **67**, 449-468, 1919.
- : The formation of the cell plate in the cambium of higher plants, *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci.*, **6**, 197-200, 1920.
- : The significance of the cambium in the study of certain physiological problems, *Jour. Gen. Physiol.*, **2**, 519-533, 1920.
- : Phragmospheres and binucleate cells, *Bot. Gaz.*, **70**, 469-471, 1920.
- : The cambium and its derivative tissues, III. A reconnaissance of cytological phenomena in the cambium, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **7**, 417-434, 1920.



- : The cambium and its derivative tissues, IV, The increase in girth of the cambium, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **10**, 499–509, 1923.
- : The cambium and its derivative tissues, VIII. The structure, distribution, and diagnostic significance of vested pits in dicotyledons, *Jour. Arnold Arboretum*, **14**, 259–273, 1933.
- : Cell wall structure of higher plants, *Ind. and Eng. Chem.*, **30**, 40–47, 1938.
- : The microfibrillar and microcapillary structure of the cell wall, *Bull. Torrey Bot. Club*, **66** (4), 201–213, 1939.
- : The wall of plant cells, *In* The cell and protoplasm, *Publ. Amer. Assoc. Adv. Sci.*, **14**, 31–45, 1940.
- and E. E. BERKLEY: The significance of X-rays in studying the orientation of cellulose in the secondary walls of tracheids, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **29**, 231–241, 1942.
- and A. F. FAULL: The cambium and its derivative tissues, IX. Structural variability in the redwood, *Sequoia sempervirens*, and its significance in the identification of fossil woods, *Jour. Arnold Arboretum*, **15**, 233–254, 1934.
- and T. KERR: The visible structure of the secondary wall and its significance in physical and chemical investigations of tracheary cells and fibers, *Jour. Arnold Arboretum*, **16**, 273–300, 1935.
- and ———: The structural variability of the secondary wall as revealed by “lignin” residues, *Jour. Arnold Arboretum*, **18**, 261–272, 1937.
- and M. R. VESTAL: The orientation of cellulose in the secondary walls of tracheary cells, *Jour. Arnold Arboretum*, **18**, 185–195, 1937.
- BARANETZKI, J.: Épaississement des parois des éléments parenchymateux, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 7 sér., **4**, 134–201, 1886.
- BEER, R., and A. ARBER: On the occurrence of multinucleate cells in vegetative tissues, *Proc. Roy. Soc. London*, B **91**, 1–17, 1919.
- BELL, H. P.: The protective layers of the apple, *Can. Jour. Res.*, C **15**, 391–402, 1937.
- BERKLEY, E. E.: Cellulose orientation, strength and cell wall development of cotton fibers, *Textile Res.*, **9**, 355–373, 1939.
- BOEKE, J. E.: On the origin of the intercellular channels and cavities in the rice root, *Ann. Jard. Bot. Buitenzorg*, **50**, 199–208, 1940.
- BUSTON, H. W.: Observations on the nature, distribution and development of certain cell wall constituents of plants, *Biochem. Jour.*, **29**, 196–218, 1935.
- COLIN, H., and A. CHAUDIN: Pectine et ciment intercellulaire, *Bull. Soc. Chem. Biol.*, **16**, 1333–1343, 1934.
- COMMITTEE ON NOMENCLATURE, INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF WOOD ANATOMISTS: Glossary of terms used in describing wood, *Trop. Woods*, Yale University School of Forestry, No. **36**, 1933.
- DADSWELL, H. E., and D. J. ELLIS: Contributions to the study of the cell wall, I Methods for demonstrating lignin distribution in wood, *Jour. Council Sci. Ind. Res. (Aust.)*, **13**, 44–54, 1940.
- FOSTER, A. S.: Structure and development of sclereids in the petiole of *Camellia japonica* L., *Bull. Torrey Bot. Club*, **71**, 302–326, 1944.
- : Origin and development of sclereids in the foliage leaf of *Trochodendron aralioides* Sieb. & Zucc., *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **32**, 456–468, 1945.
- FREY, A.: Der heutige Stand der Micellartheorie, *Ber. Deutsch. Bot. Ges.*, **44**, 564–570, 1926.
- : Über die Intermicellar-Räume der Zellmembranen, *Ber. Deutsch. Bot. Ges.*, **46**, 444–456, 1928.



- FREY-WYSSLING, A.: The submicroscopic structure of cell walls, *Sci. Prog.*, **34**, 249-262, 1939.
- FROST, F. H.: Histology of the wood of angiosperms, I. The nature of the pitting between tracheary and parenchymatous elements, *Bull. Torrey Bot. Club*, **56**, 259-264, 1929.
- GÉNEAU DE LAMARLIÈRE, L.: Sur les membranes cutinisées de plantes aquatiques, *Rév. Gén. Bot.*, **18**, 289-295, 1906.
- GOLDSTEIN, B.: A study of progressive cell plate formation, *Bull. Torrey Bot. Club*, **52**, 197-219, 1925.
- GRIFFIN, G. J.: Bordered pits in Douglas fir; a study of the position of the torus in mountain and lowland specimens, *Jour. For.*, **17**, 813-822, 1919.
- HOCK, C. W.: Microscopic structure of the cell wall, In Seifriz, W. (Ed.): "The Structure of Protoplasm," Ames, Iowa, 1942.
- JÖNSSON, B.: Siebähnliche Poren in den trachealen Xylemelementen der Phanerogamen, hauptsächlich der Leguminosen, *Ber. Deutsch. Bot. Ges.*, **10**, 494-513, 1892.
- JUNGERS, V.: Recherches sur les plasmodemes chez les végétaux, I. *La Cellule*, **40**, 5-81, 1930.
- KAMP, H.: Untersuchungen über Kuticularbau und kuticuläre Transpiration von Blättern, *Jahr. Wiss. Bot.*, **72**, 403-465, 1930.
- KERR, T., and I. W. BAILEY: The cambium and its derivative tissues, X. Structure, optical properties and chemical composition of the so-called middle lamella, *Jour. Arnold Arboretum*, **15**, 327-349, 1934.
- KOEHN, E.: Ueber Zellhautfalten in der Epidermis von Blumenblättern und deren mechanische Function, *Ber. Deutsch. Bot. Ges.*, **2**, 24-29, 1884.
- KÜNEMUND, A.: Die Entstehung verholzter Lamellen, untersucht besonders an *Salix alba*, *Bot. Arch.*, **34**, 462-521, 1932.
- Lee, B., and J. H. PRIESTLEY: The plant cuticle, I. Its structure, distribution, and function, *Ann. Bot.*, **38**, 525-545, 1924.
- MARTENS, P.: Recherches sur la cuticle, II. Dépouillement cuticulaire spontané sur les pétales de "*Tradescantia*," *Bull. Soc. Roy. Belgique*, **66**, 58-64, 1933.
- : Recherches sur la cuticle, III. Structure, origine et signification du relief cuticulaire, *Protoplasma*, **20**, 483-515, 1934.
- : Recherches sur la cuticle, IV. Le relief cuticulaire et la differentiation épidermique des organes floraux, *La Cellule*, **43**, 289-318, 1934.
- : Nouvelles recherches sur l'origine des espaces intercellulaires, *Beih. Bot. Zentralbl. Abt.*, A. **58**, 349-364, 1938.
- MEEUSE, A. D. J.: Development and growth of the sclerenchyma fibers and some remarks on the development of the tracheids in some monocotyledons, *Rec. Trav. Bot. Neer.*, **35**, 288-321, 1938.
- : A study of intercellular relationships among vegetable cells with special reference to "sliding growth" and to cell shape, *Rec. Trav. Bot. Neer.*, **38**, 18-140, 1942.
- MOOG, H.: Ueber die spiraligen Verdickungsleisten der Tracheen und Tracheiden unter besonderer Berücksichtigung ihrer Ausziehbarkeit, *Beih. Bot. Centralbl.*, Abt. I. **42**, 186-228, 1925.
- PHILLIPS, E. W. J.: Movement of the pit membrane in coniferous woods with special reference to preservative treatments, *Forestry*, **7**, 109-120, 1933.
- PRESTON, R. D.: The organization of the cell wall of the conifer tracheid, *Phil. Trans. Roy. Soc.*, B **224**, 131-174, 1934.



- PRIESTLEY, J. H.: The cuticle in angiosperms, *Bot. Rev.*, **9**, 593-616, 1943.
- and L. I. SCOTT: Studies on the physiology of cambial activity, II. The concept of sliding growth, *New Phyt.*, **29**, 96-140, 1930.
- and ———: The formation of a new cell wall at cell division, *Proc. Leeds Phil. and Lit. Soc. Sci. Sec.*, **3**, 532-545, 1939.
- RECORD, S. J.: Cystoliths in wood, *Trop. Woods*, Yale University School of Forestry No. 3, 10-12, 1925.
- : Spiral tracheids and fiber-tracheids, *Trop. Woods*, Yale University School of Forestry, No. 3, 12-16, 1925.
- : "Identification of the Timbers of Temperate North America," New York, 1934.
- RENDLE, B. J.: Gelatinous wood fibres, *Trop. Woods*, Yale University School of Forestry, No. 52, 11-19, 1937.
- S., D. H. (Notice of Book.) Dr. G. Krabbe: "Das gleitende Wachstum bei der Gewebebildung der Gefäßpflanzen," Berlin, 1886. *Ann. Bot.* **2**, 127-136, 1888.
- SCARTH, G. W., R. D. GIBBS, and J. D. SPIER: The structure of the cell-wall and the local distribution of the chemical constituents, *Trans. Roy. Soc. Can.*, **5**, 269-288, 1929.
- SCOTT, F. M.: Cystoliths and plasmodesmata in *Beloperone*, *Ficus*, and *Boehmeria*, *Bot. Gaz.*, **107**, 372-378, 1946.
- SINNOTT, E. W., and R. BLOCH: Changes in intercellular relationships during the growth and differentiation of living plant tissues, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **26**, 625-634, 1939.
- and ———: Development of the fibrous net in the fruit of various races of *Luffa cylindrica*, *Bot. Gaz.*, **105**, 90-99, 1943.
- SKUTCH, A. F.: Anatomy of leaf of Banana, *Musa sapientum* L. var. Hort. Gros Michel, *Bot. Gaz.*, **84**, 337-391, 1927.
- SPONSLER, O. L.: The molecular structure of the cell wall of fibers, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **15**, 525-536, 1928.
- TUPPER-CARY, R. M., and J. H. PRIESTLEY: The composition of the cell wall at the apical meristem of stem and root, *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, B **95**, 109-131, 1923.
- VAN WISSELINGH, C.: Die Zellmembran. In Linsbauer, K.: "Handbuch der Pflanzen-anatomie," III, 1925.
- WAREHAM, R. T.: "Phragmospheres" and the "multinucleate phase" in stem development, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **23**, 591-597, 1936.
- WERGIN, W.: Über den Feinbau der Zellwände höherer Pflanzen, *Biol. Zentralbl.*, **63**, 350-369, 1943.
- WRIGHT, J. G.: The pit-closing membrane in the wood of the lower gymnosperms, *Trans. Roy. Soc. Can.*, Sec. V, Biol. Sci. III, **22**, 63-95, 1928.
- ZIEGENSPECK, K.: Über das Ergusswachstum des Kutins bei *Aloe*-Arten, *Bot. Arch.*, **21**, 1-8, 1928.



## CHAPTER III

### MERISTEMS

Growth in an organism consists fundamentally of increase in the volume of the protoplasmic body. Closely associated with this increase is differentiation of the cells that represent this increase. Differentiation is usually thought of as a phase of growth. In some of the more primitive plants and in some parts or stages of more advanced plants, growth may take place without the partition of the protoplasmic body into cellular units. In cellular plants, however, any considerable amount of growth is usually manifested by new-cell formation and the subsequent enlargement and modification of the derivative cells. In plants with little or no tissue specialization, cell division may occur throughout the plant body or in any part thereof, increasing in this way the mass of the plant body. (In plants with specialized tissues, on the other hand, the formation of new cells is chiefly localized in certain more or less definitely organized regions known as *meristems*.)

The terms *meristem* and *meristematic*, as applied to developing cells and tissues, are somewhat loose. Writers differ greatly in the use of them. Rigid definitions cannot be made and no sharp line can be drawn in description between tissues that constitute meristems and those that are merely in some measure meristematic, or between these and permanent tissues. (Growth and differentiation constitute a continuing process, and correlation of structure with stages of this process is a matter of convenience. In this treatment the term "meristem" is applied to regions of more or less continuous cell and tissue initiation; the adjective "meristematic" is used to indicate resemblance in an important way to a meristem, but not necessarily as consisting of or constituting meristem; that is, it is applied to those cells, tissues, and regions that have characteristics of developing structures—especially cell division—but do not themselves strictly constitute meristems. For example: the apices of stems and the cambium are regions of tissue initiation; developing xylem and phloem are meristematic tissues, for they form some new cells and are immature, but they are not permanent or semipermanent initiating regions.) Again, cells in mature tissue, such as the primary cortex of stems, may divide. Such cells are meristematic, but neither they nor the tissues of which they are a part constitute a meristem. During the



recently renewed interest in meristems, the use of these terms has, unfortunately, been broadened and confused.

✓ The cells of meristem differ from those of mature tissues in that commonly they have abundant cytoplasm with vacuoles small or lacking, large nuclei, thin walls, and no intercellular spaces. But initials of apical meristems and the cambium may have vacuoles of good size, the radial walls of cambium are thick (Fig. 88), and minute spaces may be present among the derivatives of apical initials. )

The term "embryonic" is sometimes used as synonymous with meristematic in describing young tissues. Such use is confusing; the term is best applied to tissues of the embryo only.

**Meristematic and Permanent Cells and Tissues.** ✓ From the standpoint of stage of development, cells and tissues are *meristematic* or *permanent*. Meristematic cells and tissues are those in which new-cell formation is going on and differentiation is incomplete. When such cells and tissues have become fully differentiated and mature, they are said to be *permanent*. ✓ Permanent cells are not necessarily permanent in the usual sense of the word, since they may change both in form and in function after a longer or shorter period of existence as completely differentiated, or mature, cells. For example, epidermal cells or typical cortical cells may form a cork cambium months after those parts of the stem in which they lie have become mature; similarly, photosynthetic cells of the cortex and parenchyma cells of the older phloem may become stone cells. (Cells may change their nature markedly a long time, even years, after becoming mature; they may again become active in division, forming other cells and even meristems.) Any living cell is commonly believed to be potentially meristematic. Cells of elaborate shape and extremely thick walls are possible exceptions. Even though no cells may be strictly permanent, a distinction between meristematic and permanent cells and tissues is of value in an understanding of the origin and development of growing regions.

### CLASSIFICATION OF MERISTEMS

✓ Meristems are classified on several bases: stage of development, structure, position in plant, origin, function, topography. The bases of these classifications are not mutually exclusive, and the definitions cannot be rigid. A discussion of the more important types of meristems follows.

#### MERISTEMS BASED ON STAGE OR METHOD OF DEVELOPMENT

**Promeristem.** — The region of new growth in a plant body where the *foundation* of new organs or parts of organs is initiated constitutes *promeristem*. (The terms "primordial meristem," "Urmeristem," and



“embryonic meristem” have also been applied to this initiating region. Structurally this region consists of the initials and their immediate derivatives, all young cells with diameters much alike; walls thin, with early stages of pits; cytoplasm active, vacuolate or nonvacuolate; nuclei large; and intercellular spaces absent or minute. The promeristem of a given organ or region is of rather limited extent, varying in amount in different plants, in different organs, and under differing growth conditions. It is of course not definitely set off from the somewhat older meristematic tissue into which it merges. (As soon as cells of the promeristem begin to change in size, shape, and character of wall and cytoplasm, setting off the beginnings of tissue differentiation, they are no longer a part of typical promeristem; they have passed beyond that earliest stage. For example, there is at the tip of an organ a meristem of some length; only the youngest part of this, a small apical portion, is promeristem. The remainder of the meristem represents the early stages of the tissues formed by the promeristem. No term exists for this partly developed region in which segregation of tissues is beginning, but cell division continues freely.)

**Mass, Plate, and Rib Meristems.** (On the basis of plane of division, *mass*, *plate*, and *rib meristems* have been distinguished as “growth forms” of meristem. In mass meristem, growth is by three-plane or all-plane division and produces increase in mass; plate meristem is by divisions—chiefly in two planes—so that there is plate-like increase in area; rib meristem, by continuing divisions (anticlinal) in only one plane, produces rows or columns of cells, functioning chiefly in the increase of organs in length. Examples of mass meristem are early stages of many embryos; developing sporangia; the endosperm of many plants; young pith and cortex of some plants. Plate meristem (one-layered) forms epidermis, and (two- to several-layered) is prominent in leaf development where in early stages divisions in the plane of the leaf blade and at right angles to that plane build up great increase in blade area with little increase in thickness. Rib meristem plays a prominent part in the development of young roots and of the pith and cortex of young stems. The term “rib” meristem is in frequent use at present but is unfortunately often applied not to regions of cell initiation but to those of cell differentiation where the cells stand in long rows. In general, these “meristems” are merely parts of meristematic tissue-masses distinguished by planes of cell division. Recently the term *file meristem* has to some extent replaced rib meristem; this is a more accurately descriptive term. It is obvious that these types can be distinguished only when the cells are chiefly of typical parenchyma-cell form; meristems with cells of prosenchymatous form cannot be thus classified. Cells that are beginning to elongate constitute the first stages of *procambium* (Chap. V), of *collenchyma* (Chap. IV), or of strands of fibers.



## MERISTEMS BASED ON HISTORY OF INITIATING CELLS

**Primary and Secondary Meristems.** (On the basis of type of tissue in which origin occurs, meristems are classified as *primary* and *secondary*. *Primary meristems* are those that build up the fundamental (primary) part of the plant and consist in part of promeristem.) (In some uses, promeristems are considered distinct from primary meristems.) (In primary meristems, promeristem is always the earliest stage, and transition stages to mature tissues constitute the remainder of the meristem.) The possession of promeristem continuously from an early embryonic origin is characteristic of primary meristems; no stage wherein all or some of the cells have become permanent, or modified from the meristematic, has entered their history. (The chief primary meristems are the apices of stems and roots and the primordia of leaves and similar appendages.)

Exceptions to the promeristem continuity of primary meristems from early embryonic tissue are found in adventitious buds and roots and in some types of wound tissue. (Many so-called "adventitious buds" arise from buried dormant bud initials, not *de novo* in permanent tissue.) The originating meristems of true adventitious organs arise secondarily in more or less nearly permanent tissues, but they are, because of their structure and behavior, primary meristems. Once established, they may persist indefinitely.

(*Secondary meristems* are set apart from primary meristems in that they always arise in permanent tissues; in their history there is interposed a stage of permanent tissue or at least of partial development toward permanency. They have no typical promeristem, though their initiating layers may to some extent resemble this tissue. *Secondary meristems* are so called because they arise as new meristems in tissue which is not meristematic. The cork cambium is an example of secondary meristem; it is formed from mature cells—cortical, epidermal, or phloem cells or from any mature cells that are not too highly specialized. ✓

(The primary meristems build up the early and, for a time, structurally and functionally complete plant body. The secondary meristems later add to that body, forming supplementary tissues that functionally replace or reinforce the early formed tissues or serve in protection and repair of wounded regions.)

The cambium, one of the most important meristems, does not fall definitely in either group. It arises from apical meristem of which it is a late and specialized stage. (Accessory cambia may be secondary.) The tissues formed by the cambium are secondary, as are all those formed by secondary meristems, whereas other primary meristems form only primary tissues.



↑ The classification of meristems as primary and secondary has sometimes been considered of little value but it is especially helpful in an understanding of the manner in which the complex mature plant body is attained and modified with continuing growth. ↓

### MERISTEMS BASED ON POSITION IN PLANT BODY

↙ On the basis of position in the plant body, meristems are usually classified as *apical*, "*intercalary*," and *lateral* (Fig. 35). Apical meristems

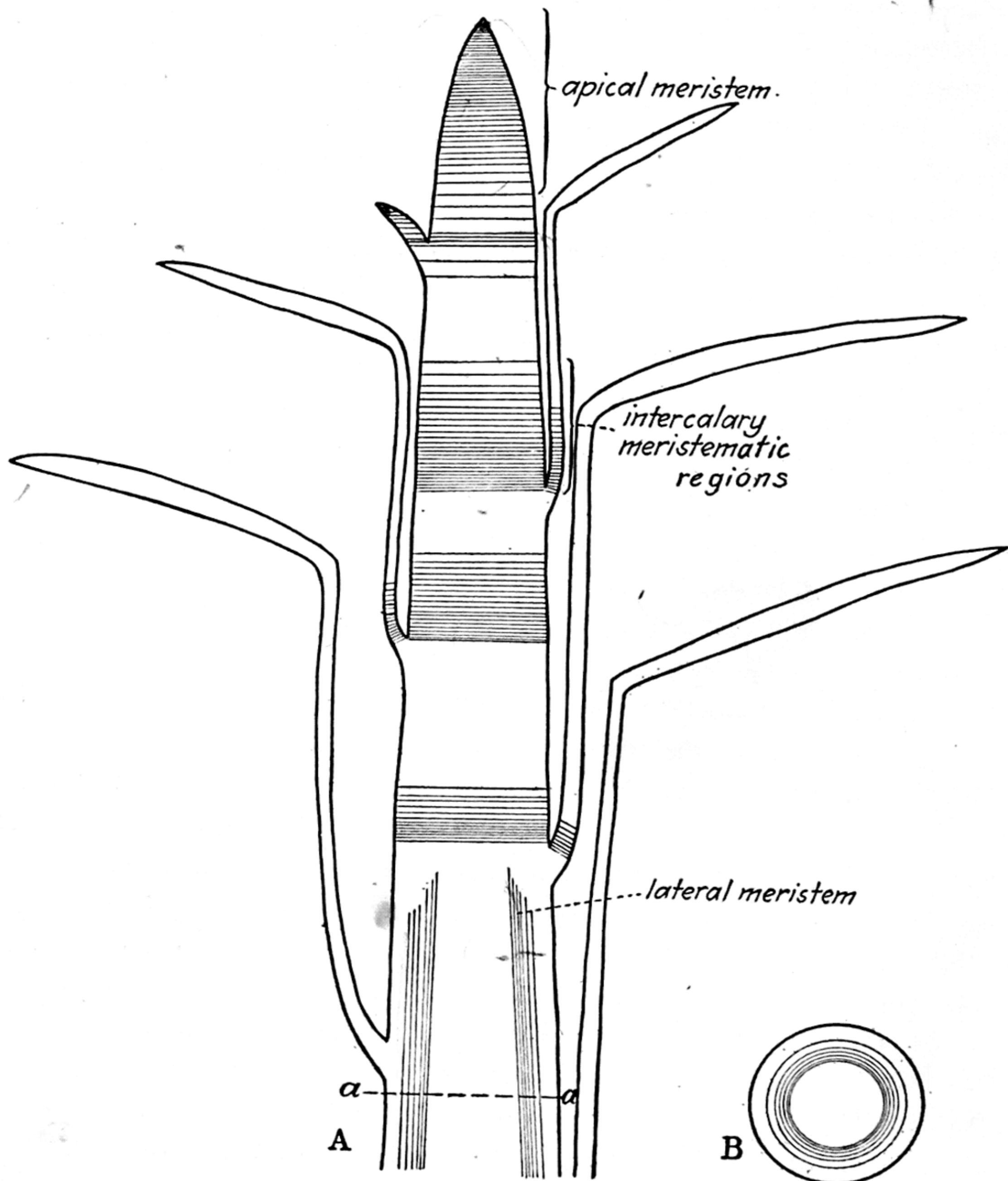


FIG. 35.—Diagram to show position of meristems. The closely lined areas are youngest; the unlined areas are mature or slowly growing. A, longitudinal view; B, cross section of A, at level *a-a*.

are those which lie at the apices of the axis and of the appendages and are commonly called growing points. "Intercalary meristems" are those



which lie between regions of permanent tissue, as, for example, at the base of the leaves of many monocotyledons. Lateral meristems, as the name implies, are situated laterally in an organ. The cambium and the cork cambium are lateral meristems. )

**Apical Meristems.**—Apical meristems, or growing points, occur universally at the tips of the roots and stems, and often of the leaves, of vascular plants. The activity of these meristems brings about increase in the length of these organs, laying down the primary body of the plant. Initiation of growth is by one or more cells situated at the tip of the organ which maintain their individuality and position and are known as *apical initials* or *apical cells*. These cells may be strictly terminal or terminal and subterminal.)

*Apical Cells.*—Among vascular plants, solitary apical cells (except those of leaves) occur in the horsetails, most of the ferns, and a few other pteridophytes. In other vascular plants a group or groups of apical, or apical and subapical cells constitute the initiating body. The behavior of these cells in tissue formation has not been extensively and critically studied until recent years and is even yet only partly understood. Since the initials apparently differ little, if at all, from their recently formed daughter cells and since all of these cells may continue to divide freely, it is most difficult to determine the number and limits of the initials. The number of initials is probably fairly constant for a given organ and a given species, but it is probable that at least in some plants, the number of initials and, to some extent, the form of the group vary from time to time even in the same organ. Meristems are highly plastic. Variations are related to vigor of growth, to seasonal conditions, and to the morphology of the organ developing. It is now known that in seed plants there are many types of apical-meristem differentiation. For each major plant group there is apparently a fairly characteristic plan of development, but this plan may not be consistently followed in detail even within an individual plant (see Tunica-corpus Theory).

Initials, where solitary, appear to persist indefinitely; where there are several or many, they may function for a time and then be replaced by new cells. During periods of rapid growth, additional cells may serve more or less temporarily as initials.

*Types of Apical Cells.*—Solitary apical cells of several types are distinguished by shape and by the number of sides from which new cells are cut off. The two most common are the lenticular, or two-sided cell (not found in vascular plants), and the pyramidal, or three-sided cell (Figs. 37A, 41). The former is strictly a three-sided cell in shape and the latter a four-sided cell, but new cells are formed only from two and three sides respectively, hence terms have been given which apply to the activity



of the cell rather than to its shape. The side from which no new cells are formed lies in the direction of growth. In roots, cells are cut off on this face also (Fig. 41). The size of the apical cell is reduced only temporarily by the formation of daughter cells, and its position is maintained indefinitely.

The behavior of solitary apical cells in segmentation, and of the cells which are cut off by the apical cells, is of importance in the study of the morphology, both vegetative and reproductive, of the bryophytes. In these plants, groups of cells in certain positions and of certain origin always form the same tissues or organs. That this must also be true in general of vascular plants was formerly believed, but such is clearly not the case. The behavior of a given segment of an apical meristem may have little morphological significance in the groups of plants above the bryophytes.

**“Intercalary Meristems.”** (So-called “intercalary meristems” are merely portions of apical meristems that have become separated from the apex during development by layers of more mature or permanent tissues and left behind as the apical meristem moves on in growth (Fig. 35). The more mature layers are the nodal regions and the “intercalary meristems” are therefore internodal.) At early stages the internode is uniformly or nearly uniformly meristematic; later, some part of it matures more rapidly than the rest, and a definite sequence in development within the internode is set up and maintained. | The region of youngest cells is in most plants at the base of the internode, but it may be in the middle or at the top. Where the youngest region is basal, the order of maturing in the tissues of the internode is of course acropetal; where it is at the top, the order is basipetal; and where it is median, the sequence is both upward and downward.

(It has been generally believed that “intercalary meristems” are separated from the mother meristem at so early a stage that they retain a layer of the promeristem of the apical region and that this promeristem continues, after its segregation, to function as a promeristem, initiating complete new segments of the organ. | But it has been shown that this is not true in some grasses, and it is perhaps not so in any plants. Although these regions consist partly of promeristem cells, vascular strands with protoxylem and protophloem cells in various stages of maturation run through them. With such structure they are not typical meristems but meristematic regions and should be so called.

√ The best known intercalary meristematic regions are those of the stems of grasses and other monocots and of horsetails, where they are basal, and those of some mints, where they lie just below the node. In some peduncles, such as those of *Taraxacum* and *Plantago*, they are said to occur at the top. √ Leaves of many monocotyledons (grasses, *Iris*) and



some other plants, such as *Pinus*, have basal meristematic regions. Intercalary meristematic regions ultimately disappear; they become wholly transformed into permanent tissues.

**Lateral Meristems.**—(Lateral meristems are composed of initials that divide chiefly in one plane (periclinally) and increase the diameter of an organ. They add to existing tissues or build new tissues. The cambium and the cork cambium are meristems of this type. The former has been called “the lateral meristem,” but phellogen layers also belong here. The briefly functioning “marginal meristems” of some leaves have been called lateral but fall in none of the above groups.)

#### MERISTEMS BASED ON FUNCTION

(In physiological anatomy a classification of meristems based chiefly on functional significance is used. The outermost layer of the young growing region, from which the epidermis develops, is called the *protoderm*; the elongating, tapering cells of this region, the *procambium*; the remainder of the meristematic tissue, *fundamental*, or *ground-tissue* meristem. In this usage the term “*procambium*” is not synonymous with *procambium* (Chap. V) as this term is used morphologically to indicate early stages of vascular tissue; the physiological term covers not only cells from which vascular tissues develop but others also.)

#### THEORIES OF STRUCTURAL DEVELOPMENT AND DIFFERENTIATION

(The progress of differentiation in meristems brings about in cellular organization a structural segregation, or zonation, with regions distinguishable by (a) the number and position of the initiating cells, (b) the planes of division and consequent arrangement of cells, (c) the size, shape, and content of the cells, and (d) the rate of maturation of the cells. Several theories dealing with the methods of origin of the patterns formed by this zonation and their histological and morphological significance have been proposed.)

**The Apical Cell Theory.**—Solitary apical cells occur in many of the algae, in the bryophytes, and, among vascular plants, in the Psilotaceae, the horsetails, most of the ferns, and some species of *Selaginella*. Early studies of the apical meristems of bryophytes and of the pteridophytes with a single apical cell demonstrated morphological significance in the segmentation of the apex. It was believed that the same conditions, although difficult to demonstrate in seed plants, held for all higher plants, and the *apical cell theory* was proposed as the basis for an understanding of the method of growth and morphology in all groups. But controversy arose over the interpretation of the complex apices of gymnosperms, and it became evident that the theory was not applicable to seed plants.



**The Histogen Theory.**—As a basis for the interpretation of the growing points of seed plants, the *histogen theory* replaced the older theory. Under this theory the more or less distinct major regions of the stem and

root apex were called *histogens*, that is, tissue builders, in the sense of builders of specific parts of an organ. The histogens were the *plerome*, a central core; the *dermatogen*, a uniseriate, external layer; the *periblem*,<sup>1</sup> the region between the plerome and the dermatogen (Fig. 36). The histogens, or their individual layers, were believed developed by separate initials. This theory, in contrast to the apical cell theory, placed the origin of axis apices in a group of initials. It differed from the earlier theory also in morphological interpretations or implications—the plerome formed the pith and primary vascular tissues; the dermatogen, the epidermis; the periblem, the cortex.

The viewpoint and the terminology of the histogen theory have long dominated anatomical interpretation of tissues, regions, and even organs in vascular plants. But the distinction of these histogens in an apex cannot be made in some plants, and in others the regions have no morphological significance. The plerome may form only the pith or the entire central cylinder and part of the cortex; the periblem may form the cortex and the outer stelar tissues or part of the cortex. Even in homologous axes on the same plant the histogens may form different parts.

The terms clearly have no morphological value, and, because their prominence has rested largely on such value, they are becoming less used. They are found occasionally in his-

tological descriptions of stems, commonly in those of roots, but serve chiefly to indicate regions in a rather loose or topographical sense.

<sup>1</sup> These terms were originally applied to the *zones* of meristematic tissue in early stages of development from initials but they have been occasionally applied to the initials only.

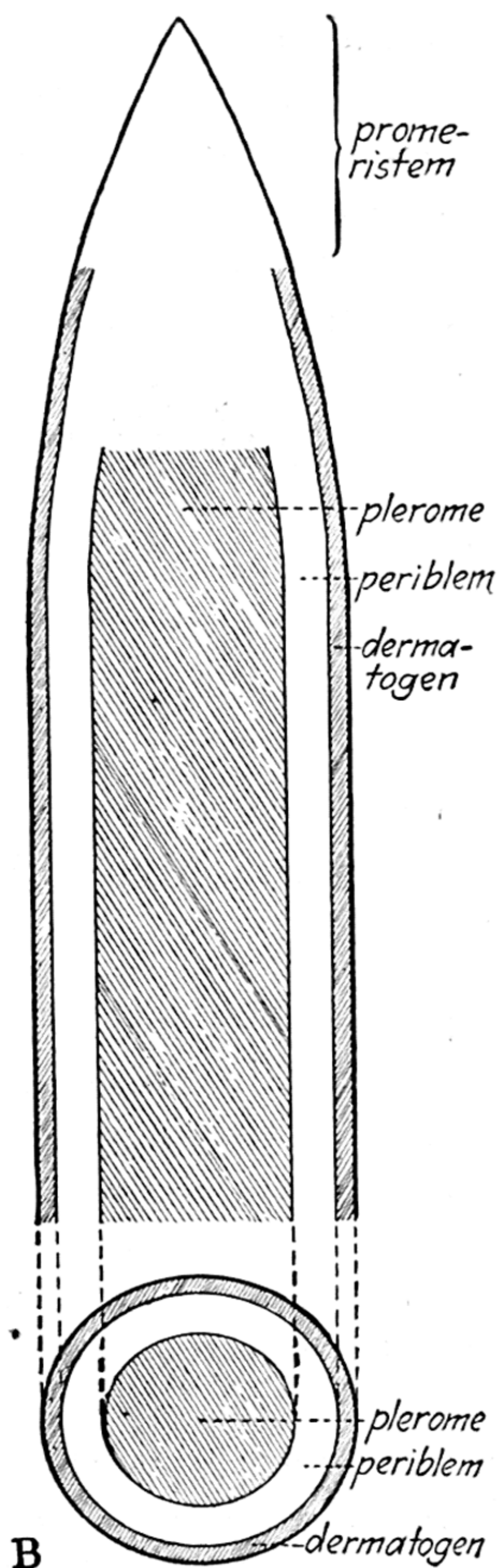


FIG. 36.—Diagram of axis tip to show "histogen" regions. A, longitudinal section; B, transverse section.



**The Tunica-corpus Theory.**—Interest in the development of seed-plant axes reawakened about twenty years ago with the formulation of the *tunica-corpus theory* and increasing attention has been given to the ontogeny of the stem tips of vascular plants. According to the tunica-corpus theory (which has been applied only to the leafy stem, or shoot) different rates and method of growth in the apex set apart two regions of unlike structure and appearance—a central core, the *corpus*, and an outer enveloping layer, around and above the corpus, the *tunica*. In the corpus the cells are large, with arrangement and planes of cell division irregular, and increase is in volume; in the tunica the cells are usually smaller than

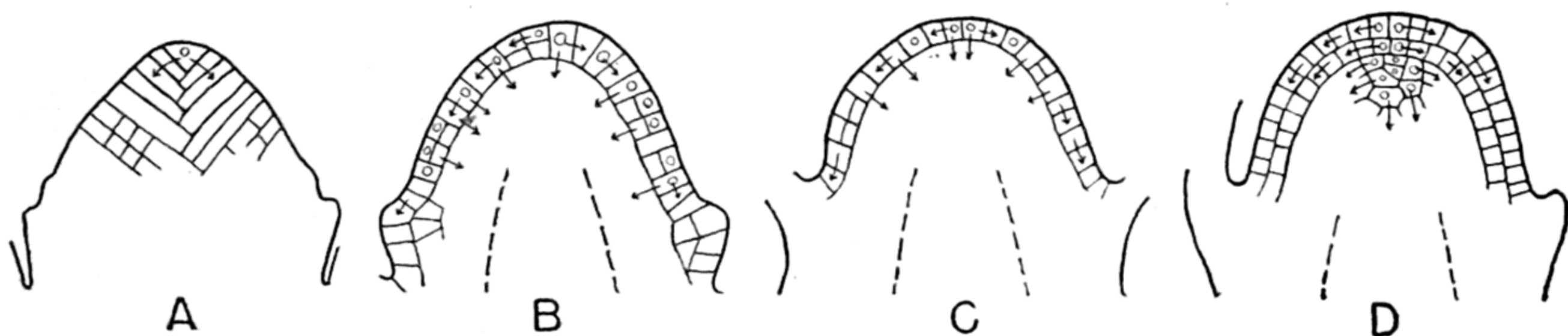


FIG. 37.—Diagrams to show position and planes of division of stem-apex initials. A, initial solitary, with oblique anticlinal divisions only; B, initials many, superficial, with their divisions and those of the dermatogen both anticlinal and periclinal; C, initials several, superficial, with their divisions both anticlinal and periclinal and those of the dermatogen largely anticlinal; D, initials in three tiers, the two outer, with divisions anticlinal only, forming a two-layered tunica and the innermost, with divisions in all planes, forming a corpus. (Initials indicated by outlined nuclei.)

those of the corpus and lie in layers or sheets, with divisions strictly, or chiefly, anticlinal, and growth is primarily in area. These regions vary greatly in the distinctness of their limits and in their form and relative size; their boundaries are often not clear-cut; the corpus may be massive or slender; the tunica, many-, few-, or one-layered. The important elements in such an elaboration of regional development are the position and number of initials and the planes of division in these cells and their derivatives.

The number of initials is few to several or many. Rarely, in small, very slender apices, such as those of grass seedlings, there may be only one or two in the tunica and about two in the corpus. The determination of initials as self-maintaining and persistent cells is often impossible because they differ little or not at all from their recently formed daughter cells. Certainly it is unlikely that the initials remain constant in number, form, and sequence of division.

Where all the initials are on the surface, their divisions are both anticlinal and periclinal, and no clearly defined tunica and corpus are formed (Figs. 37A,B,C, 38A,B, 39A,B). Where the initials are in a cluster or mound, the outer ones, if their divisions are strictly anticlinal, form



a definite tunica, and the inner ones, with divisions in more than one plane, form a corpus (Figs. 37D, 38D, 39C, D). Under these conditions tunica and corpus have completely independent origins and are fairly distinct. Between these extremes lie many intermediate conditions in which distinction of tunica and corpus is weak or doubtful.

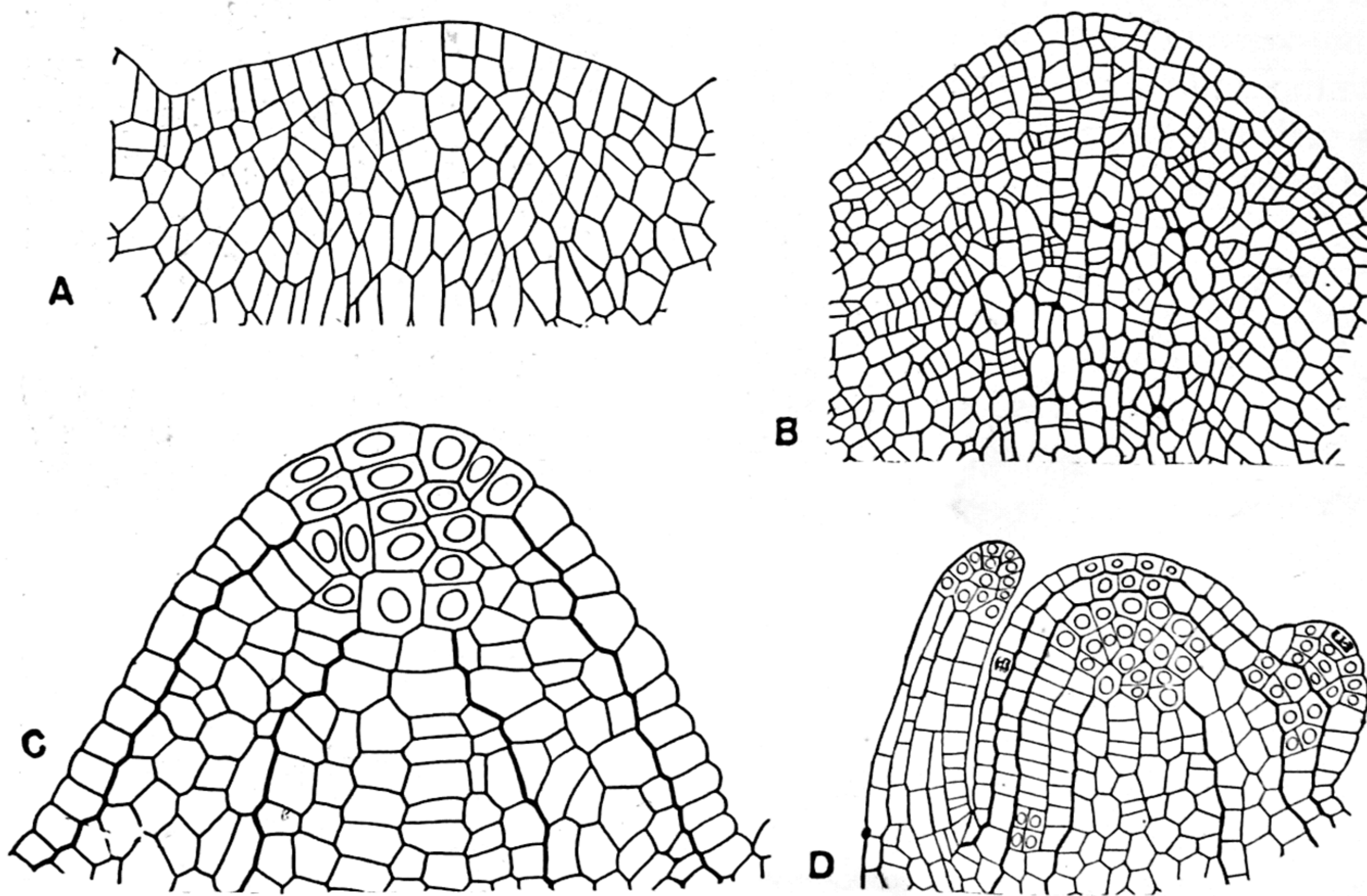


FIG. 38.—Structure of stem apices as seen in longitudinal section. A, *Lycopodium Selago*, apex built up by superficial initials which divide both anticlinally and periclinally. B, *Zamia umbrosa*, apex built up by central group of superficial initials which divide both anticlinally and periclinally. C, *Sequoia sempervirens*, apical initials divide both anticlinally and periclinally; subapical initials divide in all planes (initials indicated by outlined nuclei). D, *Sinocalamus Beecheyana*, tunica two-layered, its initials in two layers, with divisions, with rare exceptions, anticlinal; initials of corpus many, in a mass below tunica initials, their divisions in all planes (initials of apex and of leaf apices and bud indicated by outlined nuclei). The heavier lines in C and D indicate not thicker cell walls but separate zones, limiting in C, a surface layer, the dermatogen, and a central core that forms the pith; in D, the two tunica layers, and the central part of the corpus, formed by periclinal divisions of the lowest corpus initials. (A, after Haertel; B, after Johnson; C, after Cross; D, after Hsü, modified.)

Below the initials or below the direct derivatives of these cells (the two groups constituting promeristem), elaboration of cells in size, form, and arrangement initiates tissue specialization and the building of the framework of the primary body (Chap. V). The various regions, or stages, merge on their margins and overlap longitudinally. Major interruptions in the progressively more advanced stages back from the apex are brought in by the appearance of nodal areas and lateral structures.



*Types of Stem Apices.*—In vascular plants, zonation in stem-apex differentiation follows more or less definite patterns that appear to be characteristic of the major groups. These patterns show increasing com-

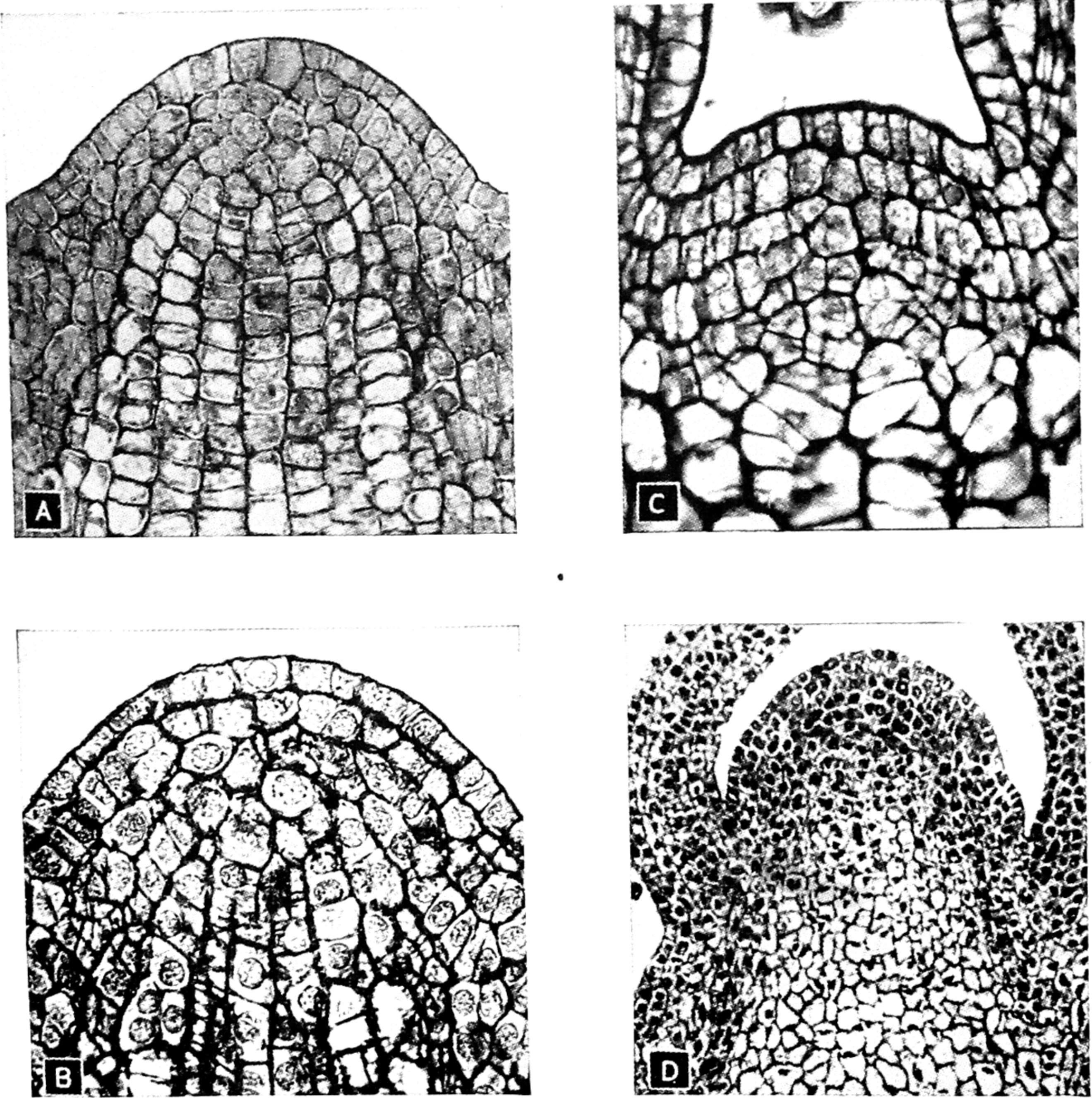


FIG. 39.—Structure of stem apices as seen in longitudinal section. *A*, *Abies concolor*, initials of the surface layer divide both anticleinally and pericleinally, subapical initials in all planes; *B*, *Sequoia sempervirens*, initials of the surface layer divide chiefly anticleinally, subapical initials divide in all planes; *C*, *Vinca rosea*, tunica of three layers and corpus present, initials of tunica dividing only anticleinally, those of the corpus dividing in all planes; *D*, *Phlox Drummondii*, floral apex. (*A*, after Korody; *B*, after Cross; *C*, after Cross and Johnson; *D*, after Miller and Wetmore.)

plexity from the lower to the higher groups and seem to represent a series in specialization from simplicity to complexity. In lower groups the initials form a uniseriate surface layer, and there is no evidence of differentiation into tunica and corpus; in the highest groups the initials form a



two-storied cluster of which the superficial members build a tunica—which, in its greatest specialization, is probably uniseriate—and the inner members form the corpus. The majority of seed plants are intermediate in apex structure between these types.

*The Primitive Type of Stem Apex.*—Among the pteridophytes, *Lycopodium*, *Isoetes*, and some species of *Selaginella*, and among primitive gymnosperms, the cycads, have simple apices with surface initials and no distinction of tunica and corpus.

*Lycopodium* (Fig. 38A) serves as an example of this primitive type. The initiating layer is a weakly defined, uniseriate surface area which divides freely both anticlinally and periclinally. No definable initials can be distinguished; all the cells of the layer are morphologically alike. The anticlinal divisions increase the area of the surface layer; the periclinal divisions form an inner core.

*The Stem Apex with Weak Tunica-corpus Segregation.*—Beginnings in distinction of tunica and corpus are perhaps present in some of the lower conifers. In the Pinaceae (*Abies*, *Pinus*), the initials form a terminal uniseriate group. From these, by both periclinal and anticlinal divisions, a central core and an enveloping uniseriate layer are formed (Figs. 37C, 39A). The latter suggests a tunica in appearance, but it has frequent periclinal divisions even on the flanks of the apex, and there is no clear line of separation between the tissues formed by the two regions.

Some higher conifers have a somewhat more specialized apex (Figs. 38C, 39B). As in the Pinaceae, the initials are a small group of surface cells in one tier, with divisions both anticlinal and periclinal. These divisions form, respectively, a dermatogen-like layer and a central mass, but in the outer layer the periclinal divisions are rare or absent, except close to the apex. The part played by the outer layer in building the body of the stem is restricted to the cells at the very apex. The outer layer early becomes tunica-like in its restriction of planes of division.

Of the conifer genera thus far critically studied, only *Cryptomeria* and *Taxodium* (apices of permanent shoots) have a “dermatogen” in which there are no, or almost no, periclinal divisions. The apices of conifers have the structural appearance of tunica-corpus segregation but in those so far studied there is only one tier of initials and therefore no independent meristematic regions.

The conifers show much variety in apex structure. Even within a species (*Taxodium distichum*, *Sequoia sempervirens*) there are marked differences, correlated in part with morphology of the stem concerned, vigor of growth, and other conditions.

*The Stem Apex with Definite Tunica and Corpus.*—In the angiosperms the segregation of apical-meristem zones is usually more definite than in



lower groups; there are two sets of initials, one above the other, which give rise to tunica and corpus that are in large measure or wholly independent (Figs. 37D, 38D, 39C). The tunica has no or only rare periclinal divisions and ranges in thickness from several layers to one, with two or three layers probably most frequent. The larger numbers of tunica layers occur more frequently in the dicotyledons. A single-layered tunica such as that of grasses (*Avena*, *Triticum*) probably represents the most specialized condition, but even in this, occasional periclinal divisions may occur, as in *Zea*. The corpus varies from a large complex type to a slender, simple type. The number of layers in the tunica may vary even in an individual plant. The limits of the two groups of initials and of the tunica and corpus is often definite but may be difficult or impossible to determine and in some genera (Cactaceae) the apex shows no distinction of tunica and corpus, resembling the apex of the primitive gymnosperms. *Sinocalamus Beecheyana* (a bamboo) (Fig. 38D) and *Vinca rosea* (Fig. 39C) serve as examples. In the former the tunica is two-layered (sometimes one- or three-layered); in the latter it is four-layered.

*Discussion, Tunica-corporis Theory.*—The tunica-corporis theory has served well in the establishment of an understanding of the complex, diverse, and varying meristematic patterns of the stem tips of seed plants. Providing a basis and a method, it has stimulated intensive study, and detailed information has been obtained for a considerable number of plants. The position, number, and behavior of the initiating cells in seed-plant stems is now in some measure known, and early stages in the development of the primary body of the shoot are much better understood. Although, as with the histogens of the histogen theory, a distinction of tunica and corpus has little or no morphological significance, it is of topographical value in studies of detailed development. Caution is necessary lest morphological interpretations accompany the use of the theory: the boundaries of tunica and corpus are often obscure; where the limits are fairly distinct, the two regions may be inconstant in structure and function, varying with seasonal conditions, vigor of growth, age of plant, position on plant, and morphology of the stem tip concerned. For example, in some plants the innermost tunica layer of a primary branch becomes an outermost part of the corpus on secondary branches. The number of tunica layers varies even in apices of the same type at the same time; it is commonly less on the less vigorous and the lateral branches than on strong, leading stems. The differences found, even on the same plant, in the thickness and distinctness of the tunica at different times and under different morphological conditions—as in main and lateral branches, deciduous and persistent twigs, indeterminate vegetative tips and the determinate apices of flowers and thorns—are related directly to growth



status and to the morphological nature of the developing organ. A flexible basis is necessary for all descriptions of meristems. Tunica and corpus should be recognized as dynamic and fluid, not functionally or morphologically distinct or constant regions.

The lateral organs of the stem—leaves, branches, and floral organs—arise near the apex and studies of tunica and corpus have added greatly to a knowledge of the origin and early development of these organs.

✓ **The Floral Apex.**—The structure of the floral apex (Fig. 39D) differs in no fundamental way from that of the vegetative stem. Such differences as can be distinguished are those inherent in the determinate nature of the axis, the telescoping of internodes, and the crowding of appendages.

It has been claimed that the floral apex differs markedly from the vegetative apex; that apical initials build up the “central core” in the vegetative axis, but that both apical and flanking tissues build up the floral apex; that the tunica of the floral apex has no definable initiating zone and that periclinal divisions occur at any depth within it. Such differences may occur, varying greatly in degree with the form and structure of the flower concerned, but they are not morphological differences. They are associated directly with the function of an apex that is developing into a flower—elongation ceases; the apical initials of the earlier vegetative growth lose their identity, and growth activity is restricted to the peripheral region where many appendages are arising at compacted nodal levels; the numerous periclinal divisions at all depths are associated with the broadening of the receptacle and with the origin of the floral appendages which cover it. Distinction of outer and inner zones varies in the floral apex as it does in the vegetative apex. The number of layers in the tunica of the floral apex is more in some plants, less in others, than in the vegetative apex. In ontogeny a floral apex develops by the gradual or abrupt transformation of a vegetative apex.

✓ **The Root Apex.**—The apical meristematic region of the root, lacking developing appendages and segregation into nodal and internodal regions, is simpler in gross structure than that of the stem but is complicated at the tip by the *root cap* and different methods of formation of this structure. The root cap is a terminal portion of the root tip, more or less definitely set off from the tissues beneath, covering and protecting the initiating apex of the root proper. It is formed by the same initials as those that build the root proper in all types of root tip except those of the monocotyledons where it has independent origin. Its formation is necessarily discussed with that of the root apex; its structure and occurrence are considered in Chap. X.

The apical meristem is short compared with that of the stem; specialization into zones is concentrated, with the early stages lying within the



terminal millimeter beneath the cap (Figs. 41, 42). Growth proceeds in cap and root proper in opposite directions, with sequence in development toward the tip in the cap and away from the tip in the root itself. In number, the initials range from one to many (Fig. 40). Where the initials are more than one, they are arranged in one to four fairly distinct, uniseriate groups (Fig. 40B,C,D). In each group there are one to several initials. Since the initials are the central members of uniseriate layers and can be distinguished from their recent derivatives only by

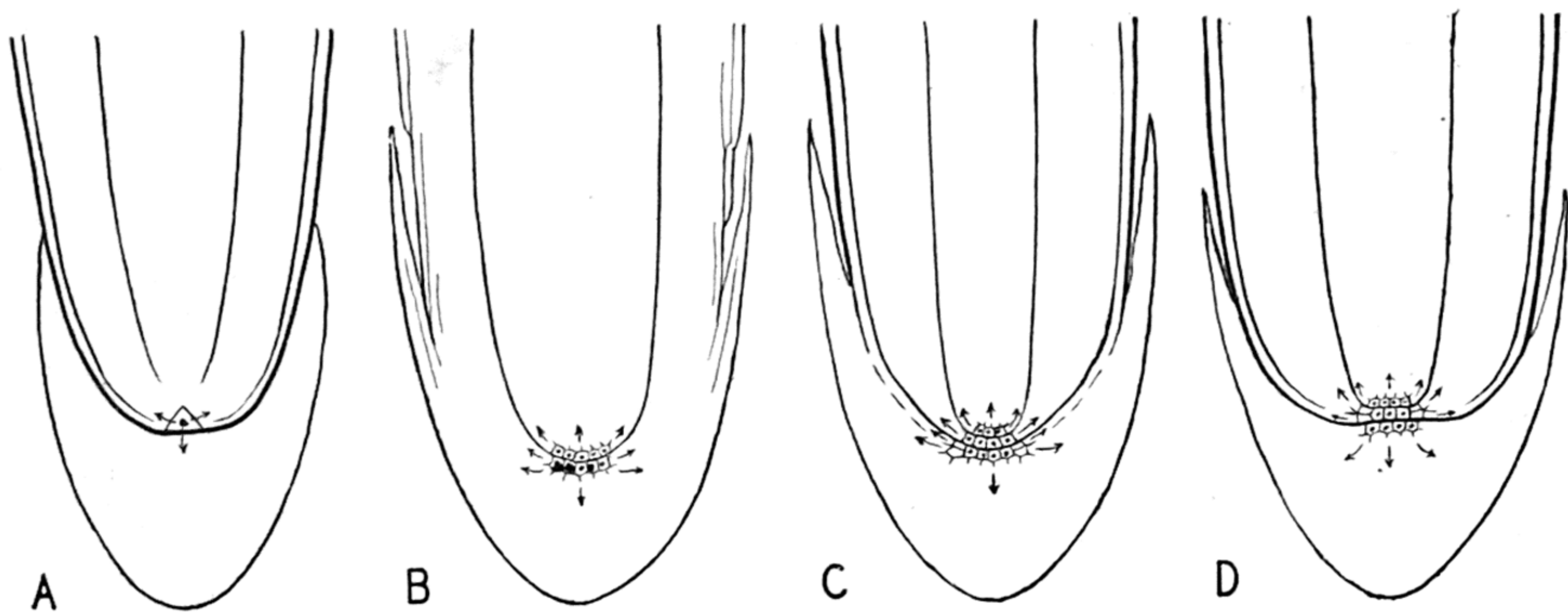


FIG. 40.—Diagrams of root-apex types. A, initial solitary, cap distinct, but not independent in origin; B, initials in two groups, cap not structurally distinct, formed by same initials as periblem and dermatogen; C, initials in three groups, cap not distinct, formed by same initials as dermatogen; D, initials in three groups, cap distinct in structure and independent in origin.

position and restriction in division to anticlinal planes, the number can often be determined only approximately. Furthermore, the number of initials in a group seems to vary with diameter and rapidity of growth of the root. In slender roots it may be reduced to one—as in some grasses—but the zonation remains clear. Lines of zonal segregation are most obscure in root tips of large diameter. Where there is more than one group, the groups lie adjacent to one another on the longitudinal axis of the root (Fig. 40).

Each of these groups quickly develops one or more growth zones which are usually more clearly marked than are similar zones in the stem apex (Figs. 41, 42). In many plants these zones appear to represent “the histogens,” and interpretations of the root apex have long continued under the histogen theory. Although the terms dermatogen, periblem, and plerome are no longer in general use in descriptions of stem ontogeny, they have been continued for convenience to indicate general zones in studies of root development. A fourth histogen, the *calyptragen*, is added where the cap has an independent origin.

In published descriptions there is much confusion as to method of





origin of the zones and no agreement as to the number of types of development. The distinctness of the zones varies, and forms intermediate between the types have been described. There seem, however, to be basic patterns for the major plant groups. This pattern is determined by the number of initials, the number of groups of these initials, the zones formed by each group, the morphological nature of the cap, and the degree of independence of the cap.

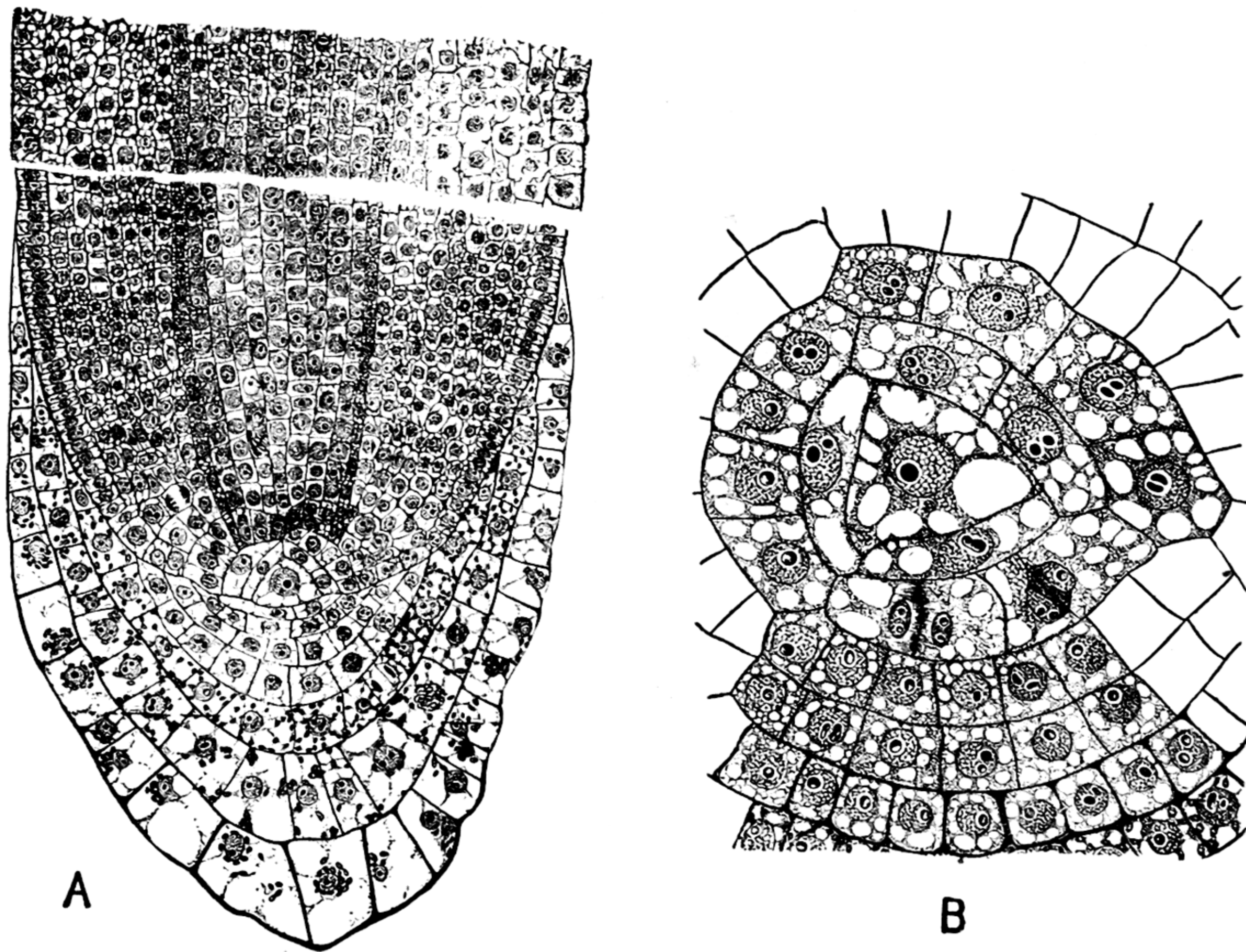


FIG. 41.—Root tip of *Pteris*. A, median longitudinal section, showing apical cell with four “cutting faces” (one not in plane of section), the development of tissues from this cell, and plethome, periblem, and dermatogen differentiated; B, transverse section through apical cell, showing the three faces from which cells are cut off to form the root proper. (After Hof.)

The vascular cryptogams that have a solitary apical cell in the stem—the horsetails, most of the ferns, some species of *Selaginella*—have a similar solitary apical cell in the root (Figs. 40A, 41). This one cell forms the entire root and the cap which is usually sharply distinct structurally. The origin of the cap from the large apical cell is clear.

In many gymnosperms there are two groups of initials (Fig. 40B). The inner forms the plethome; the outer forms the periblem and the cap. No line can be drawn between these two regions; the cap appears as a distal proliferation of the periblem. A dermatogen is not set off



at the very apex, as in all other groups, but is formed from layers of the periblem a little way back from the apex where the base of the cap is separated from the periblem.

In the angiosperms there are three, rarely four, groups of initials. In the dicotyledons the distal group forms the cap and the dermatogen; the median group, the periblem; the innermost, the plerome (Fig. 40C).

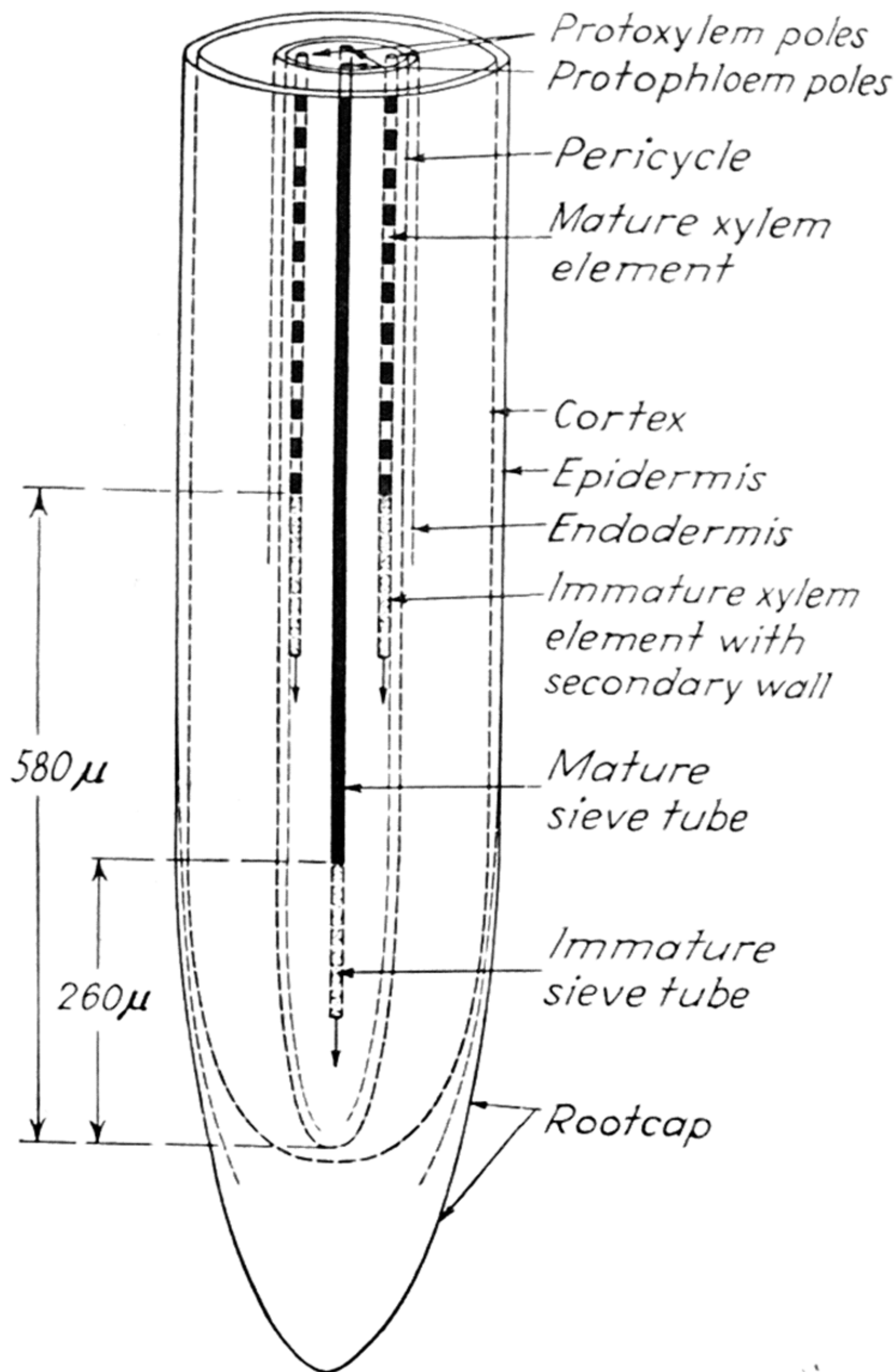


FIG. 42.—Diagram of structure of a diarch tobacco root tip, showing position of stages of development of first vascular elements. (After Esau.)

The outstanding characteristic of root-apex development in this group is the common origin of cap and dermatogen. These two protective parts of the root develop from the same initials and the cap can be looked upon morphologically as a specialized development of the epidermis.

The monocotyledons, like the dicotyledons, have three groups of initials which form four zones, but the outermost, independently, forms the cap, and that next beneath, the dermatogen and periblem. The outstanding characteristic of this type is the independence of the cap in



origin and structure. Further, the two zones that are formed by one group of initials (dermatogen and periblem) are different from those (cap and dermatogen) similarly formed in the dicotyledons. Although the group of initials from which the dermatogen and periblem arise is usually uniseriate (Fig. 40D), it apparently in some genera may be two or even several layers thick.

Rarely all the zones arise from separate groups of initials. Only a few aquatic monocotyledons (*Pistia*, *Hydrocharis*) are known to have this four-group condition.

Variations of the types have been described as transitional and there has been much disagreement as to the number of types and the validity of the bases used in determination of them. The root apex is in need of broad and critical comparative study such as that given the shoot apex under the tunica-corpus theory.

*Relation of Types of Root-tip Development.*—Evolutionary progress has perhaps been from a single center of growth to a group of three or four centers, with progressive increase in independence of the zones. The cap seems to have had different methods of origin. In the lower groups it has a common origin with all other parts of the root. In the gymnosperms it is a specialized, distally developed part of the periblem. The dermatogen, under this condition, is delayed in development and arises by specialization of periblem layers below the surface. In the dicotyledons the cap appears to be a specialized development of the epidermis. In the monocotyledons, the cap has attained independence in origin.

#### References

- ARTSCHWAGER, E.: Anatomy of the vegetative organs of the sugar cane, *Jour. Agr. Res.*, **30**, 197-221, 1925.
- BALL, E.: The development of the shoot apex and of the primary thickening meristem in *Phoenix canariensis* Chaub., with comparisons to *Washingtonia filifera* Wats. and *Trachycarpus excelsa* Wendl, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **28**, 820-832, 1941.
- BOKE, N. H.: Zonation in the shoot apices of *Trichocereus spachianus* and *Opuntia cylindrica*, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **38**, 656-664, 1941.
- BOND, T. E. T.: Studies in vegetative growth and anatomy of the tea plant (*Camellia thea* Link) with special reference to the phloem, II. Further analysis of the flushing behaviour, *Ann. Bot.*, **9**, 183-216, 1945.
- BROOKS, R. M.: Comparative histogenesis of vegetative and floral apices in *Amygdalus communis* with special reference to the carpel, *Hilgardia*, **13**, 249-299, 1940.
- BRUMFIELD, R.: Cell lineage studies in root meristems by means of chromosome rearrangements induced by X-rays, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **30**, 101-110, 1943.
- CROSS, G. L.: The structure and development of the apical meristem in the shoots of *Taxodium distichum*, *Bull. Torrey Bot. Club*, **66**, 431-452, 1939.
- : The shoot apices of *Athrotaxis* and *Taiwania*, *Bull. Torrey Bot. Club*, **70**, 335-348, 1943.
- : A comparison of the shoot apices of the Sequoias, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **30**, 130-142, 1943.



- ENGARD, C. J.: Organogenesis in *Rubus*, *Univ. Hawaii Res. Publ.*, **21**, 1-234, 1944.
- ESAU, K.: Ontogeny in the vascular bundle in *Zea mays*, *Hilgardia*, **15**, 327-356, 1943.
- : Phloem anatomy of tobacco affected with curly top and mosaic, *Hilgardia*, **13**, 437-490, 1941.
- FLAHAULT, C.: Recherches sur l'accroissement de la racine chez les phanérogams, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 6 sér., **6**, 1-168, 1878.
- FOSTER, A. S.: Structure and growth of the shoot apex in *Ginkgo biloba*, *Bull. Torrey Bot. Club*, **65**, 531-556, 1938.
- : Problems of structure, growth and evolution in the shoot apex of seed plants, *Bot. Rev.*, **5**, 454-470, 1939.
- : Further studies on zonal structure and growth of the shoot apex of *Cycas revoluta* Thunb., *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **27**, 487-501, 1940.
- : Comparative studies on the structure of the shoot apex in seed plants, *Bull. Torrey Bot. Club*, **68**, 339-350, 1941.
- GRÉGOIRE, V.: La morphogénèse et l'autonomie morphologique de l'appareil floral. I. Le carpelle, *La Cellule*, **47**, 287-452, 1938.
- HÄRTEL, K.: Studien an Vegetationspunkt einheimischer Lycopodien, *Beitr. Biol. Pflanzen*, **25**, 126-168, 1938.
- HELM, J.: Das Erstärkungswachstum der Palmen und einiger anderer Monokotylen zugleich ein Beitrag zur Frage des Erstärkungswachstums der Monokotylen überhaupt, *Planta*, **26**, 319-364, 1936.
- Hsü, J.: Structure and growth of the shoot apex of *Sinocalamus Beecheyana* McClure, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **31**, 404-411, 1944.
- JANCZEWSKI, E. de: Recherches sur l'accroissement terminal des racines dans les phanérogames, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 5 sér., **20**, 162-201, 1874.
- JOHANSEN, D. A.: A proposed new botanical term, *Chron. Bot.*, **6**, 440, 1941.
- JOHNSON, M. A.: Structure of the shoot apex in *Zamia*, *Bot. Gaz.*, **101**, 189-203, 1939.
- : Zonal structure of the shoot apex in *Encephalartos*, *Bowenia*, and *Macrozamia*, *Bot. Gaz.*, **106**, 26-33, 1944.
- KEMP, M.: Morphological and ontogenetic studies on *Torreya californica* Torr. I. The vegetative apex of the megasporangiate tree, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **30**, 504-517, 1943.
- KLEIM, F.: Vegetationspunkt und Blattanlage bei *Avena sativa*, *Beitr. Biol. Pflanzen*, **24**, 281-310, 1937.
- KOCH, L.: Ueber Bau und Wachstum der Sprossspitze der Phanerogamen, I Die Gymnospermen, *Jahrb. Wiss. Bot.*, **22**, 491-680, 1891.
- KORODY, E.: Studien an Spross-Vegetationspunkt von *Abies concolor*, *Picea excelsa* und *Pinus montana*, *Beitr. Biol. Pflanzen*, **25**, 23-59, 1938.
- MILLER, H. A., and R. H. WETMORE: Studies in the developmental anatomy of *Phlox Drummondii* Hook., III. The apices of the mature plant, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **33**, 1-10, 1946.
- NEEFF, F.: Über Zellumlagerung. Ein Beitrag zur experimentellen Anatomie, *Zeitschr. Bot.*, **6**, 465-547, 1914.
- NEWMAN, I. V.: Studies in the Australian Acacias. VI. The meristematic activity of the floral apex of *Acacia longifolia* and *A. suaveolens* as a histogenetic study of the ontogeny of the carpel, *Proc. Linn. Soc. N.S.W.*, **61**, 56-88, 1936.
- REEVE, R. M.: Comparative ontogeny of the inflorescence and the axillary vegetative shoot in *Garrya elliptica*, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **30**, 608-619, 1943.
- RÜDIGER, W.: Die Sprossvegetationspunkte einiger Monokotylen, *Beitr. Biol. Pflanzen*, **26**, 401-443, 1939.



- SATINA, S., A. F. BLAKESLEE, and A. G. AVERY: Demonstration of the three germ layers in the shoot apex of *Datura* by means of induced polyploidy in periclinal chimaeras, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **27**, 895–905, 1940.
- SCHMALFUSS, K.: Untersuchungen über die interkalare Wachstumszone an Glumifloren und dikotylen Blütenschaften, *Flora*, **124**, 333–366, 1930.
- SCHMIDT, A.: Histologische Studien an phanerogamen Vegetationspunkten. *Bot. Arch.*, **8**, 345–404, 1924.
- SCHÜEPP, O.: Meristeme, In Linsbauer, K.: “Handbuch der Pflanzenanatomie,” IV, Berlin, 1926.
- SHARMAN, B. C.: Developmental anatomy of the shoot of *Zea mays* L., *Ann. Bot. n.s.*, **6**, 245–282, 1942.
- SINNOTT, E. W.: Structural problems at the meristem, *Bot. Gaz.*, **99**, 803–813, 1938.
- SOUÈGES, R.: “La Différentiation,” III, La différenciation organique, Paris, 1936.
- STERLING, C.: Growth and vascular development in the shoot apex of *Sequoia sempervirens* (Lamb.) Endl., I. Structure and growth of the shoot apex, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **32**, 118–126, 1945.
- STRASBURGER, E.: “Die Coniferen und die Gnetaceen, eine morphologische Studie,” Jena, 1872.
- STRUCKMEYER, B. E.: Structure of stems in relation to differentiation and abortion of blossom buds, *Bot. Gaz.*, **103**, 182–191, 1941.
- TIEGS, E.: Beiträge zur Kenntnis der Entstehung und des Wachstums der Wurzelhauben einiger Leguminösen, *Jahr. Wiss. Bot.*, **52**, 622–646, 1913.
- TREUB, M.: “Le Méristèm Primitif de la Racine dans les Monocotylédones.” Leiden, 1876.
- VON GUTTENBERG, H.: Der primäre Bau der Angiospermenwurzeln, In Linsbauer K.: “Handbuch der Pflanzenanatomie,” VIII, Berlin, 1940.
- : Der primäre Bau der Gymnospermenwurzeln. In Linsbauer, K.: “Handbuch der Pflanzenanatomie,” VIII, Berlin, 1941.
- WAGNER, N.: Über die Entwicklungsmechanik der Wurzelhaube und des Wurzelrippenmeristems, *Planta*, **30**, 21–66, 1939.
- WARDLAW, C. W.: The shoot apex in pteridophytes, *Biol. Rev. Cambridge Phil. Soc.*, **20**, 100–114, 1945.
- ZIMMERMANN, W. A.: Histologische Studien am Vegetationspunkt von *Hypericum uralum*, *Jahrb. Wiss. Bot.*, **68**, 289–344, 1928.



## CHAPTER IV

### TISSUES AND TISSUE SYSTEMS

Among many lower plants there is little differentiation in kinds of cells; only simple vegetative and reproductive cells are present. Groups or masses of these cells that are alike in origin, structure, and function form *tissues*. The plant body consists of "vegetative tissue" and "reproductive tissue." In the higher plants the body is complex in cellular structure, made up of many kinds of cells, of most varied form and function and of different origin. For these plants a definition of "tissue" that is less rigid than one that requires similarity of origin, structure, and function is necessary. (Morphologically, a *tissue* is a continuous, organized mass of cells, alike in origin and in principal function. Within a tissue there may be great diversity of cellular form and function, but the cells that make up a tissue must be contiguous (not dispersed among other cells) and must form a structural part of the plant.

**Classification of Tissues.**—Tissues are classified on several bases—position in the plant body, kind of constituent cells, function, method or place of origin, stage of development. Each classification is made primarily or wholly on one of these bases. The classifications can be divided into those of descriptive anatomy and morphology and those of physiological anatomy. Continuity of cells in the tissue is essential from the morphological viewpoint, whereas it is not important from the physiological viewpoint where function alone binds cells together as a tissue. This major difference in basis can be made clear by examples. Of the morphological tissue wood, or *xylem*, only part—the actual conducting cells—forms the "wood" of physiological anatomy, the supporting cells belong to a different tissue, the storage cells to still another. • Morphologically the epidermis forms a single tissue, but in physiological treatments the majority of the cells of the epidermis are grouped with the periderm to form "dermal tissues," and the guard and accessory cells of the stomata form a part of the "aerating tissues." Scattered and isolated cells and groups of cells form many of the tissues of physiological anatomy.

#### TISSUE TYPES BASED ON STAGE OF DEVELOPMENT

**Meristematic and Permanent Tissues.**—Tissues are distinguished as "meristematic" and "permanent" on the same basis as are cells.



Meristematic tissues are immature tissues in which growth is taking place; permanent tissues are those in which growth has ceased, at least temporarily. Permanent tissues—as a whole or in part—may again become meristematic.

### TISSUE TYPES BASED ON KIND OF CONSTITUENT CELLS

**Simple and Complex Tissues.**—From the standpoint of number of kinds of cells making up a tissue, tissues are *simple* or *complex*: they are simple when homogeneous, consisting of one kind of cell; complex when heterogeneous, consisting of more than one kind of cell. This classification aids in detailed descriptions of tissues. There are very few simple tissues in plants. The common ones are *parenchyma*, *collenchyma*, and *sclerenchyma*. These terms are applied also to cells; for example, a cell may be called “a parenchyma cell.” Such a cell is either a unit of the simple tissue, parenchyma, or a cell with the characters of the cells of parenchyma but a member of a complex tissue. Parenchyma and sclerenchyma cells are common constituents of complex tissues; collenchyma cells do not occur with other kinds of cells. The adjectives “parenchymatous” and “sclerenchymatous” indicate cells which possess some of the characters of the cells of parenchyma and of sclerenchyma, respectively, but which do not belong definitely in those tissues. There are parenchymatous fibers, sclerenchymatous cork cells, etc.

The conducting tissues, *xylem* and *phloem*, are the prominent complex tissue types. They need separate discussion here because of their great complexity and variety and because of their structural and functional prominence. Other complex tissues can be interpreted as combinations of parenchyma and sclerenchyma or modifications of these tissues. Xylem and phloem are considered in this chapter as to general structure and function; they are treated further in other chapters.

**Parenchyma.**—Simple vegetative tissue, that is, tissue which is usually not complex or elaborate in structure or form, like that which makes up the body mass of lower plants and the nonspecialized portions in more complex plants, is called *parenchyma*. Parenchyma is a rather loosely used term in that it is applied to all generally unspecialized and fairly simple tissues which are concerned largely with the ordinary vegetative activities of a plant. Parenchyma is, obviously, phylogenetically the primitive tissue since the lower plants have undoubtedly given rise to the higher plants through specialization and since the single type or the few types of cells found in the lower plants have become by specialization the many and elaborate types of the higher plants. Further, all meristematic tissue is unspecialized. Hence, it is parenchyma-like—in



fact, is often called parenchyma—and it can be said that, ontogenetically also, parenchyma is the primitive tissue.

The general characters of parenchyma cells are diameters essentially equal, walls thin, protoplast present, and a capability for cell division even when the cells are permanent cells (Figs. 43, 53). Exceptions occur in all these characters. Parenchyma makes up large parts of various

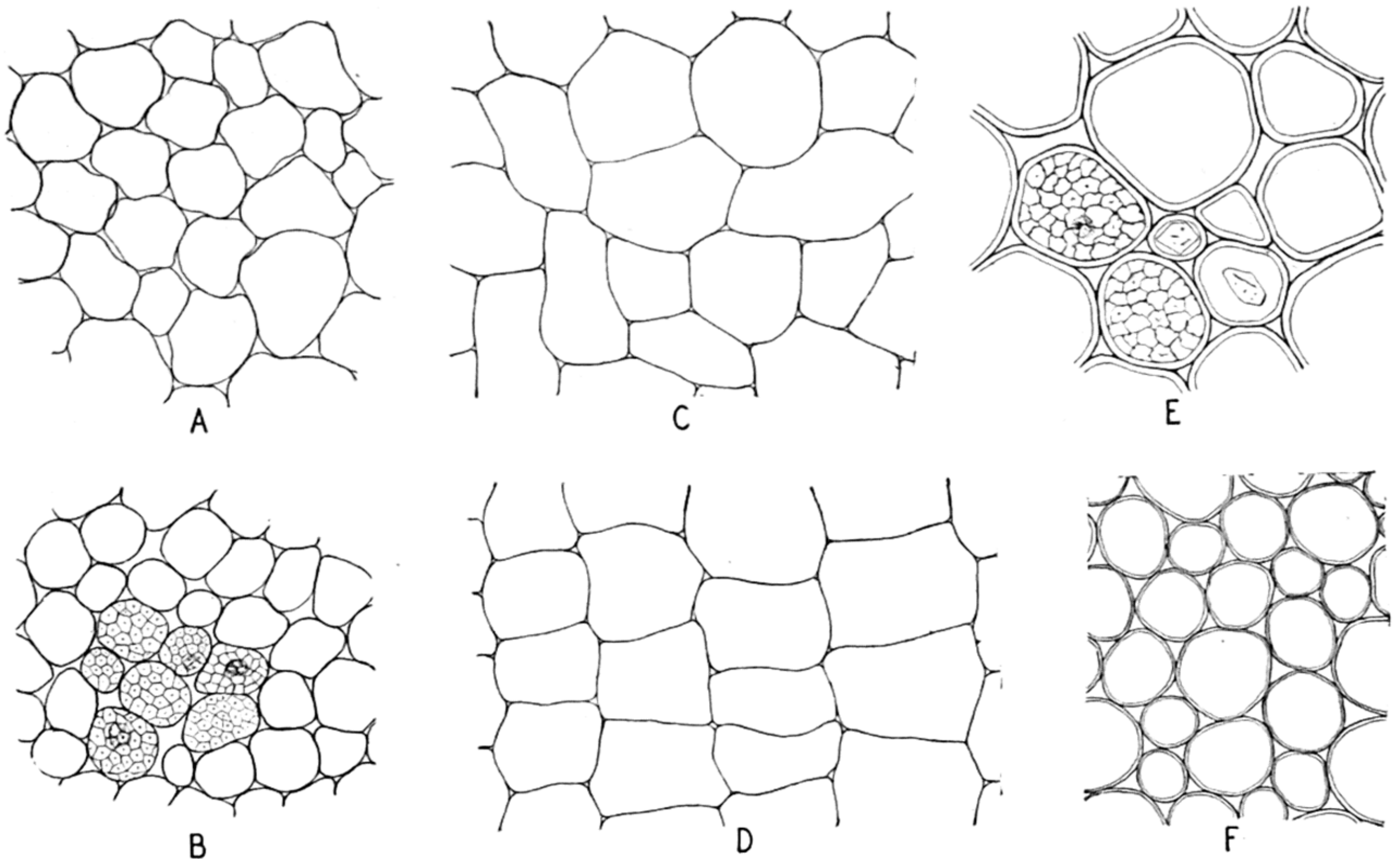


FIG. 43.—Parenchyma. A, from pith of rhizome of *Polypodium vulgare*; B, from cortex of root of *Asclepias incarnata*, the cells filled with starch grains; C, D, from pith of *Zea*, transverse and longitudinal respectively; E, thick-walled, lignified cells from pith of twig of *Castanea dentata*, the cells containing starch grains or crystals; F, thick-walled cells from pith of *Clematis virginiana*.

organs in many plants. Pith, the mesophyll of leaves, and the pulp of fruits consist chiefly of parenchyma; the cortex and pericycle are often wholly or in large part parenchyma, and parenchyma cells occur freely in xylem and phloem.

In early studies of plant structure all tissues were divided on the basis of general form and function into *parenchyma* and *prosenchyma*. The latter was distinguished from parenchyma chiefly by its elongate, pointed, thick-walled cells and its specialized functions of support, protection, and conduction. But entirely different types of tissue are present in “prosenchyma” and the term became obsolete. For convenience, cells and tissues are still frequently described as “prosenchymatous” in contrast with “parenchymatous.”

**Collenchyma.**—In many stems, support in early stages is given in large part by a soft but strong tissue known as *collenchyma*. Important



characteristics of this tissue are its early development and its adaptability to changes in the rapidly growing organ, especially those of increase in length. When it becomes functional, no other strongly supporting tissues have appeared. It consists of elongate cells, various in shape, with unevenly thickened walls, rectangular, oblique, or tapering ends, and persistent protoplasts. The cells overlap and interlock in varying degrees, forming strands similar to those of fibers. The walls consist of cellulose

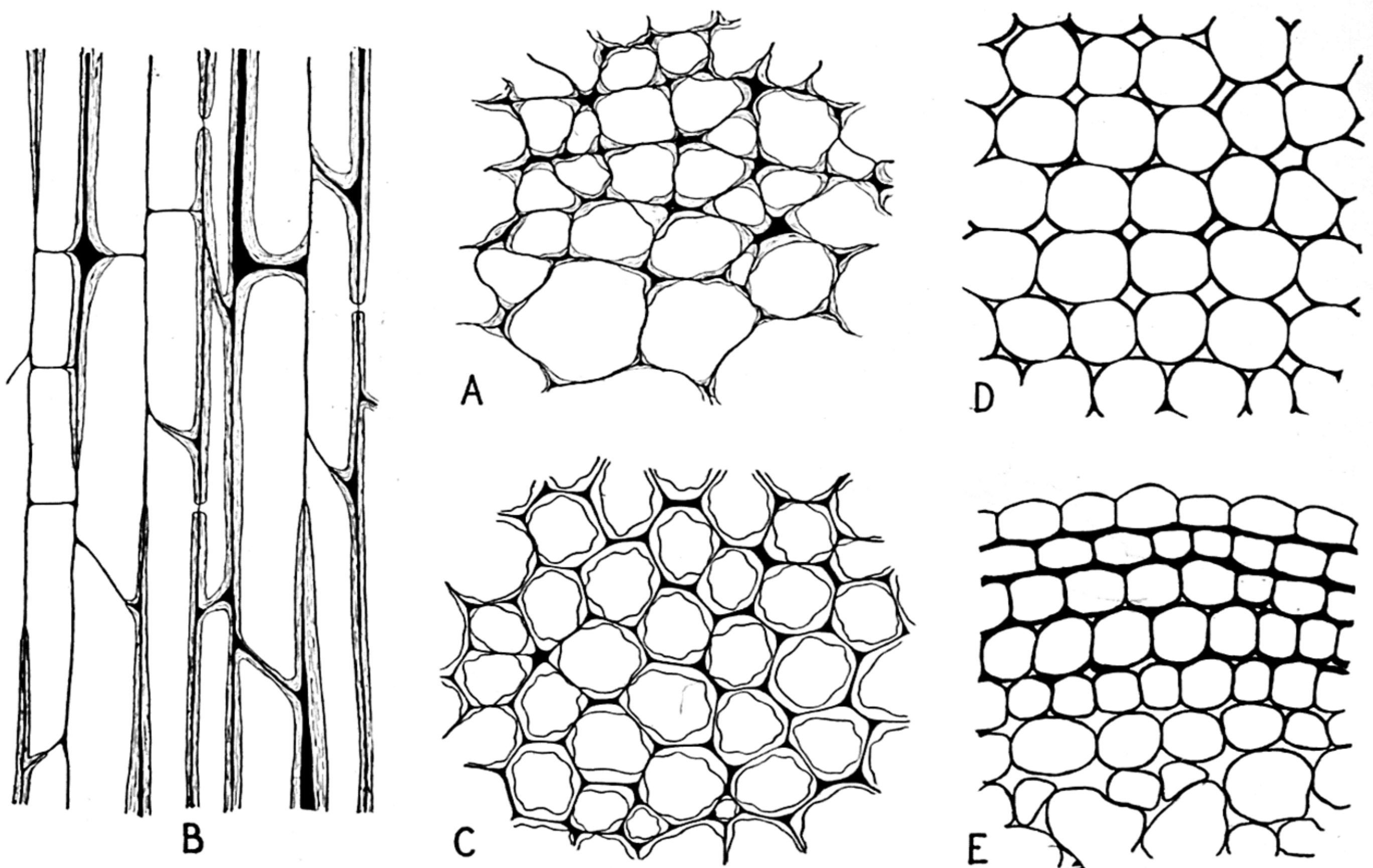


FIG. 44.—Collenchyma. A, B, transverse and longitudinal sections from stem of *Solanum tuberosum*; C, D, E, transverse sections from stem of *Abutilon Theophrasti*, stem of *Asclepias syriaca*, and petiole of *Asarum canadense*, respectively.

and pectin and have a high water content. (The presence of pectin probably accounts for the high water-absorbing capacity.) They are plastic, extensible, and readily adapted to rapid growth. The strands are at first of small diameter but are added to, as growth continues, from surrounding meristematic tissue. Cells on the borders of the strands may be transitional in structure, passing into the parenchyma type.

The areas of greater wall thickness are in the form of longitudinal strips (Fig. 44B) which occupy the corners of the cells (Fig. 44A,C), cover the tangential walls (Fig. 44E), or are confined to those parts of the walls that abut on intercellular spaces (Fig. 44D). Where spaces are surrounded by thickened wall strips, hollow rod-like structures are formed, and the collenchyma appears to consist of thick-walled cells among thin-walled cells (Fig. 44D). The three types of collenchyma are apparently



related to cell arrangement: where the cells are irregularly arranged, the first type is formed; where the cells lie in tangential rows, the second; where intercellular spaces are present, the third. These have been called respectively, "angular," "lamellar," and "tubular" collenchyma. A distinction of these types is hardly necessary since all may occur in a single small strand and merge into one another (Fig. 154). The commonest condition, considered the typical, is that with thickenings at the corners.

The pits are simple, large or small, with apertures rounded or slit-like. Under special treatment, the wall can be seen to be many-layered, each layer extending completely around the cell but thicker where the wall is thickest. The layers are alternately rich in cellulose and rich in pectin. The thickenings appear early in the development of the cells while increase in cell size is still going on and provide an example of maintenance and strong increase in wall thickness while increase in area is continuing. The cytoplasm is prominent and may contain chloroplasts, although photosynthesis is not commonly a function of this tissue. The contents of some cells may differ from those of others in the same strand, as in *Rumex*, where some cells are tannin-bearing.

Ontogenetically collenchyma develops from elongate, procambium-like cells that appear very early in the differentiating meristem. Small intercellular spaces are present among these cells, but they disappear in angular and lamellar types as the cells enlarge, either closed by the enlarging cells or filled by intercellular substance.

Collenchyma is a tissue, first of all, of temporary support, and in some plants it serves only in this way, becoming crushed and even absorbed as secondary-tissue development crowds the outer primary tissues against the epidermis or the first periderm layer. This crushing obtains in many herbaceous plants which have considerable secondary thickening, such as *Melilotus*, *Chenopodium*, *Solidago*. The stems of typical woody plants rarely possess collenchyma, and roots are without it. Permanent collenchyma remains in a normal functional condition in mature plant parts. Petioles, such as those of *Solanum* and *Sambucus*, which are soft and not particularly woody, are supported largely by permanent collenchyma. Soft, herbaceous stems, such as those of *Impatiens* and *Pilea*, are also supported to a considerable extent in this way, and even the strongly woody stems of some herbs for example, species of *Aster*, *Nepeta*, *Pelargonium*, *Rumex*, and *Lactuca* possess small amounts of it.

Collenchyma occurs chiefly in the outer parts of stems, petioles, and leaf midribs. Its supporting value is increased by its peripheral position where it often constitutes the bulk of the ridges and angles of the organs. Some peduncles, for example, those of *Taraxacum*, and many



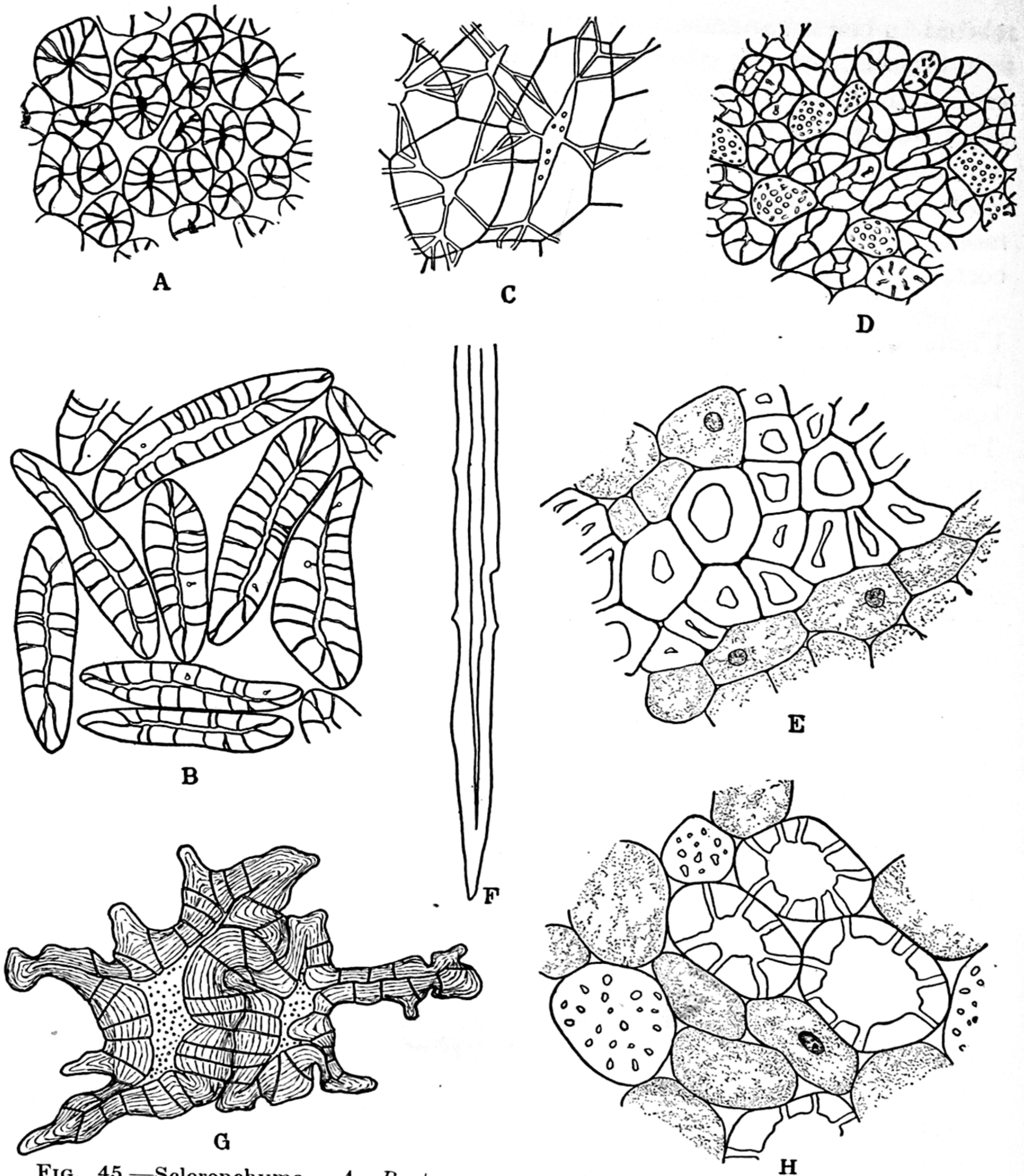


FIG. 45.—Sclerenchyma. A, B, transverse and longitudinal sections of elongate sclereids from endocarp of *Cocos nucifera* (coconut shell); C, sclereids from endocarp of *Crataegus* showing the pits fused in groups; D, sclereids ("grit cells") from the fleshy pericarp of *Pyrus communis*; E, fibers of the primary phloem region of *Cannabis* in transverse section; F, longitudinal section of part of one fiber shown in E; G, irregular sclereids from the phloem of *Tsuga*; H, sclereids and parenchyma cells from the stem cortex of *Dracaena fragrans*.



pedicels owe their support almost wholly to it. In the stems and leaves of herbs this tissue may form bundle caps and similar isolated strands, as in celery and beet.

**Sclerenchyma.**—Another type of supporting tissue, which is also in large measure protecting, is *sclerenchyma*. The cells of this tissue, in contrast with those of collenchyma have hard, usually lignified walls with a low percentage of water. At maturity they usually have no protoplasts. The walls are uniformly and strongly thickened. In shape and size, sclerenchyma cells are most diverse, but two general types are recognized—*fibers* and *sclereids*. The distinction of these forms of sclerenchyma is one of convenience in description; it has no morphological significance. Intermediate forms are many (Fig. 45B), and both types may occur in the same tissue, even intermingled, and serve the same general function.

**Fibers.**—Fibers are elongate sclerenchyma cells, usually with pointed ends (Figs. 47, 54). Chemically, the walls are usually lignified, although there are fibers with walls largely of cellulose and others with gelatinous walls. The pits of fibers are always small, round or slit-like in outline and, in mature cells, unless a protoplast is present, are doubtless functionless. Pits may be numerous but are commonly rather few in number, and in fiber types with excessively thick walls they may be few or present only as vestigial structures. The lumen of fibers is small; it often is a mere channel through the center of the fiber, and this opening may be blocked in spots (Fig. 54B) so that at certain levels in the fiber no lumen exists, only a line or spot representing, in cross section, its former position. In the development of fibers the protoplast often becomes multinucleate. In most kinds of fibers, however, the protoplast disappears as the cell reaches maturity, and the permanent cell is dead and empty. Fibers that retain their protoplasts and other types of fibers are discussed in more detail under the tissues in which they occur (see Xylem, Phloem, and Cortex).

**Classification of Fibers.**—If the usual and loose use of the term “fiber”—such as is covered by the above definition—is accepted, fibers may occur in nearly all parts of the plant. They are most generally found and are most abundant in the cortex, pericycle, phloem, and xylem. Morphologically, there are two distinct types. The fibers of the cortex, pericycle, and phloem possess simple pits and are thus different from those of the xylem which have bordered pits (although these pits may be so reduced as to be essentially simple) since xylem fibers are, morphologically, reduced tracheids. Fibers are sometimes divided into classes: “*bast fibers*” and *wood fibers*. These groups are essentially the same as the two just discussed, but the terms are poor since the word “*bast*” is involved and



has, unfortunately, several uses. In its most common use, the term "bast" is synonymous with phloem or refers to fibers of the secondary phloem. It is more fully discussed on page 111. "Bast fibers" in the above classification include fibers of the cortex and pericycle as well as of the phloem. Fibers can best be designated by means of the tissue or region in which they occur, as cortical fibers, pericyclic fibers, phloem fibers, wood fibers, etc.

Fibers occur singly or in small groups scattered among other cells. Usually they form strands or sheets of tissue extending longitudinally for considerable distances. Their value as strengthening tissue is largely due to their arrangement in these long masses and to the overlapping and interlocking of the cells. They serve also to give general firmness to tissues.

Fibers develop in two ways. In those only a few millimeters long—for example, those of Manila hemp, *Agave*, *Sansevieria*—all parts of the cell are always at the same stage of development at the same time. As in most cells, the secondary wall is deposited simultaneously throughout the cell when full size is attained. In much longer fibers, for example, those of flax and hemp, the cell elongates apically, keeping pace with the growth of surrounding cells, and the secondary wall develops in part of the cell while the apex is still growing.

The term "fiber" is popularly applied to various plant structures that are not morphologically fibers: hairs (cotton); strands of cortical or phloem fibers (flax, hemp); foliar vascular bundles with their sclerenchyma sheaths or caps, or the caps alone (Manila hemp, New Zealand flax, sisal); strands of collenchyma (celery); wood cells generally (paper pulp); fragments of leaves and woody tissues (various drugs); bits of "seed" coats (wheat flour).

*Sclereids*.—In contrast with fibers, sclereids have diameters essentially alike. Some sclereids are elongate (Fig. 45B), and sclerenchyma types, especially in seed and fruit coats, may fall definitely in neither class. Sclereids vary greatly in type—shape, thickness of wall, form and number of pits, relation to surrounding cells—and various terms have been applied to the different types. Loosely, all cells of this type are sometimes called *sclerotic cells*, especially when they occur in soft tissues. The term "*stone cells*" is often used synonymously for sclereids but is better restricted in application to unbranched sclereids without uniform or extreme form. Resemblance in shape to stones often well describes such cells. Stone cells may be solitary, may lie loosely together, or, when angular, may be closely packed and even interlocked. Stone cells in fleshy fruits are sometimes called *grit cells*. The gritty parts of the flesh of pears and quinces are clusters of stone cells (Fig. 45D).



Stone cells have also been called *brachysclereids*. Sclereids more extreme in form have been distinguished as: *macrosclereids* (rod cells), more or less columnar in shape, constituting the "palisade layer" of many seeds and fruits and occurring in some xerophytic leaves and stem cortices; *osteosclereids* (bone cells) of bone-like or barrel shape, constituting hypodermal layers in many seeds and fruits and frequent in xerophytic leaves; *astrosclereids* (stellate cells), with extreme lobes or arms, in leaves and stems of xerophytic organs; *trichosclereids* ("internal hairs"), branched sclereids with lobes projecting, like hairs, into intercellular spaces, in leaves and stems of hydrophytes. The last two types are structurally closely alike. A classification of sclereids on shape and structure is of little value. The character of "branching" or "non-branching pit cavities," which has been used, in part, in distinguishing sclereid types, is largely dependent upon the thickness of the cell wall. Sclereids may occur almost anywhere in the plant body but are most abundant in the cortex, in the phloem, and in fruits and seeds. Like fibers, they occur singly, in groups of a few cells, or in large masses. The hard parts of seeds, nuts, and hard fruits generally are made up largely of stone cells of various types. Where stone cells are scattered, they merely give firmness, as in leaves and the flesh of fruits. In masses, they give hardness and mechanical protection, as in many kinds of bark and in the shells of nuts.

The wall of sclereids is very thick and strongly lignified. Occasionally, it is suberized or cutinized. The pits are very small, with round apertures, and their cavities have the form of more or less branching canals because of the fact that, as the area of the cell wall is reduced on the inside by the increased thickening, the pits are brought together (Fig. 45A,C). Two or even several pits thus fuse to form one structure which has only one aperture in each cell but has as many arms as there were original pits. Sclereids are usually dead cells. The shriveled remains of protoplasm and inclusions of the protoplast, such as tannin and mucilage, may be present.

### THE IMPORTANT COMPLEX TISSUES

The structural and functional prominence of the vascular system renders its tissues of great importance as tissue types. These vascular tissues are, in fact, the only complex tissues which need separate discussion; all others may be interpreted as combinations of parenchyma and sclerenchyma and of modifications of these tissues. The following treatment of vascular tissues is of general nature only since a description of xylem and phloem as primary and secondary tissues and as specially



modified in various organs will be found in other chapters. The development of xylem and phloem is discussed in part in Chap. VI.

## XYLEM

**The Tracheid.**—The fundamental cell type in xylem is the *tracheid*. The tracheid is an elongate cell with tapering ends (Fig. 46) which, when mature, is nonliving, that is, without a protoplast. The walls are hard but not thick and are usually lignified. In cross section the tracheid is typically angular, though more or less rounded forms occur. The tracheids of secondary xylem, owing to their method of arrangement, have fewer sides than those of primary xylem and are often more sharply angular. The ends of the tracheids do not taper uniformly to the tip in all planes, but the tapering is confined largely to the radial plane and usually to one side of the cell only. The end of a tracheid of the secondary wood is more or less chisel-like. The tapering is seen in tangential sections of the tracheid; radial sections do not show tapering, the end of the cell in such sections being rectangular or somewhat rounded. The pits are abundant and of the bordered type, though they vary in size, in outline, and in distribution over the walls. The lumen of a tracheid is large and free of contents of any kind. The tracheid is apparently well adapted structurally to its functions which are water conduction, primarily, and support, secondarily. It is a long, empty, firm-walled tube extending parallel with the long axis of the organ. It is in communication with contiguous tracheids—as well as with other types of cells, living and nonliving—by means of numerous, well-developed pits. These thin areas permit ready diffusion into adjacent cells. The arrangement of tracheids is always such that contiguous cells overlap at least over the tapering portions, and over these areas of the wall, the pits are often abundant. Channels for longitudinal conduction are thus provided through a series of lumina which form a more or less direct line or an anastomosing system.

**The Continuity of the Walls of the Tracheid.**—The individual lumina are shut off from one another by thick walls and, in the pits, by the closing membranes. The closing membranes, however, except in the central region, the torus, are very delicate and, at least in some of the conifers, are perforated. In *Larix* and *Sequoia*, for example, the perforations, though microscopically minute, are so numerous that the torus is suspended by a meshwork of strands (Fig. 25A). The openings in perforated pit membranes are not readily seen unless the membrane is well stained, but their presence is demonstrable by the passing of solid particles such as those of carbon in India ink under pressure from one tracheid to another through the pits.



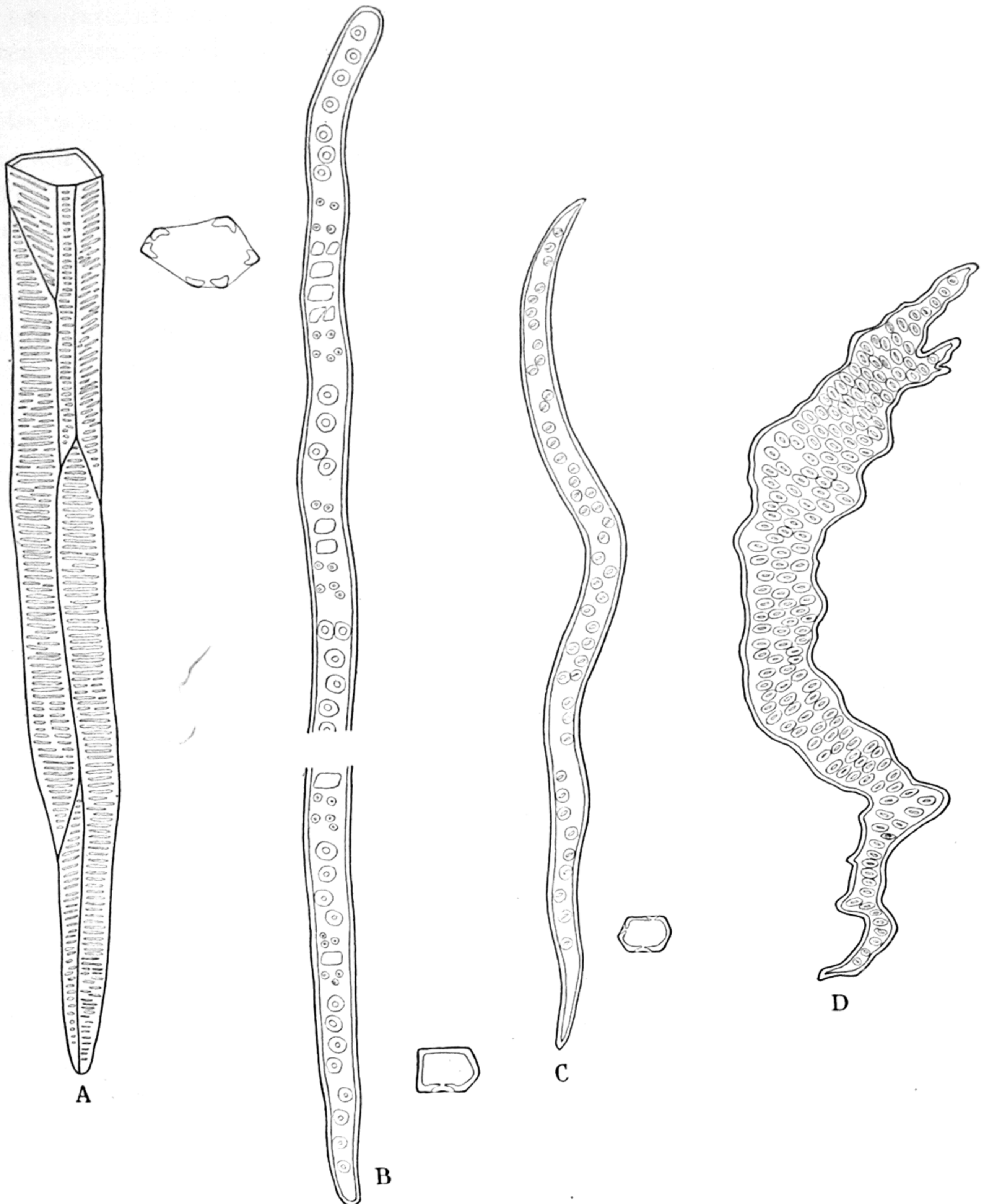


FIG. 46.—Tracheids. A, from *Woodwardia virginica*, one-sixth of cell shown; B, from *Pinus Strobus*, one-third of cell shown; C, D, from *Quercus alba*, C, a normal, and D, a flattened and distorted tracheid from the spring wood. (The illustrations of tracheids are drawn to scale and to the same scale as are those of fibers and vessels.)



*Pits of Tracheid Walls.*—The position of pits in the wall of the tracheid and the size and shape of pits depend upon the position and nature of the contiguous cells. The various larger plant groups have more or less constant types of bordered pits which have characteristic shape, torus, and extent of border. The ferns and the clubmosses have transversely elongated pits with narrow borders and little or no torus. The pits lie close together, covering the wall, giving it a ladder-like appearance (Fig. 46A), and the cells are called *scalariform tracheids*, or, better, *scalariform-pitted tracheids*. The former term is undesirable in this connection since it is also used with other meanings and where definite pits do not occur (protoxylem). In other gymnosperms and most angiosperms the bordered pits are chiefly rounded with wide borders (Fig. 46B, C); those of the angiosperms are mostly much the smaller. The best development of the torus is in the gymnosperms where the bordered pit probably reaches its highest development (Figs. 24, 25). The closing membrane of these pits is so constructed that its position in the pit cavity can be readily changed from a median position to a lateral one with the torus closely appressed to the aperture of the pit (Figs. 22C, 25B, C). A valve-like action is thus secured, the pit being freely open when the torus is in the median position, diffusion—or in perforated closing membranes, direct passage—taking place around the torus through the peripheral part of the closing membrane. When one of the pit mouths is closed by the placing of the torus against it, direct passage is largely or wholly shut off, and diffusion must take place through the thicker and denser torus. Thus, apparently by changes in the position of the closing membranes of bordered pits, there may be some control over the passage of fluids in xylem. It is significant that the type of pit in which this control of the passage of fluids is present is characteristic of water-conducting cells and does not occur elsewhere; also that in the structurally reduced pits of fiber-tracheids and fibers the pit membranes have lost the capability for movement. The bordered pit is further discussed in Chaps. II and VII. In simple pits no structural complexity occurs.

*Function of the Tracheid.*—The tracheid is structurally adapted, both in lumen and in wall, to the function of conduction. The thick and firm walls of tracheids also aid in support, and, where there are no fibers or other supporting cells, the tracheids play a prominent part in the support of an organ. For this the overlapping and interlocking of the cells and their union into strands and cylinders are as important as are thick walls.

Tracheids alone perhaps made up the xylem of very ancient plants, but in living forms wood is a complex tissue, with parenchymatous wood rays even in the simplest forms of secondary xylem; and primary xylem



(as a morphological tissue unit) always contains parenchyma cells. The more complex types of xylem may contain several kinds of cells—tracheids, *fibers* of one or more kinds, *vessels* of one or two types, parenchyma cells (known as *xylem parenchyma* or *wood parenchyma*), and *wood-ray parenchyma*. Further discussion of the constitution of xylem will be found in Chap. VII.

The tracheid clearly serves both as a conducting and as a supporting cell. But evolutionary development in xylem has resulted in a specialization of this once simple tissue in such a way that the original functions of the tissue have become segregated in distinct cell types—support to fibers of various kinds and conduction (of an apparently more efficient type) to vessels. The new function of food storage has been acquired, and this is carried on by wood parenchyma. The wood-ray parenchyma is also concerned with food storage; the ray is, however, probably primarily concerned with lateral conduction. In complex xylem in which the definitely dissociated functions of support and conduction are given over to fibers and vessels respectively, tracheids are usually not found. But in the wood of *Quercus* and some other genera all three kinds of cells are present.

**Fibers and Fiber-tracheids.**—In the phylogenetic development of the fiber, the thickness of the wall has been increased and the diameter of the lumen correspondingly decreased; the length of the cell, especially of the tapering end, in most types decreased, and the number and size of the pits reduced. (Reduction of the pit in size is discussed in detail in Chap. II.) Where reduction has reached a stage where the lumen is so narrow—often nearly occluded—and the pits so small that it seems there can be but little or no conduction, typical fibers are formed. Between such cells and normal tracheids all intergrading forms occur. These intermediate types, which cannot be called either typical tracheids or typical fibers, are designated *fiber-tracheids*. Tracheids have pits in size and type like those in vessels of the same tissue; in fiber-tracheids, the pits are smaller than those in vessels, with reduced or vestigial borders and with the inner aperture narrow and extending beyond the limits of the chamber. A line between tracheids and fiber-tracheids and between fiber-tracheids and fibers cannot, of course, be drawn. Extreme specialization results in the formation of a type of fiber with very thick walls and with pits so reduced as to be essentially simple (Fig. 47C,F,G). Such fibers are called *libriform wood fibers* because of their similarity to phloem fibers (phloem or phloem fibers having been known to early students as “*liber*”). Libriform wood fibers occur abundantly in woody dicotyledons, chiefly in the more specialized families, such as the Leguminosae. Gelatinous layers occur in the walls of the fiber-tracheids and fibers of many genera in



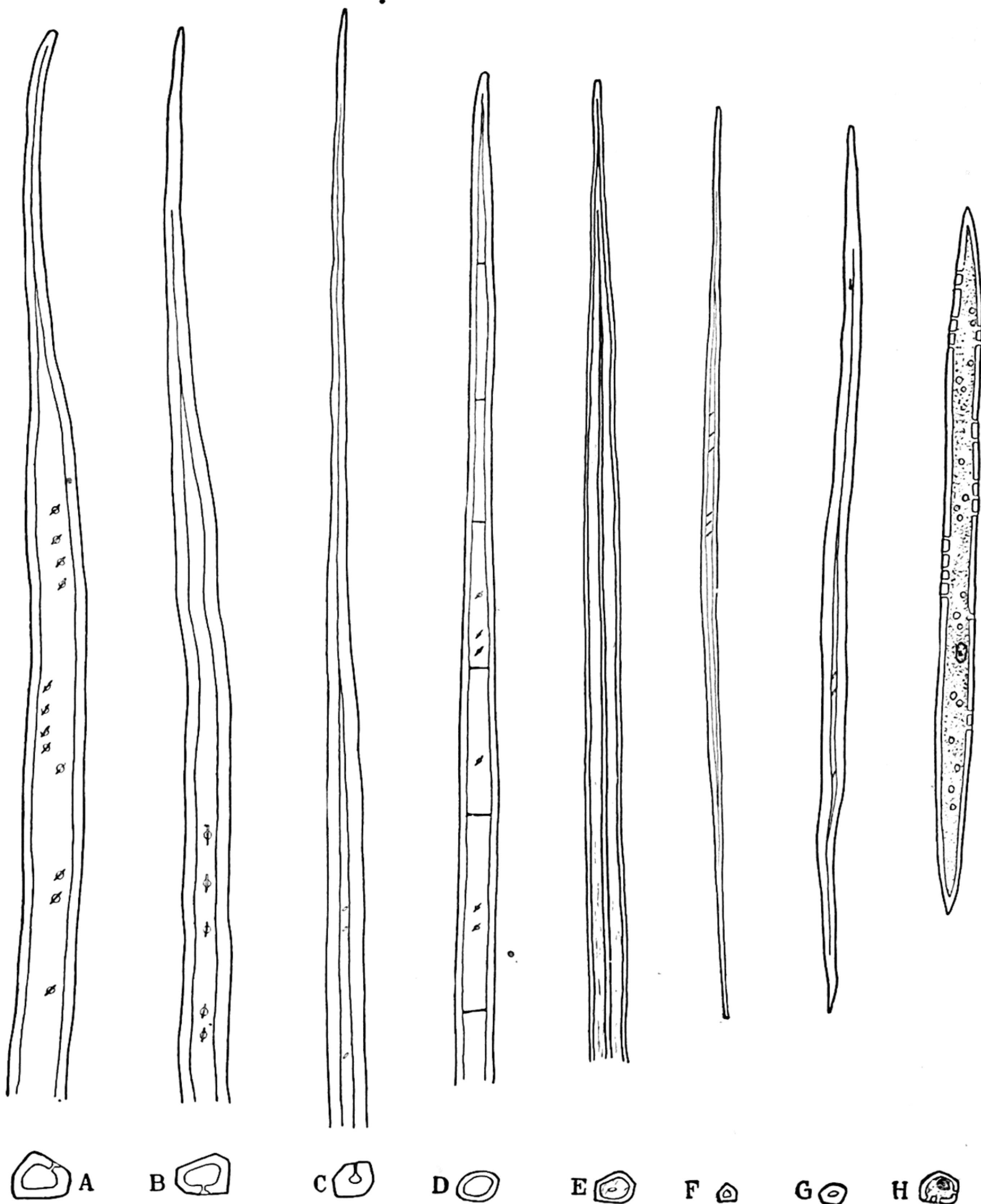


FIG. 47.—Wood fibers and fiber-tracheids. *A*, typical fiber-tracheid, from *Malus pumila*, two-thirds shown; *B*, typical fiber-tracheid, from *Liriodendron Tulipifera*, two-thirds shown; *C*, libriform fiber, from *Quercus alba*, one-fourth shown; *D*, septate fiber-tracheid, from *Swietenia Mahagani*, one-half shown; *E*, gelatinous fiber, from *Quercus rubra*, about one-half shown; *F*, libriform fiber, from *Carya ovata*; *G*, libriform fiber, from *Guaiacum sanctum* (lignum vitae); *H*, “fusiform wood parenchyma cell” (sometimes called “substitute fiber”), from first annual ring of *Sassafras variifolium* (like a fiber only in shape and in direct origin from cambium derivative; without the divisions usual in wood parenchyma).



different families and occasionally in tracheids. Cells with these layers are called *gelatinous tracheids*, *fiber-tracheids*, and *fibers*. The so-called "*substitute wood-fiber*" (Fig. 47H) is not a fiber but a parenchyma cell with fiber-like form. It is discussed under wood parenchyma.

In some *fiber-tracheids* the protoplast persists after the secondary cell wall is mature and may divide so that two or more protoplasts, separated by thin, transverse partitions are enclosed within the original wall. Such *fiber-tracheids* are known as *septate fiber-tracheids* (Fig. 47D). They are, in fact, not individual cells but rows of cells; the transverse plates are true walls, and each chamber has a protoplast with nucleus. In a mass of *fiber-tracheids* in which septation is occurring, all or only part of the cells may divide. The protoplasts of these cells, divided or undivided, may persist for some time. The "septa" are true walls, formed after cell division, but they lack secondary layers. A *septate fiber* can readily be distinguished from a row of wood-parenchyma cells by the absence of a secondary wall on the septa and the failure of the septum to extend, at the line of union with the mother-cell wall, beyond the wall surface of the mother cell. The septa, further, remain un lignified. *Septate fiber-tracheids* occur in many plants, especially in shrubs and the more "woody" herbs, in vines, and in tropical trees.

**Vessels.**—In the evolutionary development of the tracheid the diameter of the cell has increased and the wall has become perforated by large openings. These specializations permit direct transmission of water from cell to cell. In the more primitive types of vessel elements, the general form of the tracheid is retained and increase in diameter is not great; in the most advanced types, increase in diameter is enormous and the cell becomes drum-shaped (Fig. 48L). The tracheid is considerably longer than the cambium cell from which it is derived; the primitive vessel only slightly longer; the most advanced type retains the length of the cambium cell or is slightly shorter, with a diameter greater than its length. In the series from least to greatest specialization the ends of the cells change in shape; the angle made by the tapering end wall becomes greater and greater until the end wall is at right angles to the side walls (Fig. 48L). Some of the intermediate forms have tail-like tips beyond the end wall where, under elongation, a part of the end of the cell has penetrated between adjacent cells (Fig. 48A,G,I). Wall thickness remains about as in the tracheid or is less, though vessels with very thick walls are frequently found, as in *Carya*, *Fraxinus*, and *Diospyros*. The pits are often more numerous and smaller than are those of tracheids and may cover the wall closely. When abundant, they may be scattered or arranged according to some definite pattern. The distribution of pits is, of course, controlled primarily by the nature and position of the contigu-



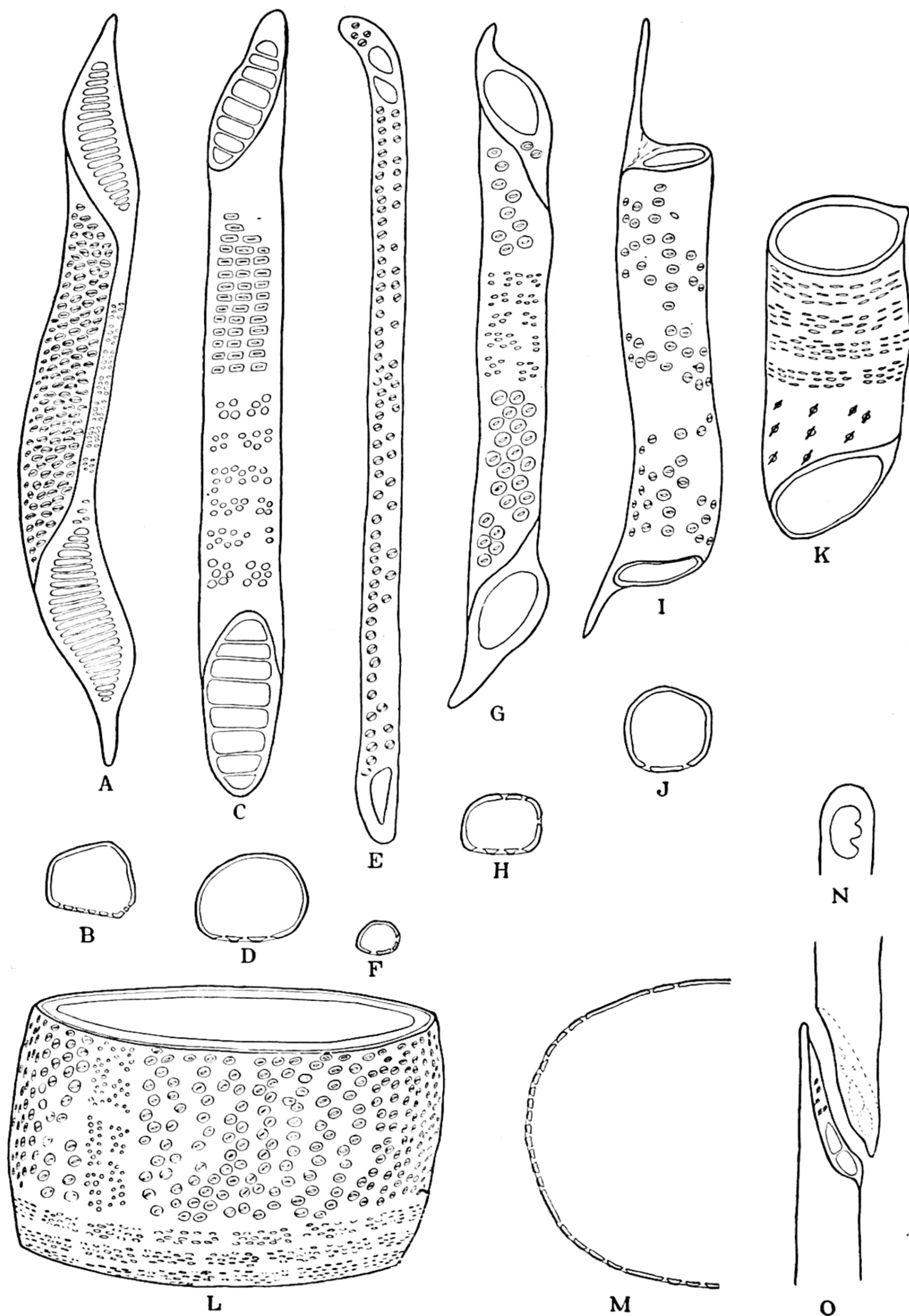


FIG. 48.—Vessel elements in side view and cross section. A, B, from *Betula alba*; C, D, from *Liriodendron*; E, F, from *Lobelia cardinalis*; G, H, from *Quercus alba*; I, J, from *Malus pumila*; K, from *Acer Negundo*; L, M, from *Quercus alba*; N, end of vessel element from *Lobelia* showing perforation indicating derivation of porous vessel from scalariform; O. ends of vessel elements from *Lobelia*, showing method of union of elements in a series.



ous cells. Thus, if another vessel is contiguous to the vessel in question, the wall is heavily pitted over that part of its surface in contact with the other vessel, whereas only a few small pits or none exist in the area lying against a fiber. The pit-pairs between a vessel and tracheids, wood-parenchyma cells, and wood-ray cells are similarly controlled in position, number, and type by the pitting normal to these cells.

*The Term "Vessel."*—Since the perforations of the cell occur usually in the end walls, the development of end walls transverse to the long axis of the cell brings a series of cells into a definite tube-like system, which provides for transmission in a more or less nearly straight line. Such a condition is in contrast with the indirect lines of conduction in a group of tracheids. A tube-like series of cells thus formed has long been known as a *vessel*, or *trachea*.

Both these terms have unfortunately been applied in two ways: to the series or system of cells, and to individual cells with perforate walls that serve in direct water conduction. The former has the support of priority and long usage and should be continued. The unit cells making up such a series are called *vessel elements*, *vessel members*, or *vessel units*. (The term "vessel segment," which has been in frequent use is inappropriate and should be discarded because it implies that the series is a unit which has been divided to form the cells.) Some difficulties arise in the application of these terms under all conditions. In plants in which the water-conducting cells are tracheid-like in shape, union of the cells forms a mesh-system, and vessels of the tube type are not present. The terms "vessel element" and "vessel member" can be applied here to the individual cells. Vessels are present in the sense of continuous series of fused, perforate cells although individual tubes cannot be distinguished.

*Types of Vessel Perforations.*—The openings in vessel-element walls, known as *perforations*, are restricted to the end walls except in certain slender, tapering types where definite end walls cannot be distinguished, and they are said to be present on the side walls (Fig. 48A,E). Most vessel elements are perforated in two areas, one at each end, but three and even four such areas occur in some vessel elements. Where there are three or four, connections are made with other vessels or with branches of a meshwork system of vessel elements. The more or less definitely delimited or outlined area of the wall in which perforation occurs is the *perforation plate*. Commonly this is an end wall. The portion of the plate remaining after perforation has occurred is the *perforation rim*; the strips of cell wall between scalariform perforations are the *perforation bars*.

Perforation plates are described as having a *simple perforation* if there is but one opening; *multiple perforations* if there are two or more openings. Multiple perforations are grouped as *scalariform*, where the openings are



more or less elongate and parallel; and *reticulate*, where the arrangement of the openings makes a mesh-like structure. The common types are the simple and scalariform. The reticulate type is infrequent and not clearly separable from the scalariform. Small vessel elements occasionally have one type of perforation at one end, another at the other. Simple perforations are usually round but range in form in slender elements to narrowly elliptical. In annular and spiral vessels the perforation is of either type, but most frequently is simple. Commonly, end walls that are transverse have simple perforations, and those that are oblique have scalariform openings, but there are many exceptions. Phylogenetically the scalariform type is primitive and forms transitional to the simple are frequent.

Vessels are characteristic of the angiosperms; in only a few are they lacking—the Winteraceae, Trochodendraceae, and Tetracentraceae (which are primitively vesselless families) and in some xerophytic, parasitic, and aquatic genera where they have been lost in reduction. In many monocotyledons they are absent from the stems and leaves; in others from either the stems or the leaves. They are present in some species of *Selaginella*; among the ferns, in two species of *Pteridium*; among the gymnosperms, in the Gnetales. In each of these groups the vessel has clearly arisen independently, in the angiosperms probably more than once.

*Vessel Length and Width.*—Vessels extend for distances that vary with the kind of plant, the type of xylem, the type of vessel element, the location in the organ, and apparently with the rate of growth of the organ. The limits of an individual vessel are difficult to determine. In climbing plants and in trees with ring-porous wood and simple-perforate elements they may be several, perhaps many meters long. But they are often less than one meter and frequently only a few centimeters long. In a single tree they are apparently progressively longer from near the pith outward. It is highly doubtful that they extend “from root tip to stem tip” in any plant. Where branching and interlocking of elements occur, no question of length arises. Even the usually direct-series type may branch, and determination of unit length becomes uncertain. The terminal elements have but one perforation and taper at the blind end.

Although vessels characteristically are wide, the more slender forms may be even narrower than are typical tracheids. From this diameter they range to a maximum of somewhat over one millimeter. The wider vessels are characteristic of certain herbs, such as *Zea*, many woody vines and lianas, and of some trees, such as, *Castanea*, *Quercus*, and *Fraxinus*.

*Ontogeny of the Vessel.*—Vessels are formed from series of xylem mother cells—procambium cells or cambium derivatives—by the fusion of the cells end to end during the last stages of development. This fusion



involves the loss of the end walls, or parts of those walls, so that the lumina of the series of cells are freely open into one another, and, with the walls, form a long tube (Figs. 49, 50).

From the meristematic stage the vessel elements enlarge rapidly, increasing greatly in diameter. Those with scalariform perforations and

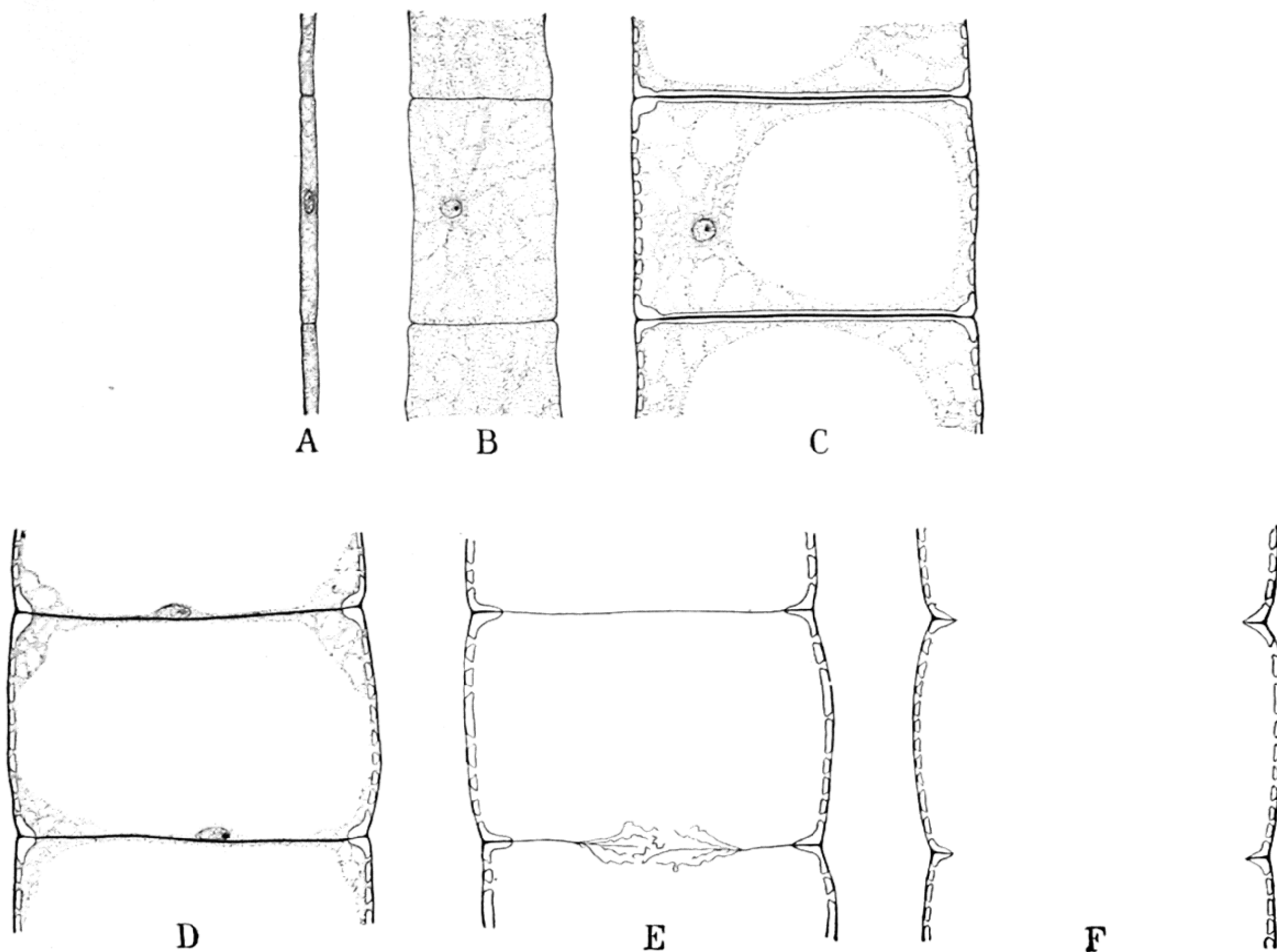


FIG. 49.—The ontogeny of the vessel element in *Robinia Pseudo-Acacia*. A, the cambium initial; B, the cell much enlarged; C, the cell still further enlarged, the secondary wall well developed, except on the perforation areas where the primary is thickened, and the pits present; D, the cytoplasm restricted to the periphery, the nucleus adjacent to the wall where dissolution is occurring, the secondary wall removed from the pore areas; E, the cytoplasm lost, the very thin end walls disintegrating; F, the mature, perforated, empty cell.

the more elongate, simply perforate types may increase in length somewhat, the tips forming 'tails' which penetrate between surrounding cells. Those that become of great diameter, and especially those developing from stratified cambium initials, do not elongate and may even become somewhat shorter.

During the rapid growth in cell size, the primary cell wall, although greatly and rapidly increased in extent, remains constant in thickness except in the areas which later disintegrate in the formation of the perforations. These areas become thicker and marginally limited (Figs. 49C, 50B). In section they are lens-shaped (in many herbs) or plate-like



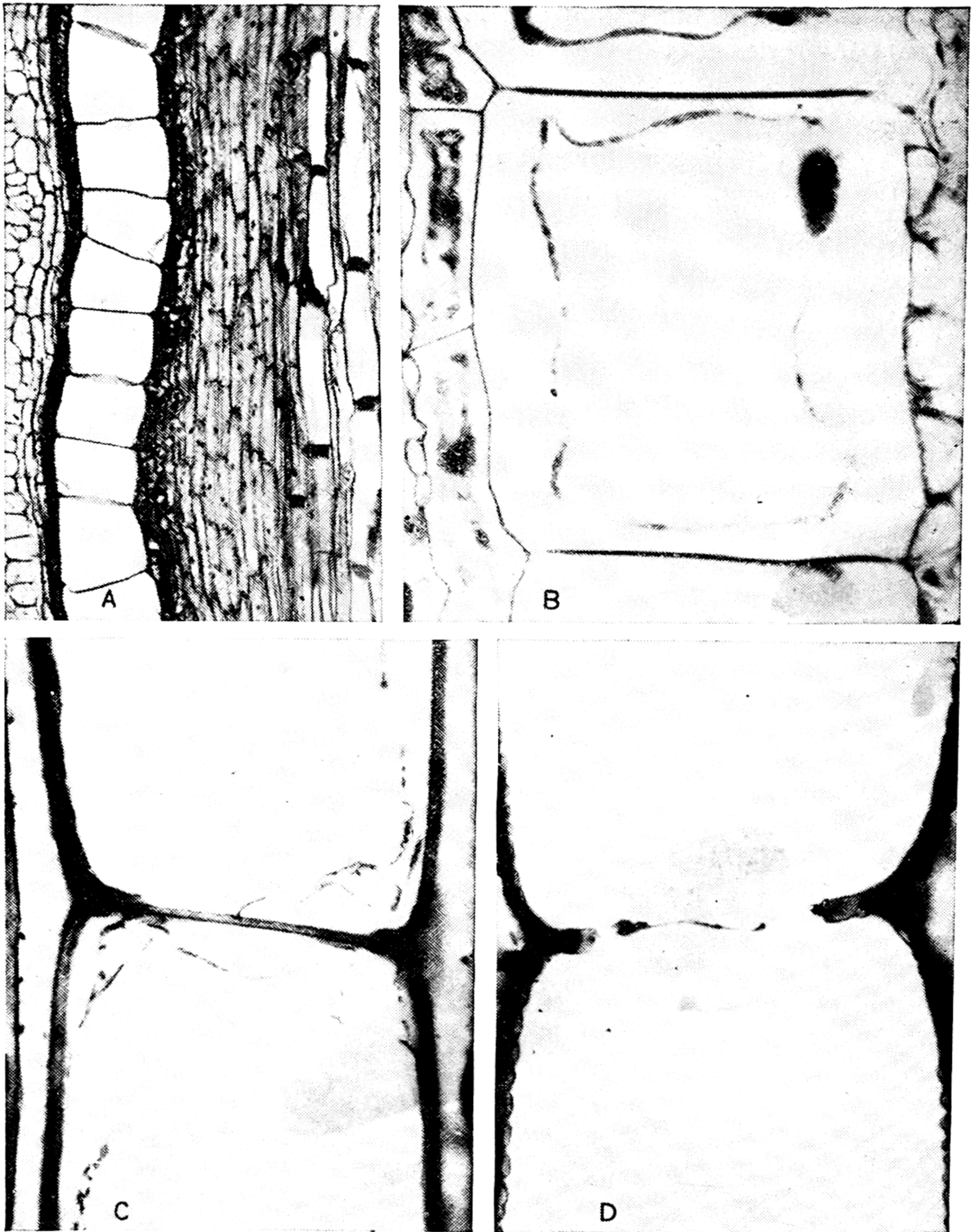


FIG. 50.—Ontogeny of vessel elements. *A, B*, in *Cucurbita*; *C, D*, in *Zea*. *A*, longitudinal section of part of vascular bundle, showing on the left, a series of vessel elements approaching maturity with intact end walls; on the right, phloem with conspicuous sieve tubes. *B*, longitudinal section of a vessel element at about full size, with protoplast, and perforation plate (part of end walls that will be dissolved) thickened. (The intercellular spaces between parenchyma cells at the extreme left have been formed by the tearing apart of these cells during expansion of the vessel element.) *C, D*, last stages in the maturation of the vessel element: the lateral walls and the perforation rim with secondary wall, the primary wall of the perforation plate disintegrating, only remnants of the protoplasts remaining. (After *Esau and Hewitt*.)



(in many woody plants) and can often be seen to be three-layered, consisting of the primary walls of the two adjacent cells and the middle lamella. The primary walls are chiefly of cellulose, with doubtless some pectic substances; the middle lamella is largely pectic. Multinucleate stages have been reported in the development of primary vessel elements in the Euphorbiaceae, but the uninucleate condition is apparently characteristic of all types of vessel elements.

Throughout the enlargement of the cell the cytoplasm remains abundant and active. As maturity is reached, it begins a slow disintegration. In some woody plants the nucleus becomes small and greatly flattened and lies in scant cytoplasm against the wall where perforation is about to occur (Fig. 49*D*); in other plants it maintains a more or less nearly central position in the cell.

After the primary wall is mature, and in some woody plants the secondary wall is partly, perhaps even fully formed, the perforation of the end wall and loss of the protoplast begin. The wall in the perforation area becomes thinner, and, as the cytoplasm gradually goes to pieces, it also disintegrates—in some plants simultaneously throughout, in others beginning in the center. The disappearance of this piece of wall is in some plants at first by a thinning, suggesting a dissolving, followed by a breaking up into several delicate layers (Fig. 49*E*). Statements that these walls are ruptured early in vessel development under tension as the cells rapidly increase in diameter and that the broken walls retract to form the rim are based on inaccurate observation.

Maturation does not proceed simultaneously in all members of a vessel series but progresses from one end to the other. The statement that a vessel matures simultaneously from the base of a tree trunk to its tip is not borne out by careful study. The cambium, which forms the rows of vessel-element initials, itself progresses in activity from one region to another in various directions.

The progress of perforation of vessel elements seems to be closely similar in the protoxylem and metaxylem of herbs and the secondary xylem of trees. It apparently has not been studied in detail elsewhere.

The perforation rim closely resembles the rest of the cell wall. It varies in width with vessel type from a broad band to a ridge so narrow as to be hardly evident. It always has the same characters as the side walls—the same thickness and lignification and the same sculpturing: pit-pairs, bars, or spirals. In annular cells, a terminal ring of secondary wall at the somewhat constricted end of the vessel element forms an inconspicuous rim. In slender, loose-spiral elements, a terminal turn of the spiral may form the rim; in cells with more tightly coiled spirals, the rim has usually two or more turns of the spiral which are interrupted by



the perforation. The obscure cell ends and rim in annular vessel elements—which are usually very long because of the excessive stretching to which these first-formed xylem cells are subjected—are easily overlooked, and a series of cells may be interpreted as one.

That the perforations of vessel elements represent enlarged and fused bordered pits from which the closing membranes have disappeared is clear. All transitional stages are frequently found; occasionally, a single end wall shows typical, normal, bordered pits, similar pits without mem-

branes, and semifused groups of two or more pit-shaped openings. This fusion is, of course, not ontogenetic but phylogenetic.

In simply perforated vessel elements the proportion of the end wall occupied by the perforation is greatest where the wall is transverse; under this condition the wall is reduced to a narrow perforation rim and in extreme cases may be almost or quite lacking. The limit of the vessel members is always made clear, however, by the division of the lateral wall and frequently also by the median bulging of the walls of the individual cells. A given species or genus may possess one type of vessel exclusively, or both types may be present in the same tissue. Where both types occur, the vessels with the larger elements are usually simply perforate and those with the smaller ones scalariform.

The vessels of the secondary wood in many plants possess spiral thickenings of the secondary wall (Fig. 17). The functional significance of this structure is unknown.

**Wood Parenchyma.**—Parenchyma cells are a common constituent of the xylem of most plants. In secondary xylem they occur as vertical series of more or less elongated cells placed end to end (Fig. 51), known as *wood* or *xylem parenchyma*, and radial transverse series which form part or all of the wood rays and are known as *wood-* or *xylem-ray parenchyma*. Wood parenchyma varies in amount in secondary wood from none, as in the wood of certain conifers, such as *Pinus*, *Taxus*, and *Araucaria*, to a considerable proportion, as in many dicotyledons, and may even constitute nearly all the vertically arranged tissue, as in some herbs and spongy-wooded trees. The primary wood of all except some highly specialized plants has always a considerable amount, especially in the first-formed

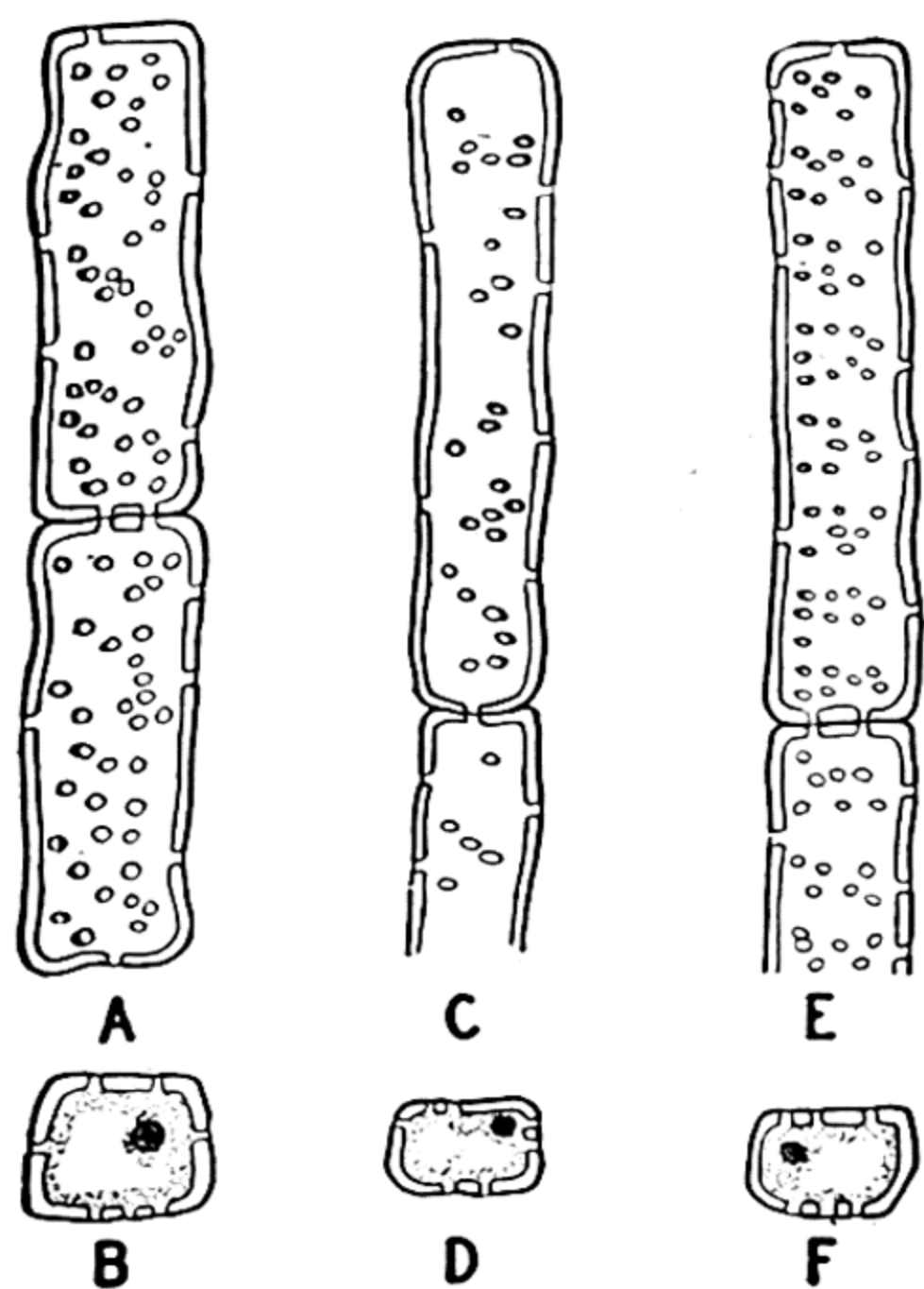


FIG. 51.—Wood parenchyma cells in longitudinal and transverse section (the protoplasts omitted in the longitudinal). A, B, from *Quercus alba*; C, D, from *Malus pumila*; E, F, from *Carya ovata*. (The scale of this figure is twice that of the figures of tracheids, fibers, and vessels.)



parts. The parenchyma of this tissue consists wholly of vertically arranged cells. Parenchyma cells of xylem, unlike tracheids, vessel elements, and most kinds of fibers, remain alive as long as the tissue in which they lie is functioning in conduction. Xylem parenchyma cells may be thin-walled or thick-walled; those of secondary wood often have thick, more or less strongly lignified walls. In function, wood parenchyma serves for food storage and is probably also associated with conduction, either directly or indirectly. Those parenchyma cells which constitute the xylem rays are considered in the discussion of secondary xylem.

**Function of Xylem.**—That the xylem as a whole is the water-conducting tissue and the chief supporting structure of vascular plants is without question. Secondary functions in wood parenchyma and xylem-ray parenchyma are apparent, such as the storage of food (starch, oils, and other substances) and of materials of such nature as crystals, gums, and resins. Water conduction undoubtedly takes place in the lumina of tracheids and vessels and possibly also in the walls, but an explanation of the rise of sap through these cells has not yet been found. Whether physical processes directly and alone are concerned, or whether the activities of living cells are also involved, has long been in dispute. Histological evidence strongly suggests that the presence of living cells is related to the upward conduction of water by tracheids and vessels. Every water-conducting cell is in contact in some part of its wall surface with one or more living cells, and abundant pits are present in this contact area. In highly specialized wood, where the tissue consists largely of fiber-tracheids and fibers, and where the water-conducting cells are relatively few, each vessel is sheathed with parenchyma cells, and no parenchyma cells occur among the nonconducting fibers. In xylem that lacks wood parenchyma all tracheids are heavily pitted with ray parenchyma.

## PHLOEM

In xylem and phloem, evolutionary specialization has progressed along somewhat similar lines in that increased efficiency in conducting structures has resulted from the arrangement of cells in longitudinal series with closer functional intercellular relationship. In xylem a series of tracheids, structurally and functionally united, has become a vessel; in phloem a series of cells similarly united, forms a *sieve tube*.

In xylem the fundamental structural and functional cell type is the tracheid; similarly, in phloem the basic cell type is the *sieve element*.<sup>1</sup> Of

<sup>1</sup> "Sieve element" is used as a term of convenience to cover both sieve cell and sieve-tube element.



this fundamental phloem cell there are two forms: a simple, more primitive one, the *sieve cell* of gymnosperms and lower forms where series of united cells do not exist; a specialized one, the unit of a series, the *sieve-tube element* or *sieve-tube unit*. (The term "sieve-tube segment," which is occasionally used, should be discarded because it implies that this cell is formed by segmentation.) Unfortunately, in common usage the term "sieve tube" is applied not only to the series of united cells and to the individual members of this series but to cells that are not united in series. The term "sieve tube" was first applied to the series and is descriptive of this structure. It should be retained in this usage and so restricted as far as possible. For convenience, the loose, double use will probably continue; the context will in most cases indicate the exact meaning, but certainly the terms "sieve-tube element" and "sieve-tube unit" for the members of a sieve tube are preferable and not ambiguous. In the study of sieve elements the sieve-tube element has received greater attention than the sieve cell, and most of the descriptions of the structure of the sieve element are based on the study of the sieve-tube element.

Phloem, like xylem, is a complex tissue. It may be made up (a) of sieve cells and phloem parenchyma only, as in the pteridophytes and many gymnosperms, (b) of sieve cells, parenchyma, and phloem fibers, as in some gymnosperms, or (c) of two or more of the following cell types: sieve tubes, companion cells, phloem parenchyma of one or more kinds, phloem fibers, sclereids, and various kinds of secretory cells, as in angiosperms.

**The Sieve Cell and Sieve-tube Element.**—Sieve cells and sieve-tube elements are morphologically equivalent and are alike in fundamental structure and in function. They differ in that the perforations of the walls of the sieve cell and their cytoplasmic strands are all alike whereas those of the sieve-tube element are of two degrees of specialization, and in that sieve cells are not arranged in series as are sieve-tube elements. These sieve cells and sieve-tube elements are elongate living cells with a thin cellulose wall. The protoplast has a large central vacuole and a thin peripheral layer of cytoplasm. No nucleus is present when the cell is mature. The cytoplasm contains leucoplasts which in some plants accumulate starch or similar substances. In some dicotyledons the vacuole contains slimy materials (of proteinaceous nature) which may be distributed throughout the cell sap or accumulate in masses in various places. The *slime plugs* seen in sections in some plants (Figs. 109C, 110C) are doubtless artifacts, aggregations of slime caused by injury to the tissues. The wall apparently is composed of primary layers only. In some genera, for example, *Liriodendron* (Fig. 108A), it may become thick at some stages, perhaps serving then as a place of food storage.



*Sieve Areas and Sieve Plates.*—Sieve cells and sieve-tube elements are unique as living, functioning cells in the absence of a nucleus and the presence in the walls of fine pores through which extend strands of cytoplasm that resemble plasmodesmata but are commonly of much greater diameter and, unlike plasmodesmata, are sheathed with callus. The connecting strands of cytoplasm of sieve elements are clustered in areas of the wall known as *sieve areas*. These areas, which are unspecialized in gymnosperms and pteridophytes, become highly specialized in angiosperms by enlargement of the strands and by sharper limitation. Such elaborated areas occupy more or less definitely restricted parts of the cell wall—usually of the end walls—which are known as *sieve plates*. Two types of sieve plates are distinguished—*simple*, with one sieve area; *compound*, with several sieve areas. In simple sieve plates the pores and strands tend to be very large, and the plate occupies all or nearly all of the end wall, which is commonly transverse. In compound sieve plates the pores tend to be smaller than those of simple sieve plates, and the plates occupy only part of the usually oblique end wall.

The sieve areas are scattered over the side and end walls or are in part or wholly restricted to certain walls, as to the radial and end walls in sieve tubes with long-tapering ends and to the end walls where the cell tapers more abruptly or has a transverse end wall (Fig. 52). The number of sieve areas on the side walls varies greatly: there are usually few or none where the end wall is transverse or nearly so (Fig. 52*P, S*); where the end wall is long-tapering, the side wall—as well as the end wall from which it is hardly to be distinguished—may be completely covered by closely set sieve areas (Fig. 52*A, E*). The number and position of sieve areas is to a large extent controlled by the position and arrangement of the surrounding sieve tubes. Sieve-tube elements may be somewhat lobed or forked and may even have three definite ends. Such cells stand at points of branching of a sieve tube. In phloem with tubes of the more primitive type such branching may be frequent, the tubes forming a loose mesh system rather than linear unbranched or rarely branched series, as in the highest type. Where well-marked sieve areas are lacking on the side walls, vestigial sieve plates, known as *lattices*, are often present (Fig. 52*H, S*). These resemble typical sieve areas and plates of various types but are indefinite in outline and often ghost-like; the perforations are exceedingly minute, being usually no larger than normal plasmodesmata (Fig. 52*K*) and often apparently lacking. Differences in the size of the pores in sieve plates and lattices of woody plants is shown by the following measurements: in *Juglans nigra* size of pores in the sieve plate is 1.8 to 3.5 micra, that in the lattices, 0.5 to 0.6 micra; in *Populus deltoides*, the sizes are, respectively, 3.5 to 5.5 micra and 0.5 to 0.6 micra; in *Salix*



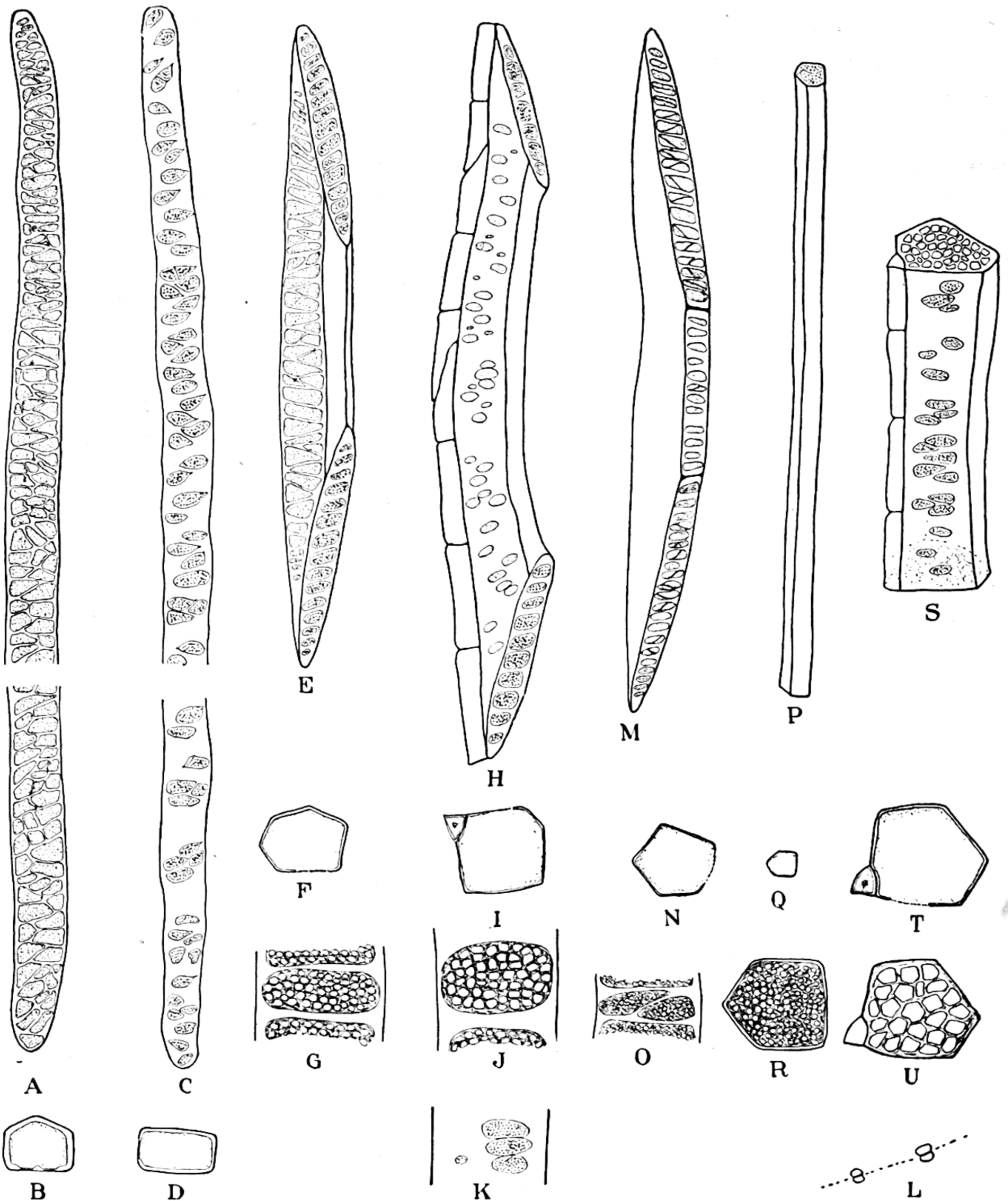


FIG. 52.—Sieve cells and sieve-tube elements in side view and cross section, with detail structure of sieve plates. A,B, from *Pteridium*, only one-fourth of cell shown; C,D, from *Tsuga canadensis*, only one-third of cell shown; E,F,G, from *Juglans nigra*, G, part of sieve plate in detail; H,I,J,K,L, from *Liriodendron*—H,I, with companion cells attached, J,K, detail of sieve plate and of lattice respectively, L, sieve plate in section; M,N,O, from *Malus pumila*, O, detail of sieve plate; P,Q,R, from *Solanum tuberosum*, R, detail of sieve plate; S,T,U, from *Robinia Pseudo-Acacia*, with companion cells attached, U, detail of sieve plate. (The sieve tubes are drawn on the same scale as tracheids, fibers, and vessels in Figs. 46, 47, and 48. All enlargements of sieve plates and lattices are on the same scale.)



*nigra*, 2.0 to 3.0 micra and 0.4 to 0.5 micra. Stages intermediate between typical sieve areas and lattices may be found. Lattices are common in sieve tubes of intermediate type; they are usually absent in most herbaceous plants. The term "*sieve field*," sometimes applied to lattices, has become confused in use and is probably unnecessary.

**Sieve Tubes.**—Union of the sieve-tube elements to form a *sieve tube* is secured structurally by modification in shape and arrangement so as to form a linear tube and functionally by the greater specialization of the connecting strands in the end walls of the elements. In evolutionary development the sieve-tube elements have become increased in diameter and shortened. They have a range in shape similar to that of the tracheid-vessel series: in the most primitive type the ends are long-tapering, and an end wall as distinct from a side wall is hardly apparent (Fig. 52A,C); commonly the well-defined end wall is oblique (Fig. 52E,H,M) or, in the most specialized forms, transverse (Fig. 52P,S). Also in evolutionary development of sieve tubes their sieve areas decrease in number. The primitive type of sieve tube has many sieve areas on a plate occupying a long, oblique end wall, and these areas closely resemble the many areas of the side walls; the most advanced type has one area in a plate occupying nearly all of a transverse end wall, and areas on the side walls are scarce or absent. The diameter of the connecting cytoplasmic strands in this highest type is much greater than that of other types. The sieve-tube type is not constant in families or sometimes even in genera. The primitive type is found in some families considered advanced, such as the Caprifoliaceae, and the most advanced type occurs in such primitive families as the Moraceae and Ulmaceae. Evolutionary advance in sieve-tube type has apparently taken place within families (Fagaceae, Rosaceae, Leguminosae) and within genera (*Fraxinus*, *Prunus*). Although the sieve tubes of vines and herbs are usually of the highest type, all types occur in woody and in herbaceous forms.

**Ontogeny of the Sieve Elements.**—The mother cells of sieve elements vary in shape from short cylindric to elongate, slender, and tapering. Primary pit-fields are numerous on the walls, especially in secondary phloem, as on young tracheid walls. As these cells differentiate, they elongate; the cytoplasm becomes highly vacuolate and streams actively; the wall thickens; sieve areas develop from the pit-fields, and the cytoplasmic strands become prominent and increase in size; callus develops around the connecting strands. The relation of pit-fields to sieve areas in ontogeny is not altogether clear. Apparently one pit-field may form one or more sieve areas, or several pit-fields form one area where the sieve plate is simple. In plates of this simple type when the connecting strands are very large, one or more pit-fields perhaps take part in the formation of



the pore, each strand representing one greatly enlarged plasmodesmata thread or the fused threads of one pit-field. In the development of callus, rings are first formed about the strands at the apertures of the pores; increasing deposition forms cylinders that sheath the strands.

As the sieve-tube element reaches maturity in size, the wall becomes thinner, the nucleus disintegrates, the connecting strands continue to increase in diameter, the streaming of the cytoplasm ceases, the peripheral layer of cytoplasm becomes extremely thin, the boundary between the cytoplasm and the vacuole becomes indistinct, and the semipermeable properties of the cell appear to be lost. At this stage the functioning period of the cell as a conducting structure apparently begins. In all plants conduction by sieve tubes probably lasts only a short time—from a few days in the early-formed primary phloem to a year or perhaps more in the secondary phloem of woody plants.

During the functioning life of the sieve tube, the callus increases in amount, lengthening the cylinders about the strands. Callus is deposited also on the wall around and between the strands forming with the cylinder a cushion-like mass over the sieve area. In the late stages of thickening in this cushion, the strands become attenuate, and some or all of them may be broken off. This condition seems to accompany the death of the protoplast. The callus cushion is for this reason known as the *definitive callus*. In some woody plants, where sieve tubes seem to function during a second growing season—perhaps even longer—the protoplast does not die, and the definitive callus is dissolved as activity in conduction is renewed. Under these conditions the sieve strands must remain unbroken. Little is known in detail concerning the structure of sieve tubes that appear to function through more than one growing season. Callus cushions form only weakly or not at all over the sieve areas of lattices. This, with the presence of few weak connecting strands, or none, is evidence of the vestigial nature of these structures. Lattices form a transition stage in lateral wall structure between the numerous sieve areas of the primitive sieve-tube element and the absence or great reduction in number of the highest type.

*Obliteration of Sieve Tubes.*—After the loss of the protoplast of the sieve-tube element, the empty cell wall, at this stage as thin as in early stages of development, is crushed or collapses under the pressure and tension of the surrounding tissues which are brought about by increase in diameter or length of the organ of which they are a part. In many herbaceous plants the callus cushions and cylinders are still present when crushing takes place; in secondary phloem of woody plants they have disappeared. The crushing of the dead sieve tubes and their companion cells commonly becomes so complete that these cells are soon repre-



sented only by strands or sheets of structureless material, and this material may be soon absorbed. In most plants, monocotyledons probably excepted, the surrounding living cells crowd into the space formerly occupied by the crushed cells, and evidence of the earlier structure of this tissue is difficult to find. The crushing and absorption of sieve and companion cells is known as *obliteration*. Obliteration is further discussed in Chap. VIII.

**Sieve Cells of Gymnosperms.**—Sieve cells have not been studied so intensively as sieve-tube elements, and the structure of their sieve areas is more difficult to ascertain. The connecting strands are said to be arranged in small groups, and the callus cylinders appear to surround these groups rather than individual strands as in angiosperms. The history of development, functioning period, and obliteration is much the same as that of sieve-tube elements. It is possible that the sieve cells of vascular cryptogams have a much longer functioning period—even several years—than those of seed plants.

**Companion Cells.**—The *companion cell* is a specialized type of parenchyma cell which is closely associated in origin, position, and function with sieve-tube elements. These cells occur only in the angiosperms but in these plants accompany most sieve-tube elements. Perhaps protophloem sometimes lacks them, and they appear to be scarce in the primary and early secondary phloem of some woody plants. In highly specialized phloem, such as that of many monocotyledons, they are abundant, together with sieve tubes making up the entire tissue.

Companion cells are formed by longitudinal, or oblique-longitudinal, division of the mother cell of the sieve-tube element before specialization of this cell begins. One daughter cell may become a companion cell and the other a sieve-tube element; or the latter may divide further, forming more companion cells. Transverse divisions in the companion-cell initial may form a row of companion cells so that one to several may accompany each element. A companion cell or a row of a few such cells formed by transverse division of a single companion-cell initial may extend the full length of the sieve-tube element. In a species the number of companion cells accompanying a sieve-tube element is fairly constant. Solitary, long companion cells are common in primary phloem and herbaceous plants; short and numerous companion cells appear to be characteristic of the secondary phloem of woody plants.

Companion cells have abundant granular cytoplasm and a prominent nucleus which is retained through the life of the cell. They do not contain starch at any time. They live only so long as the sieve-tube element with which they are associated and they are crushed with those cells.

When seen in transverse section the companion cell is usually a small,



triangular, rounded, or rectangular cell beside a sieve-tube element (Fig. 52I,T). Often it seems to lie as if within the limits of the sieve-tube element. If it does not, it may be impossible to determine with which particular sieve tube it is associated for it may be in contact with more than one. In secondary phloem of many gymnosperms the marginal cells of the rays, called *albuminous cells*, differ markedly from the other ray cells. They are discussed in Chap. VIII.

**Phloem Parenchyma.**—Phloem typically contains parenchyma cells of other types than companion cells. Various terms have been given to these on a basis of shape and probable function, but these terms are confused in usage and the differences hardly merit distinction. In shape these cells range from elongate and tapering to broadly cylindrical, sub-

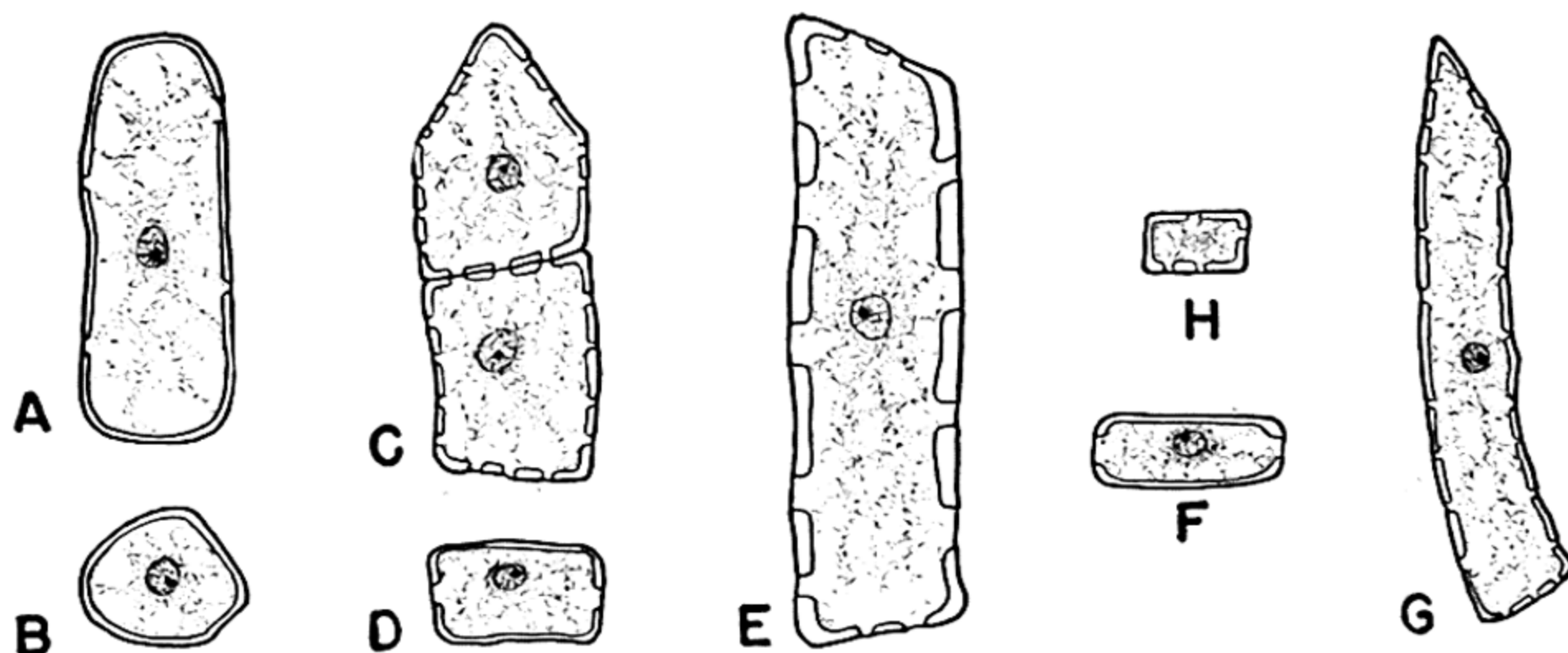


FIG. 53.—Phloem parenchyma, longitudinal and transverse sections. A, B, from *Salix nigra*; C, D, from *Robinia Pseudo-Acacia*; E, F, from *Liriodendron*; G, H, from *Malus pumila*.

spherical, and polyhedral (Fig. 53). The elongate cell, while young, may divide forming a row of cells that retain in their mature form and position evidence of this origin. In content also these cells show great variety: crystals, tanniferous substances, mucilage, latex, etc. Most of the parenchyma cells are filled with starch or oil during dormant periods. They remain alive until cut off from the inner living tissues by periderm formation. Those of secondary phloem in age may be transformed into sclereids, as in *Quercus*.

Parenchyma may be lacking in phloem—the tissue consisting of sieve tubes and companion cells only, as in the vascular bundles of many monocotyledons.

The parenchyma of the phloem rays is discussed under Secondary Phloem (Chap. VIII).

**Phloem Fibers and Sclereids.**—Sclerenchymatous cells are rare or absent in phloem of living pteridophytes, and they are absent from this tissue in some gymnosperms and angiosperms. But in many seed plants, fibers form a prominent part of both the primary and the secondary phloem (Fig. 54). The fibers of the primary phloem—or part of these



cells—have in some plants been mistaken for pericyclic fibers (Chap. V). Phloem fibers differ from xylem fibers in that the pits, which have small, linear, or rounded apertures, are always simple. The walls are lignified. In development the long-tapering ends become interlocked and strong strands are formed. The fibers often form tangential sheets or cylinders enclosing the inner tissues. These are obviously of structural importance as layers protective to the soft cambium region within, and also to some extent as longitudinal strengthening tissues. In some herbs and occasional woody plants, such as *Dirca palustris*, they apparently are of more importance in supporting the stem than is the xylem cylinder.

Fibers of the protophloem, forming the outermost cells of the primary phloem, are prominent features of many stems, both woody and herbaceous. In the early stages of stem development these fibers may contribute largely to the support of the stem. They are arranged in various ways: as continuous, uniform, or irregular bands; as scattered, isolated strands; as clusters “capping” the primary phloem strands. Such fibers are usually lignified, as are those of *Cannabis* (hemp), but may be of cellulose, as in *Linum* (flax). These primary phloem fibers are often similar to fibers of the cortex and to those of the secondary phloem. All or any of them with other fibers and sometimes vascular bundles constitute commercial “bast.”

*The Term “Bast.”*—Because of the strength of strands of phloem fibers, these have long been used in the manufacture of cords and ropes and in the weaving of matting and cloth. Fibrous tissue used in this way

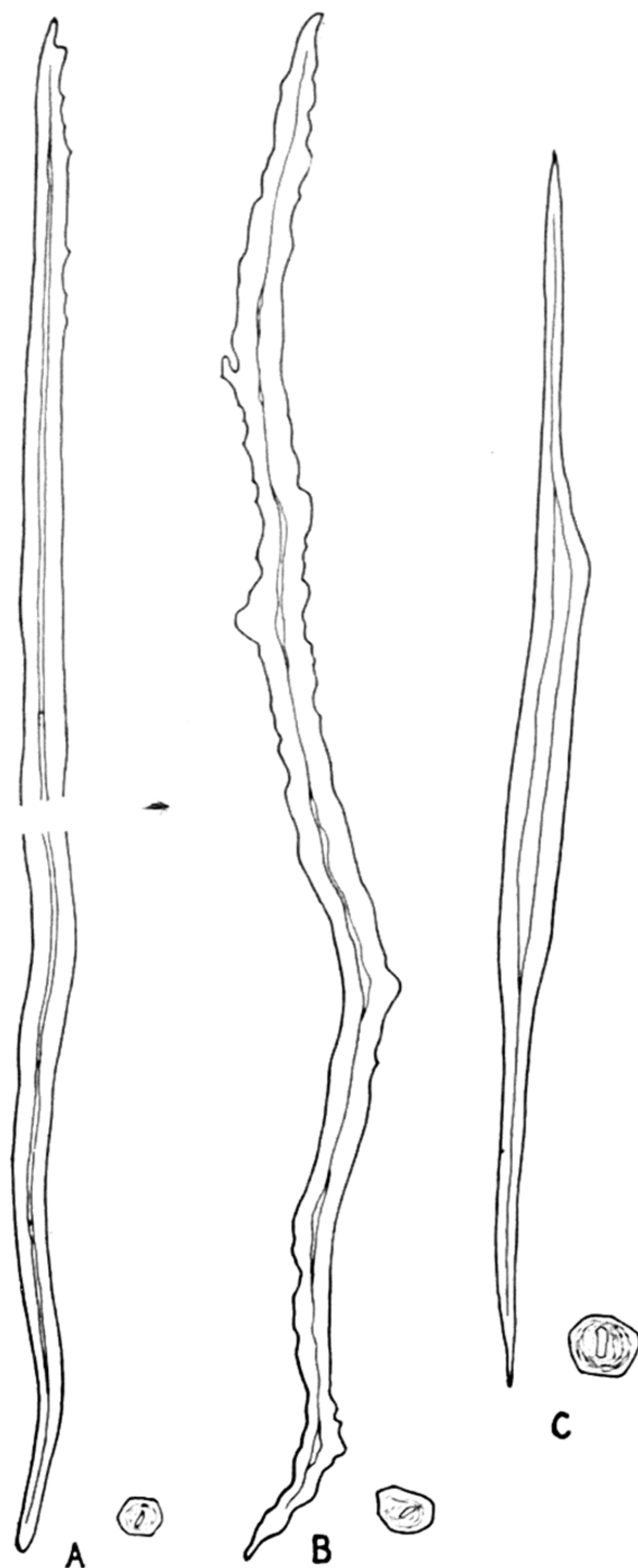


FIG. 54.—Phloem fibers, longitudinal and transverse sections. A, from *Salix nigra*, only two-thirds of cell shown; B, from *Malus pumila*; C, from *Robinia Pseudo-Acacia*. (The scale is twice that of the figure of sieve elements, Fig. 52.)



has been known since early days as *bast*, or *bass*. The term was originally applied to any fibers obtained from the outer part of a plant, though a large part of such material came from the secondary phloem, as in the basswood, *Tilia*. When the secondary phloem was recognized as distinct from the cortex, the term "bast" was applied to this phloem, which was the common source of fibers. And in this sense, that is, as synonymous with phloem—as wood is synonymous with xylem—"bast" is still in frequent use. With the term used in this morphological sense, the fibers of the phloem become *bast fibers*. But the term "bast fibers," or simply "bast," is also applied to any fibers from the outer parts of a plant. This is topographical, not histological or morphological use; such fibers may be a part of the cortex or pericycle. Secondary phloem is also frequently "divided into hard phloem, or bast, and soft phloem"; and "bark" is divided into "bast and living phloem." The term "bast" is used to such an extent without accurate botanical meaning that it should be discontinued as a technical term. Furthermore, it is superfluous, since the terms "phloem," "phloem fibers," "pericyclic fibers," and "cortical fibers" cover accurately all its uses.

Primary phloem occasionally contains sclereids, and the older secondary phloem of many trees contains abundant cells of this type. These cells develop from parenchyma cells as the tissue ages and the sieve tubes cease to function.

**Pitting in Cells of the Phloem.**—In phloem the complex cellular relationship, the delicate walls of many of its cells, and the similarity of pits with plasmodesmata to sieve areas with cytoplasmic strands make the determination of pitting difficult. Statements concerning wall structure in some positions vary greatly, and much additional information is needed. The pitting of the thicker walled cells is clear: the pit-pairs are the simple pit-pairs of parenchyma and sclerenchyma, except that in some types of parenchyma the pits resemble sieve areas (Fig. 110D). Between sieve tube and parenchyma cell there is a sieve area on the side of the former and a pit on the side of the latter. Between the sieve tube and companion cell the wall is usually very thin and specialized areas are not seen; rarely, this wall is thick, and "pits" have been reported. It has been generally believed that companion cells are not pitted with parenchyma, but pit-pairs have been described in some plants.

**Function of Phloem.**—The chief function of phloem is the conduction of elaborated foodstuffs, both proteins and carbohydrates. The sieve elements are believed to be the cells concerned in this conduction with the companion cells, or the albuminous cells, related in some way to their activities. The sclerenchymatous tissues—fibers and sclereids—serve in some measure in support of organs and protection of soft, underlying



tissues. Many parenchyma cells are starch storage cells at certain periods; others perhaps serve in conduction of some substances; some are crystal storage regions.

Phloem is further discussed under "Primary Body" (Chap. V) and "Secondary Phloem" (Chap. VIII).

**The Term "Phloem."**—The term "phloem" is sometimes used—as is the term "xylem"—to indicate only the conducting cells of a complex tissue whose chief function is conduction. In this usage only the sieve elements of the tissue usually called phloem are indicated as "phloem." Occasionally all the "soft cells" are labelled "phloem," the sclerenchyma being excluded as "bast." The restriction of "phloem" to sieve tubes and companion cells is especially applied to protophloem. But histologically and morphologically the entire, continuous tissue is the phloem, and the term is so used in this book. For example: protophloem does not consist only of the sieve-tube elements that constitute its first-maturing cells but includes the much later maturing fibers that surround them.

**"Transfusion Tissue."**—A peculiar type of conducting tissue, which consists largely of short tracheids with thin, cellulose walls and bordered pits or reticulate or scalariform thickenings, often accompanies typical vascular tissue in the leaves of the gymnosperms. These cells are tracheid-like in the character of their pitting and in the absence of a protoplast but otherwise suggest elongate parenchyma cells. They lie adjacent to typical xylem at the sides of the bundle and may partly or even completely surround it. Since these cells seem to serve as conducting tissue, connecting the veins and the mesophyll of the leaves, taking the place of the usual very small branches of the veins, they form together what is called *transfusion tissue*. Though the function of this tissue is still uncertain, it undoubtedly represents modified vascular tissue.

### TISSUE SYSTEMS

All the tissues of a plant which perform the same general function, regardless of position or continuity in the body, may be considered to form, together, a *tissue system*. In this sense the term is wholly a physiological one. There are found in physiological treatments of anatomy such tissue systems as the "mechanical system," the "absorbing system," and the "storage system." The various parts of most of such systems, however, are bound together only by function; they have little or no structural or morphological unity. Continuity and similarity of nature or of origin may be lacking.

From a morphological viewpoint the grouping of tissues into tissue systems is sometimes convenient. In the morphological sense, a tissue



system must be a complex of cells extending continuously throughout the plant body or over a considerable portion thereof. It may be so simple as to consist of only one type of cell or one type of tissue or may consist of two or more types of tissues. Very few systems in any way structurally distinct can be distinguished. The older students of anatomy distinguished an *epidermal*, or *tegumentary*, *system*; a *fundamental*, or *ground*, *system*; and a *vascular system*. The distinction of these systems is not often made in present-day anatomy, doubtless because the systems have, in use, been morphologically too inclusive or indefinite or have been nonmorphological. The epidermal system has sometimes included a hypodermis and other cortical tissues—even periderm; the fundamental system, the cortex, pericycle, and pith. Recognition of these systems has value in a strictly topographical sense and is especially useful in the interpretation of meristematic tissues. In young organs, the epidermal system consists of the dermatogen (or protoderm) alone; the vascular system consists of the procambium and the earliest formed xylem and phloem elements; the fundamental system consists of ground meristem—all the remaining tissues, which at this stage show little or no differentiation. In the mature primary body these form, respectively, the epidermis, the vascular tissues, and the cortex, pericycle, pith, and mesophyll.

The epidermis and vascular system are tissue systems of such uniformity and continuity of structure and of such constancy of function that they constitute important gross structural features of the plant body. The terms “epidermal system”—if used to cover epidermis only—and “vascular system” are convenient and valuable. “Ground tissue system” covers the heterogeneous remaining parts.

### SECRETORY TISSUE

All cells directly concerned with the secretion of gums, resins, essential oils, nectar, and similar substances are together frequently referred to as “secretory tissue.” Such a classification is purely a physiological one, as secretory cells and tissues often do not have common origin or morphological continuity. Secretory cells frequently are isolated from other similar cells, embedded in pith, xylem, phloem, cortex, or any region. On the other hand, secretory cells may be aggregated forming a tissue in the strict morphological sense. Not infrequently such cells constitute a definite, organized secretory structure or gland.

**Secretory Cells.**—Secretory cells are of two general types: those in which the secretion formed is exuded from the secreting cell, as in glandular hairs and secretory surfaces, such as nectaries and the epithelium of resin and oil canals; and those in which the secretion formed is stored



within the secretory cell. The term *excretory cells* is often applied to the first type. This type of cell is usually characterized by a protoplast with richly granular cytoplasm and a conspicuous nucleus (Figs. 55A,B,C,

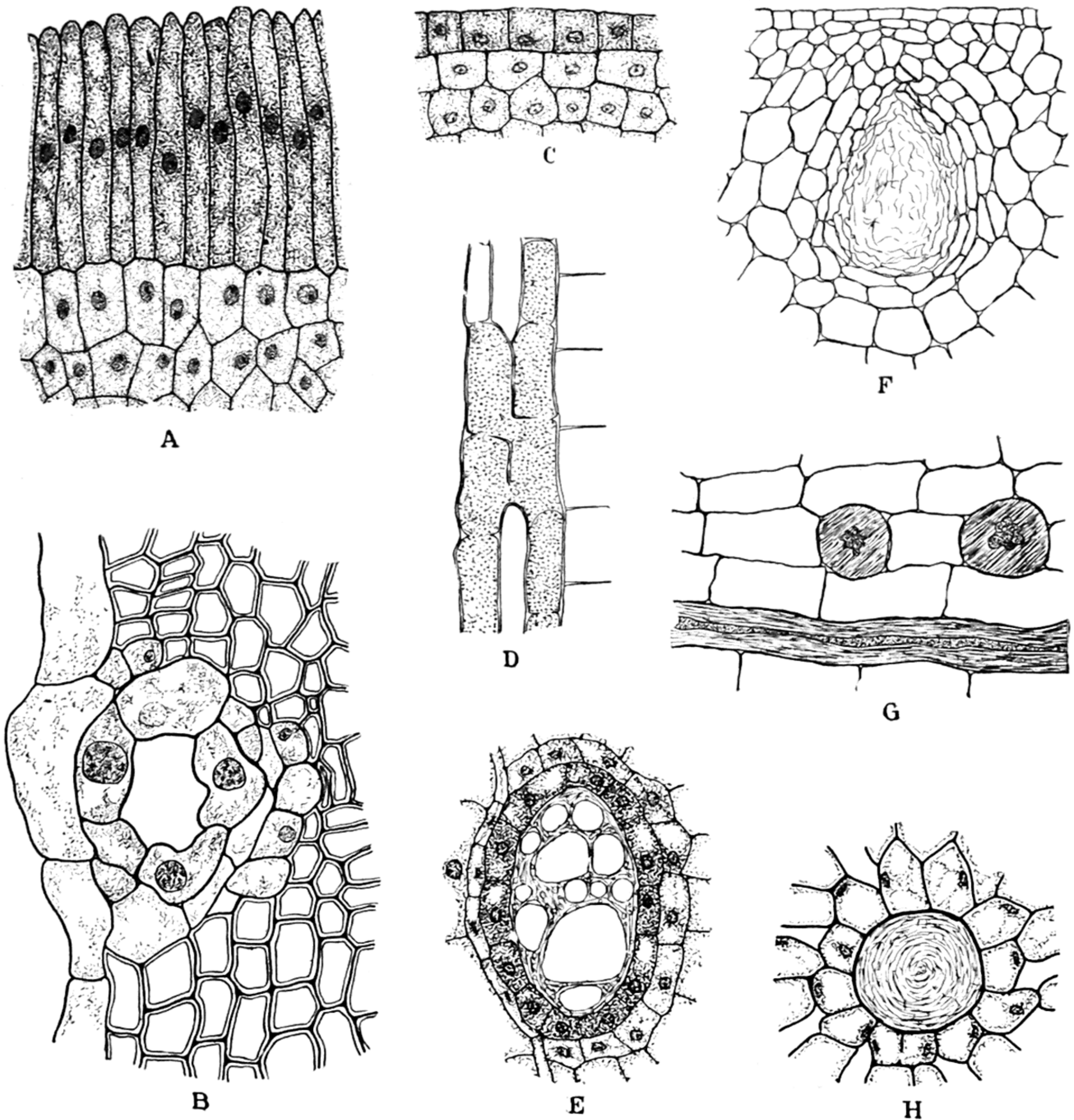


FIG. 55.—Secretory tissue. A, section of surface of nectary of *Euphorbia pulcherrima*; B, cross section of resin canal of *Pinus Strobus*; C, section of floral nectary of *Malus pumila*; D, latex vessel from *Tragopogon*, absorption of cross-walls in progress; E, cross section of oil canal of young fruit of *Angelica atropurpurea*; F, section of lysigenous oil cavity of rind of *Citrus sinensis*; G, latex cells from cortex of *Euphorbia splendens*; H, secretory cell of bud scale of *Liriodendron*. (D, after Scott.)

E, 56B,C,D); the secretory cell is usually large, with inconspicuous cytoplasm and large lumen filled with the secretion (Fig. 55H). This type of cell contains in various plants many different substances, such as essential oils in *Liriodendron*, *Sassafras*, and *Zingiber*, and mucilage in



many ferns. Glandular hairs often show elaborate specialization related to various functions, as, for example, the stinging hairs of the nettles, *Urtica* (Fig. 56A). Such specialized hairs are often multicellular.

**Glands.**—Secretory cells are often organized into special secreting structures commonly known as *glands*. The term “gland” is also used more loosely to indicate secreting structures of any kind, including those

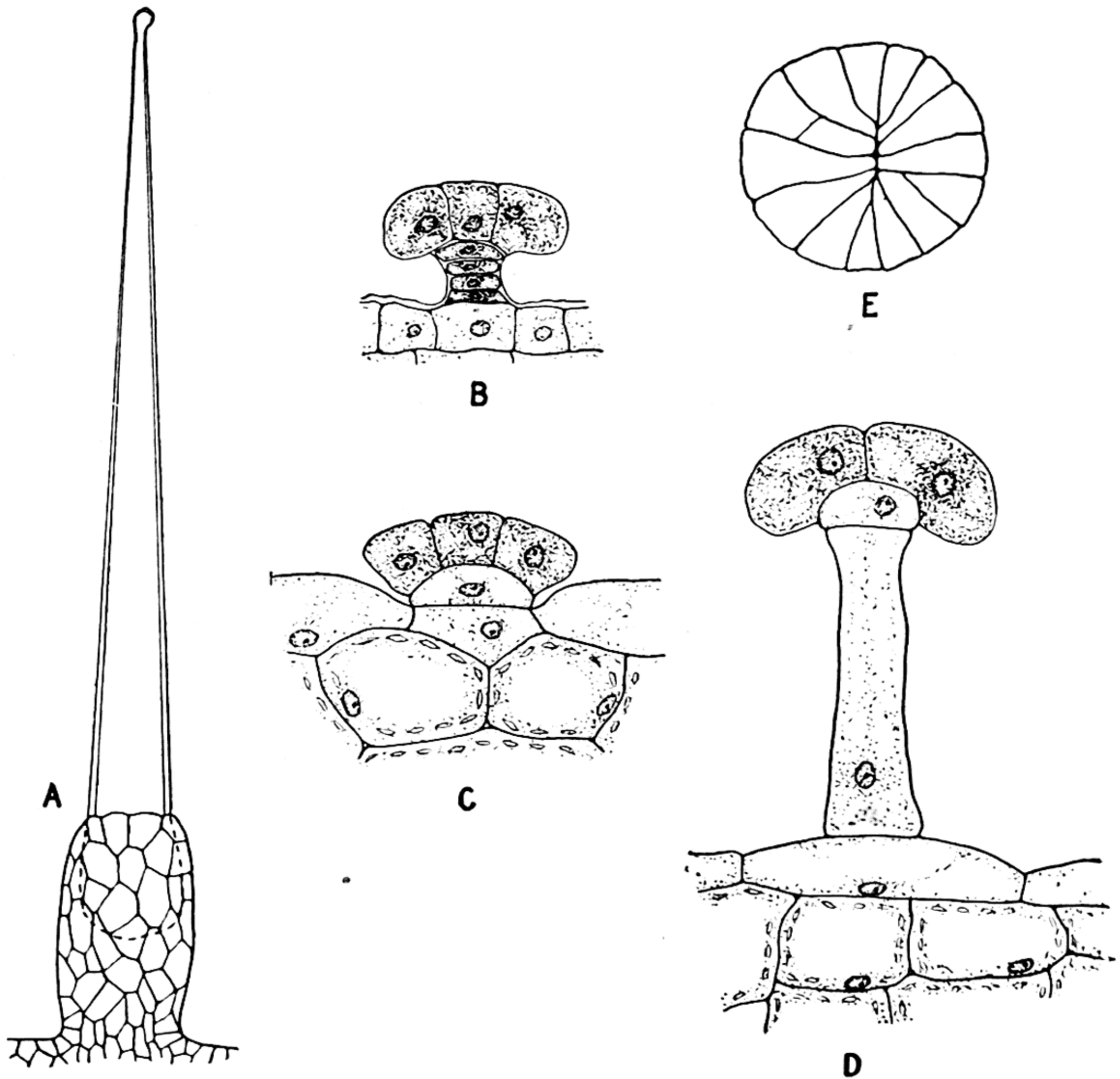


FIG. 56.—Secretory hairs. A, stinging hair from *Urtica gracilis*; B, glandular hair from ovary of *Gaylussacia baccata*; C, D, two types of glandular hairs from leaf of *Pinguicula*; E, top view of D. (The scale of A is much less than that of the others.)

of all stages of complexity of organization from the solitary secretory cell to the more elaborate structures. Glands are various in function, but among the more common types are those which secrete digestive enzymes, called *digestive glands*, and those which secrete nectar, known as *nectaries* (Fig. 55A, C). Other types are *hydathodes*, *resin ducts*, *oil ducts*, *laticiferous ducts* or *glands*. Glands or ducts may have central cavities where the secretion is stored or transferred. The cavities are either *schizogenous* (Chap. II), like the resin ducts of *Pinus* (Fig. 55B), or *lysigenous*, like the oil sacs in the rind of citrus fruits (Fig. 55F).



**Digestive Glands.**—In the majority of plants, enzyme secretion is not confined to specialized cells or tissues but is a characteristic of most living cells. In certain so-called “insectivorous” and “carnivorous” plants there are special glands which secrete protein-digesting enzymes; these enzymes act upon insects or other organisms so that the products of digestion can be absorbed by the plant. In *Drosera*, the secretory tissue is at the tips of the leaf “hairs” or “tentacles,” structures which also serve to imprison the insects. Here, in addition to the digestive enzymes, there are secreted viscid substances which hold the insects. In such plants as *Nepenthes* and *Sarracenia*, which normally have pitcher-like traps partly filled with liquid, the glands are sessile and secrete the enzymes into the liquid from which the products of digestion are absorbed. In some other genera, for example, *Dionaea* and *Pinguicula* (Fig. 56C,D), the glands are inactive except when stimulated by contact with animal matter. Less specialized glandular tissue of this type is found in the embryos of certain seeds, but such tissue is usually not clearly differentiated.

**Nectaries.**—Many entomophilous plants produce nectar which attracts insects. This substance is secreted by specialized cells either on the floral parts themselves or, more rarely, on bracts or other structures outside the flower. Usually, the secretion of nectar is from specialized epidermal cells which cover certain regions of the flower, rather than from elaborate organs adapted to secretion alone. Definite and elaborate structures do, however, occur in certain families, for example, the Euphorbiaceae. In the less specialized nectaries the secreting cells are superficial upon the floral parts and in most plants closely resemble the other epidermal cells of the region but lack a cuticle (Fig. 55C). Sometimes they are set off from the surrounding epidermal cells by a somewhat more columnar or papillose shape and by denser cytoplasm (Fig. 55A). The nectar is exuded through the wall and exposed upon the outer or nectariferous surface. The secreting cells of stigmatic surfaces are of the same nature as those of nectaries but are often not clearly set off from normal epidermal cells.

The *septal nectaries* or *glands* of many monocotyledonous flowers are pockets in the septal walls of syncarpous ovaries where the fusion of the carpel walls is incomplete and the epidermal cells are glandular. These glands may be simple, slit-like cavities or deep pockets with canal-like passageways to the surface of the ovary.

**Hydathodes.**—Many plants possess structurally modified regions where water is exuded under conditions of low transpiration and abundant soil moisture. These are known as *hydathodes* or sometimes as *water pores* or *water stomata*. Morphologically, they are considered to be enlarged stomata which serve for water secretion. Structurally, they



may resemble stomata closely but often they show elaborate structural specialization. Such structures do not "secrete" the fluid but merely provide and control the openings through which it escapes. Hydathodes occur commonly at the tips of leaves as in grasses, at the apices of serrations on the margins of leaves, and in other positions. They are found mostly on plants of humid climates.

**Resin, Oil, and Gum Ducts.**—In the gymnosperms generally and in many angiosperm families, resins, oils, gums, and other substances are secreted and conducted in ducts. In some plants, as in *Pinus*, these ducts or canals may form extensive systems extending both vertically and horizontally. In other plants the ducts may be local in occurrence and limited in extent, as in the fruits of the Umbelliferae. In *Pinus* and closely related genera, the resin ducts are schizogenous in nature, and when mature, have the structure of a tube with an epithelial lining (Fig. 55B,E). The oil ducts of the Umbelliferae (Fig. 55E) are of the same general nature. The secretory cells lining these cavities are thin-walled parenchyma with dense protoplasm. In general, these cells are elongate with the long dimension extending parallel with the long dimension of the duct. The substances secreted are various in nature and in some plants—for example, the resin of *Pinus* and of *Agathis* (Kauri gum), and some essential oils—are of much economic importance.

Another type of gland is that found in the rind of citrous fruits (Fig. 55F). Here there is a lysigenous cavity filled with essential oil and other substances that have been formed by the disintegration of the cells and as definite secretions before the breaking down of the tissues. The origin of this secretion is not well understood. These glands are the source of the essential oils of lemon and orange.

**Laticiferous Ducts.**—*Latex* is found in a considerable number of angiosperm families. This substance appears as a white, yellow, or reddish, sometimes slightly viscous fluid which has been shown to be an emulsion of proteins, sugars, gums, alkaloids, enzymes, rubber, and other substances suspended in a matrix of watery fluid. Starch grains may be abundantly present. The function of latex is not well understood. It is apparently secreted by the cells in which it is contained, and is conducted by them throughout the plant body. The latex of some plants is of great importance, especially as a source of rubber (*Hevea*, *Ficus*, etc.) chicle (*Achras*), and papain (*Carica*), as well as for other substances. Laticiferous ducts are of two types—one known as *nonarticulate latex ducts* or *latex cells* and the other as *articulate latex ducts* or *latex vessels*. The function and the contents of the two kinds of ducts are essentially the same, but the morphological nature and development are different.



*Nonarticulate Latex Ducts*.—These ducts are individual cells that extend as ramifying structures for long distances through the plant body (Fig. 57). The walls are soft and often thick, and the cytoplasm contains great numbers of nuclei. These ducts arise as typical small meristematic cells among other promeristem cells. They quickly become elongate, and their tips keep pace in growth with the surrounding meri-

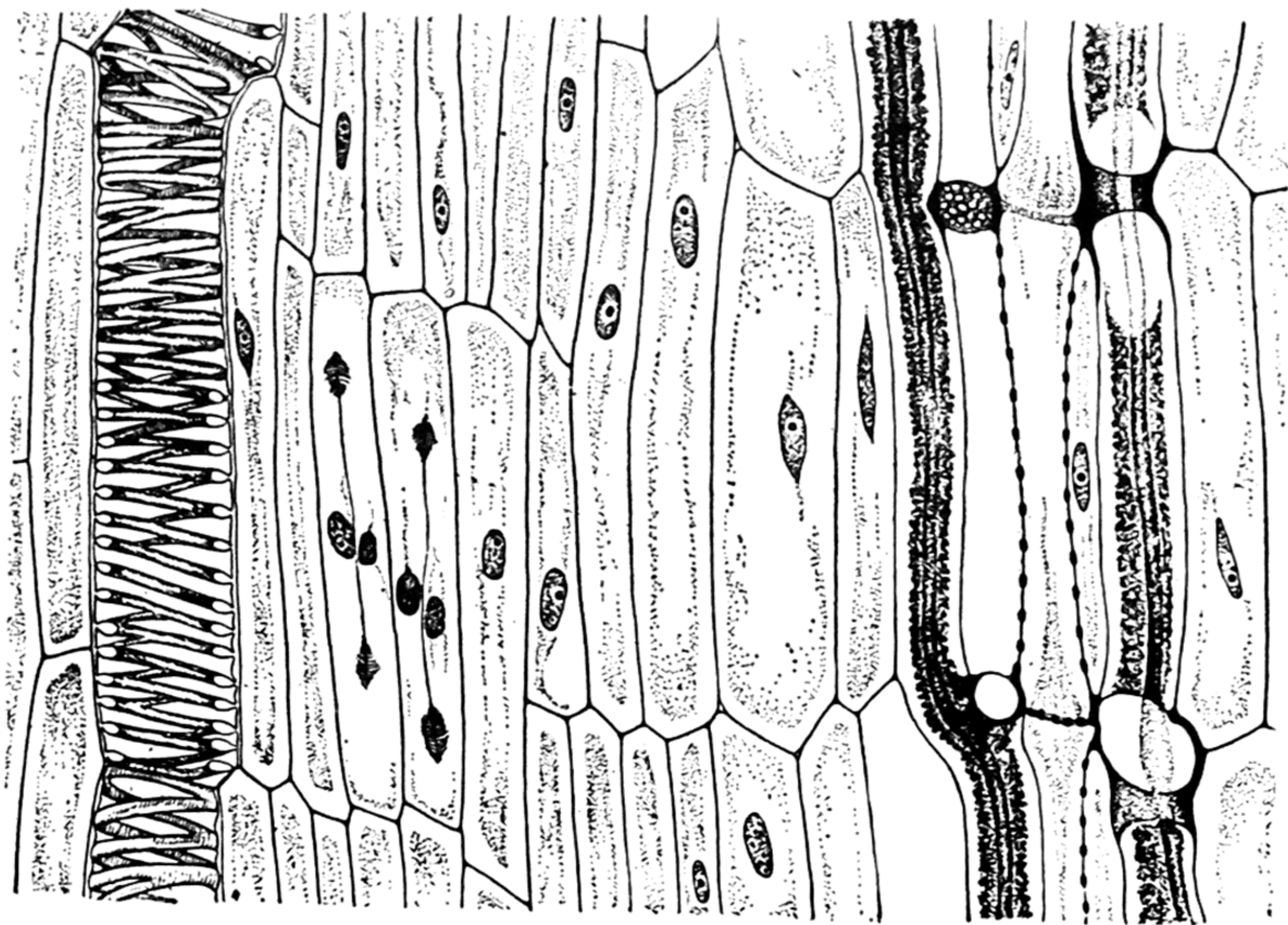


FIG. 57.—Radial section through growing cambium region in root of *Taraxacum kok-saghyz* (Russian dandelion). At the left, a mature, scalariform protoxylem vessel with simply perforated, transverse end walls; in the center, cambium and its recent derivatives, two with cell division incomplete, the phragmoplasts migrating to the end walls; at the right, mature phloem consisting of sieve tubes, articulate latex ducts, and storage parenchyma. (After Artschwager and McGuire.)

stem, penetrating among the new cells. They branch and extend through all the tissues of the plant, even in some genera (*Cryptostegia*) through secondary xylem. Although the branches of a cell come in contact with those of other cells, no anastomoses occur.

Two kinds of these nonarticulate ducts are described but the differences lie in the number per plant, the position of origin, and extent in the plant body rather than in structure or function. In one kind the cells arise only once, in small number, in the embryo. These few cells, extending with the meristems, ramify through the entire plant. The ducts of the *Asclepiadaceae*, most of the *Apocynaceae* and *Euphorbiaceae*, and those of some other families are of this kind. Ducts of the other kind arise repeatedly in the meristems and ramify into adjacent tissues but are restricted in their growth to one internode and attached leaf and



branch. The ducts of the Urticaceae and those of some of the Apocynaceae (*Vinca*) are of this type.

*Articulate Latex Ducts*.—These ducts originate in the meristems from rows of cells by the absorption, complete or partial, of the separating walls early in the ontogeny of the cells. By branching and frequent anastomoses, a highly complex system is built up. A duct of this type resembles a xylem vessel in that it is made up of a series of cells united to form a tube by the dissolution of walls, but the latex tube is living and coenocytic. The Papaveraceae (poppy), Caricaceae (papaya), Compositae (dandelion), Musaceae (banana), and the genus *Hevea* (Brazilian rubber tree) have this type of laticiferous ducts.

### References

(See also Chaps. V, VII, and VIII for references to vascular tissues.)

- ABBE, L. B., and A. S. CRAFTS: Phloem of white pine and other coniferous species, *Bot. Gaz.*, **100**, 695–722, 1939.
- ALEXANDROV, W. G. and K. J. ABESSADYE: Ueber die Struktur der Seitenwände der Siebröhren, *Planta*, **3**, 77–89, 1927.
- ANDERSON, D. B.: A microchemical study of the structure and development of the flax fibers, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **14**, 187–211, 1927.
- ARTSCHWAGER, E. F.: Anatomy of the vegetative organs of the sugar beet, *Jour. Agr. Res.*, **33**, 143–176, 1926.
- : Contribution to the morphology and anatomy of guayule (*Parthenium argentatum*), *U.S.D.A. Tech. Bull.* 842, 1–33, 1943.
- : Contribution to the morphology and anatomy of *Cryptostegia grandiflora*, *U.S.D.A. Tech. Bull.* 915, 1946.
- , and R. C. MCGUIRE: Contribution to the morphology and anatomy of the Russian dandelion (*Taraxacum kok-saghyz*), *U.S.D.A. Tech. Bull.* 843, 1943.
- BAILEY, I. W.: The effect of the structure of wood upon its permeability, 1. *Amer. Ry. Assoc. Bull.* 174, 1915.
- : The structure of the bordered pits of conifers and its bearing on the tension hypothesis of the ascent of sap in plants, *Bot. Gaz.*, **62**, 133–142, 1916.
- : The problem of differentiating and classifying tracheids, fiber-tracheids, and libriform wood fibers, *Trop. Woods*, **45**, 18–23, 1936.
- : The development of vessels in angiosperms and its significance in morphological research, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **31**, 421–428, 1944.
- BARANETZKI, J.: Épaississement des parois des éléments parenchymateux, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 7 sér., **4**, 134–201, 1886.
- BEAUREGARD, H.: “Des Organes glandulaires des végétaux,” 108 p., Paris, 1879.
- BEHRENS, W. J.: Die Nectarien der Blüthen, *Flora*, **37**, 2–11, 17–27, 49–54, 81–90, 113–128, 145–153, 233–240, 241–247, 305–314, 369–375, 433–457, 1879.
- BLASER, H. W.: Anatomy of *Cryptostegia grandiflora* with special reference to the latex system, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **32**, 135–141, 1945.
- BONNIER, G.: “Les Nectaires,” Bibliothèque de l'Académie de Médecine, Paris, 1879.
- CHEADLE, V. I.: The occurrence and types of vessels in the various organs of the plant in the Monocotyledoneae, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **29**, 441–450, 1942.
- : The origin and certain trends of specialization of the vessel in the Monocotyledoneae, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **30**, 11–17, 1943.



- : Vessel specialization in the late metaxylem of the various organs in the Monocotyledoneae, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **30**, 484–490, 1943.
- : Specialization of vessels within the xylem of each organ in the Monocotyledoneae, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **31**, 81–92, 1944.
- , and N. B. WHITFORD: Observations on the phloem in the Monocotyledoneae, I. The occurrence and phylogenetic specialization in structure of the sieve tubes in the metaphloem, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **28**, 623–627, 1941.
- DANGEARD, P. A.: Essai sur l'anatomie comparée du liber interne dans quelques familles de dicotyledones. *Le Botaniste*, **17**, 225–364, 1926.
- ESAU, K.: Ontogeny of phloem in the sugar beet (*Beta vulgaris*), *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **21**, 632–644, 1934.
- : Ontogeny and structure of collenchyma and of vascular tissues in celery petioles, *Hilgardia*, **10**, 431–467, 1936.
- : Vessel development in celery, *Hilgardia*, **10**, 479–488, 1936.
- : Ontogeny and structure of the phloem of tobacco, *Hilgardia*, **11**, 343–406, 1938.
- : The multinucleate condition in fibers of tobacco, *Hilgardia*, **11**, 427–434, 1938.
- : Development and structure of the phloem tissue, *Bot. Rev.*, **5**, 373–432, 1939.
- and W. B. HEWITT: Structure of end walls in differentiating vessels, *Hilgardia*, **13**, 229–244, 1940.
- FOSTER, A. S.: Structure and development of sclereids in the petiole of *Camellia japonica* L., *Bull. Torrey Bot. Club*, **71**, 302–326, 1944.
- : Origin and development of sclereids in the foliage of *Trochodendron aralioides* Sieb. & Zucc., *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **32**, 456–468, 1945.
- FREY-WYSSLING, A.: Saftergusses aus turgeszenten Kapillären, *Ber. Schweiz. Bot. Ges.*, **42**, 254–283, 1933.
- FRITSCHÉ, E.: Recherches anatomiques sur le *Taraxacum vulgare* Schrk., *Arch. Inst. Bot. Liège.*, **5**, 1–24, 1914.
- FROST, F. H.: Histology of the wood of angiosperms, I. The nature of the pitting between tracheary and parenchymatous elements, *Bull. Torrey Bot. Club*, **56**, 259–263, 1929.
- : Specialization in secondary xylem of dicotyledons, I. Origin of vessel, *Bot. Gaz.*, **89**, 67–94, 1930.
- : Specialization in secondary xylem of dicotyledons, II. Evolution of end wall of vessel segment, *Bot. Gaz.*, **90**, 198–212, 1930.
- : Specialization in secondary xylem of dicotyledons, III. Specialization of lateral wall of vessel segment, *Bot. Gaz.*, **91**, 88–96, 1931.
- GAUCHER, L.: Du rôle des laticifères, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 8 sér., **12**, 241–260, 1900.
- HANDLEY, W. R. C.: Some observations on the problem of vessel length determination in woody dicotyledons, *New Phyt.*, **35**, 456–471, 1936.
- HILL, A. W.: The histology of the sieve tubes of angiosperms, *Ann. Bot.*, **22**, 245–290, 1908.
- HUBER, B.: Das Siebröhresystem unserer Bäume und seine jahreszeitlichen Veränderungen, *Jahrb. Wiss. Bot.*, **88**, 176–242, 1939.
- KROTKOV, G.: A review of literature on *Taraxacum kok-saghyz* Rod., *Bot. Rev.*, **11**, 417–461, 1945.
- LEBLOIS, A.: Recherches sur l'origine et le développement des canaux sécréteurs et des poches sécrétrices, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 7 sér., **6**, 247–330, 1887.
- LEEMANN, A.: Das Problem der Sekretzellen, *Planta*, **6**, 216–233, 1928.
- LÉGER, L. J.: Recherches sur l'origine et les transformations des éléments libériens, *Mém. Soc. Linn. Normandie*, **19**, 49–182, 1897.



- LEHMANN, C.: Studien über den Bau und die Entwicklungsgeschichte von Ölzellen, *Planta*, **1**, 343–373, 1925.
- MACDANIELS, L. H.: The histology of the phloem in certain woody angiosperms, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **5**, 347–378, 1918.
- MARTINET, J.: Organes de sécrétion des végétaux, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 5 sér., **14**, 91–232, 1872.
- MAYBERRY, M. W.: Hydrocarbon secretions and internal secretory systems of the Carduaceae, Ambrosiaceae, and Cichoriaceae, *Bull. Univ. Kansas*, **37**, 71–112, 1936.
- MÜLLER, C.: Ein Beitrag zur Kenntnis der Formen des Collenchyms, *Ber. Deut. Bot. Ges.*, **8**, 150–166, 1890.
- PEIRCE, G. J.: Water and plant anatomy, *Proc. Calif. Acad. Sci.*, **25**, 215–220, 1944.
- RENDLE, B. J.: Gelatinous wood fibers, *Trop. Woods*, **52**, 11–19, 1937.
- SCHAFFSTEIN, G.: Untersuchungen an ungegliederten Milchröhren, *Beih. Bot. Centralbl.*, **49**, 197–220, 1932.
- SCOTT, D. H.: The development of articulated laticiferous vessels, *Quart. Jour. Micro. Sci.*, new ser., **22**, 136–153, 1882.
- SCOTT, F. M.: Differentiation in the spiral vessels of *Ricinus communis*, *Bot. Gaz.*, **99**, 69–79, 1937.
- SPERLICH, A.: Das trophische Parenchym. B. Excretionsgewebe, In Linsbauer, K.: "Handbuch der Pflanzenanatomie," IV., 1939.
- STRUCKMEYER, B. E., and R. H. ROBERTS: Phloem development and flowering, *Bot. Gaz.*, **100**, 600–606, 1939.
- TETLEY, U.: The secretory system of the roots of the Compositae, *New Phyt.*, **24**, 138–161, 1925.
- TOBLER, F.: Die mechanischen Elemente und das mechanische System, In Linsbauer, K.: "Handbuch der Pflanzenanatomie," IV, 1939.
- VESTAL, P. A., and M. R. VESTAL: The formation of septa in the fiber-tracheids of *Hypericum Androsaemum* L., *Bot. Mus. Lfts., Harvard Univ.*, **8**, 169–188, 1940.
- WILSON, C. L.: Lignification of mature phloem in herbaceous types, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **239–244**, 1922.
- WORSDELL, W. C.: On "transfusion-tissue": its origin and function in the leaves of gymnospermous plants, *Trans. Linn. Soc. Bot.*, 2 ser., **5**, 301–319, 1897.
- ZIMMERMAN, J. G.: Über die extrafloralen Nektarien der Angiospermen, dissertation, Dresden, 1932.



## CHAPTER V

### THE PRIMARY BODY

#### THE PRIMARY TISSUES AND TISSUE SYSTEMS

The developing embryo of a vascular plant is early differentiated into an axis and appendages, and the axis is in a short time differentiated into stem and root. These first-formed parts of the plant body grow rapidly and (except for the interruption of the resting period of seeds) soon become mature. The root and stem remain meristematic at the tip, but the appendages, which are of limited growth, become mature throughout. Exceptions to the continued growth of the axis occur, for example, in flowers, thorns, and specialized roots; but normally the apical growth of the axis is unlimited, and by its activity the root and stem are increased in length, and the lateral structures, both the appendages of various ranks and the branches of the stem, are added. Branches of the root develop in a different way (Chap. X); adventitious roots and stems develop nearly always from new meristems formed in permanent or in traumatic tissue.

Apical meristems build up the new parts of the stem and root and form the appendages. These new parts of the body are structurally and functionally complete, at least temporarily, and constitute the *primary body* of the plant. *Secondary tissues*, constituting the *secondary body*, may be added later. These tissues are accessory only; they replace or reinforce structurally or functionally certain primary tissues. They increase the volume of existing primary types, as in xylem and phloem, or add a new kind of tissue which in function replaces a primary tissue of different kind, for example, cork.

The primary body is the fundamental morphological unit; the development of a secondary body does not change morphological structure but may in part conceal it. All fundamental tissues and body parts are present when primary growth is completed. These are, in the axis, the central cylinder with its xylem, phloem, pith, pericycle, and endodermis; the cortex; the epidermis; and, in the leaf, the corresponding regions and tissues. These parts show great variety of structure in different plants and in different parts of the same plant; for example, the vascular tissues of the central cylinder are arranged in one plant in a way entirely different from that in another plant, and at a node are differently placed than in



the adjacent internodes. Such variations of grosser general structure are discussed later in the chapter; the present discussion is confined to the histological and anatomical features of the various primary tissues and regions.

**Ontogeny of the Axis.**<sup>1</sup>—At or near the apex of the axis lie the apical cells, the persistent initiating cells which develop the primordia of every region (Fig. 58). The apical cells form many cells closely alike in all ways, building up a region in which there is little or no evidence of tissue differentiation, the *promeristem* (Chap. III) (Fig. 58a-a). The cells of the promeristem differentiate as they become older, showing evidence in changes of size, shape, wall thickness, etc., of the various cell types into which they will develop. With this step the promeristem passes over into meristem in which a certain amount of cell differentiation is evident, and this meristem in turn passes over into permanent tissue. If a group of cells is viewed at different periods in its development, it will be found in the various stages mentioned. And, since the growth of the axis is apical and the various structural features of the axis are likewise continuously formed, there are found at various distances back from the apex, stages of development representative of the stages through which a given group of cells will pass as the cells become older. In other words, the development through which a given part of the axis passes, over a period of time from its beginning until it reaches maturity, may be found at any one time in different levels of the axis, progressively farther and farther from the apex. Thus, development as seen in spatial extent supplies the story of development in time. (Differences in nodal and internodal structure are not considered here.) It is thus evident that a series of cross sections of the axis taken in turn farther and farther away from the apex give the history of development of a cross-sectional area. Such a series is shown in Fig. 58, which also shows in longitudinal section progressive differentiation without break in continuity. In order that a comprehension of primary structure may be had, it is essential that this gradual differentiation in time be understood, as well as the fact that this may be seen expressed in space in the longitudinal extent of the growing axis tip.

The transition from meristem to permanent tissue does not take place simultaneously throughout a given level in the axis; there is overlapping of meristem upon mature tissues. For example, Fig. 58 c-c shows a stage where the pith and a part of the vascular tissues are mature. Other cells beside or around these are immature, being in the stage of procambium or even of promeristem. In a similar way, primary growth of a given section of the axis is not completed throughout the region in question

<sup>1</sup> Chap. III contains a more detailed discussion of the early stages in axis development.



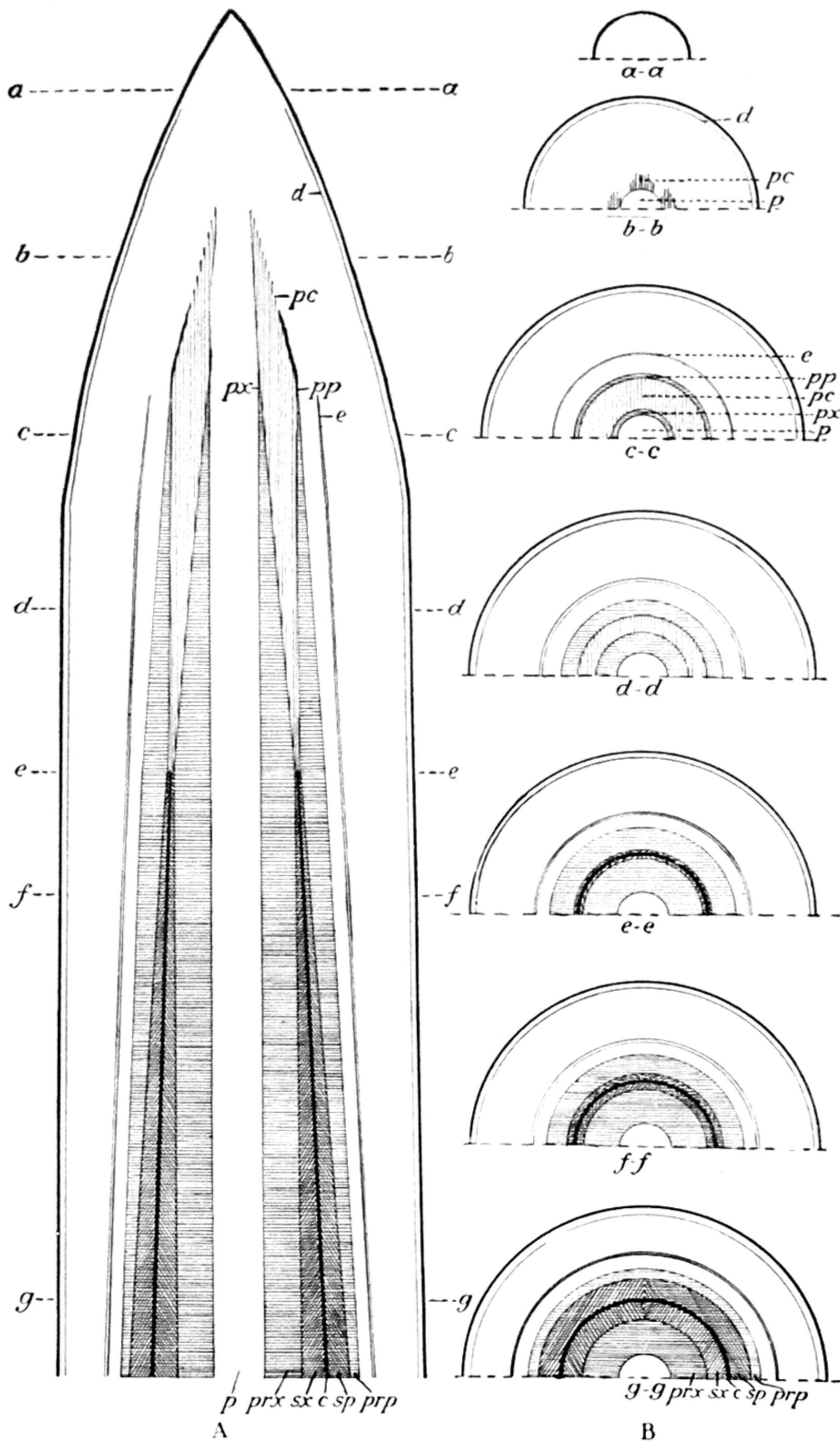


FIG. 58.—Diagrams showing development of the stem (leaf primordia, traces, gaps, and nodal differentiation omitted). *A*, longitudinal section of tip of elongating axis; *B*, *a-a* to *g-g*, cross sections of the axis at levels *a-a*, *b-b*, etc. At *a-a*, the entire axis is promeristem; at *b-b* the dermatogen (*d*), procambium (*pc*), and pith (*p*) are in early stages of development; at *c-c*, the procambium has increased in amount, forming a complete cylinder; the outermost and innermost procambium has become protophloem (*pp*) and protoxylem (*px*); the endodermis (*e*) is evident; at *d-d*, the procambium is less in amount, large portions of this tissue adjacent to the protophloem and protoxylem having become phloem and xylem; at *e-e*, the remaining layer of procambium has become the cambium, and has formed the first secondary phloem (*sp*) and secondary xylem (*sc*) cells; at *f-f*, the secondary tissues are increased in amount; the primary phloem (*prp*) is reduced by crushing; the cambium has moved outward; at *g-g*, further secondary growth has occurred.



before secondary growth begins; that is, there is here again an overlapping in development. It is impossible definitely to delimit by transverse planes the promeristem or the primary tips, but this can be done approximately.

Appendages consist chiefly of primary tissues. Leaves may be wholly primary but often the larger veins possess secondary tissues. The ontogeny of the leaf is discussed in Chap. XII.

### PRIMARY VASCULAR TISSUE

**The Procambium.**—In the differentiation of axis and leaf from promeristematic tissue, the formation of a uniseriate external layer is usually the first evidence of the complex structure seen in the mature organ. The

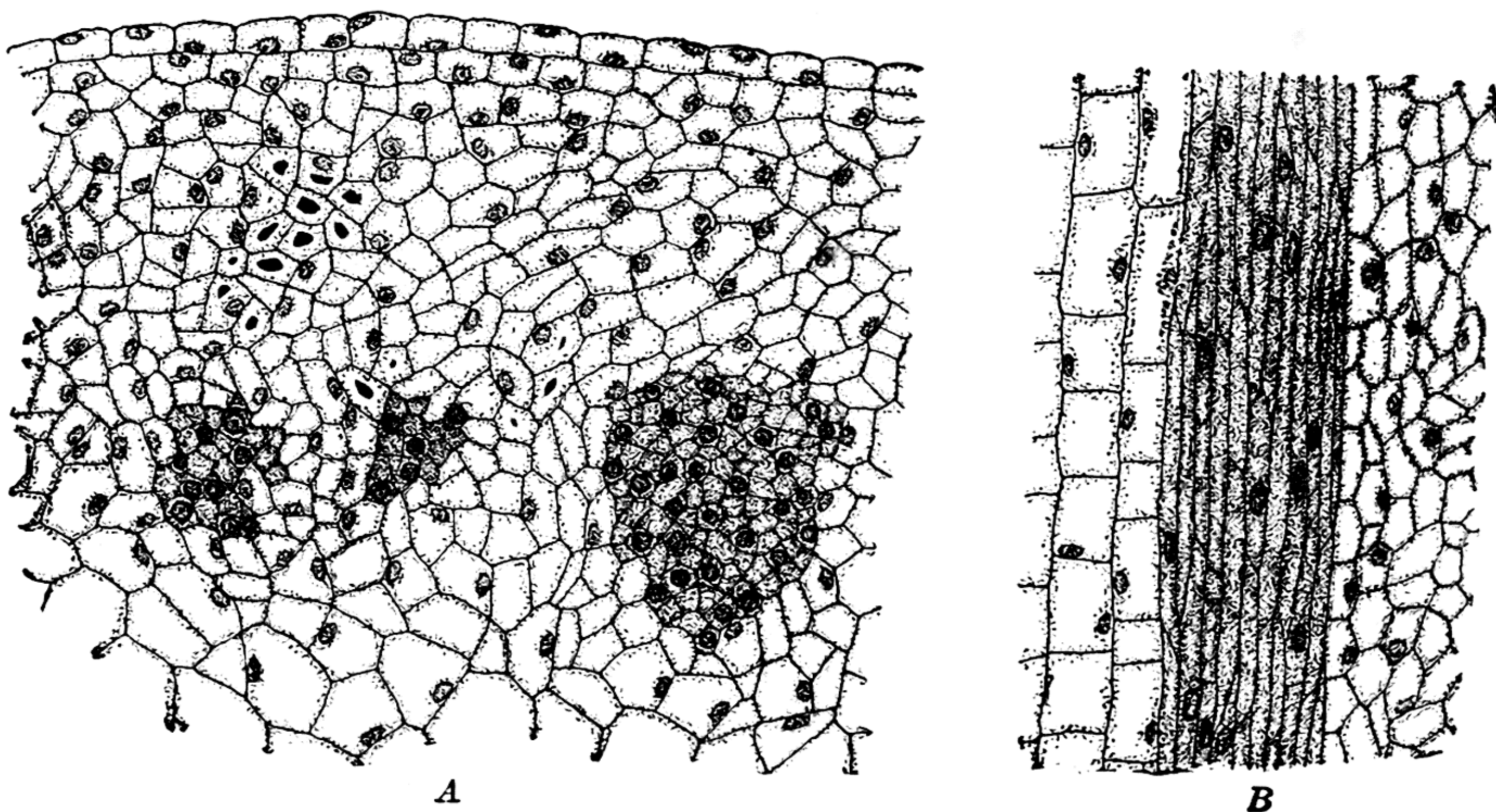


FIG. 59.—Procambium in cross and longitudinal section in stem tip of *Linum usitatissimum*. The procambium cells have smaller transverse diameter, are elongate, and have more dense cytoplasm. (At the stage illustrated here the cells of the pith are enlarging and no longer promeristematic.)

first cells to mature, however, in either leaf or axis, belong to the vascular tissue. In the promeristem, where all cells are essentially isodiametric and alike, continuing longitudinal divisions set apart in some areas strands of elongate, slender cells with dense cytoplasm. This meristematic tissue forms the primary phloem and xylem and is known as the *procambium*.<sup>1</sup> (The term “procambium” is used here to indicate the meristematic tissue that gives rise to the morphological vascular units, not as applied to any elongate meristematic cells that are cambium-like in form.) The form

<sup>1</sup> The terms “provascular tissue” and “provascular meristem” have recently been used in place of “procambium.”



and arrangement of the procambium strands foreshadow the structure of the primary vascular skeleton. The first procambium appears as isolated strands very close to the apex in stem and root, commonly at a distance of only a few micra. It is continuous backward in the older tissues with older promeristem strands and mature vascular tissue, that is, development is acropetal.

The slender procambium strands increase in diameter by longitudinal cell division within themselves and by the addition of new cells upon their borders by transformation of adjacent promeristem cells. Other strands may appear a little later in other positions in the promeristem. Increase in size of the strands may be so great that some or all of the strands fuse,

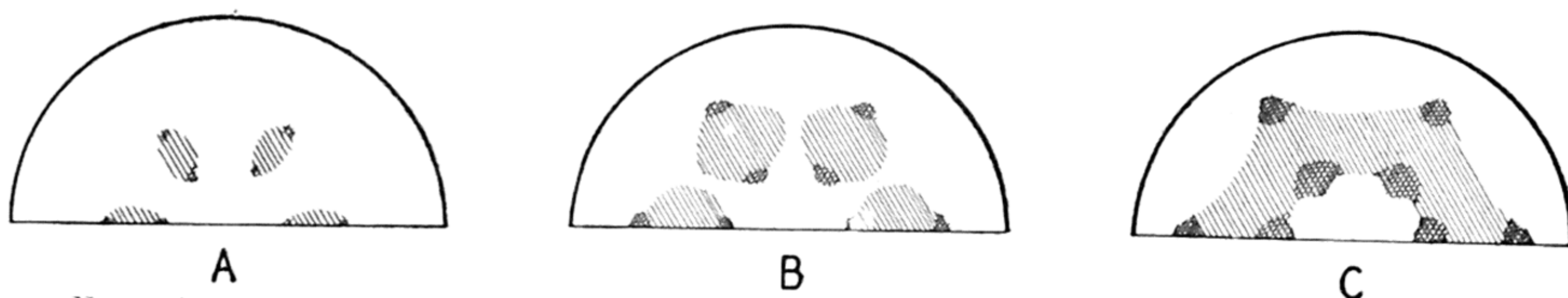


FIG. 60.—Diagrams showing stages in the development of a procambium cylinder from promeristem. *A*, the first procambium has appeared in the promeristem in the form of strands; *B*, the strands of procambium have increased in diameter, approaching one another, and the oldest portions (on the outside and the inside) have become phloem and xylem; *C*, the strands of procambium have united laterally, and more procambium has matured as phloem and xylem. In a later stage all procambium will have become vascular tissue, forming a primary vascular cylinder.

and a hollow cylinder or a solid central core may be formed. Ultimately the procambium skeleton so built up has the form of the vascular skeleton of the region. But at no one time is the complete procambium mass present because the oldest procambium cells quickly mature into phloem and xylem cells, often long before the last of the procambium cells appear.

As new cells are formed in a strand, cell length increases greatly, and the ends become more tapering. Increase in length is related to the rate and extent of increase in length of the region in which the cells lie. In this way the tissue keeps pace with the increase in the surrounding tissues with few or no transverse divisions. In later maturing procambium cells, the transverse diameter of the cells may also increase progressively. Both these changes are reflected in the size and form of the vascular cells formed from them: the first sieve tubes, tracheids, and vessels are short and exceedingly slender; the later matured cells increasingly longer and of somewhat greater transverse diameter. The difference in length is partly obscured by the stretching of first-formed cells.

As procambium develops, the diameter of the organ is increasing, and the promeristem cells are multiplying and enlarging. Spatial changes thus necessarily take place in the position of the strands in relation to each other and to the center of the organ. Further, within



each strand, new-cell formation brings about spatial changes of the cells on the borders. In this way, as growth continues, the first phloem and the first xylem cells, which usually mature on the inner and outer margins of slender strands, are separated more and more widely as the strand becomes larger (Fig. 60).

The first-maturing cells in a young strand are phloem cells; the first xylem cells soon follow. The first mature phloem cells are close to the apex in both stem and root, at a distance of a few micra, frequently within one millimeter (Fig. 42).

The order of maturing, longitudinally, of the phloem cells in a strand is acropetal, like that of the procambium; that of the xylem is both

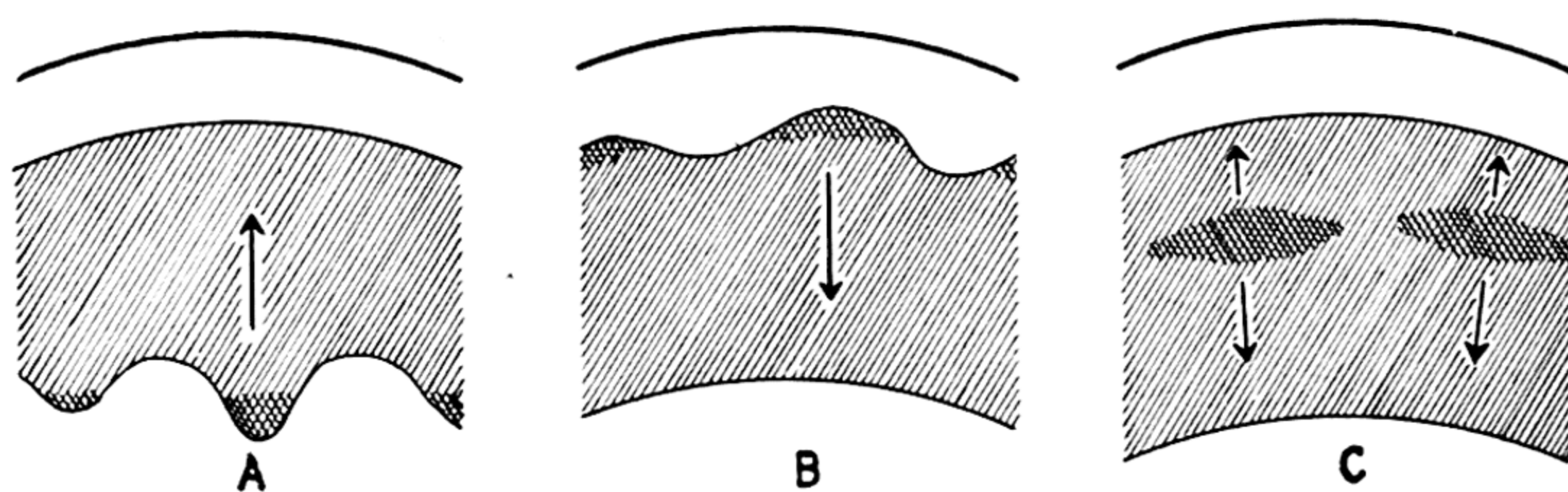


FIG. 61.—Diagrams showing order of development of primary vascular tissue transversely in an organ. *A*, centrifugal; *B*, centripetal; *C*, both centrifugal and centripetal. These diagrams may also illustrate types of xylem from the standpoint of order of development: *A*, endarch; *B*, exarch; *C*, mesarch.

acropetal and basipetal, from one or more points of beginning. Definiteness and uniformity of development transversely in a procambium strand are important characteristics of primary vascular tissue. The points of beginning and the order of cell maturation are constant for certain organs and for the major plant groups. The first xylem and phloem cells mature usually on the inner and outer margins of the strands and are separated radially by procambium in stems and leaves (Fig. 60) and tangentially by promeristem in roots. Order of development from the point of beginning is radial (as to the axis) and lateral in stems and leaves, radial only or chiefly in roots. After the first vascular cells mature, divisions in the central promeristem of the bundle tend to be in such planes that the later matured cells stand more or less in radial rows. This is especially true of herbs, vines, and woody plants of the more advanced families.

**Centripetal and Centrifugal Growth.**—The development radially in a procambial strand of mature vascular cells progressively from the point of beginning toward the center of the axis is known as *centripetal growth* (Fig. 61*B*), and that away from the center of the axis, *centrifugal growth* (Fig. 61*A*). The development of phloem is probably always centripetal, whereas that of xylem is sometimes centripetal and sometimes centrifugal.



Less commonly, the first-formed cells are situated, not at the edge of the procambium, but nearer the center, and development is then both toward and away from the center of the axis (Fig. 61C). In xylem when the development is toward the center of the axis, *centripetal xylem* is formed, and the xylem group or strand is said to be *exarch* (Fig. 61B); when it is *away from* the center of the axis, *centrifugal xylem* is formed and the xylem unit is said to be *endarch* (Fig. 61A). When development is such that both centripetal and centrifugal xylem are formed—even though the amount of one type be very small—the xylem is *mesarch* (Fig. 61C). (Development must always be considered as *relative to the center of the axis*, not to the center of the vascular bundle in question.) The terms “centripetal growth” and “centrifugal growth” refer only to sequence of appearance and of maturation of procambium cells in definite directions and do not imply growth in the sense of successive new-cell formation. The distinction of xylem as exarch, endarch, and mesarch is of morphological and phylogenetic importance because each type is characteristic of definite organs or parts of organs and is restricted more or less in its distribution in the larger plant groups. For example, the root is always exarch; the stem of seed plants is endarch; the axis of the club mosses is exarch; mesarch xylem is common in the ferns and infrequent elsewhere.

**The First Vascular Elements: Protophloem and Protoxylem.**—The first cells of the phloem to mature are known as the *protophloem*; those of the xylem, the *protoxylem*. These cells differ markedly from later formed cells of the same tissues in cell type; in size and shape, being very slender and long because stretched; and, in xylem cells, in the structure of the wall. Since they are formed very early in the ontogeny of the tissue in which they lie, they are subject to stresses due to increase in diameter and particularly to increase in length of the organ. To these stresses the surrounding meristematic cells accommodate themselves by new-cell formation and by increase in size, but the cells of the protophloem and protoxylem are mature and no longer subject to growth changes. In the region in which protophloem and protoxylem lie, the greatest change occurring is increase in length. The stresses brought about by this elongation tend to stretch the already matured cells. To such longitudinal stretching protoxylem and protophloem cells are, to a limited extent, adaptable. The cells are long and slender with walls which are thin and of cellulose, reinforced in protoxylem by bands of lignified secondary wall (Fig. 62). These bands, in the form of rings and spirals, prevent to some extent the collapse of the thin, plastic walls and the consequent closure of the lumen after stretching.

To those phloem and xylem cells which are thus capable of stretching, the terms “protophloem” and “protoxylem” are restricted. The parts



of phloem and xylem which are not stretched by elongation of the region in which they lie are known as *metaphloem* and *metaxylem* respectively. Thus primary phloem consists of protophloem and metaphloem; primary

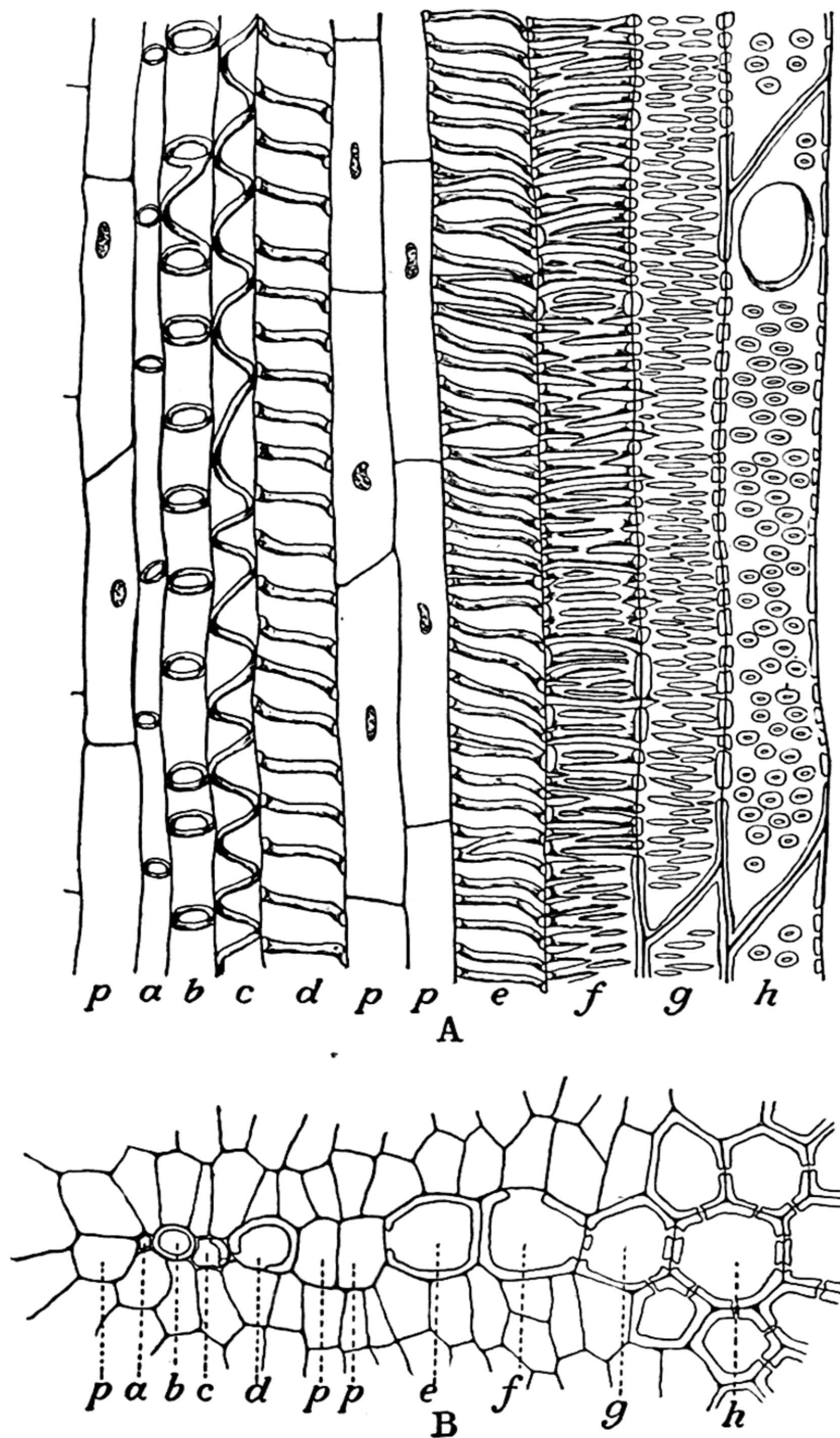


FIG. 62.—Protoxylem and metaxylem in transverse, *B*, and longitudinal, *A*, section in *Lobelia*. *a*, *b*, annular elements; *c*, *d*, *e*, spiral elements; *f*, scalariform element; *g*, scalariform-reticulate element; *h*, pitted vessel; *p*, parenchyma cell.

xylem, of protoxylem and metaxylem. In secondary phloem and secondary xylem no protophloem and protoxylem exist, for secondary tissues develop only after elongation ceases. A strand of xylem may consist wholly of protoxylem—the condition in most very small vascular bundles—or wholly of metaxylem, as in some slow-growing roots and rhizomes.



but commonly both types of xylem are present, the proportions varying with the plant, the organ, and the rapidity of growth of the region in question. The phloem varies similarly.

It is obvious that in exarch xylem the metaxylem lies internal to the protoxylem (Fig. 61B, the protoxylem heavily shaded); in endarch xylem, external to the protoxylem (Fig. 61A); in mesarch xylem, both toward the inside and toward the outside of the protoxylem (Fig. 61C).

**Primary Phloem.**—The first vascular cells to mature in a given region are sieve elements of the phloem—sieve cells in gymnosperms and lower groups, sieve tubes in angiosperms. These cells are of the protophloem type. Their structure is difficult to determine because they closely resemble the procambium cells from which they are derived. Their diameter is very small; they live only a few days; they are soon greatly stretched, crushed between adjacent cells, and absorbed.

In phloem, as also in xylem, the first-formed cells are longest, because they develop while the region in which they lie is elongating most rapidly and they are therefore most stretched. Later formed cells are progressively shorter until metaphloem is formed. Similarly, the earliest of these cells have in general the smallest transverse diameter, and this diameter increases progressively in later formed cells. The change in diameter of these cells is related to the similar change in the procambium cells from which they mature. The first-formed phloem and xylem cells mature while all procambium cells are very slender.

The very first mature phloem cells of a region can be found only when the procambium is still in early stages. Later all evidence of their earlier presence has disappeared. Parenchyma cells and fibers mature later from the surrounding procambium cells and obliterate the spaces they occupied. The first protophloem probably consists only of sieve cells or sieve tubes distributed among procambium cells. Companion cells are rare or absent. Later, the procambium cells about these first-maturing cells differentiate as parenchyma cells and fibers. The fibers may be aggregated in clusters or masses which soon appear homogeneous because the early formed sieve tubes have disappeared, or they may be mingled with phloem parenchyma. These phloem fibers constitute what have been in many plants called pericyclic fibers. They, with the phloem parenchyma about them, make up a part, perhaps sometimes all, of the tissues commonly distinguished as pericycle. Mature conducting cells of protophloem are present in very young meristematic tissue—in stem and leaf tips as close to the apex as 0.3 mm; in root apices, about 1 mm.

The metaphloem is a complex tissue with well-developed cells of all types—sieve cells or sieve tubes, companion cells, parenchyma cells, and sclerenchyma in the form of fibers or sometimes sclereids. Parenchyma



cells are added to the sieve cells or sieve-tube elements as soon as metaphloem begins to be formed. The various cell types are essentially the same as those of the secondary phloem of the same plant. The metaphloem, like the protophloem, may be early crushed. In woody plants and in herbs with well-developed secondary vascular tissues, the soft cells of the primary phloem are often completely destroyed within a short time after maturing by the development of secondary tissues beneath them. The remnants of the flattened cells may exist for some time or be quickly absorbed like those of the protophloem.

Primary phloem is of only temporary functional importance where secondary phloem is developed in considerable amount. Where little or no secondary phloem is formed, the primary phloem persists throughout the life of the organ and may be of the greatest importance physiologically. Structurally, such phloem is highly specialized, consisting usually only of sieve tubes of the highest type and their accompanying companion cells. Such is the condition in the phloem of most monocotyledons, and of such dicotyledons as *Cucurbita*, *Ranunculus*, and *Podophyllum*. In these genera the phloem of the bundles is in part secondary, but the primary and secondary phloem differ little histologically except that the protophloem may lack companion cells. In other herbaceous plants, such as *Solanum*, *Aster*, and *Lobelia*, where definite cylinders of secondary vascular tissue occur, but where the amount of secondary phloem is small, the primary phloem persists as functioning tissue through the life of the stem. In such forms the sieve tubes and companion cells often occur in small groups and are remarkable for their small size. An entire group may be of no greater diameter than one of the adjacent parenchyma cells (Fig. 138).

**Primary Xylem.**—Protophloem probably always consists only of one kind of cell, but protoxylem is a complex tissue made up of tracheids, vessels, and parenchyma cells. Fibers are probably always absent. Parenchyma cells surround the earliest formed tracheal cells and appear to mature with or soon after the conducting cells. (The term "protoxylem" is commonly applied only to the more or less isolated tracheids and vessels but is better used for the continuous tissue, including the parenchyma cells.)

The water-conducting cells of the protoxylem are the characteristic cells of this tissue because of the peculiar adaptation of their walls to the stretching which they normally undergo. The thin, plastic, primary walls of these empty cells are strengthened by the addition of a lignified secondary wall in the form of narrow rings and spiral bands. These bands apparently help to keep the conducting channels open during the elongation of the cells. The first-formed protoxylem cells have small



amounts of secondary wall in the form of rings spaced at intervals along the cell (Fig. 62a,b). Such cells are called *annular cells*, or *annular elements*, or, more specifically, *annular tracheids* or *annular vessels*. (The term "element" is often used in speaking of cells of the protoxylem when the cells in question may be either tracheids or vessels.) Cells formed a little later than annular cells possess secondary walls in the form of spiral bands; such cells are called *spiral cells*, or *spiral elements* (Fig. 62c,d,e). The flatness of the coils and, to some extent, the number of the bands increase in the cells formed successively later and later. The proportionate amount of secondary wall thus increases in the successively formed cells. The first-formed cells are subjected to an excessive amount of elongation, those formed later and later to less and less. Structurally, the cells formed at any given period are adapted to the amounts of elongation occurring during their formation and functioning period. Annular cells can be stretched to a greater extent than spiral cells; cells with steep spiral coils more readily than those with flat coils; those with one spiral more freely than those with several. Where the structure of the secondary wall suggests a spiral lying in flat coils, the coils fused at the corners of the cell, or where a more definitely ladder-like appearance is produced by transverse bar-like thickenings running from corner to corner, the cell is known as *scalariform* (Fig. 62f). (The scalariform cell of protoxylem is best called a scalariform protoxylem cell, since the term "scalariform cell" is a loose descriptive term and may refer to a scalariform-pitted tracheid or to a scalariform-perforated vessel. A scalariform protoxylem cell may, of course, be also a scalariform vessel.)

The scalariform protoxylem cell is, obviously, capable of little if any stretching. Where the bands of secondary wall are more extensively and less uniformly tied together, forming a network of secondary thickening, a *reticulate cell* is formed (Fig. 62g). Where the secondary wall is still more extensive and the thin spots in the wall are definite and uniform in size and shape, the cell is *pitted* (Fig. 62h). Reticulate and pitted cells cannot be stretched. Primary xylem consisting of these cells is, therefore, *metaxylem*. Scalariform cells fall on the line between protoxylem and metaxylem. No sharp line separates any one type of cell from the next type, or protoxylem from metaxylem.

The water-conducting cells of protoxylem may be either tracheids or vessels. They are tracheids in pteridophytes and gymnosperms and in some of the less highly specialized angiosperms. In other flowering plants both kinds of cells may occur together, and in herbaceous forms and some woody forms the water-conducting cells of the protoxylem are largely vessels. Because protoxylem cells are made abnormally long by stretching, and the end walls are not readily seen, these cells, vessel-like in



appearance, have been called "protoxylem vessels" regardless of their tracheidal or tracheal nature. This incorrect usage probably grew out of the idea of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries that the animal-trachea-like appearance of spiral cells indicates a conducting tube of indefinite length. (The use of the term "vessel," or "trachea," in this sense is responsible for the opinion formerly held that "vessels occur in the gymnosperms only in the protoxylem.") It often cannot be readily determined whether a given cell of the protoxylem is a vessel or a tracheid; such a cell may then be called, for example, "an annular cell," or "an annular element"; it should not be called a vessel unless there is proof of the perforation of its end walls.

*Proportion and Arrangement of Types of Protoxylem Elements.*—In the protoxylem of a given vascular bundle, annular, spiral, and scalariform cells may all exist, and each in any proportion; or one or two of the types may be lacking. Spiral cells, especially those with closely coiled bands, constitute a large proportion of most protoxylem strands. Where growth of the axis is rapid, a high percentage of annular elements is found; where slow, very few or no such cells occur. As a strand of protoxylem forms, not only is the wall of the successively formed cells of different character, but the cells themselves each become somewhat larger than the preceding ones. The order of development may thus usually be determined, when several or all cells are mature, on the basis of size alone. Often there are variations and exceptions to the sequence in size, but the structure of the wall is constant in its relation to order of development.

*Elongation of Protophloem and Protoxylem.*—Though protophloem and protoxylem are structurally adapted to stretching, and the earliest formed cells especially so, the elongation to which they are subjected is often so great that their plastic capacity is surpassed and they are ruptured. The protophloem cells are rapidly absorbed after destruction, but the torn remains of the protoxylem tracheids and vessels persist permanently. Annular cells, being the first cells formed, are most frequently destroyed. Probably nearly all annular cells that are not destroyed are so distorted soon after their formation as to become nonfunctional. The stretching of these cells at first separates the supporting rings, and the thin, distended wall between them soon sags or collapses. The further pulling of the walls tilts the rings and turns them up on edge (Fig. 63*B*). Still further elongation fragments the cells, and isolated rings of secondary wall, often with pieces of the primary wall attached, are to be found where the cells have been destroyed (Fig. 63*B*). In spiral cells the spiral is pulled out so that it becomes steeply wound or is even straightened out (Fig. 63*B*). In such cells also the primary wall collapses



*Protoxylem Lacunae*.—Where a number of protoxylem cells lying together have been thus destroyed, a canal-like cavity, known as a *protoxylem lacuna*, may be formed (Fig. 63B). In some instances such an intercellular space is much enlarged by the pulling away of the surrounding parenchyma cells. Exaggerated protoxylem lacunae formed in this way are found in many herbaceous plants, and especially in the monocotyledons (Fig. 64C,D) and the horsetails (*Equisetum*). On the other

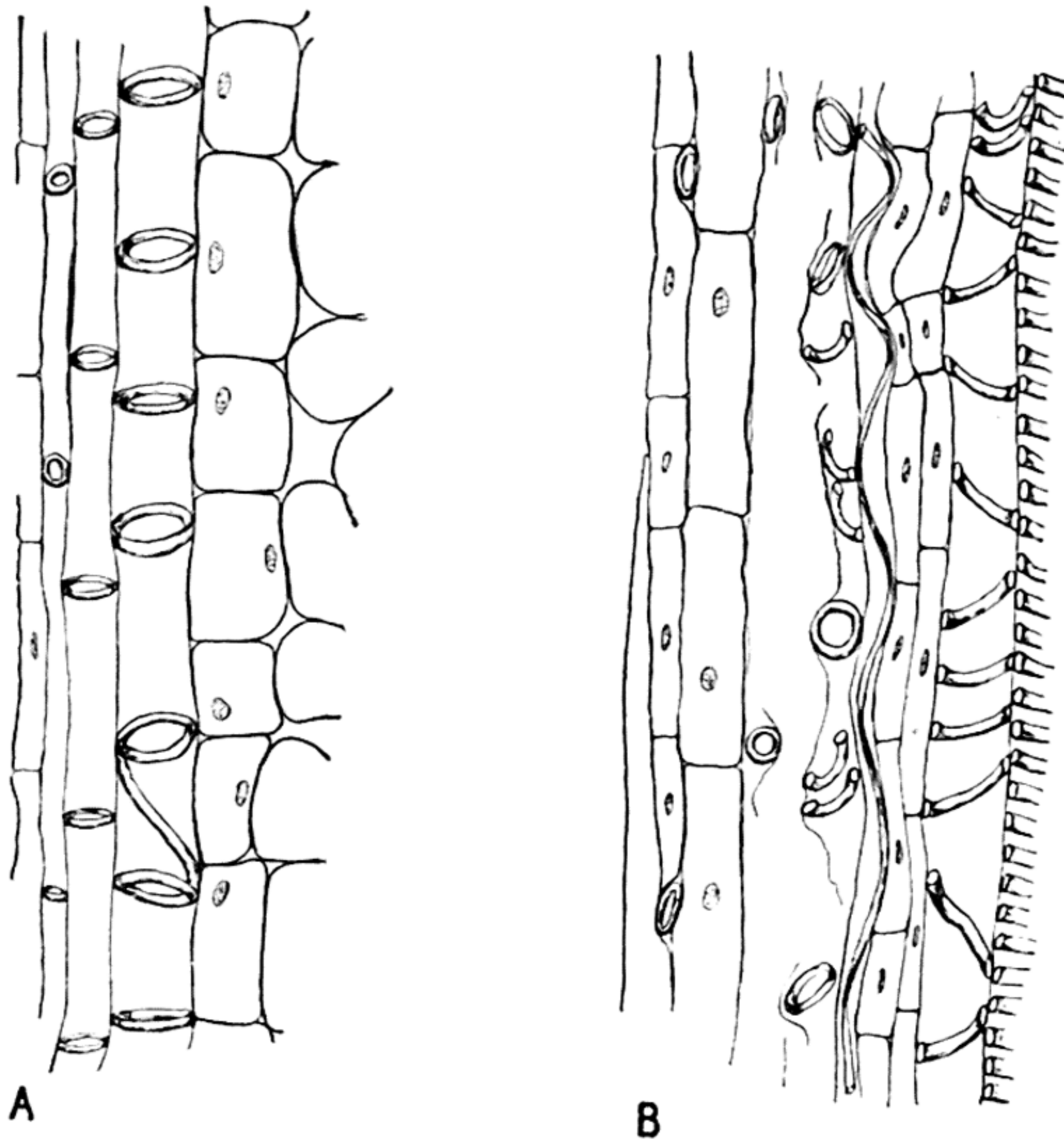


FIG. 63.—Protoxylem in longitudinal section. A, from fruit of *Arisaema*, the elements are all annular and there has been little stretching and no rupture; B, from stem of *Equisetum*, there has been extensive stretching of annular and spiral cells, with rupture of the former and the formation of a protoxylem lacuna. The space occupied by the first-formed cell has been occluded except where the rings lie.

hand, the growth of tissues surrounding the developing bundle at the time of the rupture of the protoxylem cells may be such that no lacuna is formed, but the surrounding parenchyma cells press in upon the flattening xylem cells and fill up the space occupied by them (Figs. 63B, left annular element; 64A,B). In annular or loosely spiral cells, parenchyma cells thus may be found pushing into the hollows formed by the sagging wall, or tylosis-like, into the lumen when the wall is ruptured. Rings from annular cells sometimes become pressed, upright, between parenchyma cells (Fig. 63B). Under such conditions the position of the first-formed protoxylem cells may be difficult to ascertain in transverse sections.



*Ontogeny of Protoxylem Elements.*—The stretching and tearing of the walls of the tracheary elements of protoxylem takes place in the thin, delicate primary wall. It has been claimed that the rings, spirals, and bars of the secondary wall are formed by the tearing apart of a previously formed, continuous secondary wall. Early studies demonstrated that in these tracheary elements of protoxylem the protoplast forms secondary

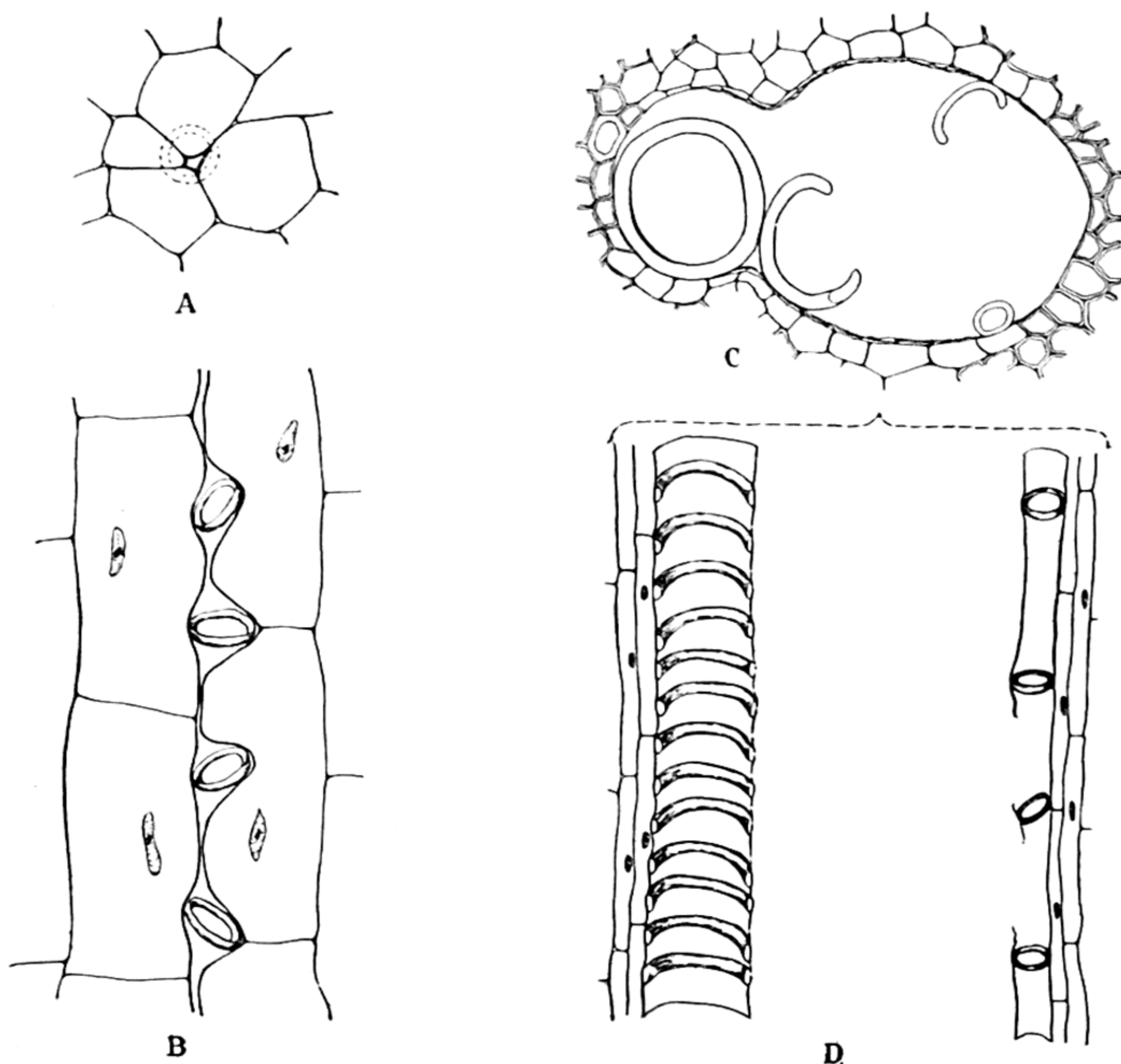


FIG. 64.—Protoxylem in transverse and longitudinal section, showing behavior of surrounding tissue. A, B, from *Lobelia*, showing a stretched annular element, the primary wall collapsed between the rings, the adjacent parenchyma cells pressing into the spaces, in cross section the space originally occupied by the cell nearly filled in; C, D, from *Zea*, the surrounding parenchyma pulled away from the protoxylem elements, leaving a large lacuna.

wall only in those areas where rings, spirals, etc., are later present. Recent work has confirmed the earlier interpretation. The presence of spiral bands stretched until straight is further evidence that stretching does not break up spirals and form rings.

*Arrangement of Cells in Primary Vascular Tissues.*—The cells of primary tissues of all kinds and in any organ may be arranged uniformly according to some pattern or may be without regularity of arrangement. The cells of secondary tissues, because of the method of their origin from meristems of the cambium type, tend to be arranged in rows or sheets. It is frequently stated that primary tissues are characterized by irregular, and secondary by regular arrangement, and this distinction is applied to



vascular tissues especially, but the orderly arrangement of secondary tissues may be broken up by unequal development of the constituent cells. Also in the primary vascular tissues of many herbaceous and some woody angiosperms, the primary xylem and phloem, especially the protoxylem and metaphloem, stand in radial rows. This arrangement further suggests secondary origin because cells of the secondary tissues stand in rows continuous with them. Distinction of primary and secondary tissues can be made—except for protoxylem and part of the metaxylem—only on method of origin, by procambium or by cambium. Since the cambium itself is developed from the procambium as the formation of primary tissues ceases, only an approximate limit can be set between primary and secondary phloem and between primary and secondary xylem.<sup>1</sup>

**Primary Xylem Types.**—The type of primary xylem—exarch, endarch, or mesarch (Fig. 61)—is determined by the position of the protoxylem in relation to the metaxylem or, when the primary xylem consists only of protoxylem, by the determination of the position of the first-formed cells. The position of the first protoxylem cells is that of the protoxylem lacuna, if such is present or, where the tissue has closed in upon the torn or flattened cells, by the disturbance in normal cell arrangement and by the fragments of the destroyed cells. For the determination of xylem type, the study of longitudinal sections is sometimes necessary, since in

<sup>1</sup> It has been urged that distinction between primary and secondary tissues is of little or no value because in other tissues, as well as in vascular tissues, no clear segregation can be made; that, for example, internal phloem (in part) and small vascular bundles that form late in the ontogeny of organs arise not from promeristem but from permanent or semipermanent tissue. The development of primary tissues may continue indefinitely in any organ, especially with changes that do not involve increase of the fundamental body—such changes as the addition of vascular bundles with development of storage and fleshy tissues, secretory tissues, protective structures, fruit and seed coats. These new primary tissues are formed not as are typical secondary tissues—in radiating rows from persistent initials—but from short-lived procambium-like cells; they arise secondarily—the meristem is secondary—but the tissues themselves obviously constitute a part of the primary body. Other characters than that of method of development and arrangement can often be used to separate primary and secondary tissues. In the place where the question of limitation of primary and secondary nature most commonly arises—in the transition from primary to secondary xylem and phloem—the length of the elements can be used. Primary tracheary elements, especially in woody dicotyledons, are very much shorter than the similar elements of the adjacent secondary tissue. In vascular tissue the initiating cells of these tissues themselves differ much in length. Distinction of the primary (fundamental) plant body and the later formed secondary (accessory) body—and hence also of primary and secondary tissues—is necessary for an understanding of the changes secondary growth brings about in the primary body. Sharp lines of separation between these tissues are often not possible and are unnecessary.



cross sections annular cells may be with difficulty separated from spiral cells, and the first-formed annular cells may be obliterated at certain levels.

It cannot be too emphatically stated that the different types of protoxylem tracheids and vessels are formed at successively later and later stages in the ontogeny of the tissue. No cell, once mature, changes its character: an annular cell does not become a spiral cell, nor a spiral cell a scalariform cell. The increasing areas of secondary wall in the various cell types are found in cells successively formed.

**The Term "Vascular Bundle."**—The term *vascular bundle* is applied to a strand-like portion of the vascular system of a plant. Such a bundle consists fundamentally of primary tissues; with these, secondary tissues may be present. Small bundles—bundle ends and the slender bundles of leaves, fruits, etc.—are wholly primary. Larger bundles, such as those of monocotyledonous stems, may also be wholly of primary development; and those of many herbaceous dicotyledons are largely primary in nature. In these bundles the xylem and phloem are highly specialized, the conducting cells being of high type and reduced in number, and supporting cells few or lacking; protection and support are often given to the soft or weak conducting tissues, and support is given to the organ in which the strands lie, by sheaths of fibers which more or less completely surround the strand of conducting cells. Because of the frequent presence of these fibrous sheaths with the conducting cells, the fibers were at one time supposed to constitute a part of the bundle, both morphologically and physiologically, and the bundle was, therefore, called a *fibrovascular bundle*. It has long been clear, however, that the function of the bundle is primarily conduction, and that the "mechanical tissue" of an axis is not necessarily related in position to the bundle; also that the fibrous tissue adjacent to the conducting strand is morphologically not a part of the vascular tissue. (In some bundles it may in part arise from the procambium strand.) Hence, the much better term *vascular bundle* has been in recent years substituted for *fibrovascular bundle*. The new term has not, however, wholly replaced the older and less accurate term. (The vascular bundle is further discussed in Chap. XI.)

**Types of Vascular Bundles.**—It is characteristic of vascular tissue that phloem or xylem is rarely found alone; a bundle usually consists of both of these types of conducting tissue. When together, xylem and phloem show several types of arrangement with each other in the bundle. These fall into three general classes: (a) those in which the xylem and the phloem lie radially side by side; (b) those in which one type of tissue surrounds, or ensheaths, the other; (c) those in which the two types of



tissue are separated from one another. In the first group are *collateral bundles* (Figs. 65A, 139A,D, 140), the phloem lying beside the xylem and external to it; and *bicollateral bundles* which are merely collateral bundles with phloem on the inside of the xylem also (Figs. 65B, 138). Bundles of the second group are known as *concentric bundles*, the type in which the phloem surrounds the xylem being *amphicribal* (Figs. 65C, 139B), and that where the xylem surrounds the phloem, *amphivasal* (Figs. 65D; 139C). The term "concentric bundle" is often loosely used to indicate an amphicribal bundle, doubtless because the amphivasal type of concentric bundle is uncommon, and "concentric" is believed to be sufficiently specific. Concentric should be used only as a general

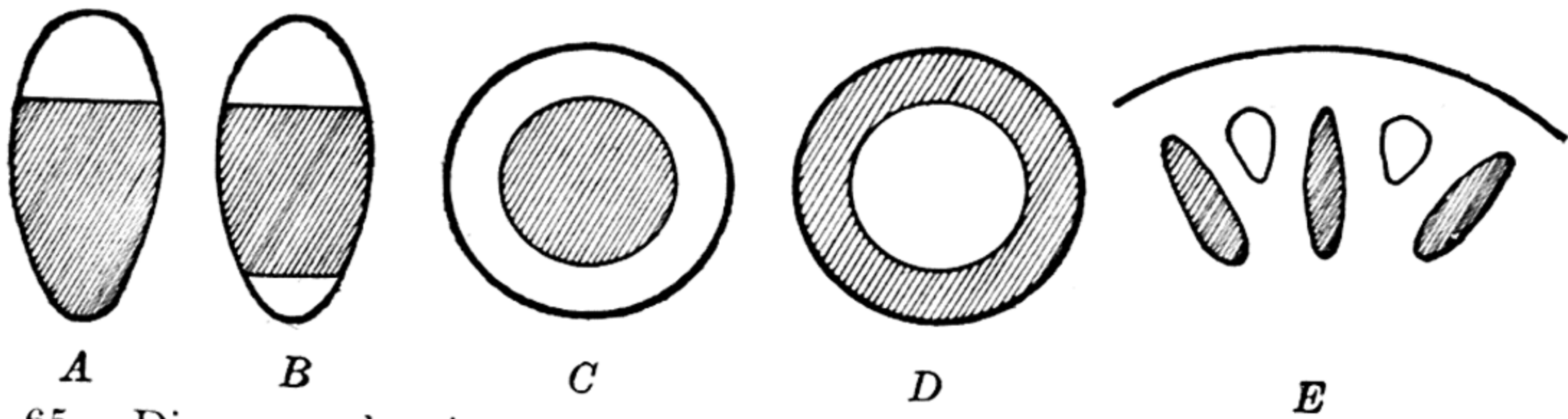


FIG. 65.—Diagrams showing types of arrangement of xylem and phloem with relation to each other. (The xylem is shaded, the phloem unshaded.) A, collateral bundle; B, bicollateral bundle; C, amphicribal bundle; D, amphivasal bundle; E, radial arrangement.

descriptive term covering both amphicribal and amphivasal conditions. The arrangement of the tissues in the third group is such that no definite bundles are formed. Strands of xylem and of phloem lie on different radii of an axis, separated by nonconducting tissue (Figs. 65E, 130A). These strands are commonly said to constitute *radial bundles*. Since, however, no definite bundles exist—unless each strand be considered a bundle—and the xylem strands are often not independent but are united in a central core, it is better to call such a condition in the primary xylem and phloem *radial arrangement*. The term "radial bundle" goes back to the period before the proposal of the stelar theory; the stele of a root then constituted one bundle, radial in structure. Unfortunately, the term is still occasionally applied to the primary vascular structure of roots. The terms "exarch," "endarch," and "mesarch" are sometimes also applied, descriptively, to bundles; they then merely indicate that the xylem of the bundle is of the stated type.

**Occurrence of Bundle Types.**—The collateral bundle is the common type of bundle and is characteristic of the stems and leaves of angiosperms and of most gymnosperms. The bicollateral bundle is uncommon, occurring in those angiosperms which possess internal phloem in their steles, as, for example, the Cucurbitaceae. In most plants that have internal phloem, this tissue is not closely associated with the xylem and external



phloem in position or method of origin. On a structural as well as a morphological basis, the amphivasal bundles of these plants are not typical bundles; the internal phloem is separated from the rest of the bundle. Amphicribal bundles are common in the ferns; small bundles, such as the bundles in floral parts, ovule traces, and small leaf-trace bundles are commonly of this type. Amphivasal bundles are rather rare. They occur chiefly in the monocotyledons, and there largely in nodal regions and in rhizomes. The radial arrangement of primary vascular tissue is characteristic of roots, where it is always present, and does not occur elsewhere.

Vascular bundles are to be thought of as parts of a unit vascular system, not as fundamental structural units; in the axis they are more or less isolated segments of a stelar column or cylinder.

### THE PRIMARY VASCULAR SKELETON

The primary vascular tissues of a plant form a definite vascular skeleton, which may, in a way, be compared with the skeleton of an animal. In the various organs and parts of plants, the vascular tissues differ in arrangement, position, and method of attachment from those of other organs or parts of organs, and these differences are constant and characteristic. The skeleton of a species has a definite and fixed plan and differs more or less from that of other species. The skeletons of the different larger groups of plants—as of the larger groups of animals—differ from one another in important respects; the skeletons of smaller groups differ in less important respects, but may be very varied in structure. Great diversity of vascular structure exists among plants from simple to highly complex.

**The Stele.**—The axis is fundamentally cylindrical, and the skeleton of this part of the plant body as a whole naturally conforms to this type. The vascular tissues of the stele in their simplest condition form a solid, rod-like column in which the phloem surrounds the xylem. A stele with its vascular tissues arranged in this way is known as a *protostele* (Figs. 66A, 127). The protostele is not only a very simple kind of stele, but also is clearly the primitive type from which all others have been derived in the course of evolutionary specialization. The vascular column of a protostele when seen in cross section may be circular; symmetrically angular, such as triangular; stellate, with long-projecting arms; or irregularly rounded and variously lobed. A kind of stele differing from the protostele chiefly in that a pith is present in the center is the *siphonostele*, or *solenostele* (Figs. 66B, 135A,E). This type of stele has been derived from the protostele and represents a stage in evolutionary advance. Like the protostele, the siphonostele shows various outlines in cross section, but



is commonly rounded. Two types of siphonostele are found: *ectophloic*, where phloem occurs only on the outside of the xylem; *amphiphloic*, where phloem occurs on the inside of the xylem as well as on the outside. When the siphonostele is broken up into a network or a series of longitudinal strands, it becomes a *dissected siphonostele*, or "dictyostele" (Figs. 66C, 135B,D,F). In some plants, as in the majority of monocotyledons, the vascular bundles of the dictyostele are scattered through the pith and cortex so that the semblance of a stele or ring is lost. Such a condition has clearly developed in evolution from the siphonostele or dictyostele, and is considered to belong to this type.

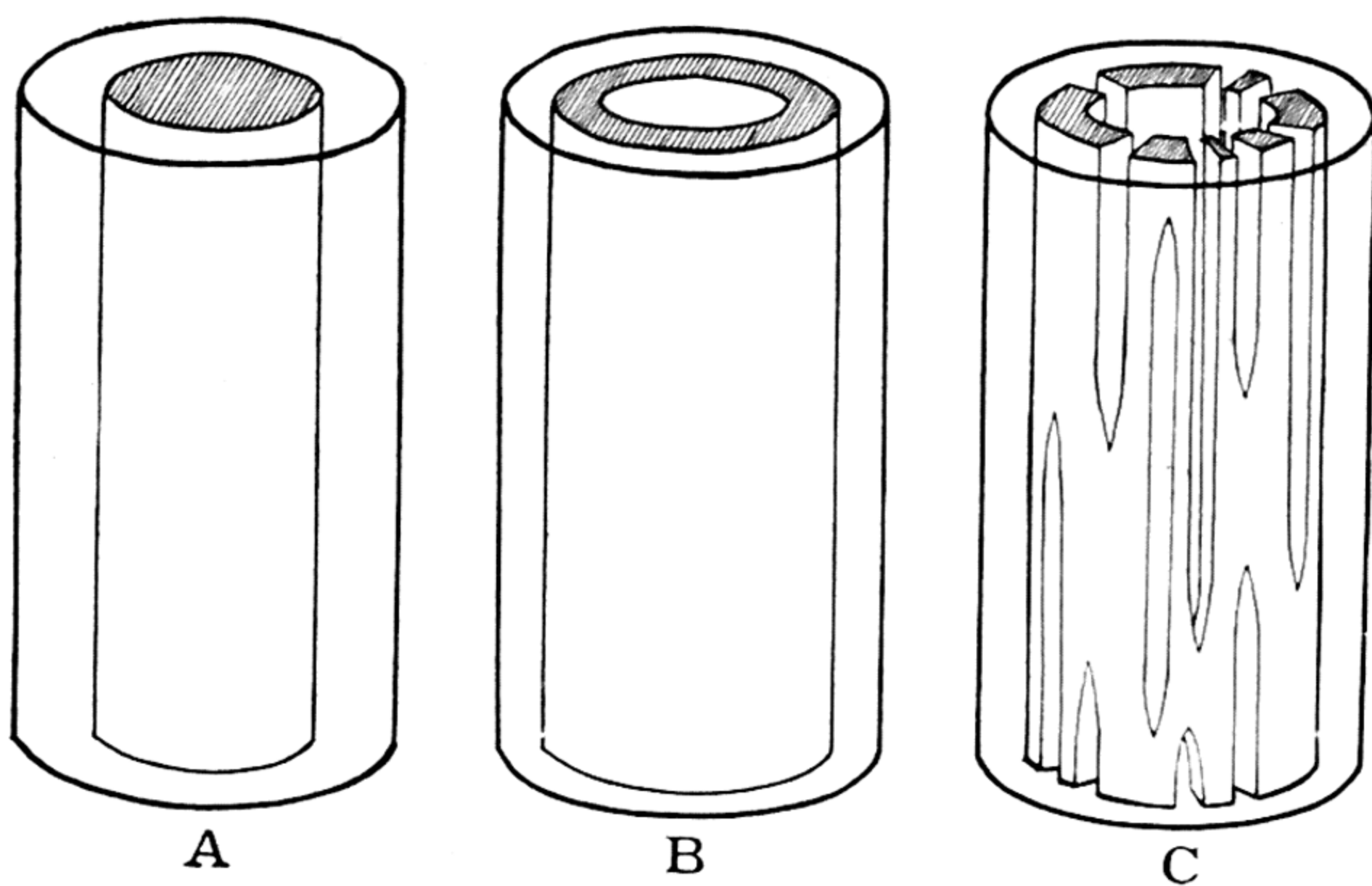


FIG. 66.—Diagrams illustrating the types of arrangement of vascular tissues in steles. A, protostele; B, siphonostele; C, dictyostele.

The term *monostele*, which has sometimes been used as synonymous with protostele, was applied originally to those steles in which the vascular tissues form a unit structure. In contrast with the monostele was the "polystele," a type of stele in which the vascular tissues are in the form of strands, each one of which resembles more or less the entire vascular cylinder of protostelic plants. Thus, the protostele and the unbroken siphonostele have frequently been called "monosteles," and some types of dissected siphonosteles termed "polysteles." The bundles of a dissected siphonostele—especially when the stele is amphiphloic and the bundles amphicribal—resemble small protosteles in cross section, and the stele therefore appears like a multiple protostele, hence the term "polystele" was given to such a central cylinder. It is now understood, however, that this type of stele is merely a broken-up siphonostele. Hence the term "monostele" has little use, and is commonly replaced by the more specific protostele and siphonostele, the broken siphonostele being called a "dictyostele." The term "polystele," as applied to any



type of dissected siphonostele, suggests inaccurate morphology, and therefore should not be so used. True polysteles are doubtless present in some groups of fossil plants, but no living plants have this type of stele.

Two theories exist as to the method in evolutionary change by which the siphonostele has been derived from the protostele. According to the "expansion theory," the central portion of the stele does not become vascular but remains less specialized, becoming pith. Therefore, according to this theory, the pith is morphologically vascular tissue. The term "expansion" is unfortunate here since expansion of the protostele has not necessarily occurred. According to the "invasion theory," the cortex has invaded the central cylinder in the course of the phylogenetic development of vascular plants, leaf and branch gaps being the openings through which the change has occurred. Under these conditions, the pith is obviously not stelar in nature. A discussion of these theories lies outside the scope of this book. It seems, however, to have been established beyond much question that, in seed plants at least, the pith is morphologically extrastelar in nature. In most of the pteridophytes the same condition obtains; in a few the pith is possibly stelar in nature.

**Occurrence of Stelar Types.**—The protostele, being the primitive type, is found more commonly among the primitive plants. It occurs in many of the ancient fossil forms and in the present-day flora is characteristic of the club mosses and a few of the ferns. It is characteristic of the roots of all plants. The siphonostele or some modification thereof is found in the stem of all other living plants. The ectophloic siphonostele is characteristic of the stems of gymnosperms and of angiosperms generally, and is without question the most common type. The amphiphloic siphonostele is found in most ferns and some families in the angiosperms. The dissected siphonostele occurs in many ferns and in the angiosperms to some extent, especially in the herbaceous types. Dissection of the siphonostele is brought about in two morphologically different ways: by the overlapping of leaf and branch gaps, and by the dropping out of segments of the cylinder during reduction of the vascular cylinder in the development of some types of herbaceous stems.

**Leaf Traces.**—Prolongations of the stelar vascular tissues that supply the leaves (Fig. 67) constitute the *leaf* or *foliar traces*. The traces that supply one leaf constitute the *leaf supply*. The term "trace" is applied to these bundles from the point where they first become evident as foliar supply bundles to the base of the leaf. Structurally, leaf traces are strands of primary vascular tissue, the proximal part of which consists of xylem alone. The distal part of the trace is made up of both xylem and phloem, and secondary tissues may be added in late stages. Because the trace is merely an extension of the vascular system of the stem, the point of origin



cannot readily be determined. As an identifiable, protoxylem-containing strand it can often be followed in the stem for some distance below the

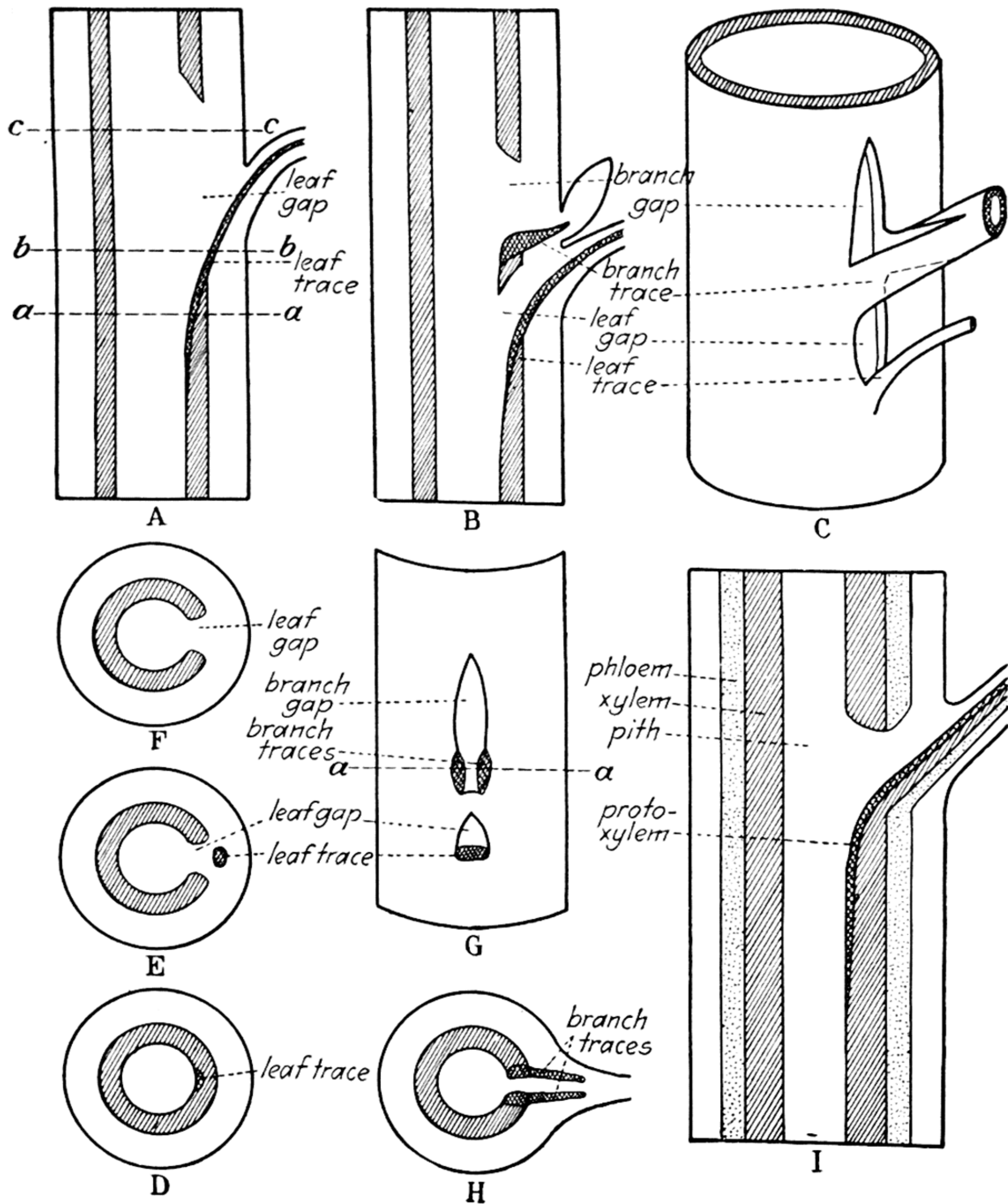


FIG. 67.—Diagrams illustrating leaf and branch traces and gaps. A, longitudinal section of node through leaf trace and gap; B, similar to A, but with branch trace and gap also present; C, view of vascular cylinder showing departure of leaf and branch trace and the gaps associated with each; D, E, F, cross sections through stem illustrated in A at levels *a-a*, *b-b*, and *c-c*, respectively; G, face view of outside of cylinder shown in C, the leaf and branch traces cut away at the surface of the cylinder; H, transverse section of G at *a-a*. (In diagrams A–H the vascular tissue is not differentiated as xylem and phloem; the traces are doubly cross-hatched. In I, more detailed structure is shown, protoxylem, metaxylem, and phloem being indicated.)

level at which it begins to swing outward and there found to merge with other traces or with the primary xylem cylinder.

The traces supplying a leaf range in number from one to many, and the number is usually constant for a given species and often for a family



and even larger group. This number is the number of bundles that leave the stele; these in their course through the cortex may fuse or branch so that the number entering the leaf is different. The vascular supply to stipules is derived from the lateral traces, usually within the cortex (Fig. 70K). Within the petiole or leaf base, where the bundles are no longer called leaf traces, forking and fusion commonly take place.

**Branch Traces.**—The primary vascular supply to lateral branches is also derived from the stele of the main axis, usually in the form of two bundles, less often, one bundle. These strands are termed *branch traces*, or *ramular traces* (Fig. 67B, C, G, H). Branch traces, like leaf traces, are

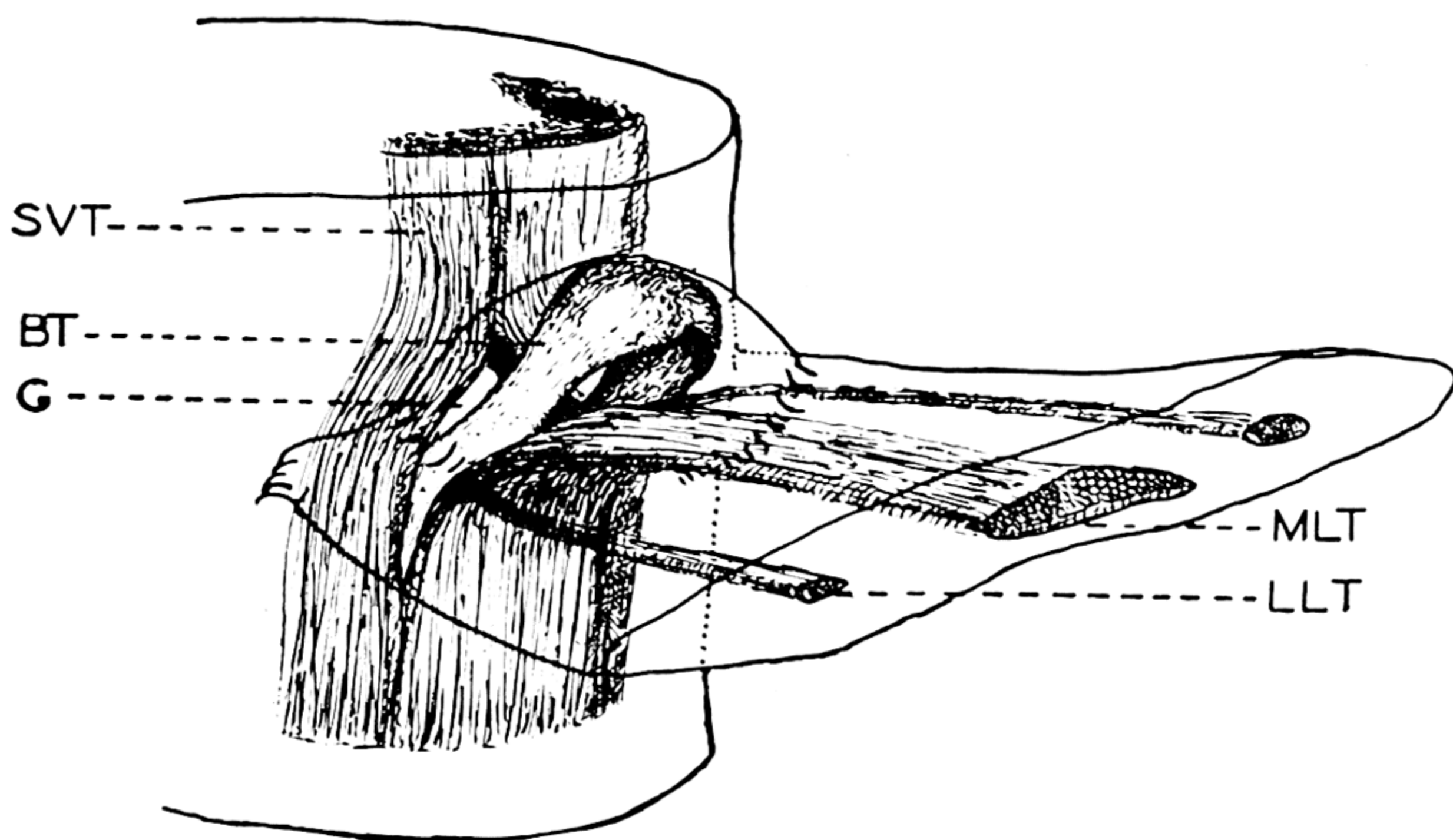


FIG. 68.—Diagram of nodal region of *Phlox* showing relations of leaf and branch traces to stem stele. The leaf trace divides at once into three bundles. The two branch traces, still in meristematic stage in the bud base, arise above and lateral to the leaf trace and show first stage of fusion to form stele of the branch. (After Miller and Wetmore.)

connected with the first-formed parts of the primary stelar skeleton. Thus, all parts of the axis and the appendages are tied together by the primary vascular system. Where the branch supply consists of two traces, these bundles unite within a short distance, forming a complete stele (Fig. 67C); where but one trace occurs, this strand has usually the cross-sectional form of a crescent or horseshoe with the opening downward, and the cylindrical stele of the branch is formed by the closure of the opening as the trace passes out. While the branch is still in the bud stage its traces are largely in the procambium stage but their form, and relation to the stele of the mother branch is clear (Fig. 68).

**Leaf and Branch Gaps.**—In the majority of vascular plants the outward passage of a leaf or branch trace is associated with the formation of



a break or interruption in the vascular cylinder around and above the point of departure of the trace (Figs. 67B,C,G, 69A-F). This opening, through which the cortex and pith become continuous, is known as a *gap*—a *leaf gap* accompanies a leaf trace, and a *branch gap* accompanies a

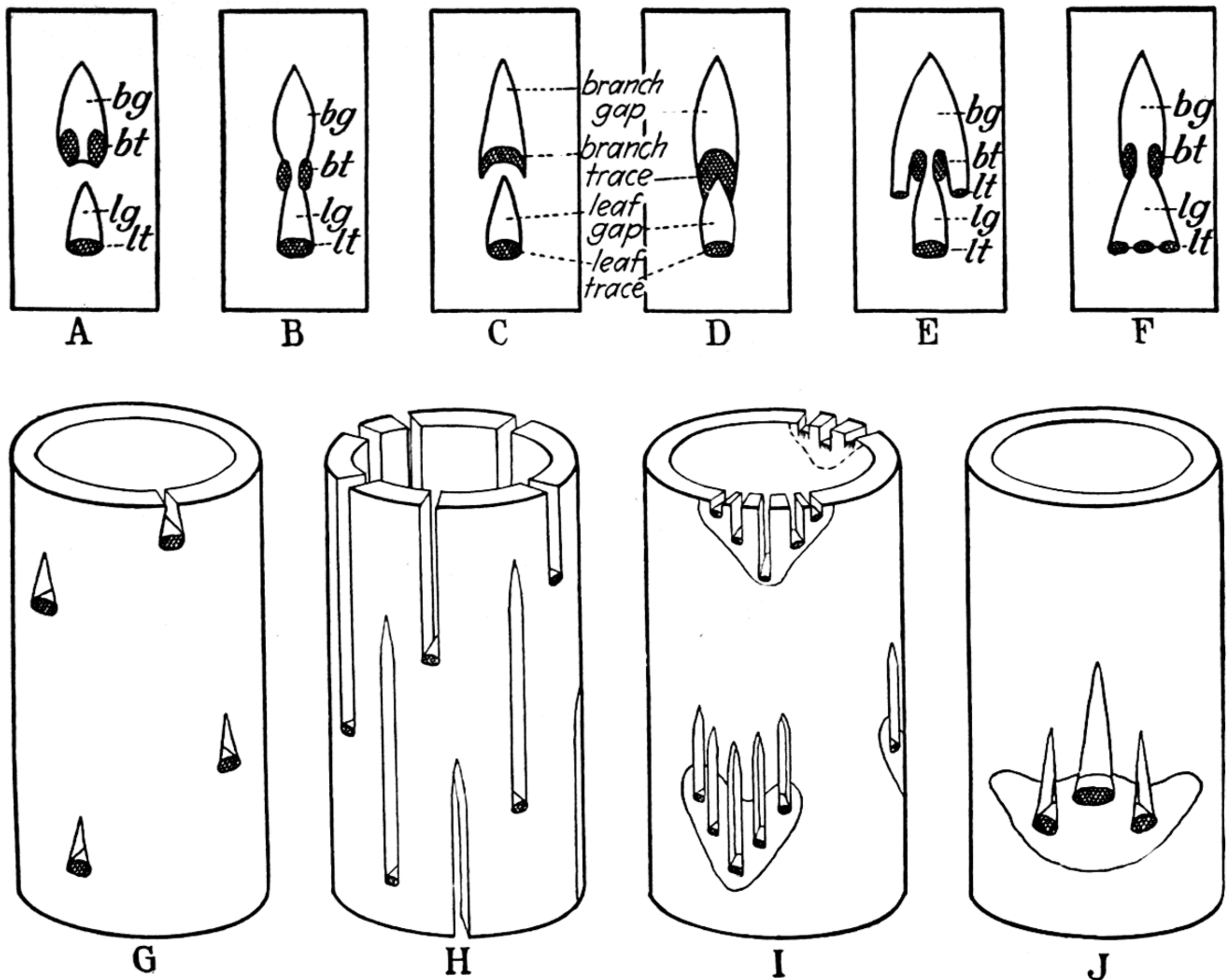


FIG. 69.—Diagrams showing variety of form of leaf and branch traces and gaps. A-F, face views of nodal region, showing traces cut away at outside of vascular cylinder, and the gaps: A-D, one leaf trace, E, three traces and three gaps, F, three traces, departing together, leaving one gap; A, the leaf gap closed below the two branch traces and the branch gap; B, the leaf gap fused with the branch gap; C, the leaf gap closed below the departure of the single branch trace; D, the single branch trace departing at the top of the leaf gap; E, three leaf gaps from as many traces, all fused with the branch gap; F, one leaf gap from three traces, fused with the branch gap. G-J, diagrams of vascular cylinders showing various amounts and types of dissection by leaf gaps.

branch trace. Leaf gaps are constant in appearance in the great group of vascular plants known as the Pteropsida. This group is made up of the ferns, the gymnosperms, and the angiosperms. Leaf gaps do not occur in the Lycopsidea, a group which includes the club mosses, horsetails, and a few other similar plants. Branch gaps are present in all vascular plants which possess a pith. In protosteles, gaps, of course, do not occur, since no pith is present. Gaps are not associated with root traces.

Leaf gaps vary much in width and in longitudinal extent. Their



size is not directly related to the size, type, or persistence of the leaf. Commonly, in the gymnosperms and angiosperms, leaf gaps are small, extending but a short distance above the point where the trace leaves the vascular cylinder. In the ferns, leaf gaps are generally larger and may extend for considerable distances, even through several internodes. Branch gaps are commonly larger than leaf gaps and extend for greater distances in the axis.

**The Breaking of the Vascular Cylinder by Gaps.**—The vascular cylinder is broken up in different degrees by the presence of leaf gaps. Where the gaps are small and of limited longitudinal extent, the cylinder is but slightly broken by them (Fig. 69*G*); but where they are large and elongate, extending through one or more internodes, the siphonostele is dissected (Fig. 69*H*). The degree to which a siphonostele is dissected depends upon the number and extent of the gaps and upon the closeness of the nodes. Where the gaps overlap, due to their great length or to the shortness of the internodes, the cylinder consists of a network of bundles which in cross section appear as a circle of discrete strands (Fig. 69*H,I*). By the presence of leaf gaps alone, the cylinder may thus be broken into distinctly separated strands. Branch gaps still further complicate the structure. These leaf and branch gaps together make the primary vascular cylinder complex in the arrangement of its vascular tissues, especially in nodal regions where the leaf and branch traces are departing. It is further complicated in many herbs and vines by the presence of the breaks formed in the cylinder by reduction of vascular tissue that accompanied the evolutionary development of the special stelar structure of these plants.

Branch traces are separated abruptly and depart as soon as freed from the cylinder (Fig. 67*C*); leaf traces, on the other hand, may be freed from the cylinder and yet maintain their position in the circle for some distance before passing out into the cortex (Fig. 70*A*). Below the point where the trace is separated from the cylinder, it is frequently evident for some distance as a distinct—though not isolated—strand, chiefly of protoxylem (Fig. 70*A-E*). This distinctness of the strand in the xylem cylinder is due to the type and size of its cells that are different from those of the adjacent xylem. Externally, the trace is not definitely limited, merging into the xylem of the cylinder (Fig. 70*E*). Such a downward extension of the trace may be very short or lacking, or may be several internodes in length.

A leaf-trace bundle is commonly freed from the stelar cylinder on both sides simultaneously, but one side may remain attached for a time, even while the trace swings out into the cortex (Fig. 70*F,G,H*). The trace then appears to depart from the side of the gap rather than from



its base. Where a trace departs from the side of a gap or other opening in the cylinder already present, the gap theoretically associated with the new trace is not evident, being merged with the larger gap.

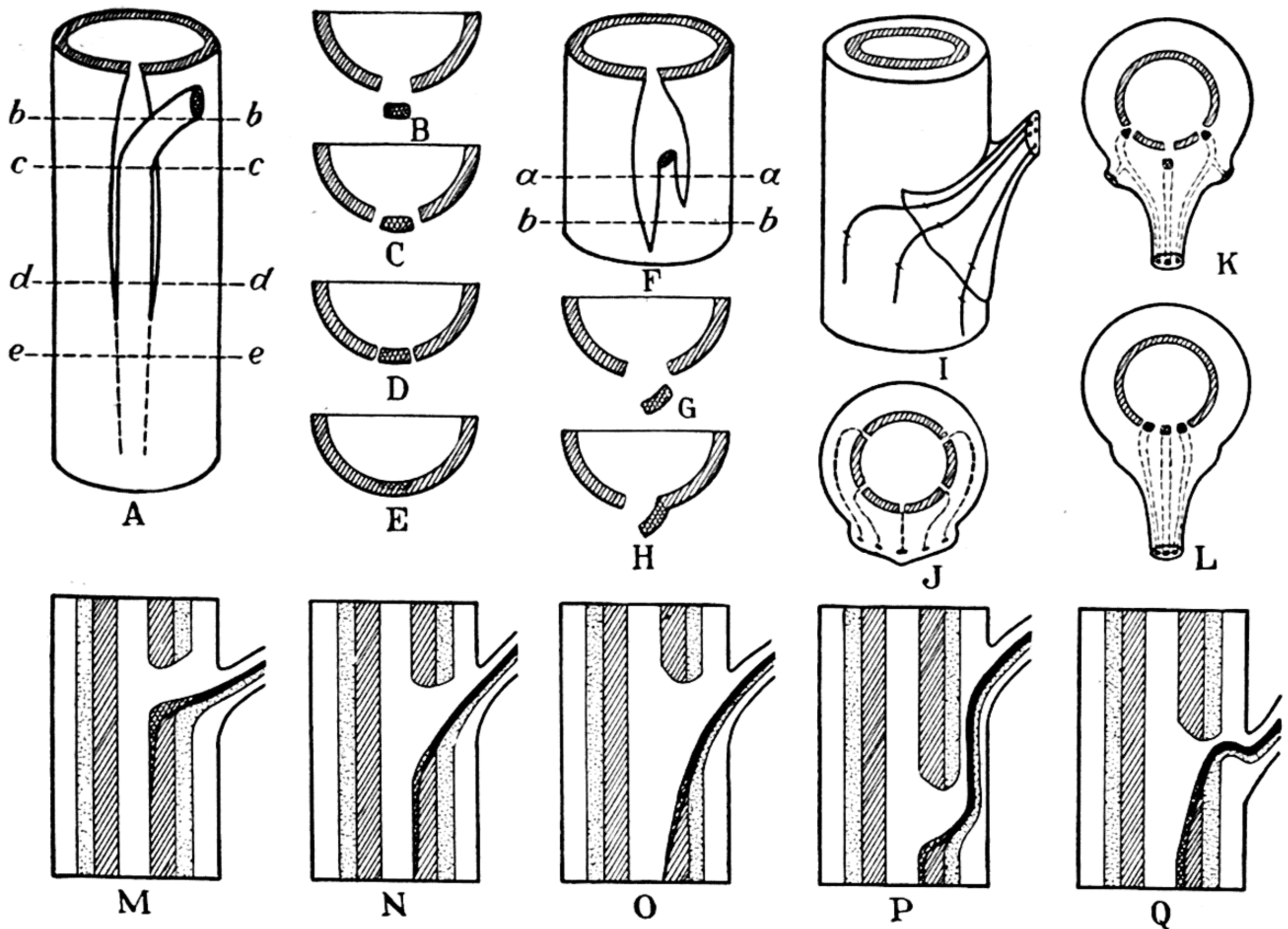


FIG. 70.—Diagrams showing variations in the method of departure of leaf traces. A–E, the trace freed some distance below its departure from the cylinder: A, face view; B–E, cross sections at levels *b-b* to *e-e*, respectively. F–H, the trace freed on one side before the other: F, face view; G and H, cross sections at levels *a-a* and *b-b*, respectively. I and J, traces departing from the cylinder in regions not underlying the leaf attachment—“girdling traces”: I, course of traces seen from the outside, the points of departure from the cylinder and of entrance to the petiole indicated; J, the course of the traces projected from their points of departure to the petiole. K, projected course of three traces arising separately; stipule supply arising from lateral traces. L, projected course of three traces arising from one gap. M–Q, longitudinal sections of nodes showing various courses of the departing trace.

**The Number of Leaf Traces in the Plant Groups.**—The number of traces supplying the leaf ranges, as above stated, from one to many. In the pteridophytes there is usually one, though sometimes there are two or many; in gymnosperms, one or two; and in angiosperms, one, three, five, or many. Three is perhaps the primitive number for the last group; where there is one this is either the result of fusion of the original three in evolutionary development, or of reduction of the three to one by the loss of the lateral bundles. Three and one are the most common leaf-trace numbers in the flowering plants, three being characteristic of nearly all the Amentiferae, and of such families as the



Rosaceae, Aceraceae, and Compositae; and one of the Lauraceae, Ericaceae, and Labiatae. The number of traces is largely independent of the size, type, and duration of the leaf, and of the nature of its attachment. Many plants with large leaves, such as *Fraxinus*, have one trace; others, such as *Juglans*, three; and still others, such as *Aralia*, many; plants with small leaves likewise have one, few, or many traces. The floral bracts of *Salix*, which are minute, ephemeral leaves, have three traces. Leaves with clasping bases may have many, as in the Umbelliferae, or one, as in the Caryophyllaceae.

**The Departure of the Leaf Trace from the Vascular Cylinder.**—The traces of a leaf normally depart individually, often at considerable distances from one another laterally about the stem, as well as vertically on the axis (Fig. 70I,J,K). Frequently, however, the traces depart side by side (Figs. 69F, 70L). Only one gap is then formed by the group. Traces most frequently depart from that segment of the stele which lies directly beneath the attachment of the leaf. Where there is more than one trace, the median trace appears opposite the center of the leaf, the laterals arising successively higher and higher in the stem and farther and farther around the cylinder from the median trace (Fig. 70I,J). Traces may depart even from the side of the stele opposite to that on which the leaf stands. Such traces enter the base of the petiole directly if the latter clasps the stem extensively, or may “girdle” the twig in the cortex, swinging around the stem as they pass upward through the cortex to the petiole base. When traces thus pass around the stem for some distance in their course from vascular cylinder to petiole, they have been called “girdling traces” (Fig. 70I, J). The leaf traces of the cycads are girdling traces of an extreme type. Of the bundles of a leaf supply, the median trace is commonly the largest; the laterals form a series progressively smaller toward the margins of the leaf base. Lateral traces may, however, be stronger than the median trace, as in the potato plant (Fig. 73).

The angle at which the trace leaves the central cylinder varies greatly, being usually very small, the strand departing gradually from the pith and passing obliquely, sometimes almost vertically, through the cortex (Fig. 70N,O,P). Less commonly, the trace passes outward at nearly right angles to the stele (Fig. 70M), entering the leaf base after a very short course through the cortex. Branch traces also commonly pass out at nearly right angles.

**The Dissection of the Vascular Cylinder by Reduction.**—The primary vascular cylinder may be broken into isolated strands by leaf gaps alone, the number and width of the strands varying with the pattern of leaf-trace number and phyllotaxy and with the width and length of the gaps



(Fig. 69H,I), but in many plants the primary cylinder is still further dissected. This additional breakup, which took place in evolutionary development, has been brought about by a progressive reduction in the amount of the primary xylem: at first radially, so that the cylinder became thin (Fig. 71A); secondly, tangentially, so that some longitudinal strips of the cylinder—those shown thin in Fig. 71A—lost all primary vascular tissue. The nonvascular areas are sometimes called *inter-*

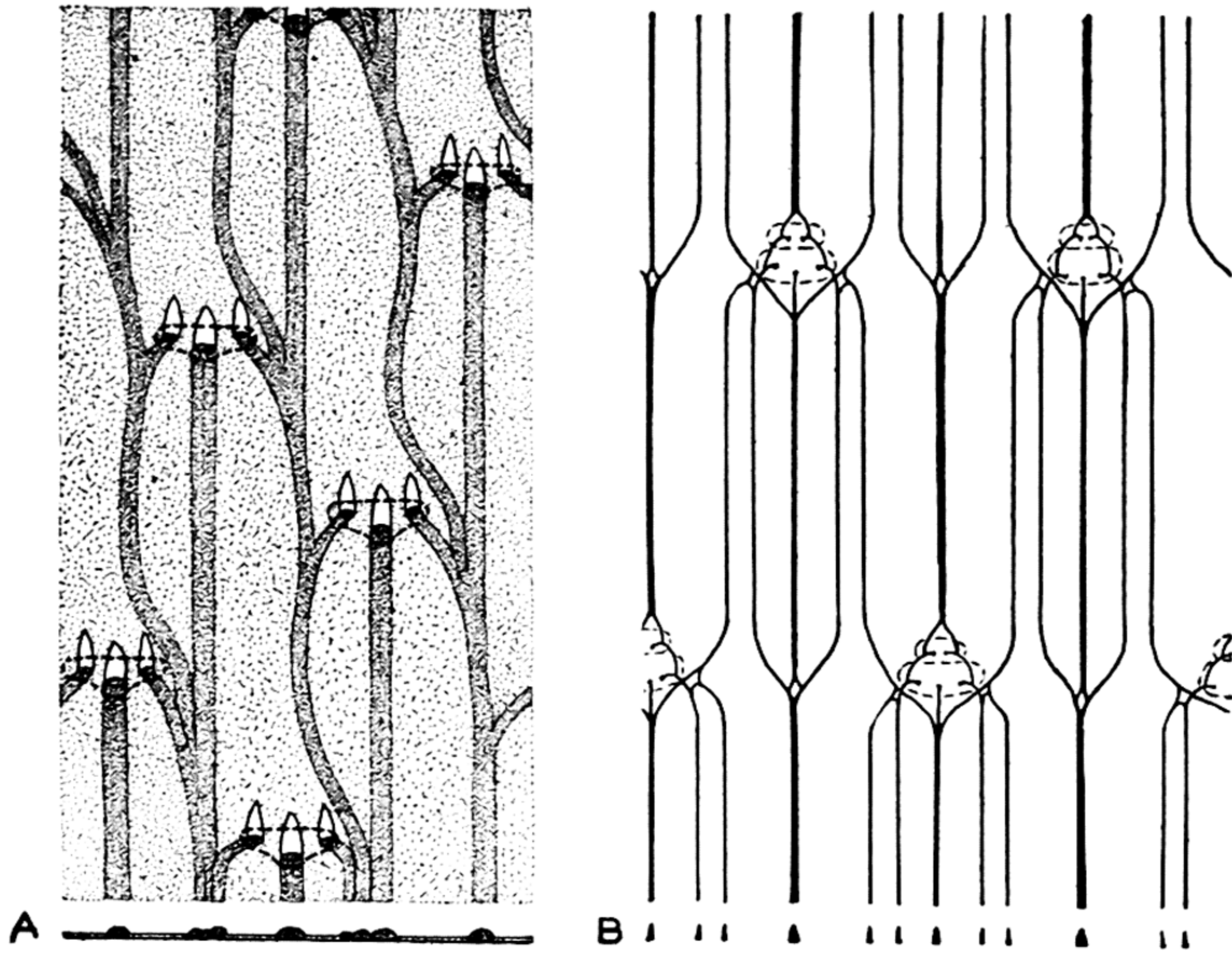


FIG. 71.—Diagrams of primary vascular systems of stems, the cylinder split longitudinally and shown in one plane, and cut transversely at the level of the base of portion shown in face view. *A*, *Populus canadensis*, the cylinder broken only by leaf gaps, and thin between the protoxylem strips that constitute the basic skeleton; *B*, *Pilea pumila*, the cylinder consisting of the protoxylem-containing bundles, the areas between lost in reduction. Leaf- and branch-trace origin shown in *B*, leaf trace only in *A*.

*fascicular rays* (Chap. XI). Tangential reduction is found in most herbaceous and some woody angiosperms. In the majority of these plants secondary growth soon closes the interfascicular strips and buries the primary vascular cylinder (Chap. VI). The primary-xylem skeleton is easily seen only in early stages of stem development. In a small proportion of herbs—those often erroneously considered typical of the group anatomically, such as *Ranunculus*, *Curcubita*, *Impatiens*, *Pilea*—the nonvascular areas are very wide and are not closed by secondary growth (Fig. 71B). In these the primary skeleton is easily seen even in the mature plant. (Further discussion of stem structure is found in Chap. XI.)

The primary vascular cylinder, dissected by leaf and branch gaps or by both these and interfascicular rays, is a network of anastomosing strands



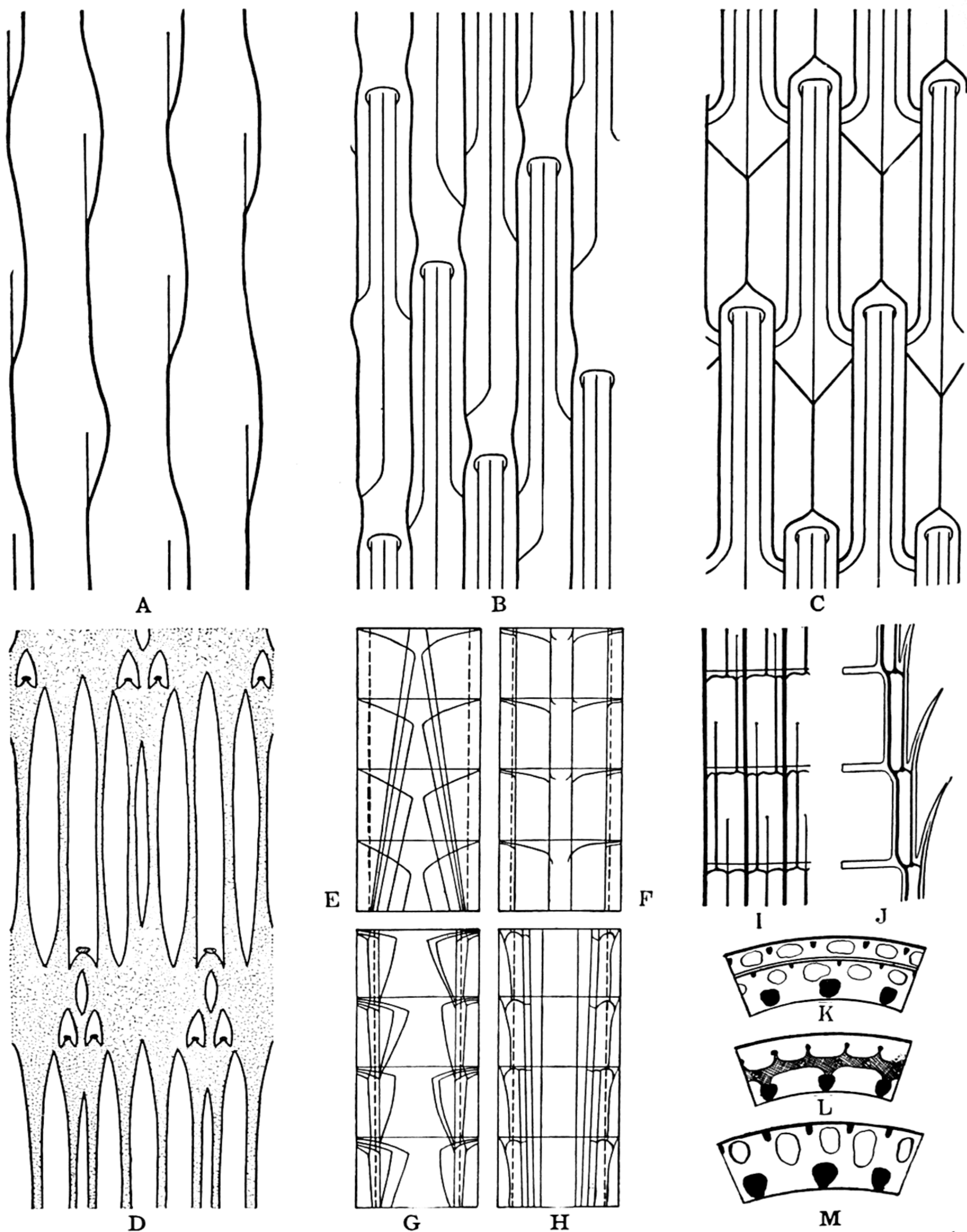


FIG. 72.—Diagrams of the primary vascular system (or of a part of the system) of stems. A–D, the cylinder split open and shown in one plane: A, *Thuja occidentalis* (the lines represent broad bands, separated by narrow breaks); B, *Chenopodium glaucum*; C, *Iresine paniculata*; D, *Ephedra distachya*. E–H, types of bundle course in the monocots—the horizontal lines indicate nodes, the dotted vertical lines imaginary cortical limits: E, a palm type; F, *Tradescantia virginica*; G, rhizome of *Acorus Calamus*; H, *Scirpus cyperinus*. I–M, *Dulichium arundinaceum*; I, bundle system seen in one plane; J, longitudinal section; K–M, cross sections: K, above the node; L, through the node; M, below the node. (B, C, after Wilson; D, after Thompson; E–M, after Plowman, E, from Von Mohl, F and G, from Guillaud, H, modified.)



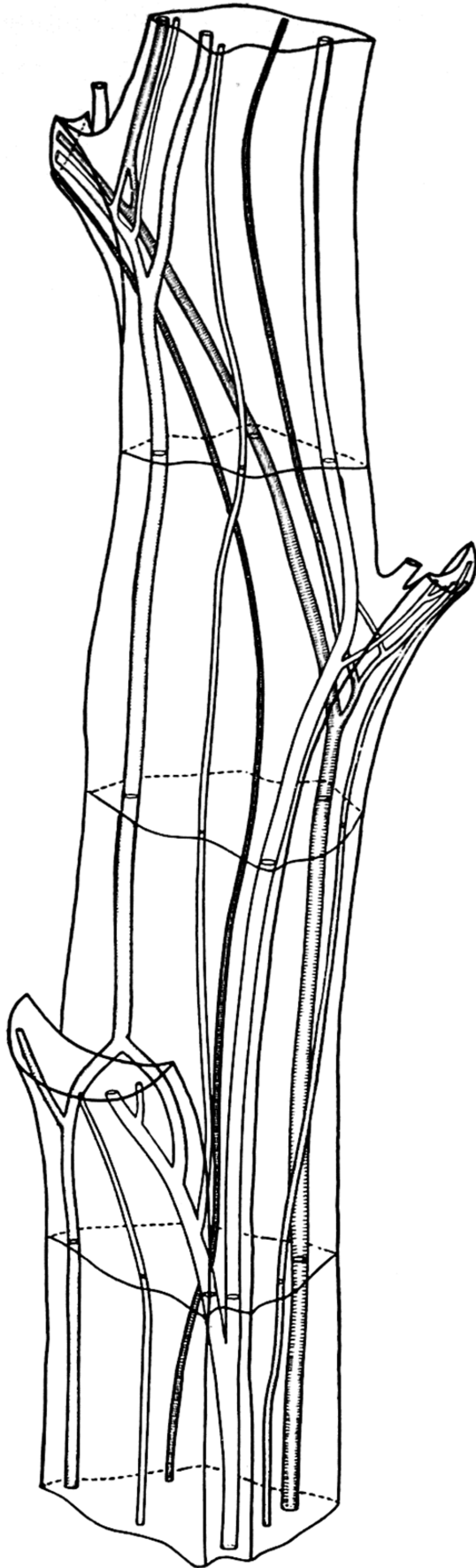


FIG. 73.—The primary vascular system of the stem of *Solanum tuberosum*. The complex nodal structure is repeated at each node, so that, except for the position of the bundles in the stem, all nodes and all internodes are alike. The large bundles are cauline bundles; the small ones, common bundles. All these bundles are later tied together by thin flanges of late-developing primary vascular tissue (not shown), and, still later, the entire primary xylem skeleton is buried by secondary tissue. (After Artschwager.)



that is characteristic of each species. Anastomosis takes place chiefly in nodal regions, and long straight bundles may extend through the internodes (Figs. 71B, 72B,C). In many monocotyledons and in some dicotyledons the bundles do not lie in a cylinder but are arranged somewhat in the form of a loose sheaf, so that they appear in cross section as though scattered. In some ferns, such as *Pteridium*, and in a considerable number of dicotyledons, for example, *Dianthera*, the bundles form an open cylinder, but a few of the strands run through the cortex or the pith. In all stems the nodal regions are more complex than internodal. In monocotyledons the many bundles form extremely complex nodal structure (Fig. 72E-M). There is little clear information as to the basic plan in these nodes. In some there are resemblances to the nodal structure of herbaceous dicotyledons.

The bundles of a dissected primary cylinder have been interpreted as *leaf-trace bundles*, *cauline bundles*, and *common bundles*. The use of these terms is not consistent, and the distinction of the types is difficult and has doubtful value. A bundle that distally connects only with the vascular system of a leaf, even if its point of origin is far below the leaf, is a leaf-trace bundle. (The term "leaf trace" is restricted in definition to that part of a bundle between the point of its departure from the stele to the base of the leaf.) The term "cauline bundle" is usually applied to bundles that form the major vascular system of a stem; to bundles that branch, uniting with other similar bundles, and may give rise to leaf-trace bundles but do not terminate as leaf traces. The term "common bundle" is often applied to bundles that pass through the stem unbranched for some distance and terminate as leaf traces; they are bundles common to both stem and leaf. The term common bundles is merely another name for the part of a leaf-trace bundle that lies in the vascular cylinder. The bundles of a stem can be simply termed "stem bundles" and "leaf-trace bundles." A logical use of terms for these bundles depends upon an interpretation of their fundamental morphology—whether the vascular cylinder of the stem is a basic unit or whether it consists of fused leaf traces. A discussion of this question is beyond the scope of this book.

**General Structure of the Primary Vascular Cylinder.**—In most woody and some herbaceous angiosperms, the primary vascular cylinder of the stem is not so extensively broken up by interfascicular parenchymatous bands as in the forms just discussed. It is perforated only by comparatively small and more or less remote leaf and branch gaps. In such cylindrical sheets of tissue, there are commonly more or less prominent ridges projecting into the pith (Figs. 71A, 74F-K). These ridges correspond morphologically to the bundles of the more dissected stele. In the ontogeny of the vascular cylinder these ridges mature first, the larger



and most deeply projecting ones earliest. The innermost parts of these early formed strands consist of protoxylem. Later, less prominent ridges develop, and these have little or no protoxylem. When the stem is very young and the connecting flanges of tissue are still undifferentiated,

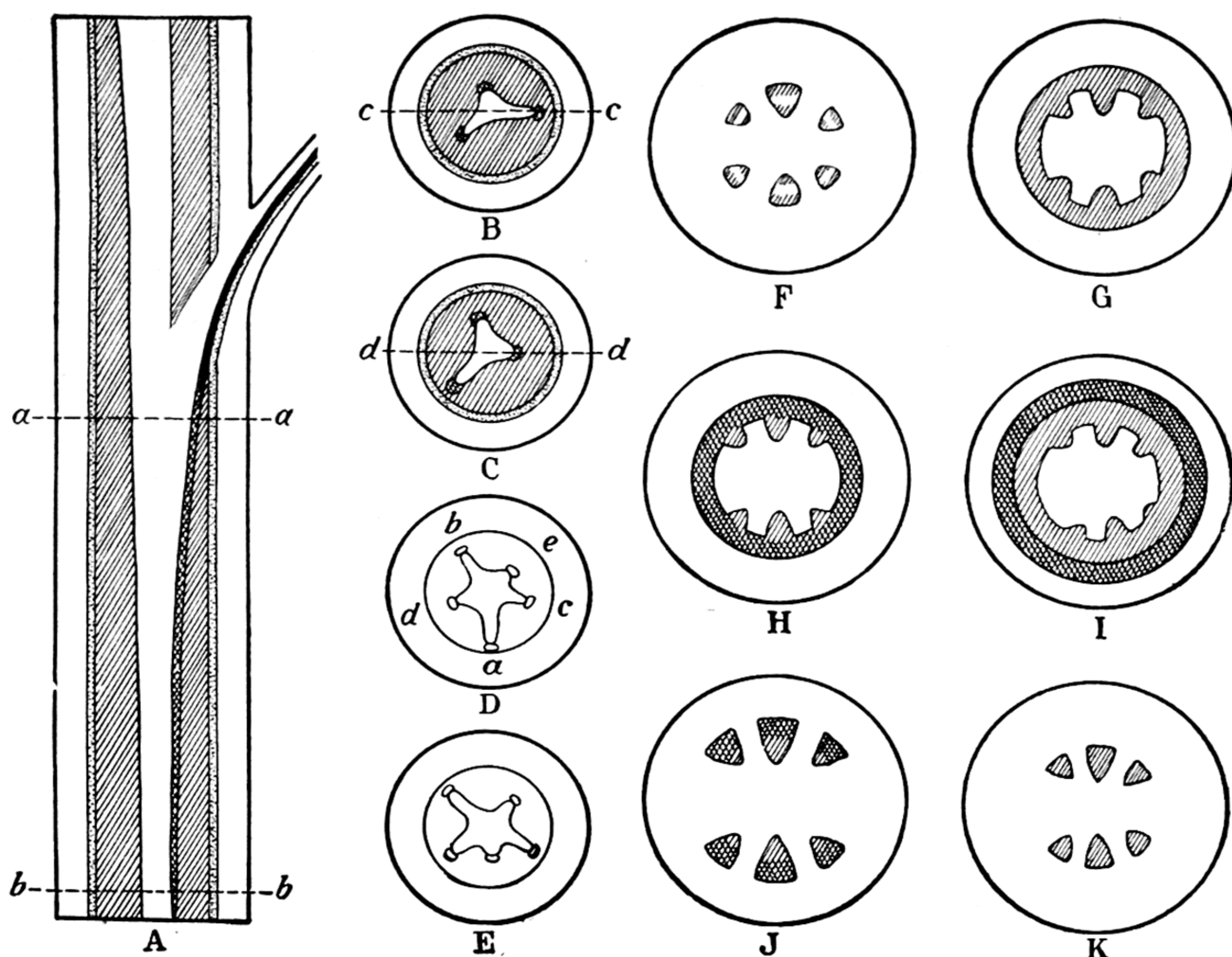


FIG. 74.—A–E, diagrams showing the effect upon pith form of the gradual departure of the trace. A–C, based on *Alnus*; D, E, on *Quercus*. A, longitudinal section (in plane c-c of B); B and C, cross sections of stem shown in A at levels a-a and b-b, respectively (the traces depart according to one-third phyllotaxy); D, E, cross sections of a similar stem with two-fifths phyllotaxy, D being one internode lower than E; the traces are labeled, in order of their departure, a, b, c, d, e. F–K, cross-section diagrams showing the form of the primary vascular cylinder, the inwardly projecting ridges (here exaggerated) representing cauline bundles and leaf-trace bundles as seen in an internode (F–I based on *Populus*): F, young stem in which only the first primary xylem, forming the ridges, is mature; G, the ridges connected by later-formed primary xylem; H, the ridges connected only by secondary xylem; I, like G, but with secondary xylem also; J, the first-formed primary bundles not later connected, and secondary xylem formed on the outside of the bundles; K, like J, but without secondary xylem. (Phloem is not shown in F–K.)

the ridges constitute discrete bundles (Fig. 74F). When the primary vascular tissue has all matured, uniting the bundles into a cylinder (Fig. 74G), these first-formed strands are still prominent, owing to their position nearer the center of the pith and the presence of protoxylem. In those plants where, during primary growth, the early-formed bundles are



not later connected laterally by primary vascular tissue, a cylinder of isolated primary strands is formed, but the bundles may be united by secondary tissues (Fig. 74H). A complete cylinder may thus be formed, the first-formed primary bundles united either by primary or by secondary growth (Chap. VI). Where these connecting bands, either primary or secondary, do not develop, a stele of the so-called "herbaceous type," with isolated strands, is formed (Fig. 74J,K). This condition is structurally comparable with the early stage of a complete vascular cylinder when only the first-formed bundles have appeared. In some dicotyledonous herbs, for example, *Asclepias*, *Hypericum*, *Digitalis*, there are no prominent, early-formed protoxylem strands except leaf traces close to the point of departure; protoxylem arises nearly simultaneously and uniformly around the cylinder.

As seen in a cross section of the mature woody cylinder of a stem, the most prominent of the ridges projecting into the pith are usually leaf-trace bundles, the largest being median traces of the leaves next above. As the node is approached these largest traces become less and less pronounced as wedges projecting into the pith because they swing outward, either gradually (Fig. 74A) or abruptly, and come to lie in indentations of the vascular cylinder rather than on projecting points (Fig. 74B-E). Ridges of the pith then project into the vascular cylinder. As the traces pass farther and farther out, the pith ridges increase in extent outward and break the vascular cylinder above the trace as it passes out, forming a leaf gap. The shape of the pith as seen in cross section may indicate clearly the phyllotaxy of the plant in question. Thus a one-third phyllotaxy may be evident in a three-lobed pith, as in *Alnus* (Fig. 74A-C); a two-fifths in a five-lobed pith, as in *Quercus* and *Populus* (Fig. 74D,E); a one-half by an oval or elliptical pith, as in *Ulmus*. In long internodes projecting ridges of the pith are prominent only where the traces gradually pass obliquely outward; the more gradual the departure of the trace, the longer, and often the deeper, the lobe. Where the number of traces per leaf is more than one, the lobing may be obscured, but lateral traces commonly are smaller and pass out much more abruptly than do median traces, and have little effect upon pith shape.

The number of first-formed strands, whether ultimately still free or fused into a cylinder, may be few or many. These become more or less obscure where an unbroken cylinder is formed, whether this is of primary nature only, or whether secondary growth is also concerned in the completion of the cylinder. In monocotyledons the large number of bundles and the complexity of the system render the scheme of arrangement usually difficult of interpretation.



## THE PITH

The pith is a roughly cylindrical body of tissue in the center of the axis, enclosed by the vascular tissues (Fig. 135). Its outer surface is furrowed more or less deeply by the inwardly projecting strands of protoxylem and ridged in some plants by ray-like extensions between bundles and by projections where its tissues extend out through leaf and branch gaps. The number, prominence, and arrangement of these furrows and ridges depend upon the skeletal plan of the plant in question and upon other features. (The pith was long known as the *medulla*, but this Latin name has become obsolete. As a descriptive word, the name still persists, as in "medullary bundle.")

**Structure of the Pith.**—Histologically, the pith is made up of rather uniform tissue, chiefly parenchymatous, in which the cells are arranged rather loosely, often with pronounced intercellular spaces, and in some forms tending to be in longitudinal rows (Fig. 43A,C,D). In shape, the cells of the pith vary greatly, but they are mostly isodiametric or cylindrical, with thin, cellulose walls. Not uncommonly, thick-walled, lignified parenchyma cells and sclereids are also present, often arranged in groups forming disks or diaphragms of firm tissue. There are two types of "diaphragmed pith": that in which the smaller, thinner walled cells between the disks persist indefinitely (*Liriodendron*, *Nyssa*), and that in which the interdisk cells collapse toward the end of the growing season in which they were formed (*Juglans*). Fibers occur only rarely and then in the peripheral portions where they are associated morphologically with primary vascular tissue, especially with internal phloem. When the pith is developing, all the cells are active and in leafy shoots may contain chlorophyll, but when the region is mature, the cells become less active, and all may have lost their protoplasts, or living and dead cells may be present in any proportion. The proportions vary in different parts of a plant, such as the node and the internode, and in different species. Usually, the smaller cells and those nearer the vascular tissue remain alive. The small living cells may form a fairly definite pattern with the nonliving cells. In woody plants the living cells of the pith serve as storage cells in resting periods, becoming filled with starch and fatty substances.

In kinds of cells, intercellular spaces, secretory tissues, and cell contents, the pith is usually closely similar to the cortex of the same plant, except that protective, supportive, and photosynthetic cells are scarce or lacking in the pith.

In the ontogeny of the stem, the pith cells in many plants mature very early. The surrounding tissues are meristematic and continue to elongate so that the pith may be torn apart longitudinally to a greater or



less extent. If marked radial increase is taking place at the same time, a prominent "hollow pith" is formed, with the broken cell walls lining the cavity (Figs. 135D, 136C). This condition is common among herbs but rare in woody plants. Where the destruction is less extensive, cavities or canals of various extent and shape are formed. Nodal diaphragms are due to the presence of thicker walled cells at the node, or to the very slight elongation of the nodal regions as contrasted with the extensive growth of the internode (the expansion of a bud being due in large degree to the development of internodes).

*The Medullary Sheath.*—The peripheral layers of the pith-like central core of many stems consist of smaller cells, usually thicker walled, more closely packed, and more richly protoplasmic. Although this region merges into the central part, it is often distinguished as the *medullary sheath*, or *perimedullary zone*. If an inner endodermis is present, the medullary sheath is separated from the pith proper by this layer. The outermost parts represent parenchyma of the primary xylem, since the groups of protoxylem tracheids and vessels project into the sheath; when internal phloem is present, the sieve-tube clusters lie near the middle of the sheath. This layer is not, therefore, morphologically, a part of the pith.

The cells of the medullary sheath may be parenchymatous, as in many Chenopodiaceae, Boraginaceae, and Euphorbiaceae, or sclerenchymatous, as in members of the Umbelliferae and Compositae—or both parenchymatous and sclerenchymatous cells may be present. Fibers occur only rarely, and then chiefly in connection with internal phloem.

*The Pith of Roots.*—Roots characteristically lack a pith. Where such a core is present, it is similar in structure to that of the stem of the plant but tends to be more homogeneous and does not break down. It is more nearly cylindrical because the primary xylem points do not project into it, and there are no gaps in the vascular cylinder.

*Duration of the Pith.*—The pith persists indefinitely in nearly all plants. In woody stems the changes taking place in heartwood formation of the first annual rings affect the pith cells in a similar way. But until this stage is reached, some of the pith cells in most woody plants remain alive. In other forms all the pith cells die very early. The pith is not crushed by the crowding in upon it of the vascular bundles as secondary growth takes place. Only in a few woody vines of anomalous stem structure, such as *Aristolochia*, is there found this peculiar condition of crushing during secondary growth. Furthermore, no growth or structural change occurs in the pith after primary growth of the axis is complete. Therefore, the pith is present in tree trunks and other old stems in size, shape,



and structure as it was in the young twig when secondary growth began. Only in lack of protoplasts and in chemical nature is it different.

### THE PERICYCLE

The pericycle is a thin cylinder of tissue, at most only a few rows of cells wide, sheathing the vascular tissues. It is limited internally by the primary phloem and externally by the endodermis. Where the latter is lacking, the pericycle merges with the cortex. Typically this layer consists of parenchyma, as in most roots and in the stems of the pteridophytes. The abundant "pericyclic fibers" of some plants have in recent years been shown to be a part of the primary phloem—cells surrounding protophloem elements that disappeared early in the ontogeny of the tissue. To what extent the so-called "pericyclic fibers" generally are phloem fibers is at present unknown. Certainly many of them—such as those of *Cannabis* (hemp) and *Linum* (flax)—belong to the phloem. Whether those of plants in which the fibrous strands alternate with the protophloem groups also belong to the phloem is apparently unknown. (Study of the ontogeny of the region is necessary for the determination of the tissue to which so-called "pericyclic fibers" belong.)

It has been claimed that no pericycle is present in the stems of many angiosperms because the fibers which were thought to make up much of this layer belong to the phloem. A narrow well-marked pericycle is present in the vascular cryptogams, in both root and stem, and in seed plants, in the roots. Only in the stems of some seed plants does it appear to have been lost. In the stems of many angiosperm seedlings and in the bases of the stems of many herbs, a true or a vestigial endodermis is present and a narrow band of parenchyma separates the endodermal sheath from the phloem. This band represents either the outermost layer of the primary phloem or a pericycle closely like that of the root with which the stem is continuous. In other plants, especially woody herbs, the protophloem fibers lie against the endodermis, and no pericycle is present. The pericyclic region is in need of critical detailed and especially comparative study.

In roots, the pericycle is normally parenchymatous. This is the region of origin of the meristems which form lateral roots and commonly of the first phellogen layers of roots, as well as of secondary cambium in anomalous steles. It is doubtless for this reason that the pericycle of roots was formerly known as the *pericambium*. Adventitious roots and stems also arise commonly in the pericycle. In old roots the cells of the pericycle may become lignified or even suberized.

The parenchyma cells of the pericycle share the function of storage



with similar cells in other regions. Secretory cells and canals, laticiferous cells, and other specialized cell types may occur in the pericycle.

### THE ENDODERMIS

The endodermis is a uniseriate sheet of cells separating the stele from the cortex, without intercellular spaces and with structural features unlike those of other cells. The cells constituting this layer are typically elongate, with the long axis parallel with the course of the vascular tissue and with the end walls mostly transverse. In cross section they are usually more or less oval or elliptical with the longer axis in a tangential direction. The protoplasts are those of typical parenchyma cells. Starch, tannin, and mucilage are frequently present; sometimes, as in *Apios*, crystals are abundant.

The important peculiarity of endodermal cells is the presence in restricted parts of the wall of a waxy substance similar to cutin and suberin, which makes those parts impervious to water. The "waterproofing" substance takes lignin stains to some extent and has recently been called lignosuberin. Endodermal cells are of two types, thin-walled and thick-walled. In the former, the modified wall areas are in the form of bands known as *Casparian strips* that run completely around the cell on the radial and end walls (Fig. 75). These bands range in width from minute threads to broad bands that occupy the entire radial wall. They may be merely chemically different from the rest of the wall but are usually slightly thicker. In cross section (Fig. 75A–C) the strips are often called *Casparian dots*, or *radial dots*. This thin-walled type of endodermal cell, which is the more common type, is sometimes called *primary*. It seems to represent a first stage—after the meristematic—in development, a stage that persists as the mature condition in pteridophytes and most dicotyledons.

In the thick-walled type of endodermis, the radial and inner tangential walls—sometimes all the walls—are thickened (Fig. 76) by suberin lamellae laid down over the earlier formed wall with its Casparian strips. For this reason this type is called *secondary*—it is not a secondary tissue. The thickening of the wall may be so great as nearly to close the lumen (Fig. 76A). The thick wall, like the Casparian strips, is strongly "suberized." In late stages in this thickening, the lamellae may be largely or wholly of cellulose. Frequently in this type of endodermis there occur occasional isolated, thin-walled cells, known as *passage cells* or *transfusion cells*, which have no suberized areas. In roots these cells are situated opposite the protoxylem cells. Both radial and tangential walls may be heavily pitted, pits occurring in the Casparian strips when the strips are wide; the end walls have few or perhaps no pits.



The primary type occurs in the pteridophytes and in most of the dicotyledons; the secondary type is characteristic of the monocotyledons.

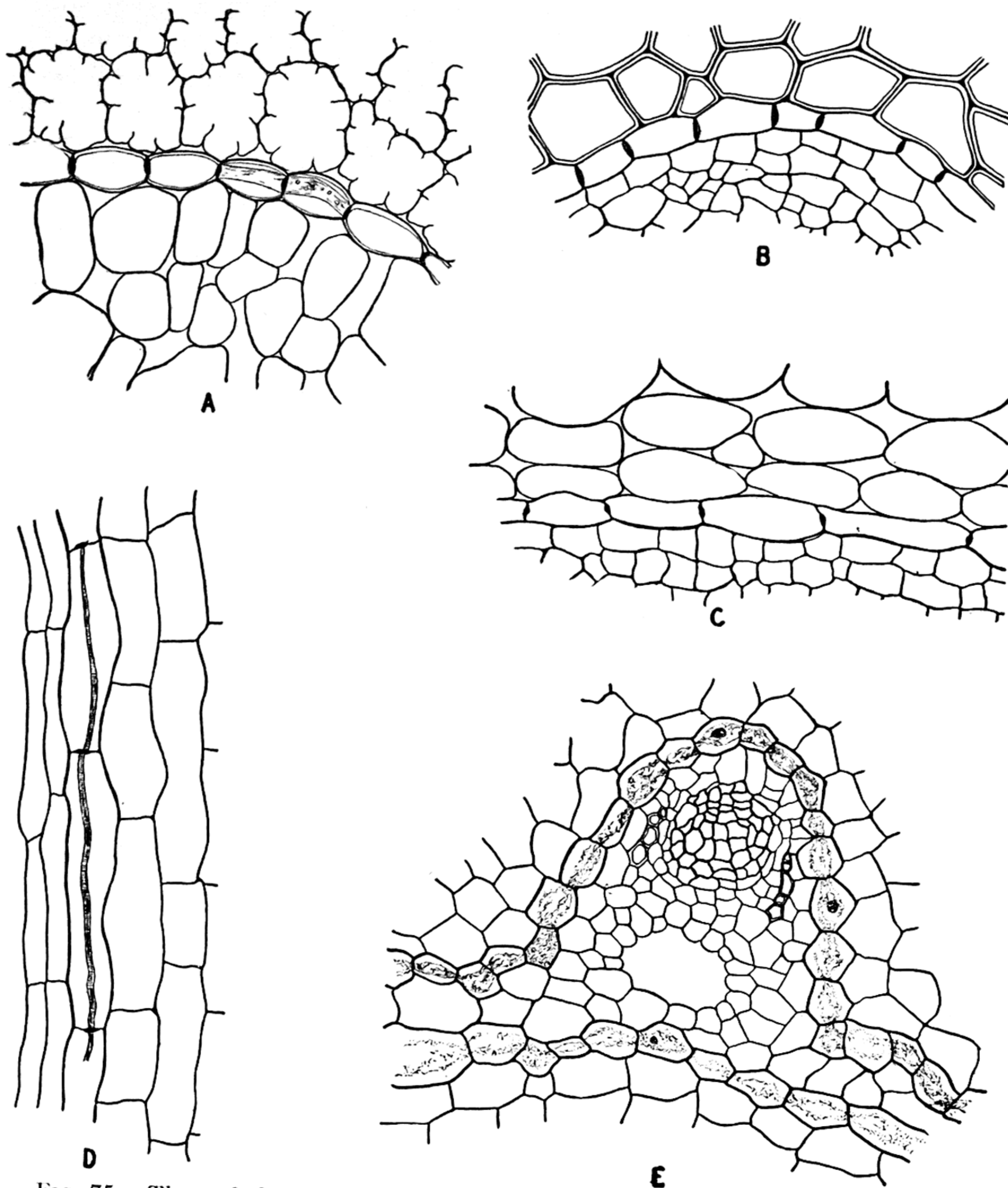


FIG. 75.—The endodermis. A, cross section in leaf of *Pinus*, showing the Casparian strips in cross section, and in face view on the end walls; B, cross section in rhizome of *Polypodium*; C, D, cross and longitudinal sections in stem of *Lobelia*, showing the radial dots, and the Casparian strips in face view on the radial walls; E, cross section of outer retaining connection with the Casparian strips.

The latter has been called a *phloëoterma*, but this term has been applied in various ways and is now rarely used.



**Occurrence and Position of the Endodermis.**—In position in the plant body the endodermis is always in rather close association with the vascular system. Typically, it lies external to the vascular cells, either abutting directly upon them or lying external to the pericycle. It, therefore, separates the stele from the cortex. In some plants an *inner*

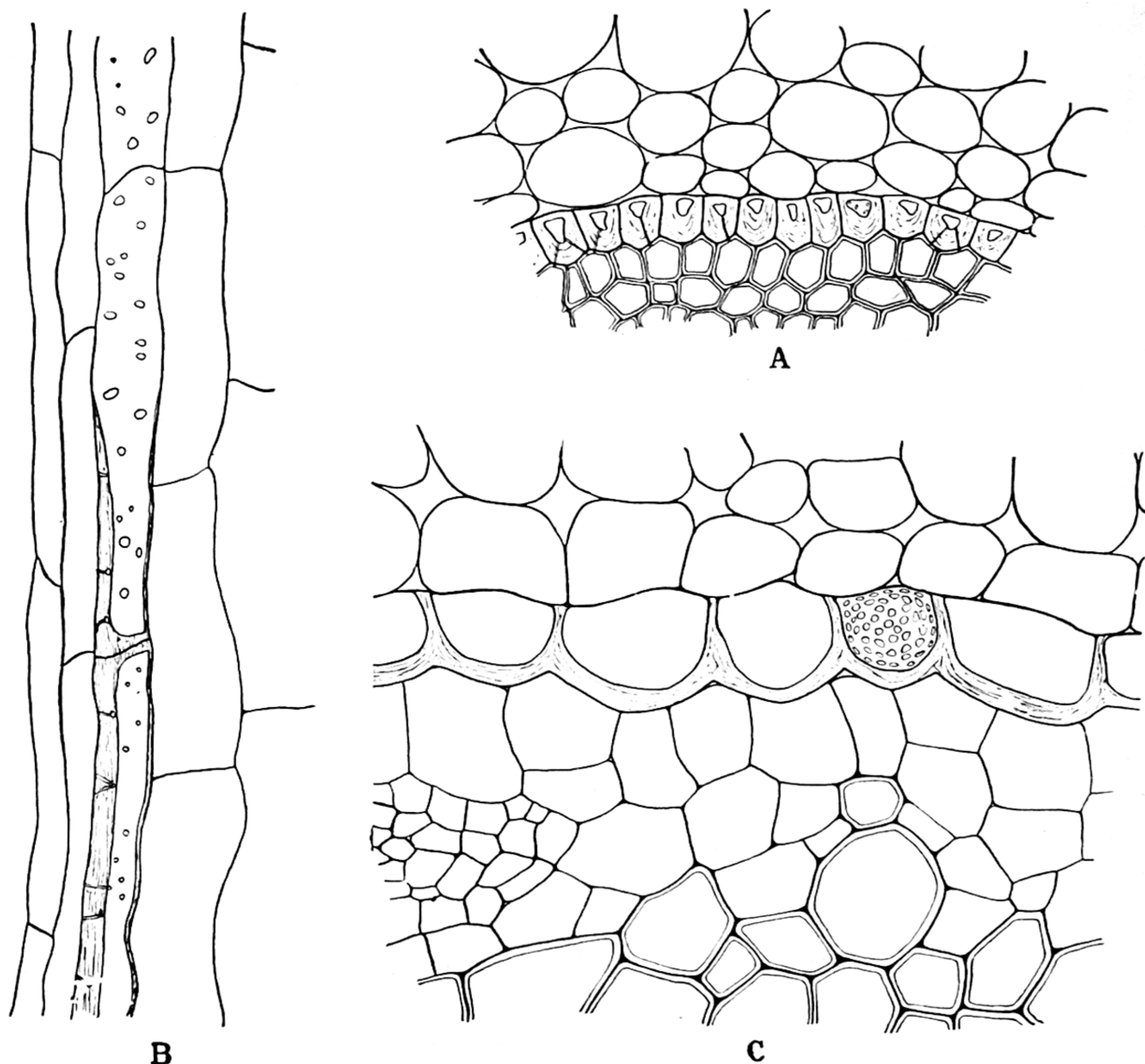


FIG. 76.—The endodermis, thick-walled types. A, B, cross and longitudinal sections from root of *Smilax rotundifolia*; C, cross section from root of *Musa sapientum*.

*endodermis* is also present in the stem. This endodermis which, morphologically, is doubtless only a part of the external endodermis, separates the stele from the pith.

The endodermis has been considered both the innermost layer of the cortex and the outermost layer of the stele. It has been claimed to be cortical on the basis of histogenesis because in roots it is derived commonly from the same mother cells as are the innermost cortical cells.



However, it has been shown that it may be formed in the stem from procambium mother cells which also form pericyclic cells and protophloem, and that in roots, it may belong histogenetically to either the stele or the cortex. Functionally it is obviously a layer separating these two regions. For convenience in description, it is here considered the limiting layer of the stele.

An endodermis that limits vascular tissue on the inside and shuts it off from the pith is called an *inner endodermis* (Fig. 75E). Such a layer is not structurally distinct from the outer endodermis since the two are continuous through leaf and branch gaps. The endodermis not only limits the vascular tissue of the axis but may also surround the vascular bundles in leaves, as in *Plantago*, and in perhaps modified form, in grasses, as the "mestome sheath," but it is not a constant feature in vascular plants. It is present in all roots and throughout the plant body in most pteridophytes. In many gymnosperms, it is characteristic of the leaves but is mostly absent in stems. In angiosperms, it occurs in some parts of the stems of a majority of herbaceous species. It is present in aquatic plants and species of moist habitats; in creeping plants and in many seedlings; in rhizomes and some leaf bases; in the bases of some stems that lack it in the upper parts. Woody stems and the leaves of angiosperms generally have no endodermis. In herbaceous plants the endodermis occurs more commonly in the advanced families, especially in the gamopetalous and apetalous dicotyledons. In the monocotyledons, where it is more common than in the dicotyledons, the secondary type is usually present. In stems of many plants where a typical endodermis is absent, a layer of cells closely similar to an endodermis, but with simple cellulose walls, takes its place. Such a layer is probably a vestigial endodermis.

The occurrence of the endodermis in a given genus or even in an individual plant may be highly variable. In the genus *Piper*, for example, it may form a continuous cylinder of typical cells or be represented by a vestigial layer. Again, the endodermis may be discontinuous: present in some internodes and lacking in others; present opposite vascular bundles and lacking between them.

*Function of the Endodermis as Related to Structure.*—The function of the endodermis has been a matter of much discussion since this layer was first studied, and is still largely in question. Many functions have been ascribed to it. These are based largely on its obvious relation to water and to vascular tissue. The endodermis appears to be a "watertight layer" between vascular cells and surrounding tissues, especially where the organs in question are in a moist or wet situation, but it occurs also in many plants of dry soil and in the leaves of xerophytic gymnosperms.



Its absence in woody twigs is possibly the result of loss in evolution. Further evidence that the endodermis is a sort of water dam is (a) it always lacks intercellular spaces, and (b) the walls are more or less cutinized or suberized so that in the thin-walled type, water can pass through the endodermis only through the tangential walls and through the protoplast, that is, through a semipermeable membrane. For this reason it has been looked upon as a diffusion layer separating regions of different osmotic pressure and as a diffusion layer that prevents loss of mineral nutrients, or of food, from vascular tissue.

Among the many and diverse functions that have been assigned to the endodermis at various times are the following: (a) It is a mechanical protective layer, a sort of inner, accessory epidermis. (And, as such, the secondary type in monocotyledonous roots may serve to some extent when the cortex has sloughed away, but the majority of endodermal layers are of delicate nature.) (b) It is connected with the maintenance of root pressure. (c) It is an air dam, preventing the water-conducting cells from becoming clogged with air.

The persistence of starch in endodermal cells has suggested theories—now long abandoned—that the endodermis is a “starch sheath,” a carbohydrate-conducting or storage layer, or a layer limiting storage to the inside or to the outside. The presence, type, and behavior of starch grains in the endodermis of certain plants have also led to the theory that this layer is an orienting “organ,” the starch grains being statoliths which, by alteration of position in the cytoplasm, cause sensory stimuli leading to change in orientation of the organ. Such a function can be characteristic of the endodermis only of certain plants, and of parts of organs, since starch grains are not always present in endodermal cells, and in many types of such cells cannot “fall” from one position to another as the orientation of the organ is changed because of the presence of gums and crystals in those cells.

The function of the endodermis is thus in question. That it frequently has to do with the relations of water and xylem seems to be without doubt. Its specific functions in different plants probably vary greatly since types of endodermis characterize families to some extent. Secondary functions doubtless also exist, and the primary function may have been lost in some plants.

Many of the facts regarding the distribution of the endodermis in plant groups and its structural variations suggest the possibility that the endodermis is an ancient structure of much physiological and perhaps morphological value, which has become modified in the course of phylogenetic development. In part, it may still retain its original relations and functions; in part, it may be more or less vestigial in nature. In some



plants it may have become specialized or modified in adaptation to new functions, as vestigial structures frequently are. It has disappeared in woody twigs where continuing secondary growth occurs.

The cells of the endodermis, except those of the thick-walled type, may become meristematic at any time. In them the cork cambium of the root develops frequently—that of the stem, occasionally. The initials of lateral roots and of adventitious buds commonly arise in this layer. Since the endodermis matures early in the development of the primary tissues, its continuity as a sheath must be maintained during primary increase in length and diameter of the region. If it is to persist long during increase in diameter resulting from secondary-tissue development, continued new-cell formation must take place. Radial divisions in the mature cells maintain the layer for a time, but in woody stems and roots secondary growth soon crushes this layer, and all evidence of its former presence may be lost.

### THE CORTEX

The portion of an axis that surrounds the central cylinder and is separated from the cylinder by the endodermis is the *cortex*. It is limited on the outside by the external uniseriate layer of the axis, the epidermis. In good usage the term cortex applies only to the definite region thus morphologically distinct, and only to the *primary* cells and tissues developed therein. Distinction is sometimes made between “primary cortex” and “secondary cortex”—the latter term being applied to secondary tissues developed within the primary cortex from cortical cells, chiefly to periderm. Such a use is, however, misleading, since similar layers, such as those formed in the secondary phloem, are also loosely termed “secondary cortex.” This usage is, of course, due to confusion resulting from the use of the term “cortex” in the loose sense of an outer part or covering, and in the physiological sense of any protective outer layer. The term cortex should be restricted to the definite primary region.

In thickness, the cortex varies from a few to a great many rows of cells (Fig. 77). It is essentially parenchymatous in nature, but may contain many kinds of cells arranged in many ways. Collenchyma often constitutes a large proportion of the tissues. Ridges—and in angular stems, the corners—may consist largely of this temporary supporting tissue. Fibers and sclereids, as well as secretory and storage cells of various types, occur freely. Fibers commonly are in sheets or in large strands; they are often associated with the epidermis, forming below it an accessory outer protective layer, a *hypodermis*. The term “hypodermis” is applied to a layer of supporting or protecting cells of any type



which lie immediately under the epidermis and reinforce this layer in some way. The cortical parenchyma cells usually contain chloroplasts, and definite specialized photosynthetic tissue may be formed (Fig. 181). The cells are arranged loosely or closely, and commonly no definite plan of arrangement occurs. Tangential rows may be conspicuous, and in specially modified roots and stems, such as those of aquatic plants, symmetrical radiating sheets of cells may occur. The cortex of roots is more homogeneous than that of stems and usually consists of parenchyma only (Figs. 127*B*, 133).

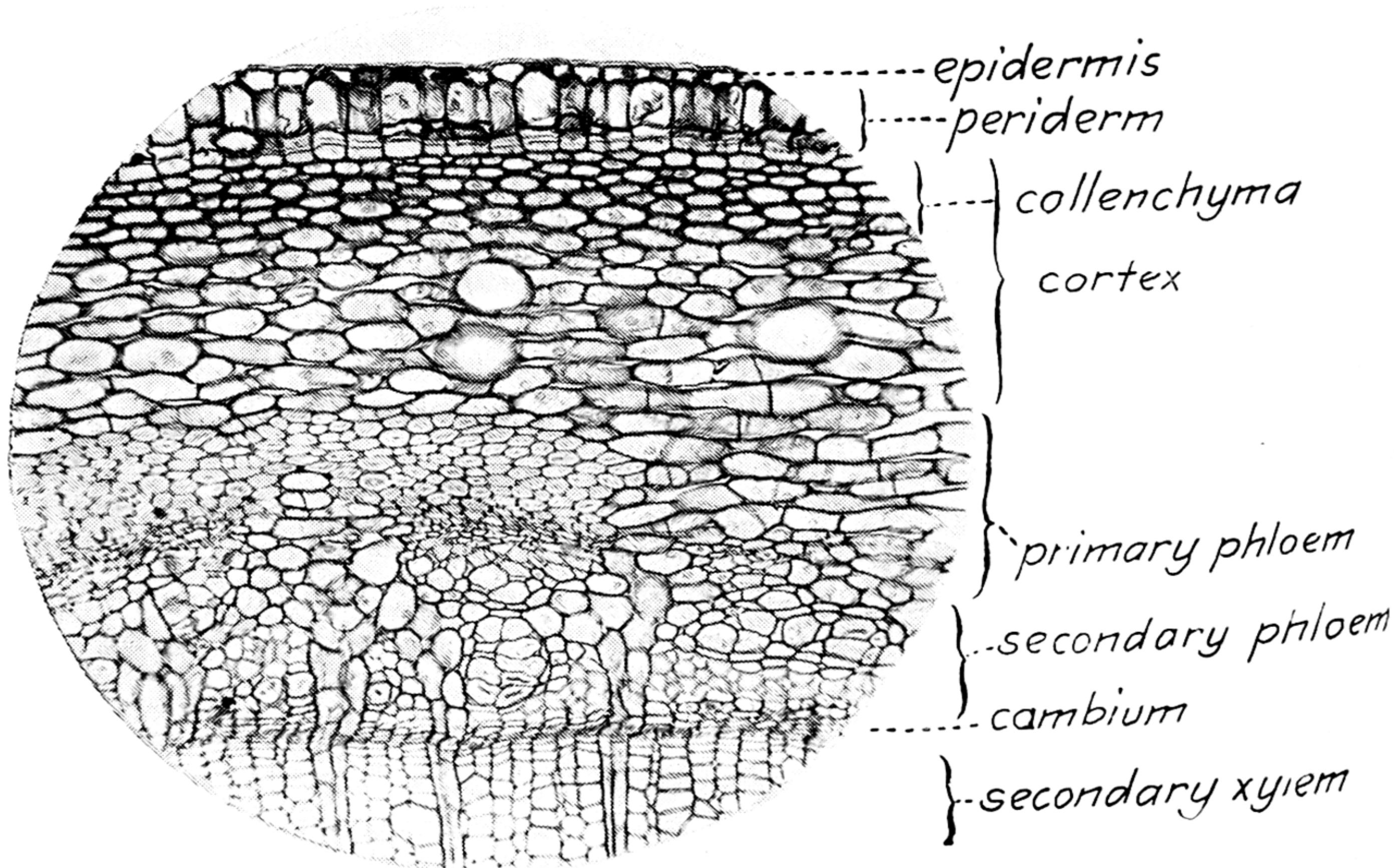


FIG. 77.—The cortex in a woody stem, *Magnolia acuminata*. The cortex consists of collenchyma and parenchyma. The cells of the latter are in tangential rows formed in part by continued radial division as an accommodation to diameter increase in the stem. Secretory cells are present. The thick band of fibers belongs largely or wholly to the primary phloem. Beneath this, lie other primary phloem groups, more or less crushed, and, beneath these, secondary phloem. The cambium and secondary xylem are also shown. Below the epidermis a periderm layer is beginning to develop.

The tissues of the cortex are strictly primary and, as a whole, mature with the primary tissues of the stele, but there is considerable overlapping of development with secondary-tissue formation within the stele. Collenchyma develops early, but sclerenchymatous cells are usually late in reaching maturity. Parenchyma cells may continue to multiply, even into the second year in many woody plants. Additional tissue is thus developed as the volume of the cortex is rapidly increased with increase in diameter of the axis. Most of the divisions of the parenchyma cells



are radial, forming tangential rows or sheets of cells. The later divisions of this type do not result in rounded daughter cells, and the new walls appear to divide the elongated mother cells (Fig. 77). The cortex of an axis in which marked secondary growth has occurred has tissues crowded and even more or less crushed radially. This is especially true in herbaceous stems that have strong xylem cylinders, as in *Linum* and *Solidago*.

The various cell types in the cortex serve various functions, but the cortex is primarily a protective layer. Such functions as support, photosynthesis, and storage are secondary.

### THE EPIDERMIS

The epidermis constitutes a layer over the entire outer surface of the plant body, continuous except for stomatal and lenticellular openings. In meristematic regions it is, of course, undifferentiated, and in older stems and roots it may have been destroyed by secondary growth. Typically it consists of a single layer of cells; in a few plants it is biseriate or multiseriate. The epidermis of many plants has been described as multiseriate. In most of these the interpretations are incorrect: in some the outer region of the cortex resembles the epidermis in structure and function and is therefore assumed to be a part of the epidermis; in others, a periderm layer has just been initiated; in others, the epidermis itself is thin, weak, and ephemeral, and the abutting cortical layer functions as an epidermis; in still others, especially aquatics and plants of moist habitats, the epidermis closely resembles the outer cortex. Interpretation of a series of outermost cell layers as a biseriate or multiseriate epidermis is usually an interpretation based on function and not on morphology. In plants where the epidermis seems to be more than one layer thick, a study of development is necessary for correct interpretation.

Epidermal cells have a large central vacuole and thin peripheral cytoplasm. Minute leucoplasts are present, but chloroplasts are absent except in the guard cells of stomata and in plants of aquatic or moist and deeply shaded habitats. Mucilage, tannin, and crystals occur occasionally. The cells vary much in size and outline but are essentially tabular. They are closely fitted together and are often lobed, toothed, or flanged in various ways, the projections dovetailing into those of other cells and strongly interlocking the cells (Figs. 79, 170). The cells of leaves, and especially those of petals, are more complex in this respect than are those of other organs. Epidermal cells often have unevenly thickened walls, the outer and the radial walls being much thicker than the inner wall (Fig. 179). This additional thickness and the cutinization of the walls is of much importance from the standpoint of mechanical protection and



of prevention of loss of water. The cuticle (Chap. II) adds greatly to the efficiency of the epidermis in the latter respect.

*Ontogeny and Duration of the Epidermis.*—The cells from which the epidermis develops are set off very early in the apical meristem as a superficial layer. In stems this is commonly the first zone to become distinct. In terms of the tunica-corpus theory, the epidermis is formed by anticlinal divisions of the outer layer of the tunica when a distinct tunica is present. Where tunica and corpus are not distinct, the epidermis is formed by anticlinal and periclinal divisions of the dermatogen. Later increase in the number of cells in the epidermis is the result of anticlinal division. The early established uniseriate condition is maintained throughout the life of the epidermis. Where the stem increases in diameter during secondary growth, continued slow division may go on in the epidermis, which in this way is accommodated to the increasing surface. Changes in epidermal cells, other than those involved in the development of phellogen layers, are rare. In roots, the epidermal cells, and also those of the outer cortex, generally become lifeless and lignified or suberized after the root hairs cease to function. In perennial stems epidermal cells live until the development of a periderm layer cuts off the water and food supply. In leaves, flowers, and most fruits, epidermal cells normally live as long as the organ of which they are a part.

*Function of the Epidermis.*—In function, the epidermis is primarily a covering layer which protects against rapid loss of water and mechanical injury. It may also serve secondarily in photosynthesis and secretion. Parts of the epidermis are structurally modified to serve some important physiological function, for example, the secretory tissue of nectaries, the stomata of leaves and stems, and the absorbing hairs of roots.

*Root Hairs.*—In roots, many or all of the epidermal cells become *root hairs*. In the ontogeny of such cells the outer wall expands, forming a long, tube-like process, in shape and structure a typical hair (Fig. 78). The walls of epidermal cells of roots in general, and especially those of the projecting hairs, are thin and delicate. They are commonly of cellulose and permit ready diffusion of water and dissolved substances. It is by absorption through root hairs that the chief supply of water and mineral nutrients is obtained. These structures are ephemeral, persisting usually but a few days or weeks, after which they collapse and the remains of the cells and of adjacent cells become suberized or lignified. Root hairs with thick lignified walls are reported in certain Compositae where they are said to persist into the second growing season.

*The Stoma.*—The openings in the epidermis through which gaseous interchange takes place between the intercellular spaces of the subepidermal cells and the atmosphere are known as *stomata*. These openings



numerous shapes, including elaborately forked and branched types (Fig. 80). Multicellular hairs likewise are found in innumerable types, and range from simple linear hairs of a few cells to complex, intricately branched, or massive structures, involving considerable areas of the epidermis. Stinging hairs (Fig. 56A), scales, and many glandular hairs (Fig. 56B–E) are complex multicellular structures. Root hairs are morphologically typical hairs.'

'The cells of hairs may be dead or living. If alive, the protoplasts contain little cytoplasm, unless the hair is associated with secretion of some type when the cytoplasm is abundant and richly granular. The thickness of the wall and its chemical nature vary greatly. Such hairs as those on the fruit of the peach and raspberry (Fig. 80I), the flower of the willows, and the bud of the grape are very thick-walled. Cutinized and lignified hairs are frequent. Cotton "fibers" are cellulose hairs.'

'Hairs are connected with many functions, major and minor, but it is in the reduction of transpiration through the additional coating they provide that they are probably most important.'

### References

(See also references in Chap. III; and for vascular tissue, in Chaps. IV, VII, and VIII)

- ARTSCHWAGER, E. F.: Anatomy of the potato plant, with special reference to the ontogeny of the vascular system, *Jour. Agr. Res.*, **14**, 221–252, 1918.
- BAILEY, I. W., and W. W. TUPPER: Size variation in tracheary cells: I. A comparison between the secondary xylems of vascular cryptogams, gymnosperms, and angiosperms, *Proc. Amer. Acad. Arts and Sci.*, **54**, 149–204, 1908.
- BARKLEY, G.: Differentiation of vascular bundle of *Trichosanthes anguina*, *Bot. Gaz.*, **83**, 173–184, 1927.
- BOND, G.: The occurrence of cell division in the endodermis, *Proc. Roy. Soc. Edinburgh*, **50**, 38–50, 1930.
- : The stem endodermis in the genus *Piper*. *Trans. Roy. Soc. Edinburgh*, **56**, 695–724, 1931.
- BOND, T. E. T.: Studies in the vegetative growth and anatomy of the tea plant (*Camellia thea* Link) with special reference to the phloem, *Ann. Bot.*, **6**, 607–630, 1942.
- BUGNON, P.: Origine, évolution et valeur des concepts de protoxylème et de metaxylème, *Bull. Soc. Linn. de Normandie*, 7 sér., **7**, 123–151, (1924) 1925.
- CHANG, C. Y.: Differentiation of protophloem in the angiosperm shoot apex, *New Phyt.*, **34**, 21–29, 1935.
- CHEADLE, V. I.: Specialization of vessels within the xylem of each organ in the Monocotyledoneae, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **31**, 81–92, 1944.
- and N. B. WHITFORD: Observations on the phloem in the Monocotyledoneae. I. The occurrence and phylogenetic specialization in structure of the sieve tubes in the metaphloem, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **28**, 623–627, 1941.
- COL, A.: Recherches sur la disposition des faisceaux dans la tige et les feuilles de quelques dicotylédones, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 8 sér., **20**, 1–288, 1904.



- COPELAND, E. B.: The mechanism of stomata, *Ann. Bot.*, **16**, 327-364, 1902.
- CORMACK, R. G. H.: Investigations on the development of root hairs, *New Phyt.*, **34**, 30-54, 1935.
- : The effect of environmental factors on the development of root hairs in *Phleum pratense* and *Sporobolus cryptandrus*, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **31**, 443-440, 1944.
- CRAFTS, A. S.: Vascular differentiation in the shoot apices of ten coniferous species, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **30**, 382-393, 1943.
- DAMM, O.: Ueber den Bau, die Entwicklungsgeschichte und die mechanischen Eigenschaften mehrjähriger Epidermen bei den Dicotyledonen, *Beih. Bot. Centralbl.*, **11**, 219-260, 1901.
- DANGEARD, P. A.: Essai sur l'anatomie comparée au liber interne dans quelques familles de dicotylédones, *Le Botaniste*, **17**, 225-364, 1926.
- DORMER, K. J.: Shoot structure in angiosperms with special reference to Leguminosae, *Ann. Bot.*, **9**, 141-143, 1945.
- ESAU, K.: Ontogeny and structure of the phloem of tobacco, *Hilgardia*, **11**, 343-424, 1938.
- : Development and structure of the phloem tissue, *Bot. Rev.*, **5**, 373-432, 1939.
- : Vascular differentiation in the vegetative shoot of *Linum*. I. The procambium, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **29**, 738-747, 1942. II. The first phloem and xylem, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **30**, 248-255, 1943. III. The origin of the bast fibers, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **30**, 579-586, 1942.
- : Ontogeny of the vascular bundle in *Zea mays*, *Hilgardia*, **15**, 327-368, 1943.
- : Origin and development of primary tissues in seed plants, *Bot. Rev.*, **9**, 125-206, 1943.
- : Vascularization of the vegetative shoots of *Helianthus* and *Sambucus*, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **32**, 18-29, 1945.
- FLOT, L.: Recherches sur la zone pérимédullaire de la tige, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 7 sér., **18**, 37-112, 1893.
- FRANZ, H.: Beiträge zur Kenntnis des Dickenwachstums der Membranen, (Untersuchungen an den Haaren von *Humulus Lupulus*), *Flora*, **129**, 287-308, 1935.
- GRIS, A.: Sur la moelle des plantes ligneuses, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 5 sér., **14**, 34-79, 1872.
- GROB, A.: Beiträge zur Anatomie der Epidermis der Gramineenblätter, *Bibl. Bot.*, **36**, 1-123, 1896.
- GUILLAUD, A.: Recherches sur l'anatomie comparée et le développement des tissus de la tige dans les monocotylédones, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 6 sér., **5**, 1-176, 1877.
- GUTTENBERG, H. VON: Die Aufgaben der Endodermis, *Biol. Centralbl.*, **63**, 236-251, 1943.
- HÉRAIL, J.: Recherches sur l'anatomie comparée de la tige des dicotylédones, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 7 sér., **2**, 203-314, 1885.
- HIRSCH, W.: Untersuchungen über die Entwicklung der Haare bei den Pflanzen, *Beitr. Wiss. Bot.*, **4**, 1-36, 1900.
- JEFFREY, E. C.: The morphology of the central cylinder in the angiosperms, *Trans. Canad. Inst.*, **6**, 599-636, 1899.
- : The structure and development of the stem in the pteridophyta and gymnosperms, *Phil. Trans. Roy. Soc. London*, **195B**, 119-146, 1903.
- : "The Anatomy of Woody Plants," Chicago, 1917.
- JONES, W. R.: The development of the vascular structure of *Dianthera americana*, *Bot. Gaz.*, **54**, 1-30, 1912.



- KAPLAN, R.: Über die Bildung der Stele aus dem Urmeristem von Pteridophyten und Spermatophyten, *Planta*, **27**, 224–268, 1937.
- KAUFMAN, K.: Anatomie und Physiologie der Spaltöffnungsapparate mit verholzten Schiesszellmembranen, *Planta*, **3**, 26–59, 1927.
- KERL, H. W.: Beitrag zur Kenntnis der Spaltöffnungsbewegung, *Planta*, **9**, 407–463, 1929.
- KROEMER, K.: Wurzelhaut, Hypodermis und Endodermis der Angiospermenwurzel, *Bibl. Bot.*, **59**, 1–151, 1903.
- KUNDU, B. C.: The anatomy of two Indian fibre plants, *Cannabis* and *Corchorus*, with special reference to fibre distribution and development, *Jour. Indian Bot. Soc.*, **21**, 93–128, 1942.
- LESTIBOUDOIS, T.: Phyllotaxie anatomique, ou recherches sur les causes organiques des diverses distributions des feuilles, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 3 sér., **10**, 15–105, 136–189, 1848.
- LINSBAUER, K.: Die Epidermis, In "Handbuch der Pflanzenanatomie," IV, 1930.
- LOUIS, J.: L'ontogénèse du système conducteur dans la pousse feuillée des dicotylées et des gymnospermes, *La Cellule*, **44**, 87–172, 1935.
- MEYER, F. J.: Bau und Ontogenie der Wasserleitungsbahnen und der an diese angeschlossenen Siebteile in den vegetativen Achsen der Pteridophyten, Gymnospermen und Angiospermen, *Prog. Rei Bot.*, **5**, 521–588, 1917.
- MILLER, H. A., and R. H. WETMORE: Studies in the developmental anatomy of *Phlox Drummondii* Hook., II. The apices of the mature plant, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **33**, 1–10, 1946.
- MOROT, L.: Recherches sur le péricycle ou couche périphérique du cylindre central chez les phanérogames, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 6 sér., **20**, 217–309, 1885.
- MYLIUS, G.: Das Polyderm. Eine vergleichende Untersuchung über die physiologischen Scheiden, Polyderm, Periderm und Endodermis, *Bibl. Bot.*, **79**, 1–119, 1913.
- NETOLITZKE, F.: Die Pflanzenhaare, In Linsbauer, K.: "Handbuch der Pflanzenanatomie," IV, 1932.
- OLIVIER, L.: Recherches sur l'appareil tégumentaire des racines, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 6 sér., **11**, 5–133, 1881.
- PFITZER, E.: Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Hautgewebe der Pflanzen, III. Ueber die mehrschichtige Epidermis und das Hypoderma, *Jahrb. Wiss. Bot.*, **8**, 16–74, 1871.
- PLOWMAN, A. B.: The comparative anatomy and phylogeny of the Cyperaceae, *Ann. Bot.*, **20**, 1–33, 1906.
- PRIESTLEY, J. H.: The mechanism of root pressure. *New Phyt.*, **19**, 189–200, 1900.
- and E. E. NORTH: Physiological studies in plant anatomy, III. The structure of the endodermis in relation to its function, *New Phyt.*, **21**, 113–139, 1922.
- SALISBURY, E. J.: On the causes and ecological significance of stomatal frequency with special reference to the woodland flora, *Phil. Trans. Roy. Soc. London*, **216B**, 1–65, 1927.
- SCHWARZ, F.: Die Wurzelhaare der Pflanzen, *Untersuch. Bot. Inst. Tübingen*, **1**, 135–188, 1883.
- SCHWENDENER, S.: Die Spaltöffnungen der Gramineen und Cyperaceen, *Sitzungsb. Königl.-Preuss. Akad. Wiss. Berlin*, **1889-1**, 65–79, 1889.
- SCOTT, L. I., and J. H. PRIESTLEY: The root as an absorbing organ, I. A reconsideration of the entry of water and salts in the absorbing region, *New Phyt.*, **27**, 125–140, 1928.



- SHARMAN, B. C.: Developmental anatomy of the shoot of *Zea mays* L., *Ann. Bot.*, N.S. **6**, 245–282, 1942.
- SINNOTT, E. W.: The anatomy of the node as an aid in the classification of angiosperms, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **1**, 303–322, 1914.
- and I. W. BAILEY: Investigations on the phylogeny of the angiosperms. 3. Nodal anatomy and the morphology of stipules, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **1**, 441–453, 1914.
- SKUTCH, A. F.: Origin of endodermis in ferns, *Bot. Gaz.*, **86**, 113–114, 1928.
- : Anatomy of the axis of the banana, *Bot. Gaz.*, **93**, 233–258, 1932.
- SNOW, L. M.: The development of root hairs, *Bot. Gaz.*, **40**, 12–48, 1905.
- SOAR, I.: The structure and function of the endodermis in the leaves of the Abietineae, *New Phyt.*, **21**, 269–292, 1922.
- STAUDERMANN, W.: Die Haare der Monocotylen, *Bot. Arch.*, **8**, 105–184, 1924.
- STERLING, C.: Growth and vascular development in the shoot apex of *Sequoia sempervirens* (Lamb.) Endl., III. Cytological aspects of vascularization, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **33**, 35–45, 1946.
- STRASBURGER, E.: Ein Beitrag zur Entwicklungsgeschichte der Spaltöffnungen, *Jahrb. Wiss. Bot.*, **5**, 297–342, 1866.
- : “Ueber den Bau und die Verrichtungen der Leitungsbahnen in der Pflanzen. Histologische Beiträge,” III, Jena, 1891.
- THOMPSON, W. P.: The anatomy and relationships of the Gnetales, I. The genus *Ephedra*, *Ann. Bot.*, **26**, 1077–1104, 1912.
- TRAPP, G.: A study of the foliar endodermis in the Plantaginaceae, *Trans. Roy. Soc. Edinburgh*, **57**, 523–546, 1933.
- VAN FLEET, D. S.: The development and distribution of the endodermis and associated oxidase system in monocotyledonous plants, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **29**, 1–15, 1942.
- VAN TIEGHEM, P., and H. DOULIOT: Sur la polystélie, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 7 sér., **3**, 275–322, 1886.
- VESQUE, J.: Mémoire sur l'anatomie comparée de l'écorce, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 6 sér., **2**, 82–198, 1875.
- WILSON, C. L.: Medullary bundle in relation to primary vascular system in the Chenopodiaceae and Amaranthaceae, *Bot. Gaz.*, **78**, 175–199, 1924.
- WISSELUNG, C. VAN: Beitrag zur Kenntniss der inneren Endodermis, *Planta*, **2**, 27–43, 1926.
- ZIEGENSPECK, H.: Ueber die Rolle des Casparyschen Streifens der Endodermis und analoger Bildungen, *Ber. Deut. Bot. Ges.*, **39**, 302–310, 1921.



## CHAPTER VI

### THE ORIGIN AND DEVELOPMENT OF THE SECONDARY BODY AND ITS RELATION TO THE PRIMARY BODY. THE CAMBIUM

That the primary plant body is in itself structurally and functionally complete is evident from the fact that in many forms it alone constitutes the plant, for example, the majority of monocotyledons and the pteridophytes. In the gymnosperms and in most dicotyledons, primary growth is soon followed by secondary growth, which usually becomes, both structurally and functionally, the more important. Secondary growth is effected by definite layers of initials—in vascular tissues, by the cambium; in other tissues, by similar meristems. These growing layers provide additional and constantly renewed conducting, supporting, and protecting tissues. Primary growth chiefly increases the length of the axis and adds the appendages; secondary growth increases the diameter of the axis (after the initial increase), and is responsible in most plants for the greater part of the mature plant body, supplying the requisite support, protection, and conduction for the large body of woody plants. Only in the tree ferns and a few of the monocotyledons is a large body present which is wholly primary in nature. The majority of the larger monocotyledons, including some of the palms, the woody yuccas, and other lilies, possess secondary growth of a special type.

Secondary tissues fall into two groups: the vascular tissues, those formed by the true cambium; and those, such as cork, formed by other similar but secondary meristems.

**The Origin of the Cambium from Procambium.**—As explained in the preceding chapter, the primary vascular skeleton is built up by the maturing of the cells of the procambium strands or cylinder to form xylem and phloem. In plants that have no secondary growth, all cells of the procambium strands mature to form vascular tissue, and there is no further increase in the amount of this tissue, except by unusual methods of development. In plants in which secondary growth later appears, a part of the procambium strand remains meristematic and gives rise to the cambium proper. The cambium, then, commonly represents a persistent portion of the apical meristem (Fig. 58), a section which remains meristematic and which becomes transformed into a growing layer of a different type.



Since the maturation of procambial cells usually proceeds progressively toward the center of the procambium strand, the cells in the central region are the last to mature. Where cambium develops, these last central cells are not transformed into permanent xylem or phloem cells but retain their meristematic activity indefinitely as cambium cells. In the early stages of cambium development there is a more or less irregular zone of meristematic tissue between the areas of primary xylem and phloem. At this time the protoxylem elements are usually mature and the metaxylem cells are maturing. The beginnings of cambial activity and the development of the last of the primary xylem therefore occur simultaneously.

As commonly understood, the cambium does not exist as such until there is established a definite tangential row of initials that divide repeatedly in the tangential plane. Just before the formation of such a sheet of tissue, there is a transitional period during which cell division is taking place in various planes in the central procambial zone but tending to occur in the tangential plane only in the later stages of development. As these tangentially dividing cells mature, those retaining their meristematic activity become arranged in a definite tangential row, becoming the true cambium, which then forms secondary tissues. In some plants, both woody and herbaceous, early tangential divisions in the procambium bring about radial arrangement of nearly all the primary vascular cells, especially those of the protoxylem (Figs. 62*B*, 140*A*). It may be impossible, therefore, to distinguish sharply between primary and secondary vascular tissues on the basis of position and arrangement, but with the change in method of development, there is an abrupt change in cell length—the secondary elements are much shorter than the primary.

In roots, the formation of the cambium differs from that in stems because of the radial arrangement of the alternating xylem and phloem strands (Chap. X). Here the cambium arises as discrete strips of tissue in the procambial strands inside the groups of primary phloem (Fig. 130*A*). Later, by lateral extension the strips of cambium are joined in the pericycle opposite the rays of primary xylem. Because of the place of origin of the cambium in roots, this meristem does not, in its early stage of development, form a symmetrical cylinder, but rather, as seen in cross section, a band of tissue that curves outward around the ends of the xylem rays and inward inside the strands of phloem. Commonly, secondary-tissue formation is most rapid beneath the groups of phloem so that the cambium, as seen in the transverse section of older roots, soon forms a circle. In some roots development of secondary tissue by the cambium that lies inside the phloem groups goes on to a considerable extent before lateral extension around the xylem is complete, so that the early undulate form of the cambium cylinder is omitted.



**Fascicular and Interfascicular Cambium.**—In stems the first procambium to develop from promeristem is usually in the form of more or less isolated strands. In some plants these first-formed strands soon become, in part or wholly, united laterally by additional similar strands formed between them and by the lateral extension of the first-formed ones. A continuous or broken cylinder of procambium is formed. In the course

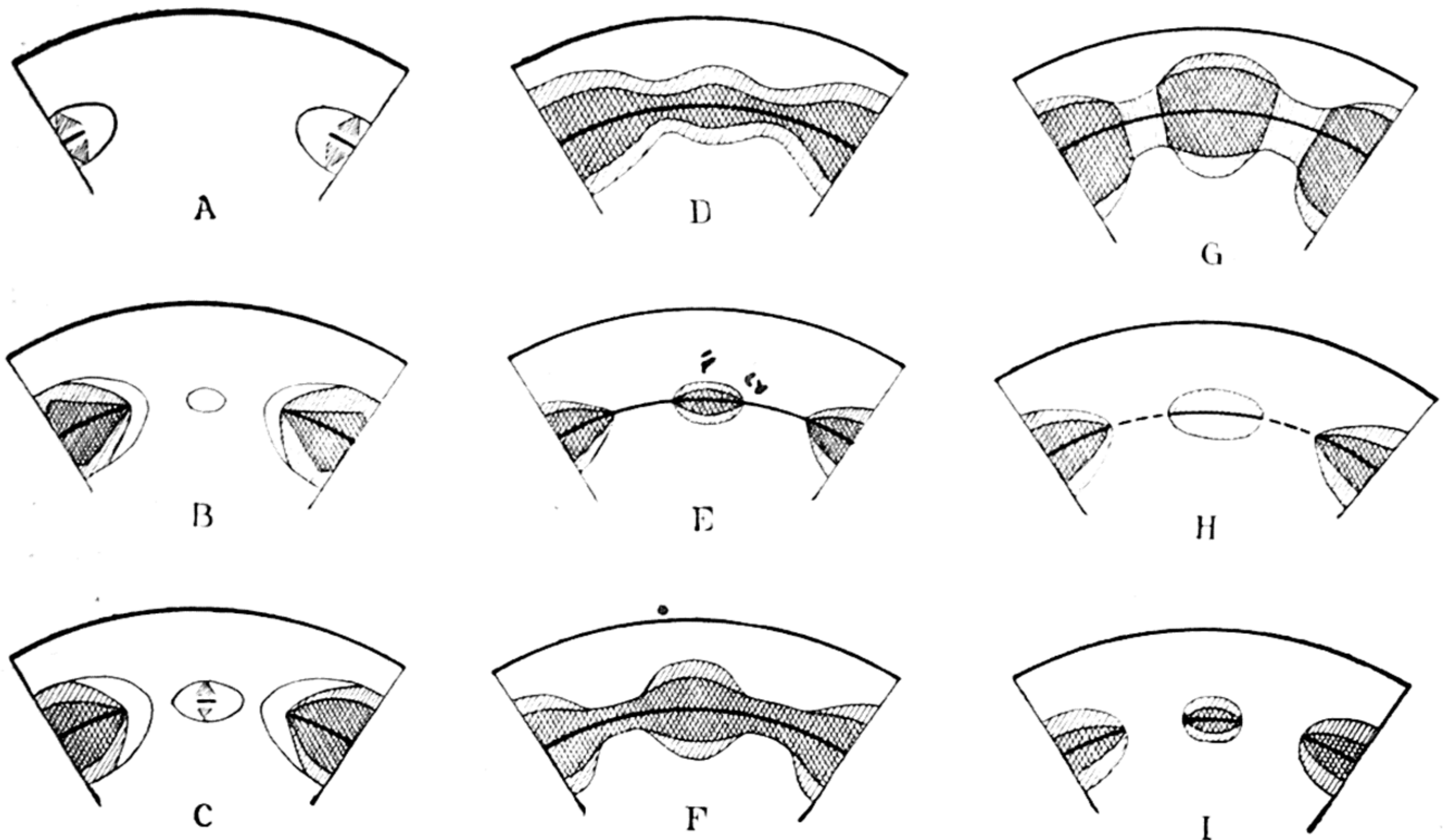


FIG. 81.—Diagrams to show the formation of the cambium cylinder in stems. (The primary vascular tissue is singly cross-hatched, the secondary, doubly.) A–D, successive stages in type where complete primary cylinder is formed: A, the first primary tissues are mature in the procambium strands and the cambium has appeared in the center of the bundle; B, C, the bundles have increased in size, secondary tissues are formed, and new small bundles are arising between the first; D, complete primary, secondary, and cambial cylinders are formed by the union of the bundles. E–F, type with complete cambium cylinder, but incomplete primary cylinder: E, the fascicular cambium has built up secondary tissues in the bundles; the interfascicular cambium has just arisen; F, secondary tissues complete the vascular cylinder. G, similar to E–F, but the interfascicular cambium forming only parenchyma or sclerenchyma; H, similar to E, but with a vestigial interfascicular cambium, which forms few or no vascular cells; I, primary cylinder of discrete strands, each with cambium and secondary tissues; no union by secondary growth.

of development this procambium cylinder gives rise to a cylinder of primary vascular tissue and cambium, similarly complete or broken. Ultimately, a cylinder of secondary vascular tissue may be formed, arising in strands as does the primary cylinder (Fig. 81B–D). In some herbaceous forms, such as *Ranunculus* and *Impatiens*, the procambium strands, and hence the primary vascular tissues, do not fuse laterally but remain as discrete strands. In these plants the cambium likewise is in the form of longitudinal strips, since it does not extend laterally beyond the limits of the primary xylem and phloem between which it arises (Fig. 81I). Such strips of cambium then constitute the entire cambial meristem, but more



often in herbaceous stems the cambium extends laterally across the intervening spaces until a complete cylinder is formed (Fig. 81E, F). Where such extension occurs, the cambium arises from interfascicular meristematic cells derived from the apical meristem. To the strips of cambium that arise within collateral bundles the term *fascicular cambium* is applied, and the strips between the bundles are known as *interfascicular cambium* (Fig. 140A). The latter term is sometimes restricted to those strips of cambium lying between primary bundles which do not in their activity form xylem and phloem, but merely parenchyma (Fig. 135D), as in *Clematis*.

Between the condition in some plants, where a complete cambium cylinder is apparently formed from a complete procambium cylinder, and the condition frequent in herbs, where the cambium, even in the mature plant, is in the form of discrete strips, all intergrading conditions are found relative to the formation and activity of the interfascicular cambium. In herbaceous plants with woody cylinders the interfascicular cambium may be identical with the fascicular cambium in origin and function, but merely delayed in development from normal procambium, which in those regions may form little primary vascular tissue. Such cambium forms normal secondary vascular tissues in the same way as the fascicular cambium, although often the amounts formed are not so great (Fig. 81F). The same structure may form from interfascicular cambium developed from more or less permanent parenchymatous tissues; but more frequently no real vascular tissue is formed, the cambium giving rise to parenchyma only, as in *Clematis*. Under these conditions, the discrete vascular bundles are separated by secondary parenchyma. This is apparently a specialized condition found for the most part in woody vines and some herbaceous forms. It has undoubtedly been derived in phylogeny from the woody condition and is not, as is frequently stated, a stage in the development of a woody cylinder by the fusion of vascular bundles. In some herbaceous stems, as in species of *Geum* and *Agrimonia*, for example, an incomplete, vestigial interfascicular cambium is found; its disconnected cells divide but once or twice (Fig. 81H).

**Time of Cambium Development in Stems.**—In the stems of plants with well-developed secondary growth, the cambium begins to differentiate from the procambium in a given region just before that region ceases to elongate. The cambial derivatives are not, of course, established as such at this time, but some divisions may take place so that as soon as elongation ceases there may be simultaneous maturation of cambial derivatives and of primary metaxylem, although a considerable proportion of the latter usually matures first. In the majority of plants the formation of cambium is going on in the new parts of axes as long as the



axes are increasing in length. In plants which have both intercalary meristems and secondary growth, as in some of the mints, cambium may be in an early stage of development in regions other than those near the tips of the axis. In general, it can be said that in plants which have secondary growth, stem elongation, whenever it may occur, is either accompanied by or immediately followed by cambium development. In some of the reduced herbs, which have very little secondary growth, cambial activity may be delayed for some time.

**Time of Cambium Development in Roots.**—In roots, cambial development frequently does not take place so quickly after elongation ceases as in the stems of the same plant. In many of the smaller feeding roots, a cambium may not be formed at all, even though secondary growth occurs abundantly in the stems and larger roots. Lack of secondary growth is apparently correlated with the function of the root as an absorbing organ, since wherever extensive secondary growth arises the root is no longer capable of absorption in that region because of the destruction of the root hairs, endodermis, and cortex, and the usual immediate formation of periderm. Roots of some herbaceous plants may be without secondary thickening even though such growth occurs in the stems; and in some woody species a considerable proportion of fibrous rootlets contain only primary growth. In the main root system of both woody and herbaceous plants the cambium arises soon after elongation has ceased.

✓ **Extent of the Cambium.**—In the normal woody plant and also in many herbs the cambium forms a layer over the entire inner part of the body, except at the growing tips of the axis where the cambium has not yet been differentiated. The cambium of a part of a stem or root has the form of a hollow cylinder, and that of the entire plant, a branching tubular structure. The whole layer is frequently spoken of as the *cambium cylinder*. Strand-like extensions of the cambium often occur in leaf traces, and at leaf and branch gaps above such traces there are breaks in the continuity of the cambium while the axis is young. Usually within a few weeks after the initiation of cambial growth—or at most within a few months, the length of time depending upon the size of the gap and upon other factors—the cambium extends across the gaps, gradually closing them from the edges. The cylinder is henceforth unbroken except for the occurrence of wound areas.

In plants in which the stele is dissected, as in some herbaceous forms, the extent of the cambium is, as already stated (page 177), no greater than the width of the bundles of which the stele is composed. In these plants the cambium consists of a broken cylinder of strips of tissue. The strips follow various courses, according to the pattern of the primary vascular system (Chap. V). The width of these strips or plates of



cambium necessarily varies as greatly as does the width of the vascular bundles of which they are a part. In some reduced herbaceous forms, the total width of the strips is only a small fraction of the circumference of the stele. The cambium may extend in strips into the petiole and larger vascular bundles of leaves.

**Duration of the Cambium.**—The extent of the functional life of the cambium varies greatly in different species and also in different parts of the same plant. In a perennial woody plant the cambium of the main axis lives from the time of its formation until the death of the plant. It is only by the continued activity of the cambium in producing new xylem and phloem that such plants can maintain their existence, since the functioning life of a given portion of these tissues is comparatively short. In leaves, inflorescences, and other deciduous parts the functional life of the cambium is short—in many leaves possibly a few days only, and in peduncles at the most a few weeks. Here all the cambium cells mature as vascular tissue. The secondary xylem then abuts directly upon the secondary phloem in the vascular bundle. In the annual stems of perennial plants and in the stems of annuals generally, the cambium is of this type; it is functionally active for a short time only, and all its cells mature into vascular tissues. In some of the specialized dicotyledonous herbs which have small, isolated vascular bundles or very thin vascular cylinders, very little secondary growth takes place. Some such forms lack secondary growth altogether or show so little that it is difficult to determine whether or not a true cambium is ever formed, since the last-formed metaxylem cells may be arranged more or less in even, radial rows and simulate secondary xylem.

**Effect of Cambial Activity upon the Primary Body.**—Since the cambium arises between the primary xylem and primary phloem, a part of the primary body is enclosed by the newly formed tissues. This inner part, the pith and primary xylem, is completely shut off from the outer parts. It persists within the cloak of secondary tissues unchanged except for the ultimate disappearance of cell contents and for certain chemical changes accompanying the death of pith and wood parenchyma cells. The primary-xylem skeleton is not distorted as the stem becomes older. In many herbs the pith is destroyed close to the growing point during elongation of the axis and the rapid expansion of the tissues outside as the pith is maturing, but this is not the result of secondary growth. The original primary body lying within the position first occupied by the cambium is to be found in the oldest stems and roots, structurally as in the axis before secondary growth began; the xylem skeleton, pith, gaps, and inner parts of leaf traces of the seedling tree are still present in the base of the old tree trunk.



The primary tissues lying outside the cambium—primary phloem, pericycle, endodermis, cortex, and epidermis—are, on the other hand, pushed outward by the development of secondary tissues. Since the increase in circumference to which these tissues must be accommodated quickly surpasses the extent to which plasticity, or the slow primary

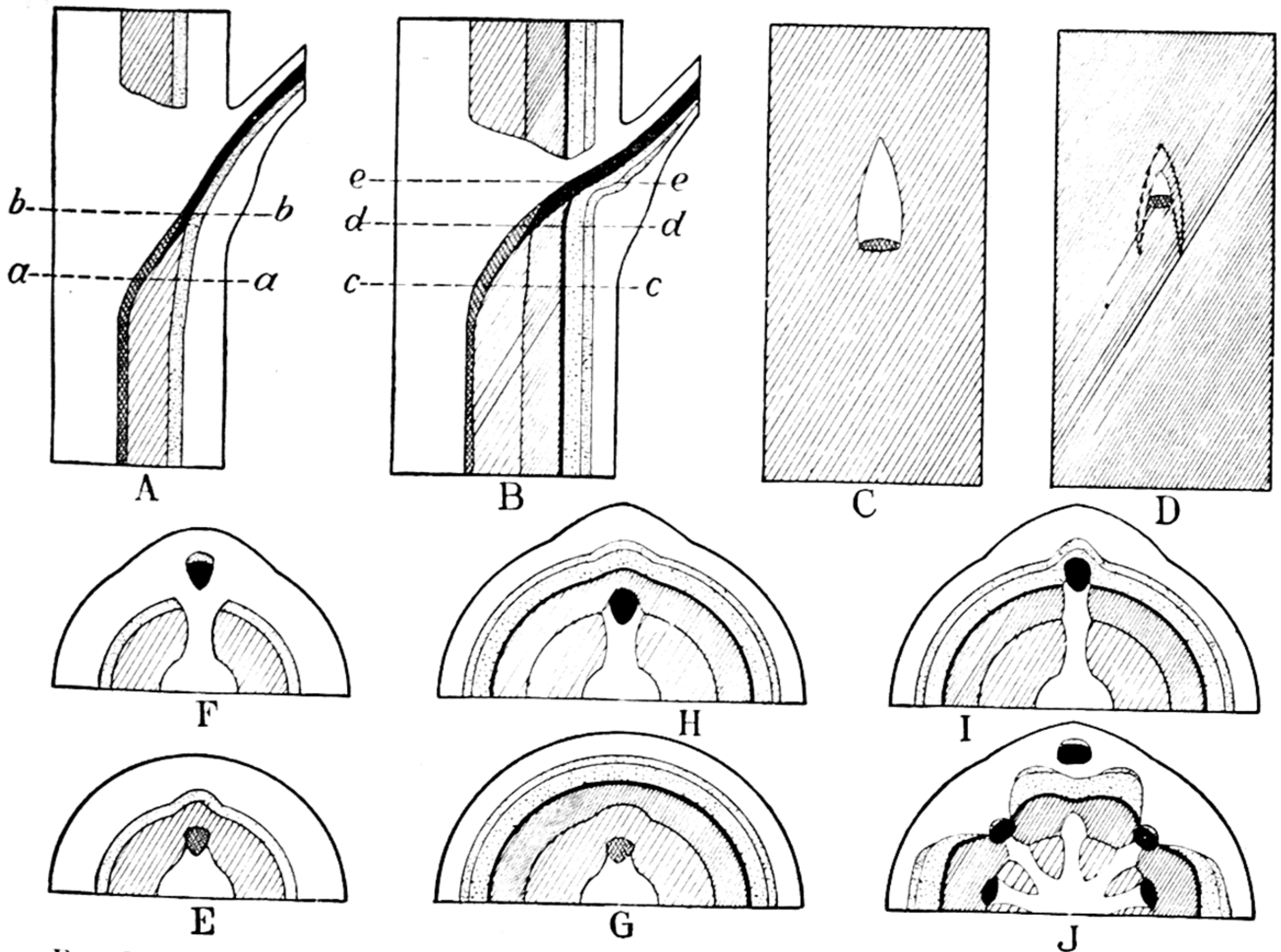


FIG. 82.—Diagrams showing the burial of leaf-trace bases by secondary growth. A, B, longitudinal sections: A, before the beginning of secondary growth; B, after considerable secondary growth; the gap is partly closed and the phloem has been pushed away from the base of the trace, only the xylem being buried. C, D, face views of the surface of the vascular cylinder, the trace cut away at the surface level: C, stage shown in A; D, stage shown in B, the gap partly closed and the base of the trace buried. E, F, cross sections at levels a-a and b-b in A; G, H, I, cross sections at levels c-c, d-d, and e-e in B; J, cross section below a node, showing departure of five traces, the bases buried in varying degrees. (Primary xylem is lightly cross-hatched; secondary, heavily. Primary phloem is finely stippled; secondary, coarsely. The xylem of the leaf trace is not differentiated in kind; its downward continuation is doubly cross-hatched.)

growth which may still be going on, enables accommodation, these tissues are commonly either ruptured or crushed. The primary phloem in most plants is quickly flattened and crushed and appears as disorganized strips of crushed tissue. Often the crushed cells are absorbed early and no traces of the tissue remain. The endodermis may increase somewhat in extent but likewise is destroyed soon after secondary growth begins. The pericycle and cortex, owing to their somewhat firmer



structure, and to their partial accommodation by slow primary growth to the diameter increase caused by secondary growth, often persist for a longer time. But in most plants with well-developed perennial secondary growth these outer parts are sooner or later crushed or broken open and killed by exposure to drying and other types of injury—especially by the shutting off of food and water supplies by cork layers which develop within them (Chap. IX). The dead parts are soon sloughed off by decay or by abscission, and, after a variable interval, ranging from a few weeks to several or many years in different species, the outer primary body disappears. The development of secondary tissues preserves the inner part of the primary body intact but is responsible for the ultimate destruction of the outer portion. Exceptions to the loss of the entire outer part of the primary body occur in a few woody plants where the cortex persists for many years through the capacity of its parenchyma for slow primary growth. Such slow and long-continued growth of primary tissues obtains in the epidermis of some woody twigs; in the cortex and pericycle of the same and of similar plants; in a few plants more or less throughout the stem, as in the trunks of some palms that lack secondary growth.

Outer primary tissues that persist unchanged after marked secondary growth has taken place are most conspicuous in herbaceous plants. In these plants the overlapping, in time of formation and in position in the axis, of primary and secondary growth is apparently greater than in woody forms. The outer tissues are accommodated to the increase in diameter due to secondary growth with less distortion than in typical woody plants. But often as the stem becomes old, the softer cells of the cortex, pericycle, and phloem become much compressed radially, as in *Aster*, *Linum*, *Cannabis*, and many similar herbs with thick, woody cylinders.

**The Relation of Secondary Growth to Leaf Traces.**—At nodes the projection of leaf traces makes the stem structure complex. With the increase in thickness of secondary xylem the bases of the leaf traces (those parts within the cambium cylinder) are buried, and since the cambium lies always between the xylem and the phloem (Fig. 82A), the formation of new xylem causes the outward movement of all phloem as well as of the cambium itself, not only on the axis, but also on the trace (Fig. 82B). Because of the place of origin of the cambium, secondary growth buries the proximal parts of the leaf traces—the innermost part, lying in the primary xylem, is without phloem and is buried without change; the phloem is stripped away from the part of the trace adjacent to this and pushed outward, leaving only the xylem of the trace embedded in the secondary xylem of the stem (Fig. 82B). The length of the buried part depends largely upon the angle at which the trace departs.



Only short pieces of the trace lying outside the original position of the cambium are buried, since continued secondary growth, in forcing outward the cortex and phloem in which the outer parts lie embedded, breaks



FIG. 83.—Cross sections at successive levels upward of the nodal region of a one-year-old twig of *Malus pumila*. A, the lateral leaf traces have passed into the cortex and their gaps are closed; B, the median trace has passed into the cortex, leaving the gap open, the dark-staining, meristematic branch traces (supplying the bud) are arising from the sides of the gap; C, the three leaf traces well out in the cortex, the branch traces have united, the gap is evident; D, the leaf traces entering the base of the petiole, the branch traces have formed a nearly complete vascular cylinder.

the trace in two, the distal part of the strand being torn away and carried outward with the tissues in which it lies. Rupture is due to the outward thrust of secondary growth laterally upon the trace (Fig. 84A–D). This



rupture does not occur until sometime after the leaf has fallen, commonly the first or second growing season thereafter. The secondary xylem of the first year embeds the inner part of the trace without injuring it, the phloem being slowly pushed outward but not broken. The time of rupture of the trace—its elements dead and nonfunctioning after the fall of the leaf—depends upon a number of factors: the rate of secondary growth, the size and cross-sectional shape of the trace, and especially the angle at which the trace departs (Fig. 84*B,E,F*). The more nearly the course of the trace approaches a right angle with the stem (Fig. 84*E*) the longer the period before rupture, since the surrounding tissues are stripped away and the xylem strand buried. Where the trace passes

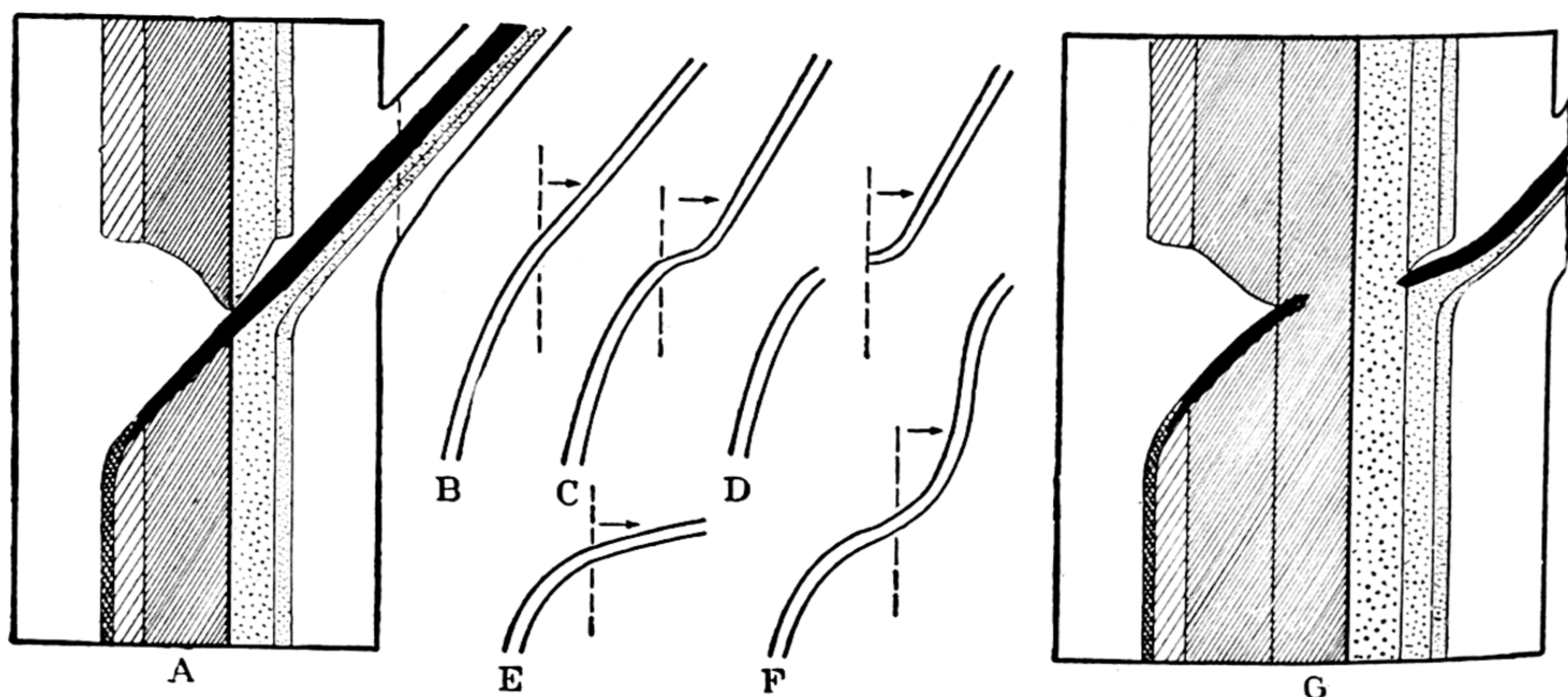


FIG. 84.—Diagrams illustrating the rupture of the leaf trace in deciduous plants. *A*, longitudinal section of node at end of first season's growth, the gap has been closed and the base of the trace buried in secondary xylem; *B*, *C*, *D*, stages in the condition of the trace (other parts omitted) during the following season: *B*, the trace unchanged, *C*, the trace stretched and bent, *D*, the trace broken in two, the outer part carried outward. The dotted lines represent the position of the cambium. *E*, form of trace which ruptures very slowly; *F*, form which ruptures quickly; *G*, longitudinal section of node at end of second season, the trace ends separated by secondary xylem and phloem. (Shading as in Fig. 82.)

upward vertically through the cortex, it is quickly broken, owing to the lateral exposure of a long outer part of the trace to the outward thrust of secondary growth (Fig. 84*F*). Large traces are broken later than small ones, and those crescent-shaped or horseshoe-shaped in cross section later than strap-shaped ones. The inner and outer parts of leaf traces are thus separated (Fig. 84*G*); the outer part is ultimately lost with the destruction of the cortex, whereas the inner is preserved indefinitely, embedded in the xylem.

In evergreen leaves the traces are extended by a type of secondary growth that increases them in length by additions of new tissue in the middle. The primary xylem of the trace is ruptured gradually and in an oblique direction and new cells to replace those destroyed are added



meanwhile by the cambium of the "armpit" region (Fig. 85). As long as the leaf persists, the upper older xylem cells of the trace are continuously broken and new cells are added below. The gap is often not quite closed but remains open until the trace is broken. Thus, where the leaves are long-persistent, as in *Araucaria*, the trace may become very long and be evident in secondary wood in annual rings far from the center of the tree. After an evergreen leaf dies, there is complete rupture of the trace, as with deciduous leaves. Normally, the ruptured end of leaf traces, both in deciduous and in evergreen plants, is quickly covered by

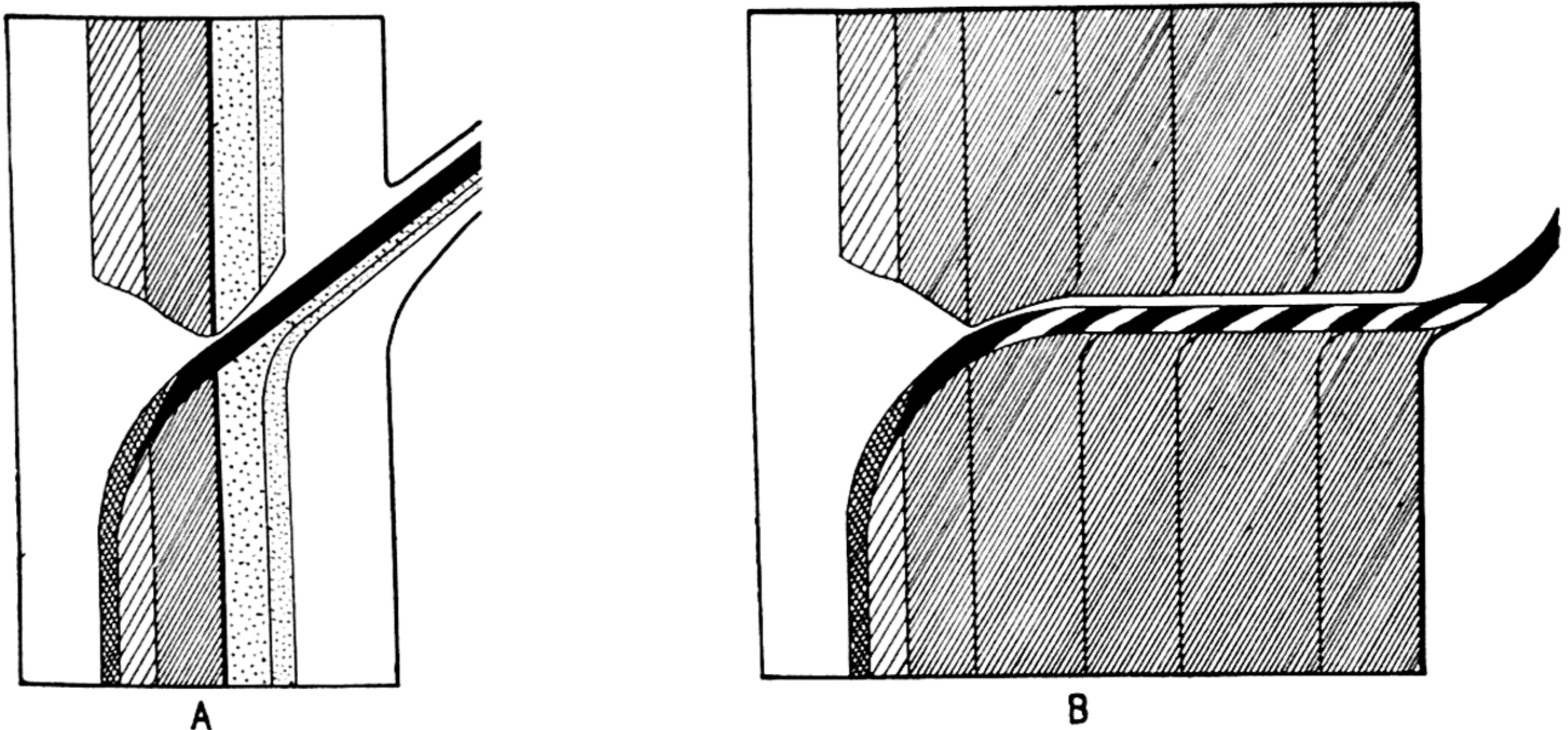


FIG. 85.—Diagrams showing the extension of the trace in evergreen leaves. *A*, the condition at the end of the first season; *B*, at the end of the fifth season (the parts outside the cambium omitted). In *B*, the primary parts of the trace (in solid black) are separated by a central, secondary part (in alternate black and white); this part is ruptured, like the primary, but the breaking is continuous, the trace being built up anew, obliquely, by an "armpit" section of the cambium, an extension along the under side of the trace at the point of its contact with the secondary xylem. (Shading as in Fig. 82. See text for further description.)

typical cambium cells. There is soon no evidence in the later formed secondary xylem of the position of the trace but in *Agathis* and *Araucaria* the trace cambium continues to form trace-like cells after the leaf has fallen, and secondary wood, even of old tree trunks, always shows buried leaf traces.

Branch traces are buried in the same way as are leaf traces but are, of course, not ruptured. The embedding of branch bases is further discussed later in the chapter.

**Relation of Secondary Growth to Leaf and Branch Gaps.**—Leaf gaps are closed by the gradual lateral extension of the cambium; the new meristematic cells arise apparently out of the parenchyma cells of the gap. The size and the shape of the gap determine in part the length of time before the gap is closed, wide gaps being closed more slowly than long



narrow ones. In most angiosperms, leaf gaps are closed in the first season (Figs. 83, 84A, G). Branch gaps, which are often large, are closed more slowly than leaf gaps; some branch gaps remain open until the second to fourth years.

**Function of the Cambium.**—Meristems that form secondary tissues are commonly looked upon as uniseriate sheets of initials that form new cells usually on both sides. The cambium, a meristem of this type, forms xylem internally and phloem externally. The tangential division of the cambium cell forms two apparently identical daughter cells (Fig. 86B):

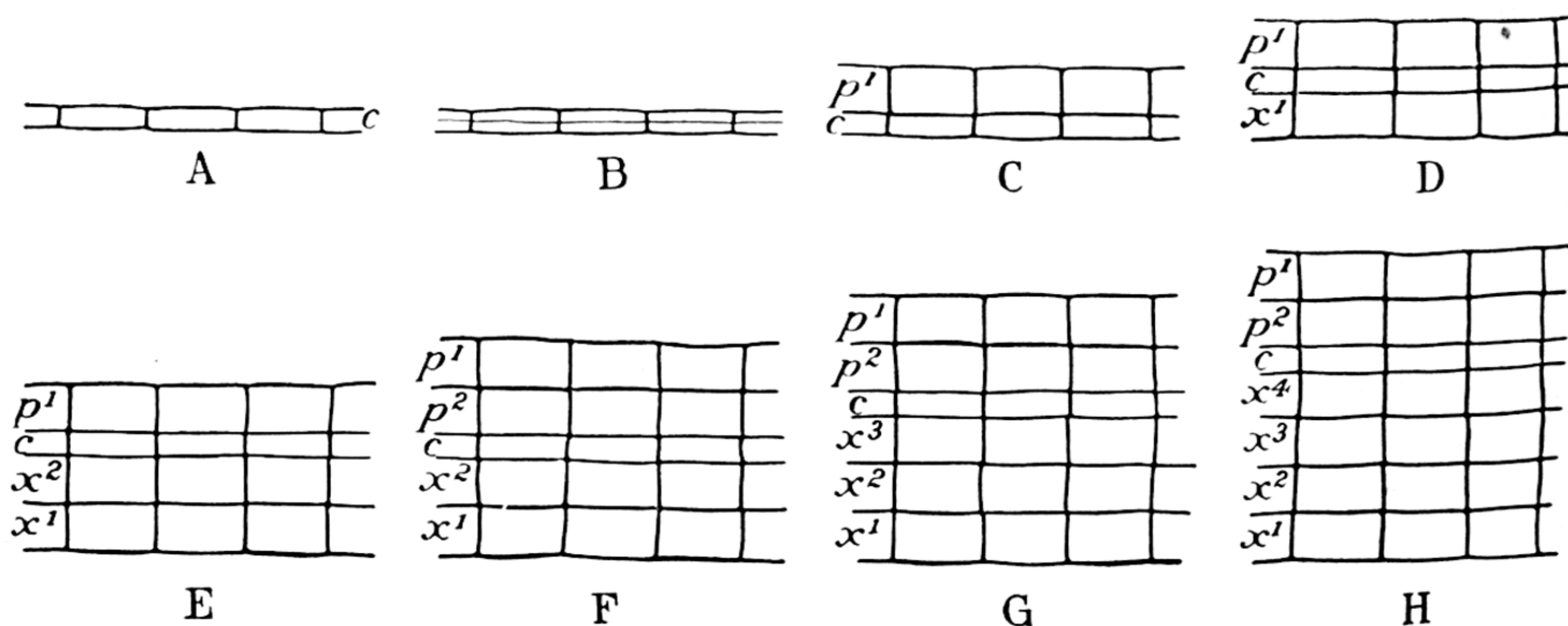


FIG. 86.—Diagrams illustrating the formation of xylem and phloem by the cambium, and the changes in position of the phloem and the cambium brought about by this activity. A, the cambium; B, the cambium cells divided, each forming two daughter cells; C, one daughter cell enlarged and matured as a phloem cell ( $p^1$ ), the other enlarged to cambium-cell size, remaining a meristem cell ( $c$ ); no change in the position of the cambium occurs. D, the cambium cells have divided again, the inner daughter cell in this case having matured as a xylem cell ( $x^1$ ), the outer becoming the cambium cell ( $c$ ); the cambium and the phloem have been moved outward the width of the xylem cell. E–H, further divisions occur, resulting in the formation of one more phloem cell and three more xylem cells. (The xylem and phloem cells are here represented as maturing before the formation of the next cell, whereas a number of cells are normally present in an immature condition.)

one remains a meristematic cell, the persistent cambial cell; the other becomes a *xylem mother cell* or a *phloem mother cell* (Fig. 86C), depending upon its position internal or external to the initial. The cambium cell continues to divide in a similar way: one daughter cell always remaining a cambium cell; the other becoming either a xylem or a phloem mother cell. The sequence of xylem and phloem formation during this process, if there be any uniform sequence, is not known. It is probable that there is no definite alternation and that for brief periods, only one kind of tissue is formed. Evidence for lack of alternation is that often—in both woody and herbaceous plants—several times as many xylem cells as phloem cells are formed. Adjacent cambium cells apparently divide at nearly the same time, and the daughter cells belong to the same tissue. In this way the tangential continuity of the cambium is maintained.

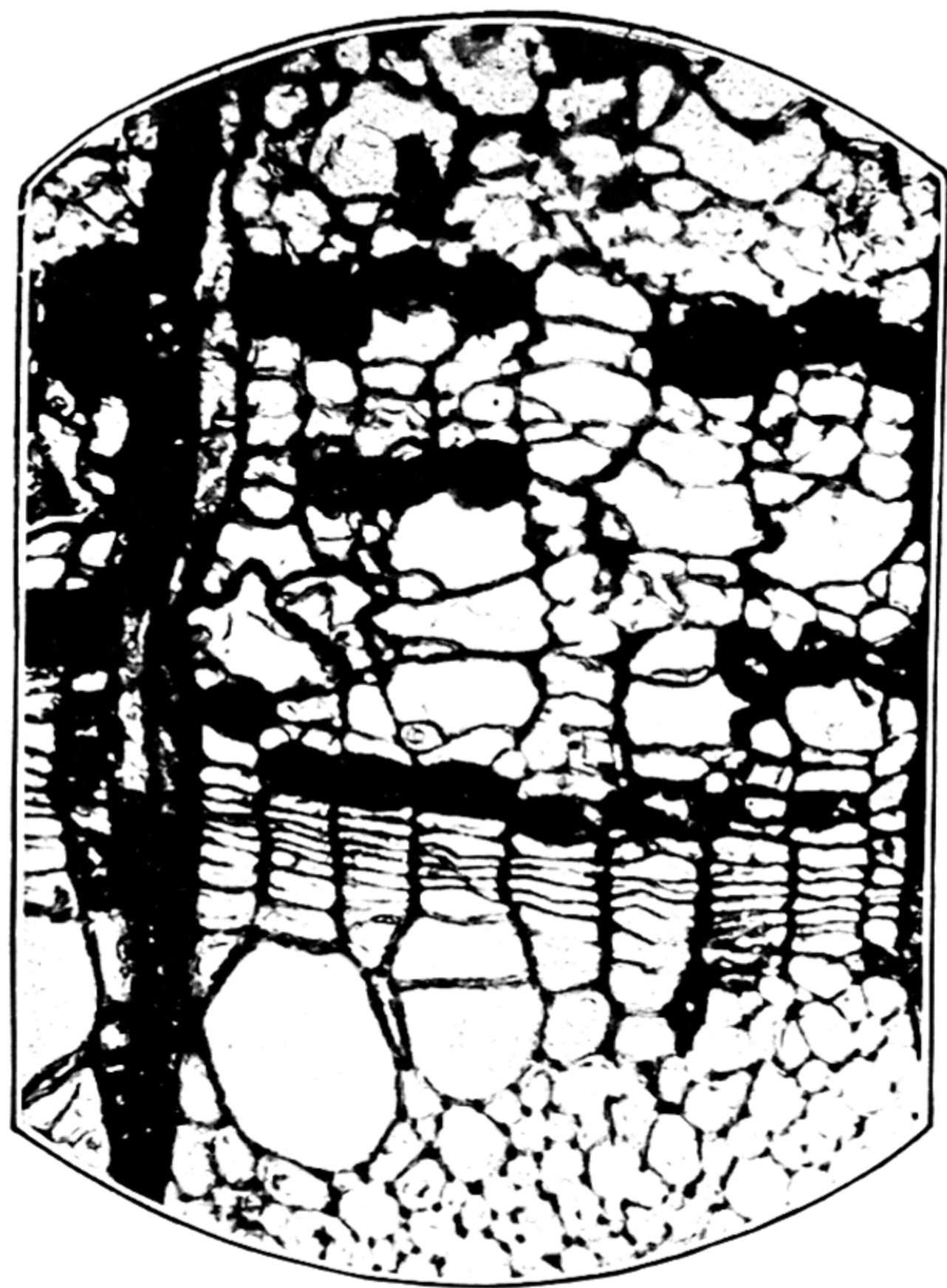


In the formation of xylem, the enlargement of the developing cells causes the outward movement of the cambium and of all cells lying outside of this layer. This increases the diameter of the cambium cylinder. The maturing of phloem cells causes the outward movement of the phloem cells and cells external to these only; the position of the cambium is unchanged by phloem formation. The activity of the cambium causes it to move outward each season to the extent of the thickness of the mature xylem formed in that season.

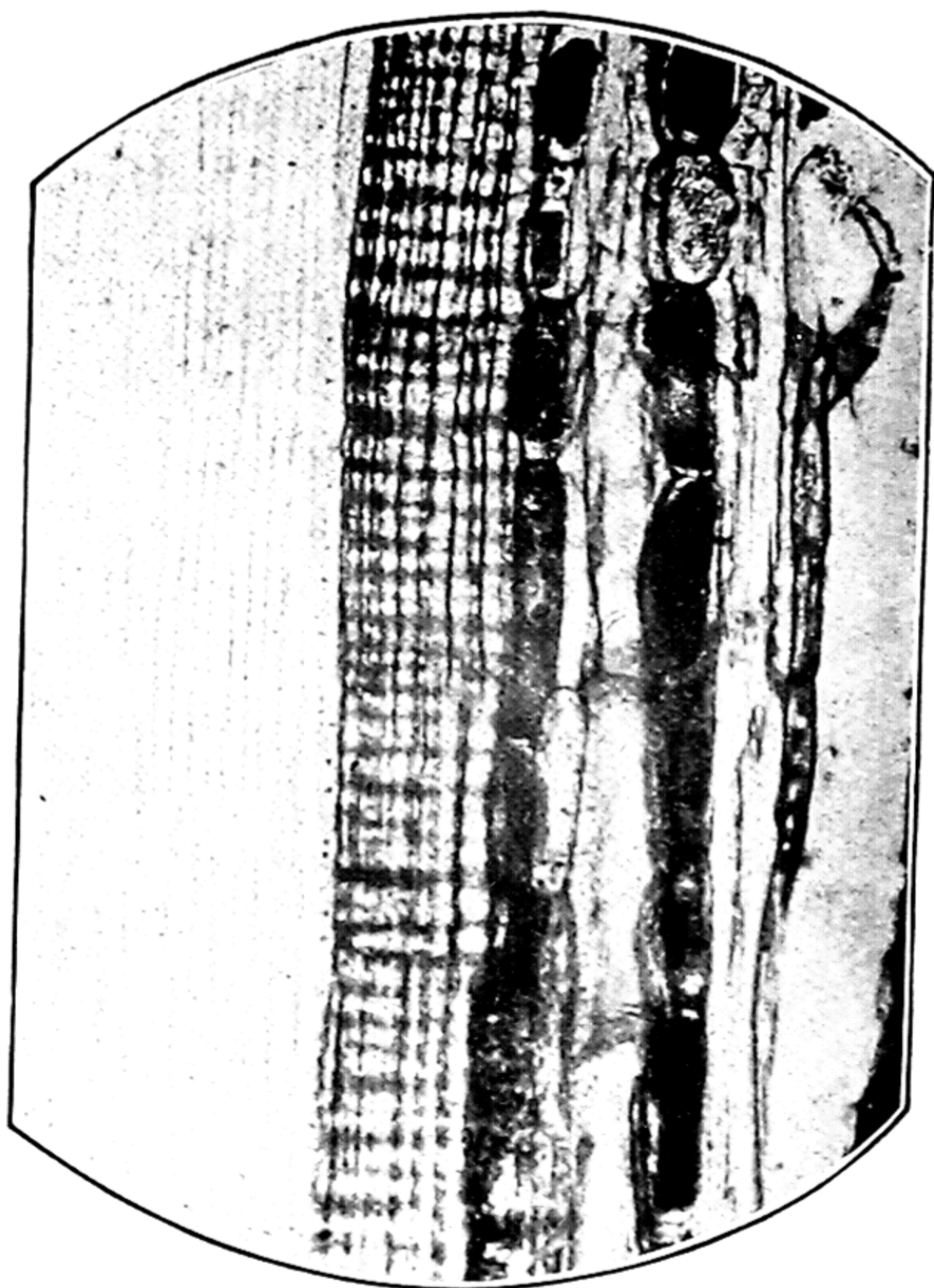
**Structure of the Cambium.**—There are two general conceptions of the cambium as an initiating layer: one, that it consists of a uniseriate layer of permanent initiating cells with derivative cells that—though they may divide a few times—soon become transformed into permanent tissue; the other, that there are several rows of initiating cells, forming a cambium “zone,” some of the individual rows of which persist as cell-forming layers at least for some little time. Because cells mature continuously during growing periods on both sides of the cambium, it is obvious that only a single layer of cells can have permanent existence as a cambium. Other layers, if present, function only temporarily and become completely transformed sooner or later into permanent cells. The question involved is apparently how many times a xylem or a phloem mother cell and its derivatives may divide; this is difficult to ascertain and is probably not constant. Divisions appear to take place more freely in phloem initials than in xylem initials. (Transverse divisions, such as those resulting in the formation of wood and phloem parenchyma are not considered here.) Phloem and xylem mother cells may not divide or may divide a few times. During rapid growth, there may be more divisions than at other times. Loose application of the term “cambium” to the entire differentiating region between the mature xylem and the mature phloem (Figs. 87A, 90), often leads to the conception that the cambium (in the stricter sense) is a multiseriate layer. Though the term was first applied to a wide layer of differentiating substance, believed to be at least in part without cellular structure, best usage now applies it only to the initiating layer.

**Cellular Structure of the Cambium.**—Cambium cells, in general, are of two fundamentally different types: the *ray initials*, which are more or less isodiametric and give rise to the vascular rays; and the *fusiform initials*, the elongate, tapering cells that divide to form all cells of the vertical system (Figs. 87, 90). The ray initials show little variation in cell shape; the number concerned with the formation of a ray is few or many, dependent upon the size of the ray, which varies greatly in different species and frequently in the same species. The fusiform initials are uniform in shape as seen in cross section, but show great differences in

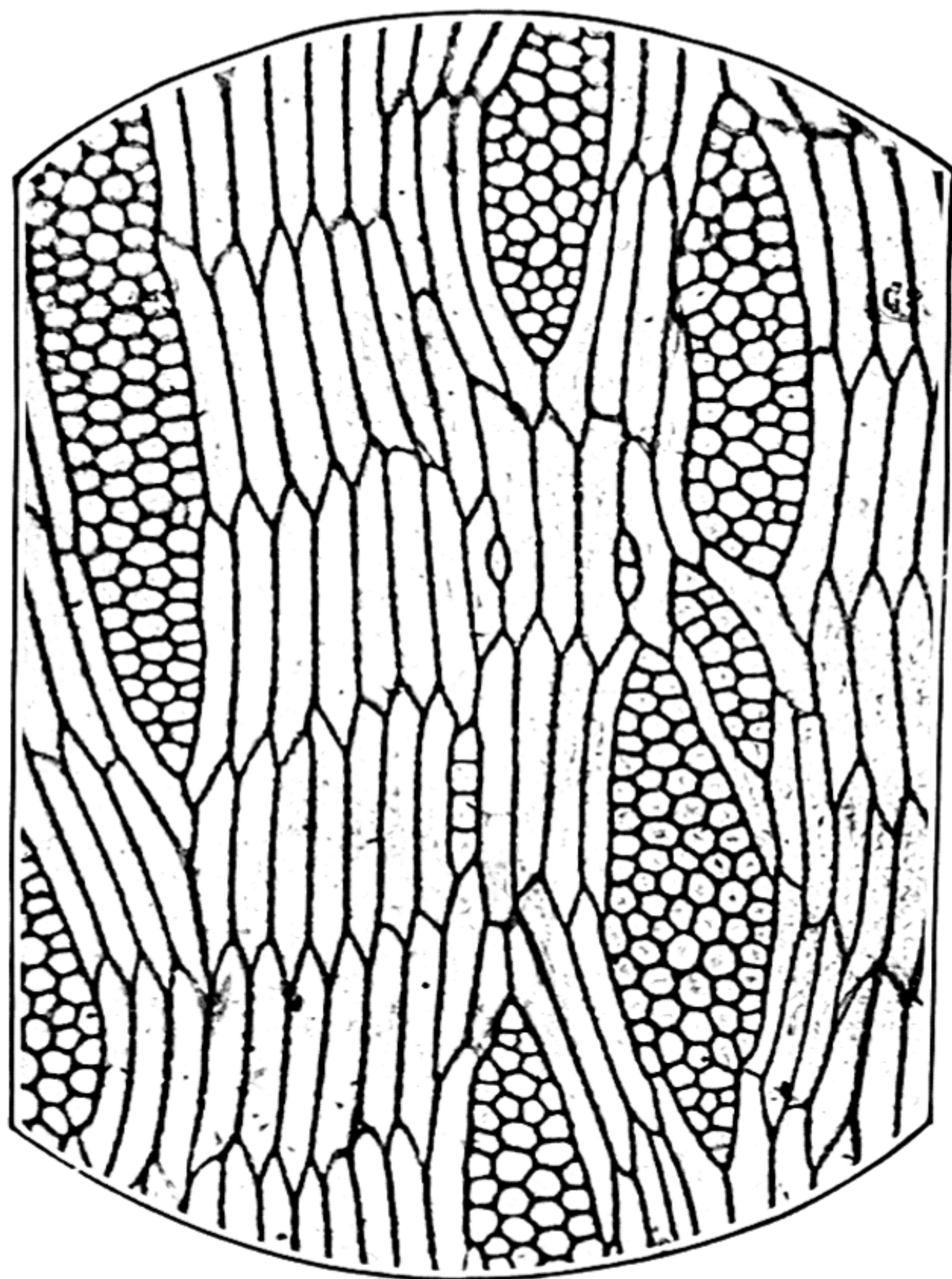




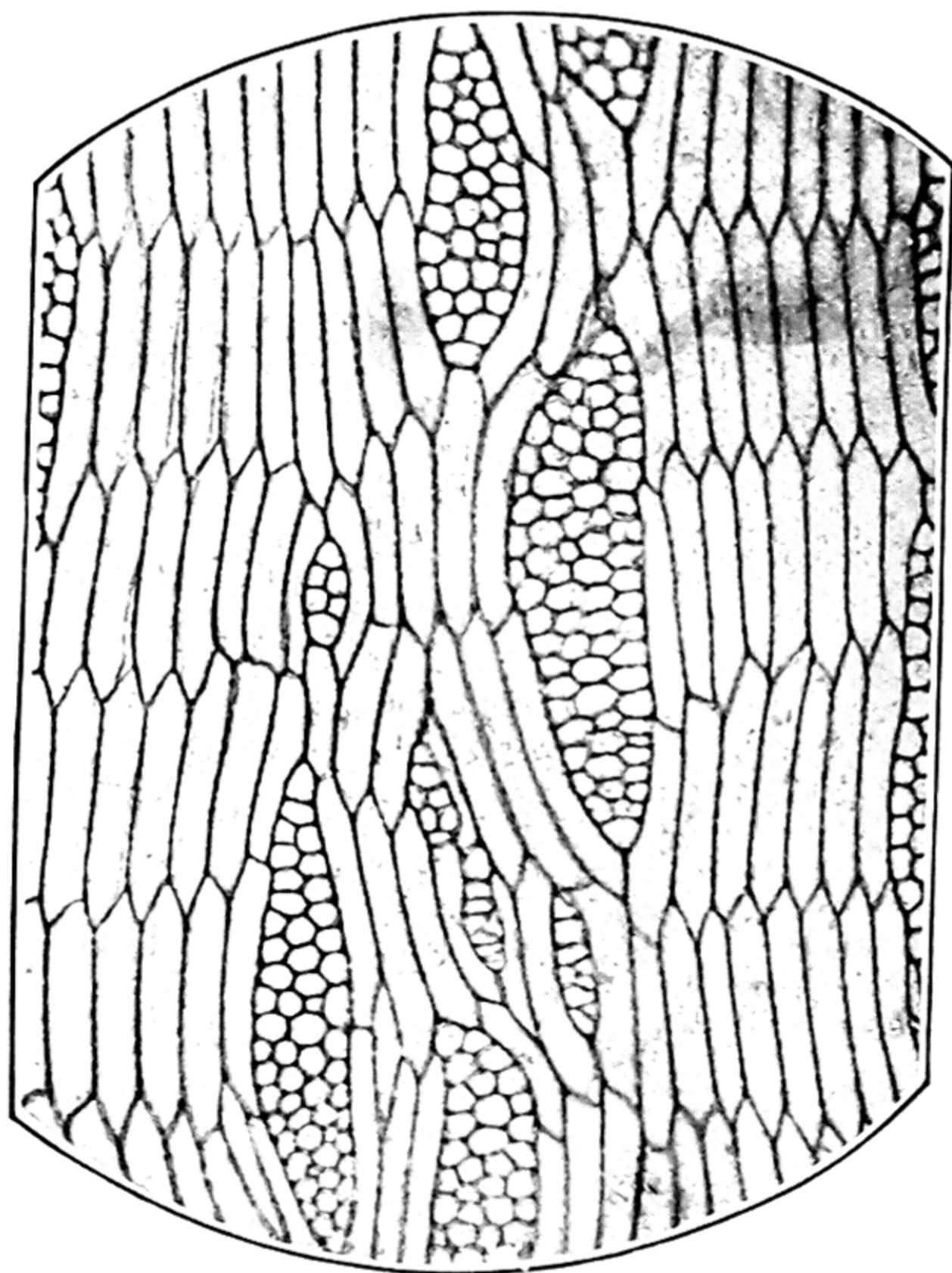
A



B



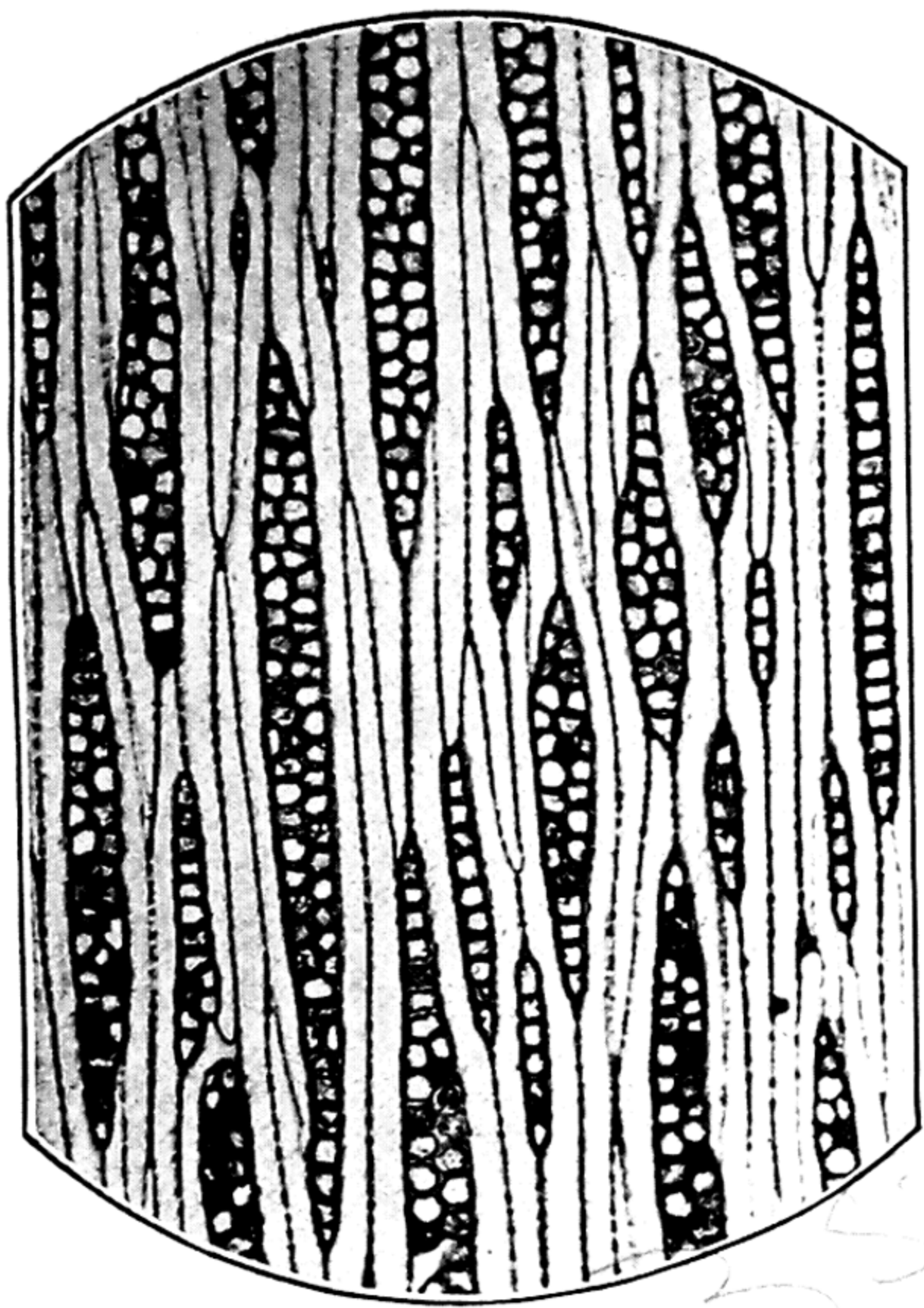
C



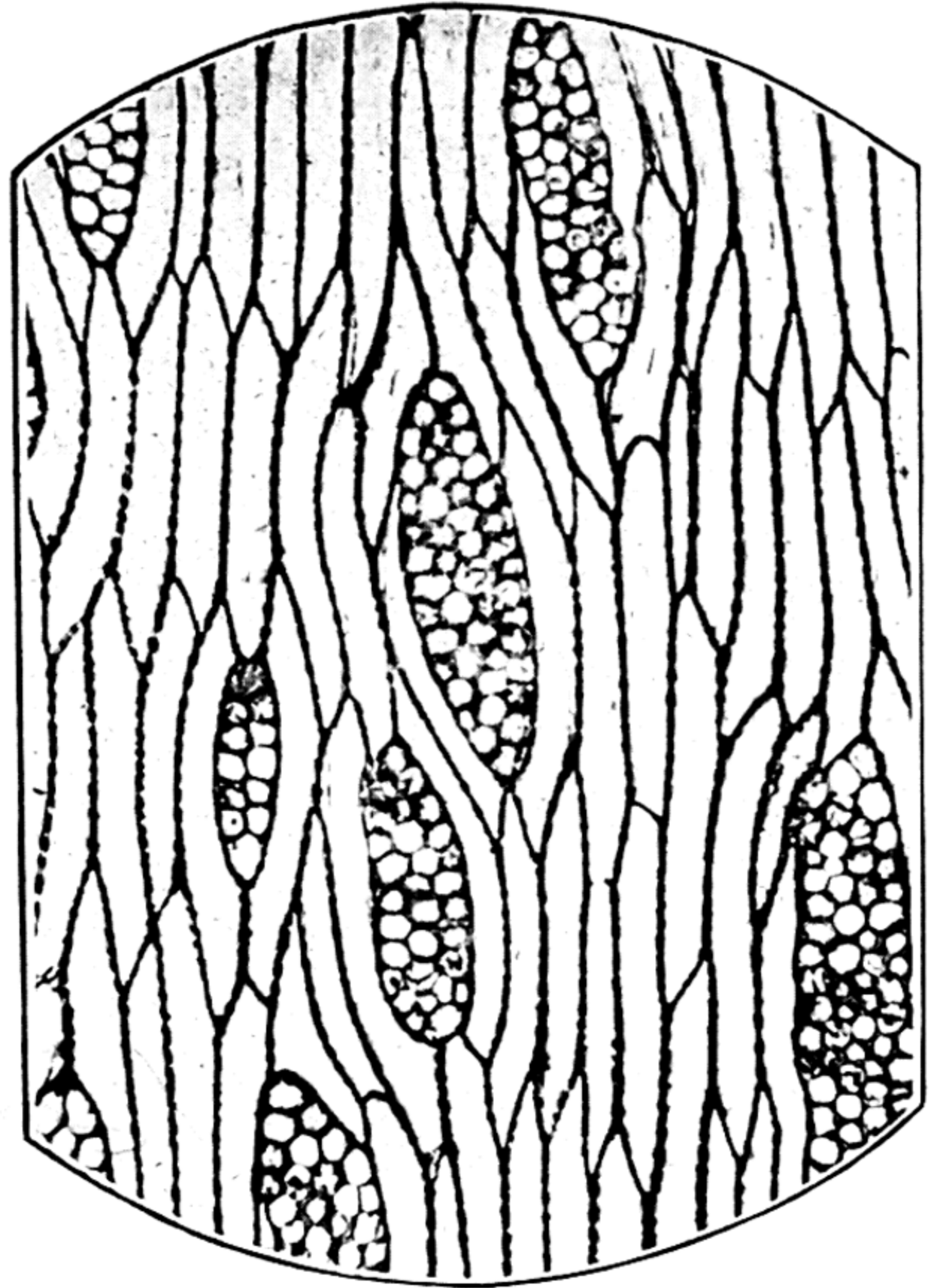
D

FIG. 87.—The cambium. A, B, *Ulmus americana*: A, cross section, *dormant*; B, radial section, *dormant*; the cambium is in the middle of the figure; the primary pit-fields of the radial walls of the cambium and immature phloem cells are seen in face view. (For tangential section of *U. americana*, see Fig. 88B.) C, D, *Robinia Pseudo-Acacia*: C, tangential section, *dormant*, the primary pit-fields are seen in section giving a beaded appearance to the radial walls; D, tangential section, like C, but *growing*, the radial walls are much thinner and the pit-fields obscure or lacking.  $\times 100$ .

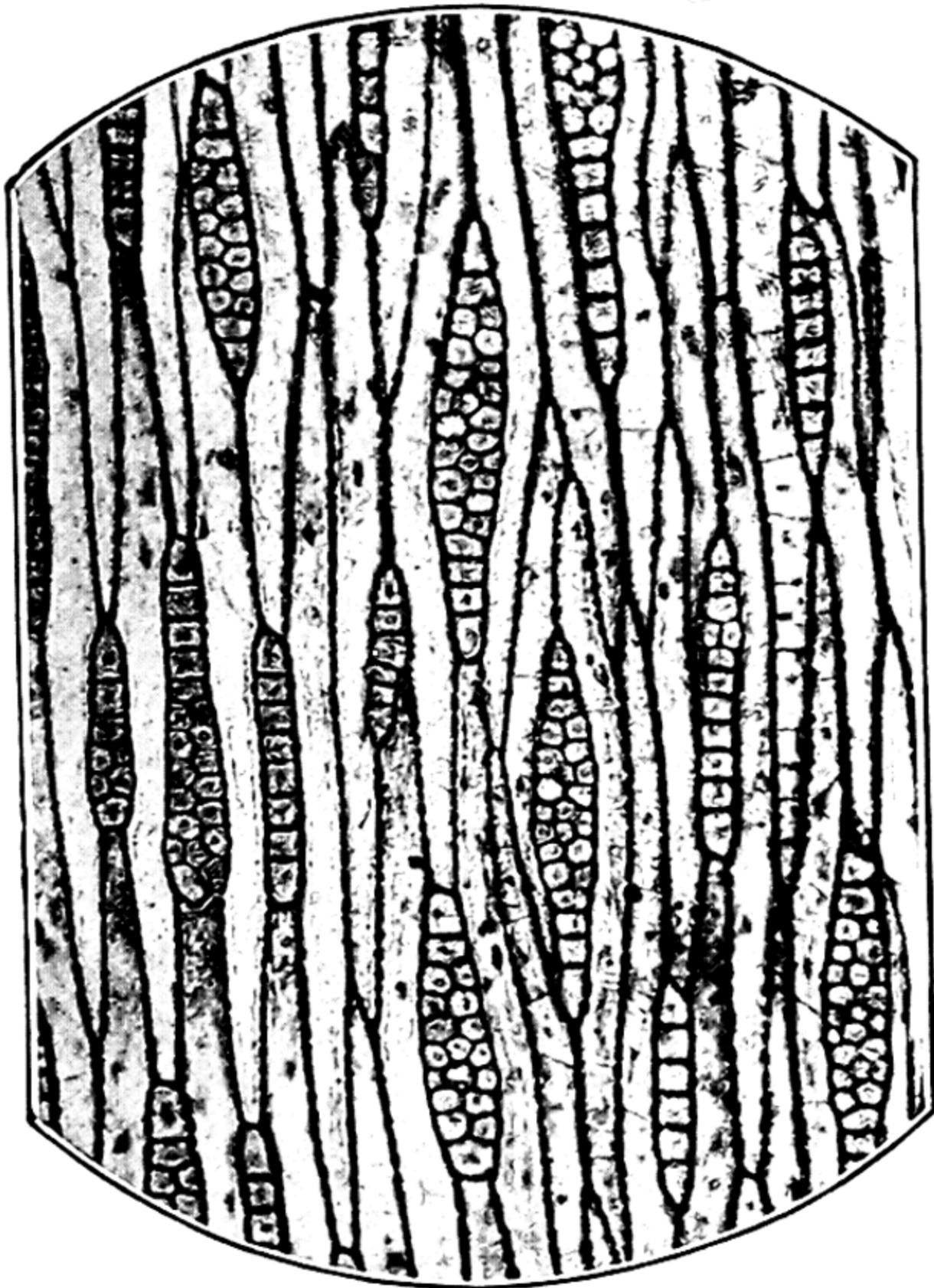




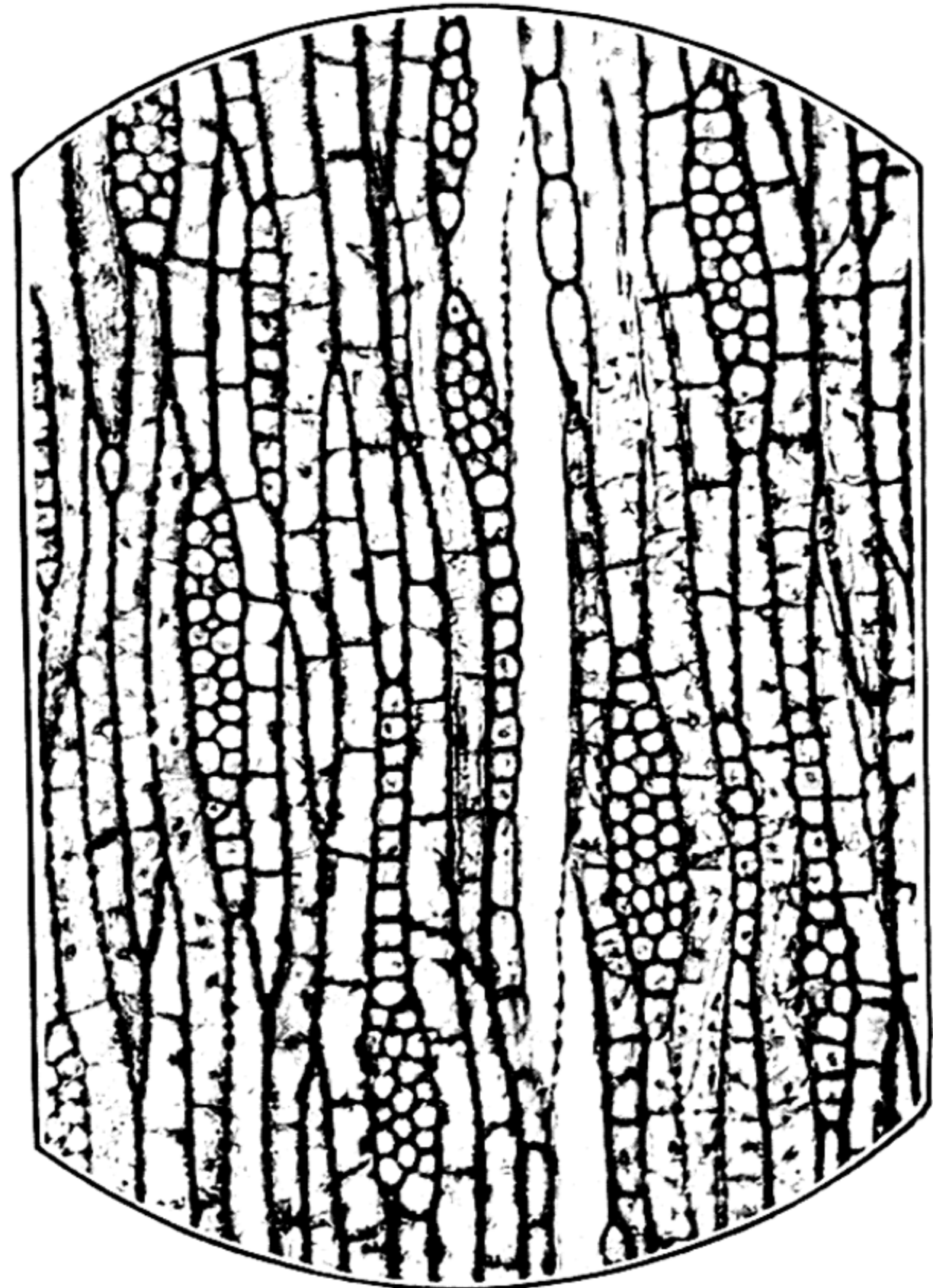
A



B



C



D

FIG. 88.—The cambium in tangential section. A, *Pyrus communis*; B, *Ulmus americana*. In A and B the radial walls are thick and the pit-fields prominent. C and D, *Juglans cinerea*. C and D together form a series, from the left of C to the right of D, showing the ontogeny of the phloem. At the left of C is typical cambium; at the right of C the transverse divisions resulting in phloem-parenchyma formation are taking place; at the left of D the parenchyma cells are maturing; at the center and right of D the sieve tubes and parenchyma are nearly mature. All  $\times 100$ .



the proportion of length to tangential width. In woody plants with relatively short cambium cells, for example, *Robinia* (Fig. 87C,D) and *Ulmus* (Fig. 88B), the length is from five to ten times the tangential width. In other plants, such as *Pyrus* (Fig. 88A), *Juglans* (Fig. 88C), and other types in which the vascular tissues are relatively unspecialized, the ratio of length to tangential width is twenty-five (or more) to one. Gymnosperms show an extreme condition in which the ratio may be anywhere from fifty to one to one hundred (or more) to one, dependent upon the species and other factors. In herbaceous plants, as a class, the common type is that with the shorter initials. Cambium with short initials is clearly the most specialized type, phylogenetically the most recent.

*Size of Cambial Cells.*—The size of the individual elements of the cambium varies through wide limits. In the specialized woody dicotyledons, such as *Robinia*, the elongate cambium cells of the mature plant are about 175 micra in length by 20 micra in tangential width by 7 micra in radial width. In *Juglans* and *Liriodendron*, which have longer initials, the size is about 600 by 25 by 8 micra. The gymnosperms show the extremes in large size. In *Pinus Strobus*, for example, the dimensions of 4000 by 42 by 12 micra have been given; a maximum length of 5000 micra is reported in *Larix*. The size of the ray initials is fairly uniform, the tangential diameter generally being about the same as, or a little less than, that of the adjacent fusiform initials. It has recently been shown that, in some groups of plants at least, the length of the fusiform initials increases with the age of the plant. Thus, in the gymnosperms the length may increase from 1 to nearly 4 mm during the first 60 years, after which it remains constant. In the dicotyledons this increase is much less; in unspecialized woody plants, such as *Juglans*, only from 0.8 to 1.2 mm during the first 30 years. In highly specialized types, such as *Robinia*, the increase may be only from about 0.145 to 0.175 mm before the maximum is reached. The size of cambium cells varies to some extent in the same plant, dependent on position relative to branches, buds, or wound tissue, and also on different ecological factors. In crotch angles extreme variation in size and distortion in shape occur. Curly grain in wood is the result of abnormalities in the arrangement of the cambium cells or in the form of the cambium cylinder. Spiral grain also is related to the structure of the cambium.

In some woody plants, such as *Robinia* (Fig. 87C,D) and *Diospyros*, the fusiform cambium cells, as seen in tangential section, are in more or less definite transverse rows. Such a cambium is called *storied*. This stratified arrangement is correlated with short-length initials and with the formation of highly specialized vessels. It is responsible for a similar



stratified condition of the cells of the xylem and phloem. Some genera, for example, *Fraxinus* and *Ulmus* (Fig. 88B), have short cambial initials that are not storied. This condition is apparently intermediate between the storied type and the extreme nonstoried type with long narrow initials, such as that of *Juglans* (Fig. 88C), *Salix*, *Populus*, *Pyrus* (Fig. 88A). The gymnosperms have cambium of the nonstoried type. Herbaceous plants with well-developed secondary growth, for example, *Solanum* (potato), have short initials that are nonstoried. The prevalent opinion that cambial initials are brick-shaped is based upon the study of transverse and radial sections alone.

**Structure of Cambial Cells.**—The protoplast of the cambium cell is strongly vacuolate, usually with one large vacuole and thin peripheral cytoplasm. Except during dormant periods, the cytoplasm streams actively. The nucleus is large and in the fusiform cells is much elongated. The apparently multinucleate condition seen in tangential sections of the resting cambium is due to the fact that the tangential walls of the radially extremely narrow cells are very thin and transparent, so that the contents of several cells may be seen more or less clearly at the same focal level. The tangential walls are at all times without definite thin areas. The radial walls of the cambium cells, on the other hand, are much thicker and, while the cambium is dormant, show abundant thin areas, the primary pit-fields (Figs. 87B, 88A,B).

✓ **Cell Division in the Cambium.**—Division of the cambial initials must provide not only for the formation of new xylem and phloem cells radially on each side, but also in large part for the increase in the circumference of the cambium cylinder itself. The former is accomplished by the tangential division of the cambium initials, and by the subsequent division of the xylem and phloem mother cells; the latter, by typical radial division of the cambial initials in some plants (Fig. 89E); in others, by transverse division or oblique radial division followed by increase in size and gliding growth (Fig. 89A); and in small part, by the increase in the tangential dimension of the initials as the plant grows older. Increase in the number of vascular rays is also an important factor contributing to the increase of the cambium cylinder in circumference. New ray initials are formed from fusiform initials by transverse division of an entire cambium cell or sometimes of part of the cell only. Longitudinal divisions also occur in the formation of a new biseriate or multiseriate ray. In the formation of broad and very high rays more than one fusiform initial takes part. A combination of these methods brings about increase in girth of the cambium. Radial division of the cambial initials (Fig. 89E) is characteristic of those plants that have short, storied cambium cells and in which the derived vascular tissues are of the highly specialized



type, for example, some of the Leguminosae. In plants with longer, nonstoried initials, there exist all transitional conditions in respect to the position of the newly formed wall or cell plate, from the transverse plane to the radial-longitudinal plane (Fig. 89A,B,C). Apparently in evolutionary specialization, the new cell wall tends to approach the radial position as the initials become shortened and approach the storied position as the initials become shortened and approach the storied

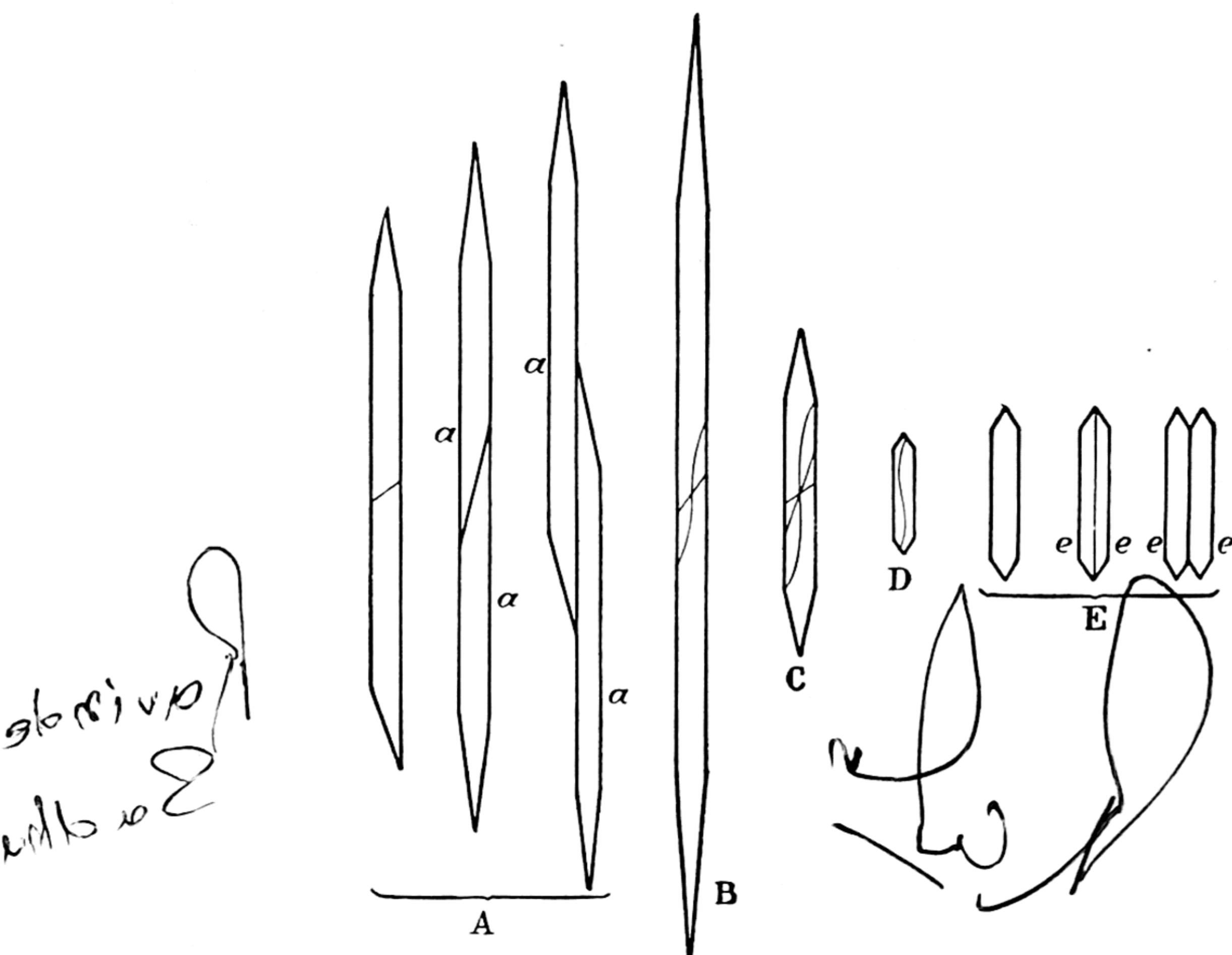


FIG. 89.—Diagrams of cambium cells, tangential view, illustrating the method of increase in girth of the cambium. A, fusiform initial dividing nearly transversely, *a, a*, products of this division which elongate and slide by one another as they mature (two stages); B, C, D, three forms of initials showing position of new wall in "radial" (anti-clinal) division: B, C, showing two and three positions respectively, D, the only position; E, short initial, *e, e*, products of the radial division of E, which enlarge tangentially but not longitudinally. (After Bailey.)

condition. Division in the long cambium cells and their daughter cells shows in extreme form the slow progressive building of the new wall by kinoplasmosomes (Figs. 14, 15) from the dividing nucleus to the ends of the cell. When division is tangential, the daughter cells that persist as cambium initials increase in radial diameter only. New cambium initials formed by transverse or oblique divisions increase greatly in length (Fig. 89A,B,C); those formed by radial divisions do not increase in length (Fig. 89E).



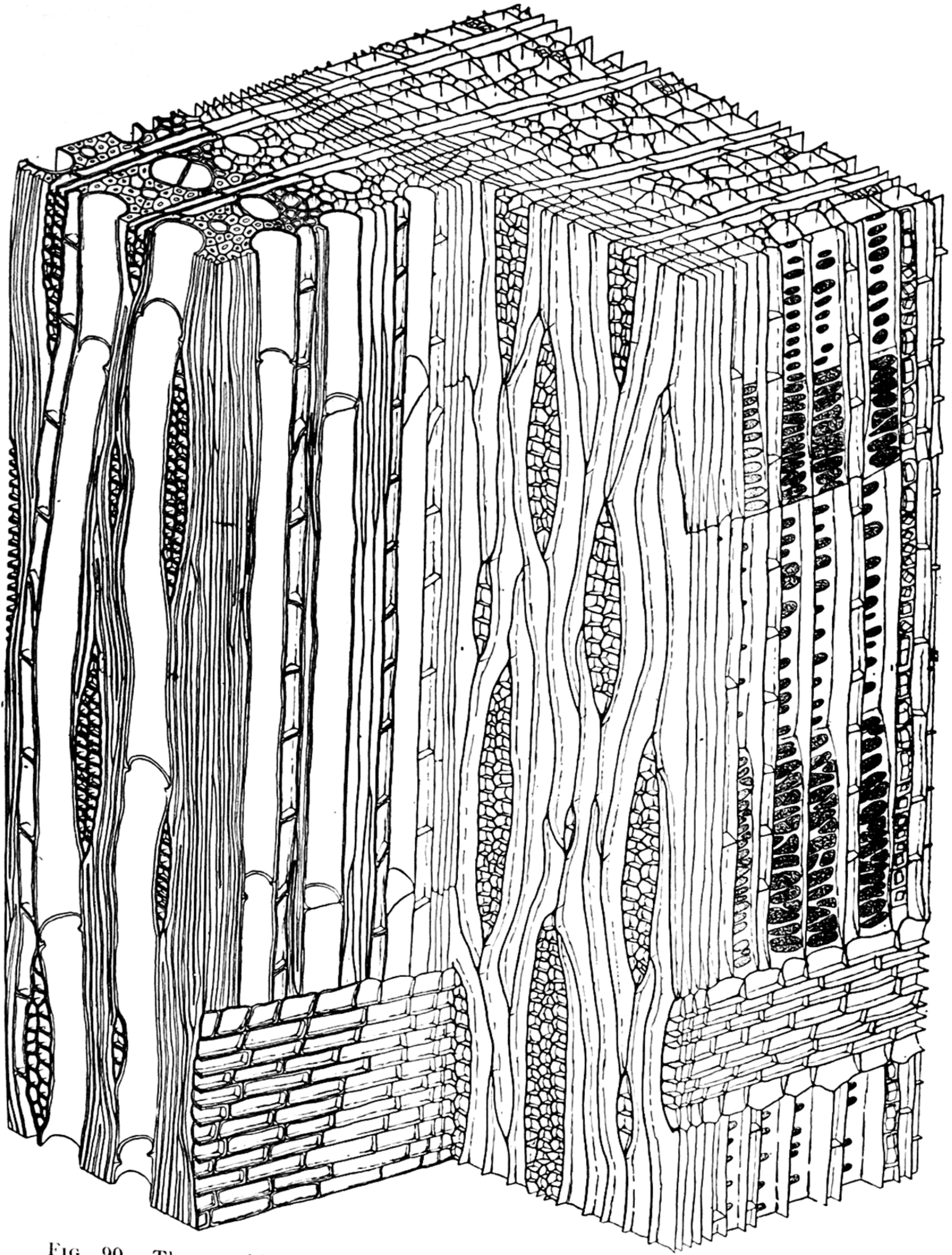


FIG. 90.—The cambium and developing and mature xylem and phloem in *Malus pumila*. (The region of maturing xylem is here represented greatly shortened. The contents and the pits of all cells have been omitted.)



**Gliding and Intrusive Growth of Cambial Cells and Cambial Derivatives.**—Strong gliding or intrusive growth occurs when new cambium initials increase in size to that of the mother cell; when the cambium

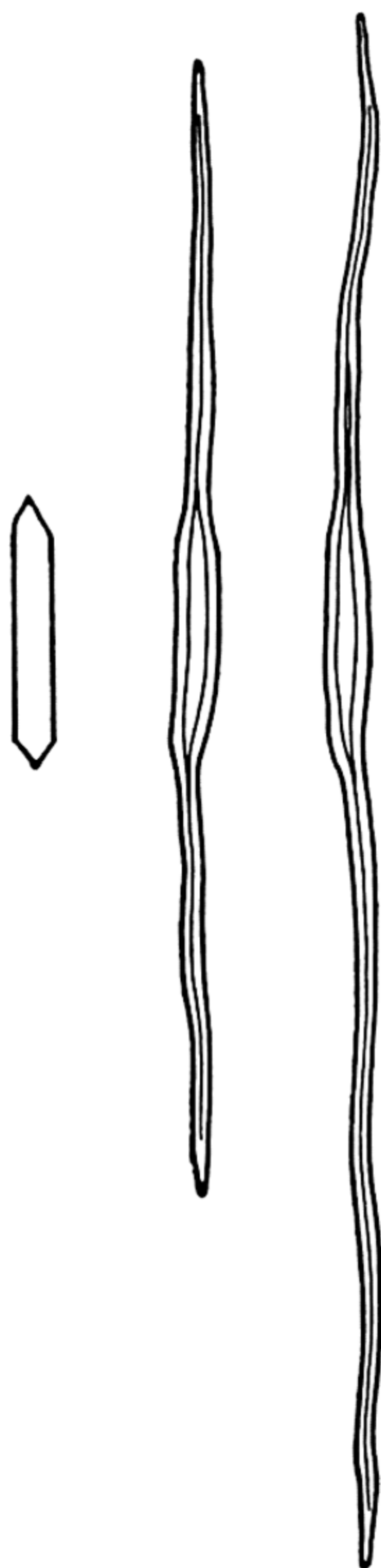


FIG. 91. — Cambium cell and wood fibers derived therefrom in *Robinia Pseudo-Acacia*. (Drawn to scale.) Elongation of the developing fiber involves penetration of the tips between cells above and below; see also Fig. 92A.

derivatives mature as xylem and phloem cells; when adjustment takes place among unequally enlarging cambium derivatives. When a fusiform initial divides transversely or nearly so (Fig. 89A) in the formation of new initials, the daughter cells enlarge to about twice their original length, extending past each other and between adjacent initials. In the maturation of the elongate cells of xylem and phloem, there is great increase in length—even to four or five times the length of the initial (Fig. 91)—and contact with new cells far above and below. Developmental changes in size and shape in the zone of plastic cells near the cambium are doubtless in some measure those of symplastic growth (page 12), but rapid and great enlargement of the vessel elements brings a pushing aside and tearing apart of the adjacent small cells with consequent formation of new cell contacts by many cells. This displacement of cells is especially great in ring-porous woods with simply perforate vessels, such as *Quercus* and *Robinia*.

**Ontogeny of Secondary Vascular Tissues.**—The xylem mother cells cut off by the cambium may develop into permanent xylem elements without further division or, as frequently happens, may divide once or several times before mature cells are formed. In simple gymnosperm wood all xylem derivatives from fusiform cambial cells become tracheidal cells and are essentially alike except for the differences between early and late wood. The tracheids are formed directly from the xylem mother cells by increase in radial diameter and in length, thickening of the wall, and the loss of the protoplast. In gymnosperms with wood parenchyma and in all plants containing vessels the xylem mother cells differentiate into two or more cell types—tracheids, wood parenchyma, vessels, and wood fibers. Wood parenchyma cells are formed by the transverse division of the mother cell into a number of segments (Fig. 90), and by the subsequent radial enlargement and the thickening of the walls of these segments. The transverse divisions occur in a vertical row of



mother cells, so that the resulting parenchyma cells form a vertical series extending for some distance in the axis. Commonly the vertical series of derivatives of a single mother cell retain the prosenchymatous shape of that cell so that the series from a single initial can be readily recognized in the mature tissue. The arrangement of wood parenchyma and its relation to other cells are discussed in Chap. VII. The ontogeny of the vessel is discussed in Chap. IV. The initials of vascular rays divide

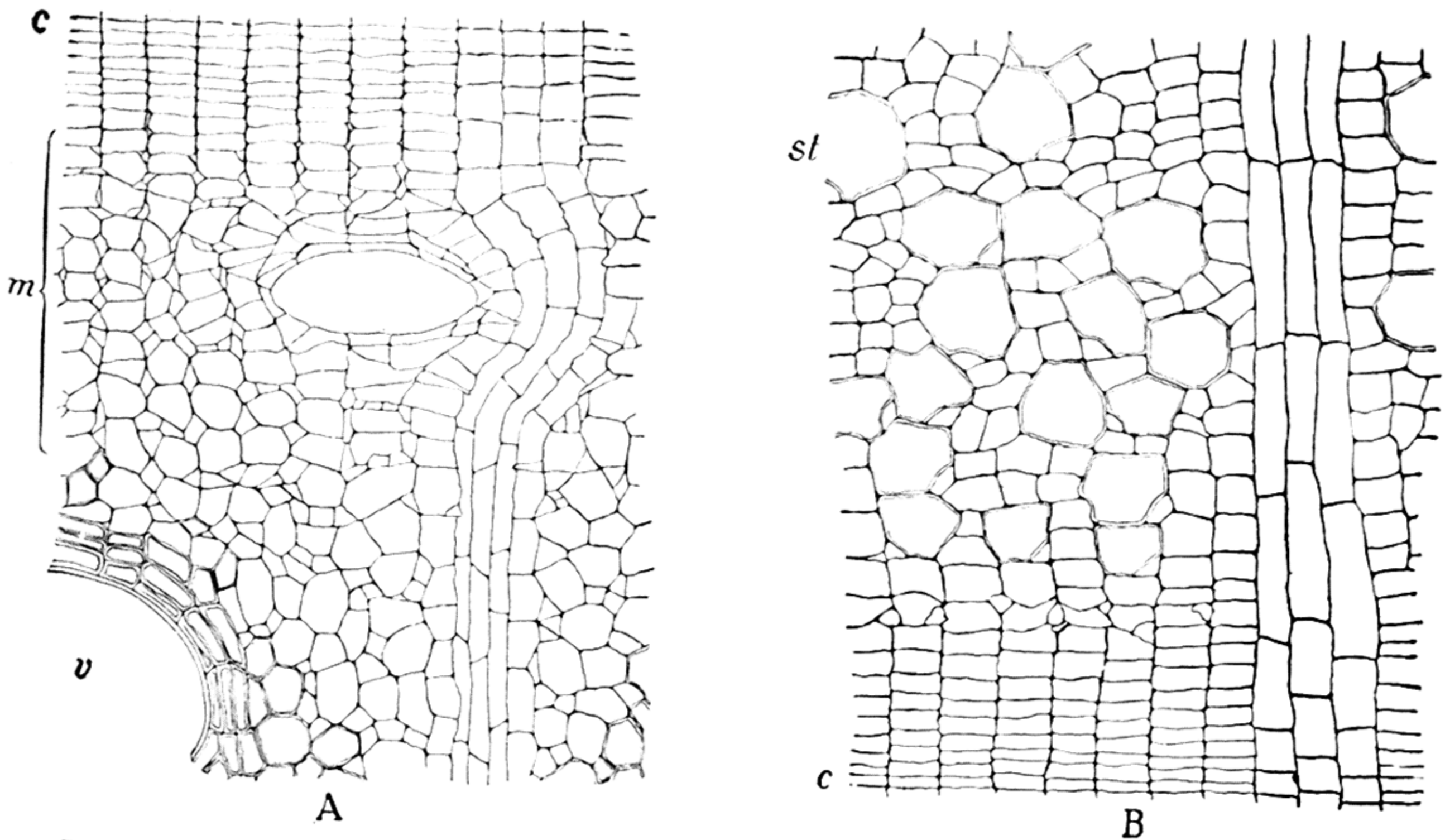


FIG. 92.—The ontogeny of secondary vascular tissue in *Robinia*. A, early stages in xylem formation. c, the cambium. The median portion (m) of the figure shows the region of major cell elongation and of adjustment to vessel development which involve tangential and radial enlargement. The tips of elongating cells appear from above and below between the radial rows of cells, increase in size, and crowd the cells from symmetrical arrangement. The great enlargement of vessel elements crowds the surrounding cells from position, flattening and otherwise distorting them; the rays often are turned at right angles to their course. v, a vessel nearly mature, as are surrounding cells. B, stages in phloem development to mature tissue. The companion cells appear early; they and the sieve tubes later enlarge greatly. c, the cambium, st, sieve tube.

tangentially, and the daughter cells increase greatly in radial diameter but little or not at all in other diameters.

**Time of Cambial Activity.**—In perennial stems and roots of plants that have dormant periods, cambial activity commonly ceases well before the beginning of this period. Division in cambium cells begins again at the end of the dormant period—in early spring, April and May in the northeastern United States—before, during, or after the breaking of the buds. In evergreen trees it may occur somewhat earlier. There is no uniformity in the position of first growth in the cambium; this is often in the central part of the tree, extending then to all parts, but cambial



growth may also start at the base of the tree or at the tips of the twigs. Likewise, of two trees of the same species growing side by side, one may have cambial activity while the other is still dormant. On bright, sunny days in late winter, cambial activity may be started on the southwest side of exposed trunks as a result of absorption of heat from the sun by the dark-colored bark. If the sunny days are followed by a rapid temperature fall, the active cambium cells are likely to be killed, and the type of winter injury known as "sun scald" results.

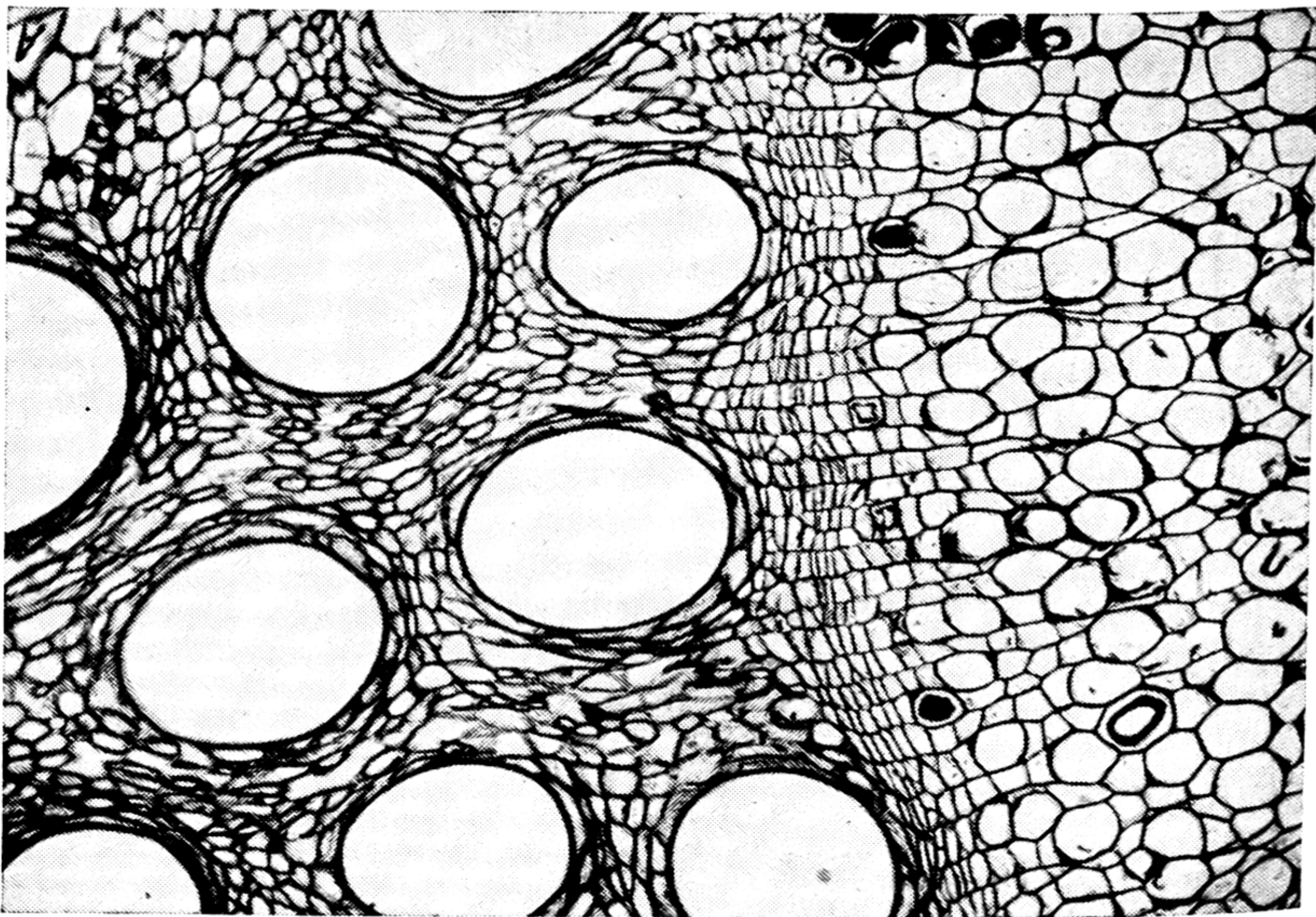


FIG. 93.—Transverse section of part of the cambium region of a vascular bundle of *Cucurbita*, phloem at the right, xylem at the left. Developmental stages of both tissues shown. Enormous enlargement of vessel elements has destroyed radial arrangement, changed position, and distorted form of surrounding cells.  $\times 90$ . (After Esau and Hewitt.)

The first vascular cells to mature in the spring are phloem mother cells. These are cells that were cut off from the cambial initials during the previous growing period and have remained over winter in an immature condition. The new sieve tubes are formed at a time when the translocation of stored food materials is most actively going on. From histological evidence, it is probable that in many woody plants all sieve tubes functioning in a given season are matured during that season, and all sieve tubes matured the preceding season have already ceased to function, though they may not lose their protoplasts or become crushed until rapid growth begins in the spring. The period of most rapid



phloem formation may come several weeks after the differentiation of the first phloem elements. This period coincides, in general, with that of the most active growth in the xylem. The duration of seasonal cambium activity varies with different ages of the plant and of the plant parts, with different species, and with environmental conditions. Generally, after the "flush" of growth in the early summer, there is a gradual slowing down in the formation of new cells, and in the trunk and main branches of some species there is cessation of cambial growth by midsummer. Cambial activity continues longest in the small rapidly growing twigs or shoots that are late in completing their apical growth. In nursery trees, growth in diameter may continue until late in the fall; in such trees, terminal growth also usually continues late. Abundant nitrogen and water in the soil are apparently important causal factors in such late growth.

**Burial of Branch Bases.**—As successive annual layers of xylem are laid down by the cambium, all tissues within the cambium cylinder are buried more and more deeply. In this way the bases of branches become embedded in the wood of the tree trunk. In a living branch, the buried portion has the shape of an inverted cone because, as new layers of xylem are laid down over the branch, the cambium is moved by the increase in the diameter of the trunk (Fig. 94A) farther and farther away from the point of insertion of the branch in the trunk. The buried portion of the branch cannot increase further in diameter; hence the inner portions are progressively of less diameter as the attachment to the primary cylinder is approached. At the apex of the cone-shaped mass thus formed is the pith of the branch at its point of union with the pith of the main axis (Fig. 94A). When a branch dies, there is of course, no further increase in diameter, and its base is buried as a cone of dead tissue (Fig. 95). Knots found in lumber are sections of embedded branch bases, loosely or tightly held in the board, depending on whether the branch was dead or living at the time it was embedded.

As the base of a branch is buried by the formation of new xylem on the main axis, the phloem about its insertion is forced outward—that in the angle of the crotch more rapidly than that below the crotch—and the base of the branch is stripped of its phloem. In small branches in which the increase in diameter is relatively small as compared with that of the main axis, as in the fruit spurs on the larger limbs of apple trees, this stripping is most marked. In this process the phloem is thrown up into folds which often appear as concentric rings about the base of the partly buried branch. With larger branches and more rapid growth, the older phloem is mechanically broken and crowded out of the crotch angle, and the younger, more plastic tissue is thrown up into irregular



folds. Great distortion in the shape and arrangement of the cambium cells results, and some of the cells apparently are crowded out and destroyed. Adjustment to the necessary reduction in area of the cam-

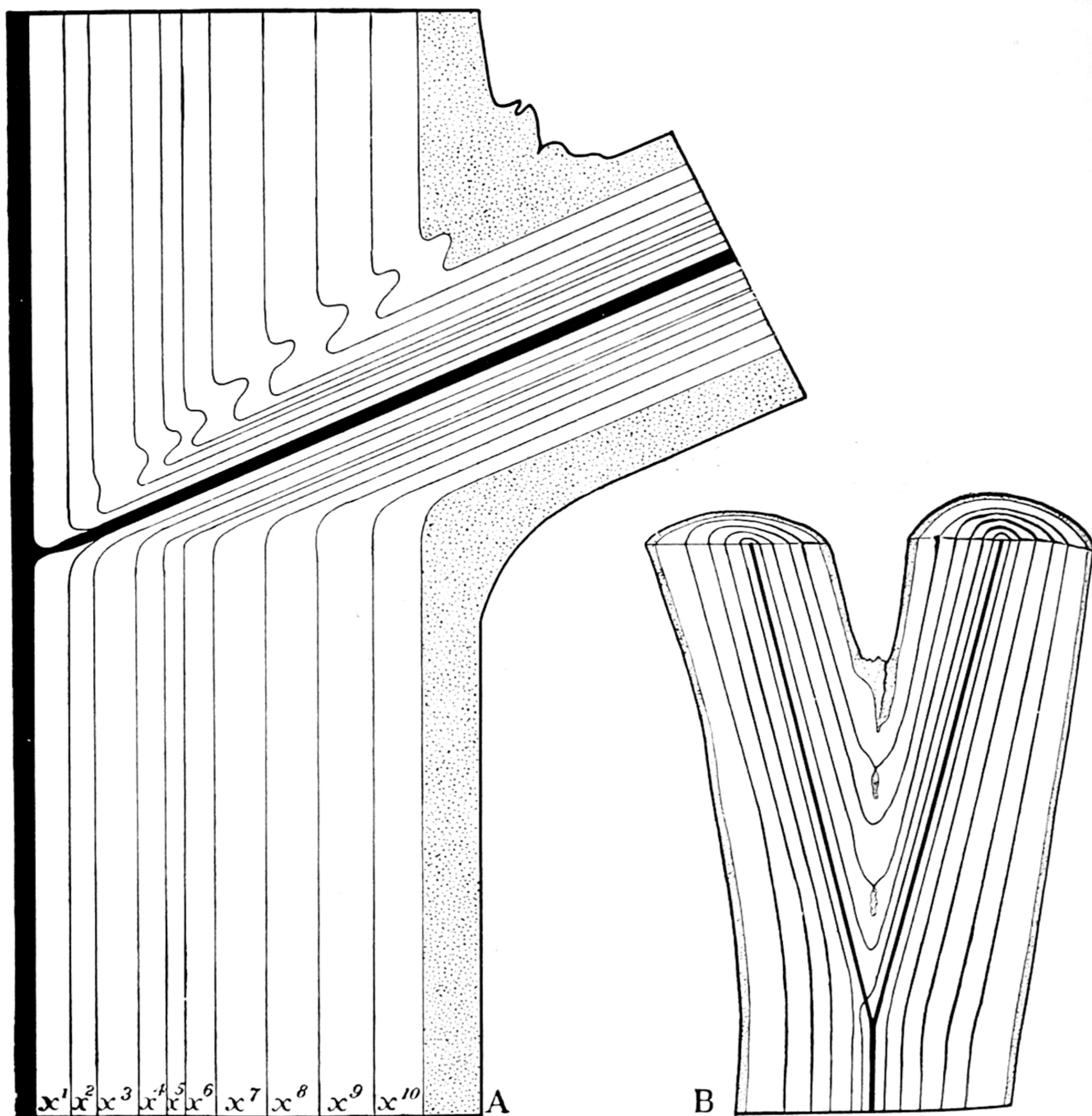


FIG. 94.—A, diagram illustrating the burial of branch bases by secondary xylem. The phloem is pushed away from the buried portion and thrown up in the crotch angle into folds. The cambium layer is also distorted in position. The pith is shown in solid black; the phloem and cortex stippled.  $x^1$  to  $x^{10}$  successive annual rings. B, diagram of crotch with narrow angle, showing union of xylem of trunk and branch, the pushing out of the phloem in the angle, and the occasional enclosure of "pockets" of phloem within the xylem. The enclosure of phloem, together with the formation of abundant wood parenchyma in the xylem of the crotch union, renders the crotch weak. (B, after MacDaniels.)

bium in the crotch angle probably takes place during the growing season while the surrounding cells are in a plastic condition. At this time some



of the cambium cells are apparently forced laterally out of the crotch angle to the sides of the crotch where they help to compensate for the increase in the girth of the cambium which takes place in this region.

In the crotch angle there is usually a well-defined region where the tissues of the trunk meet those of the branch. Here the conducting tissues of branch and trunk may remain more or less distinct, and, between the two, masses of thick-walled wood-parenchyma may be formed. Thus the branch is not "tied to" the trunk on the upper side



FIG. 95.—Transverse section of decaying trunk of *Pinus Strobus*, showing the form of buried branch bases. The inner xylem and pith of the trunk have been destroyed but the branch bases, resin-filled and resistant, have persisted.  $\times \frac{1}{2}$ .

and as a result, there is in the angle of many crotches a zone of weakness which may cause the branch to break away when under stress (Fig. 96). Where the angle of the crotch is very narrow and growth is rapid, the bark on the two sides is forced together before cambium growth in the angle pushes it out beyond the region of xylem union. "Pockets" of dead phloem are then enclosed in the angle (Fig. 94B), and are another cause of weak crotch union. The nature of the crotch tissue, the angle at which the branch meets the trunk, and the relative size of trunk and branch all have a practical bearing in the practice of pruning fruit trees.



**Cambium Growth about Wounds.**—Among the important functions of the cambium is the formation of *callus*, or *wound tissue*, and the healing of wounds. When wounds occur in roots or stems, masses of soft parenchymatous tissue quickly form on or below the injured surface; this tissue is known as callus. Callus may be formed by the division of parenchyma cells in the phloem and the cortex, but its most frequent



FIG. 96.—Radial section of part of trunk of *Liriodendron*, showing buried branch base. Pith of branch and trunk (black) united at "shoulder" on lower left; xylem of branch separated from that of trunk on upper side by the contorted tissue of the crotch angle. Heartwood and pith, dark; sapwood and bark, light.  $\times \frac{1}{2}$ .

source is the cambium. In the formation of callus in the healing of a wound, there is at first abundant proliferation of the cambium cells, with the production of masses of parenchyma. The outer cells of this tissue either become suberized themselves, or periderm (Chap. IX) develops within them, so that a protecting bark is formed beneath which the cambium is active in forming new vascular tissue in the normal way. In wounds due to pruning, callus is formed about the edges early in the growing season. As a new annual ring is formed in the uninjured



surrounding tissues the cambium layer assumes a position at an angle to the face of the wound at the point of intersection with it. In this position new tissue formed in the normal way will extend the growing layer over the cut surface until the two opposite sides meet. The cambium layers then unite and the wound is completely covered. Subsequently formed growth-rings bury the wound more and more deeply.

**The Cambium in Budding and Grafting.**—The important practices of budding and grafting have as their basis the ability of the cambium of both stock and scion to develop callus and unite, forming over the union of stock and scion a continuous cambium layer which will give rise to normal conducting tissue. There is apparently an actual union of the cambium of the two plants. Where there is so-called “incompatibility” of stock and scion, such as occurs between some varieties of apple and certain dwarf-apple stocks, the cambia of the stock and scion fail to unite to form a normal growing layer that will, in turn, produce normal xylem and phloem but produce, instead, masses of parenchyma which make the union weak and conduction slow. Cambium activity and structure in relation to graft union is not well understood.

Where the cambium is injured during the growing season—for example, when branches are ringed—it may be regenerated from the immature xylem cells beneath, provided the tissues are protected from desiccation soon after the injury. In ringing experiments, it is sometimes difficult to prevent the formation of new cambium even by scraping the surface of the wound with a knife because callus tissue is formed by the living, immature cells of the xylem, and in this callus a new cambium is differentiated. At first this new meristematic tissue is not normal cambium in shape and size of cells, but eventually the normal condition is attained. The formation of galls and some types of burls may be due to local stimulation of the cambium to abnormal activity by insects or disease.

✓**The Cambium in Monocotyledons.**—The monocotyledons as a class are without secondary thickening; the plant body consists of primary tissue only. Vestiges of typical cambial activity occur, however, in some genera, especially in the vascular bundles of nodal regions and of leaf bases. A special type of secondary thickening occurs in a few forms (some woody and a few herbaceous Liliaceae—*Dracaena*, *Aloë*, *Yucca*, *Veratrum* and some other genera), whereby the stem is increased in diameter by the formation of a cylinder of new bundles embedded in a tissue of less specialized nature (Fig. 97). Here a cambium layer is formed from the meristematic parenchyma of the pericycle or of the innermost cortical cells. In roots, at least in some plants, a cambium of this type forms in the endodermis. The initials of this cambium vary greatly



in shape in different species, ranging in form through polygonal and rectangular to fusiform, and are commonly variable even in a small region in a single plant. They stand in tiers forming a storied cambium as in the normal cambium of some dicotyledons.

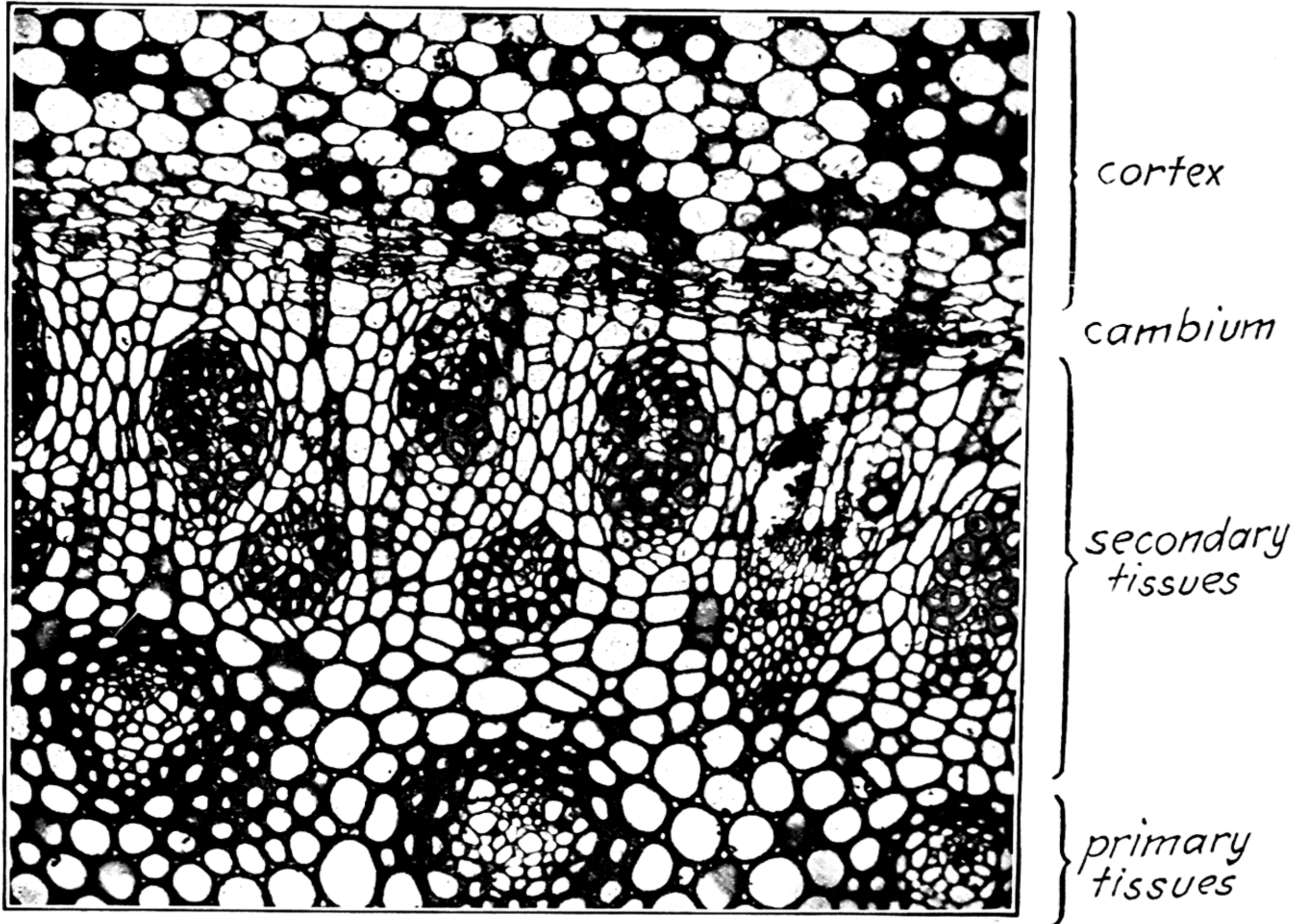


FIG. 97.—Special type of cambial growth of “woody” monocotyledons; stem of *Dracaena fragrans*.

The development by cambial activity in steles with anomalous structure is discussed in Chap. XI.

#### References

(See also References for Chaps. III, IV, V, VII, and VIII)

- ARTSCHWAGER, E. F.: Anatomy of the potato plant, with special reference to the ontogeny of the vascular system, *Jour. Agr. Res.*, **14**, 221–252, 1918.
- BAILEY, I. W.: The cambium and its derivative tissues, II. Size variations of cambial initials in gymnosperms and angiosperms, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **7**, 355–367, 1920.
- : The cambium and its derivative tissues, III. A reconnaissance of cytological phenomena in the cambium, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **7**, 417–434, 1920.
- : The cambium and its derivative tissues, IV. The increase in girth of the cambium, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **10**, 499–509, 1923.
- : The significance of the cambium in the study of certain physiological problems, *Jour. Gen. Physiol.*, **2**, 519–533, 1920.



- BROWN, H. P.: Growth studies in forest trees, I. *Pinus rigida* Mill., *Bot. Gaz.*, **54**, 386-403, 1912. II. *Pinus Strobus* L., *Bot. Gaz.*, **59**, 197-241, 1915.
- CHEADLE, V. I.: Secondary growth by means of a thickening ring in certain monocotyledons, *Bot. Gaz.*, **98**, 535-554, 1937.
- ESAU, K.: Vessel development in celery, *Hilgardia*, **10**, 479-488, 1936.
- and W. B. HEWITT: Structure of end walls in differentiating vessels, *Hilgardia*, **13**, 229-244, 1940.
- HILL, A. W.: The histology of the sieve tubes of angiosperms, *Ann. Bot.*, **22**, 245-290, 1908.
- JACOB DE COURDEMOY, H.: "Recherches sur les monocotylédones à accroissement secondaire," 108 p., Lille, 1894.
- KLINKEN, J.: Über das gleitende Wachstum der Initialen im Kambium der Koniferen und den Markstrahlverlauf in ihrer sekundären Rinde, *Bibl. Bot.*, **84**, 1-41, 1914.
- KNUDSON, L.: Observations on the inception, season, and duration of cambium development in the American larch [*Larix laricina* (Du Roi) Koch], *Bull. Torr. Bot. Club*, **40**, 271-293, 1913.
- KOSTYTSCHIEW, S.: Der Bau und das Dickenwachstum der Dikotylenstämme, *Beih. Bot. Centralbl.*, **40**, 295-350, 1924.
- MACDANIELS, L. H.: The apple-tree crotch. Histological studies and practical considerations, *Cornell Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bull.*, 419, 1923.
- : The histology of the phloem in certain woody angiosperms, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **5**, 347-378, 1918.
- MISCHKE, K.: Beobachtungen über das Dickenwachstum der Coniferen, *Bot. Centralbl.*, **44**, 39-43, 65-71, 97-102, 137-142, 169-175, 1890.
- NÄGELI, C.: "Dickenwachstum des Stengels und Anordnung der Gefässsstränge bei den Sapindaceen," München, 1864.
- NEEFF, F.: Über die Umlagerung der Kambiumzellen beim Dickenwachstum der Dikotylen, *Zeitschr. Bot.*, **12**, 225-252, 1920.
- SCHMIDT, E. W.: "Bau und Funktion der Siebröhre der Angiospermen," 108 p., Jena, 1917.
- SCHOOTE, J. C.: Über Zellteilungsvorgänge im Cambium, *Verhandel. Akad. Wetenschappen Amsterdam*, 2s. **9**, 1-60, 1902.
- SCOTT, D. H., and G. BREBNER: On the secondary tissues in certain monocotyledons, *Ann. Bot.*, **7**, 21-62, 1894.
- TISON, A.: Les traces foliaires des conifères dans leur rapport avec l'épaississement de la tige, *Mém. Soc. Linn. de Normandie*, **21**, 59-82, 1903.
- : Sur la mode d'accroissement de la tige en face des faisceaux foliaires après la chute des feuilles chez les dicotylédones, *Mém. Soc. Linn. de Normandie*, **21**, 1-17, 1902.



## CHAPTER VII

### SECONDARY XYLEM

Secondary xylem often makes up the bulk of the vascular tissue of a plant, and, in most woody plants, constitutes the bulk of the entire plant body. In such plants it is a tissue of great importance, because through its functions a huge plant body may be maintained in the atmosphere with its various parts favorably situated as to light and air. Mechanically, the xylem supports and anchors the body; physiologically, it conducts water, and perhaps other inorganic materials absorbed by the roots, to all living parts of the plant. Further, it provides in its living cells storage space for considerable quantities of food. Of the total amount of xylem in the body of most trees, however, a considerable part (heartwood) is not functioning except in the way of mechanical support. The secondary xylem of tree trunks is of great economic importance, since it constitutes the timber and wood of commerce. It also has many other uses of less, though often of much importance.

#### GROSS STRUCTURE OF SECONDARY XYLEM

Secondary xylem consists of a closely compacted mass of thick-walled cells so arranged as to form two systems: a longitudinal, that is, vertical, and a transverse, radiating system.<sup>1</sup> The longitudinal system consists of elongate, overlapping, and interlocked cells—tracheids, fibers, and vessel elements—and of longitudinal rows of parenchyma cells. All these cells have their long axes parallel with the long axis of the organ of which they are a part. The cell types of this system are discussed under Xylem in Chap. IV. In secondary xylem, these cells are in general similar to those of the primary xylem of the same species. They are considerably shorter and may differ otherwise in form and in structure—for example, in vessel-element perforation. Annular and spiral tracheids and vessels are of course absent. The radial system consists chiefly of parenchyma cells with their long axes at right angles to the long axis of the central cylinder. These horizontally elongate cells constitute the xylem rays. Rays are, of course, absent in primary xylem.

<sup>1</sup> The distinction of two such systems is made merely for convenience in description. As distinct tissues, the systems, of course, do not exist. The basis of distinction is that of arrangement of cells and of direction of conduction.



**Xylem Rays.**—*Xylem rays*, or *wood rays*, are sheets of tissue, more or less strap-like or ribbon-like, extending radially in the xylem (Figs. 98, 99). Xylem rays are a part of a system of conducting tissue which extends as a continuous band through the cambium into the secondary phloem. These radiating strips of cells have been generally known as *medullary rays*, or *pith rays*, since in position and parenchymatous nature they to some extent suggest radiating portions of the pith. The use of this term is based upon a supposed homology of these structures with actual projections of the pith ("medulla"), such as occur in herbaceous stems of the *Ranunculus* type (Fig. 135F). The term "medullary ray" for these radiating bands of xylem and phloem is, however, clearly a misnomer since very few of these rays of tissue have any connection with the pith and, further, are not morphologically homologous with structures, such as the radiating pith 'arms' of stems of the *Ranunculus* type, which may perhaps logically be called medullary rays. These radial bands are best called *vascular rays* since the bands are rays of vascular tissue, partly of xylem, partly of phloem. The terms *wood ray*, or *xylem ray*, and *phloem ray* for those parts of the ray confined to xylem and phloem respectively, are already in use and are particularly appropriate.

Vascular rays lie at right angles to the long axis of the stem or root and are always continuous through the cambium and into the phloem. They are straight except when crowded aside by unequal growth of the surrounding cells or tissues. All vascular rays are initiated by the cambium and, once formed, are increased in length indefinitely by the cambium. New ray tissue is thus added in a region near the middle of the ray, the older parts being separated by the formation of new cells in the cambium between them. The length of a ray therefore depends upon the length of time since it was initiated and upon the rate of growth of the secondary tissues. At the beginning of secondary growth a certain number of vascular rays are initiated. As the circumference of the vascular cylinder increases with the addition of new secondary tissues, the distal parts of these rays become more and more widely separated. Soon the width of the segments of xylem and phloem so increases that the cells formed in the center of the segments are remote from the existing rays. New rays are then formed at frequent intervals tangentially, so that all xylem and phloem cells are fairly close to rays. The scattered vertical and tangential distribution of the rays brings into contact with every tracheid and similar elongate cell at least one ray (Figs. 98C, 99C). In gymnosperm woods where no wood parenchyma is present, every tracheid is in direct contact with at least one ray. Vessels, also, in their longitudinal extent, come into contact with many rays. In



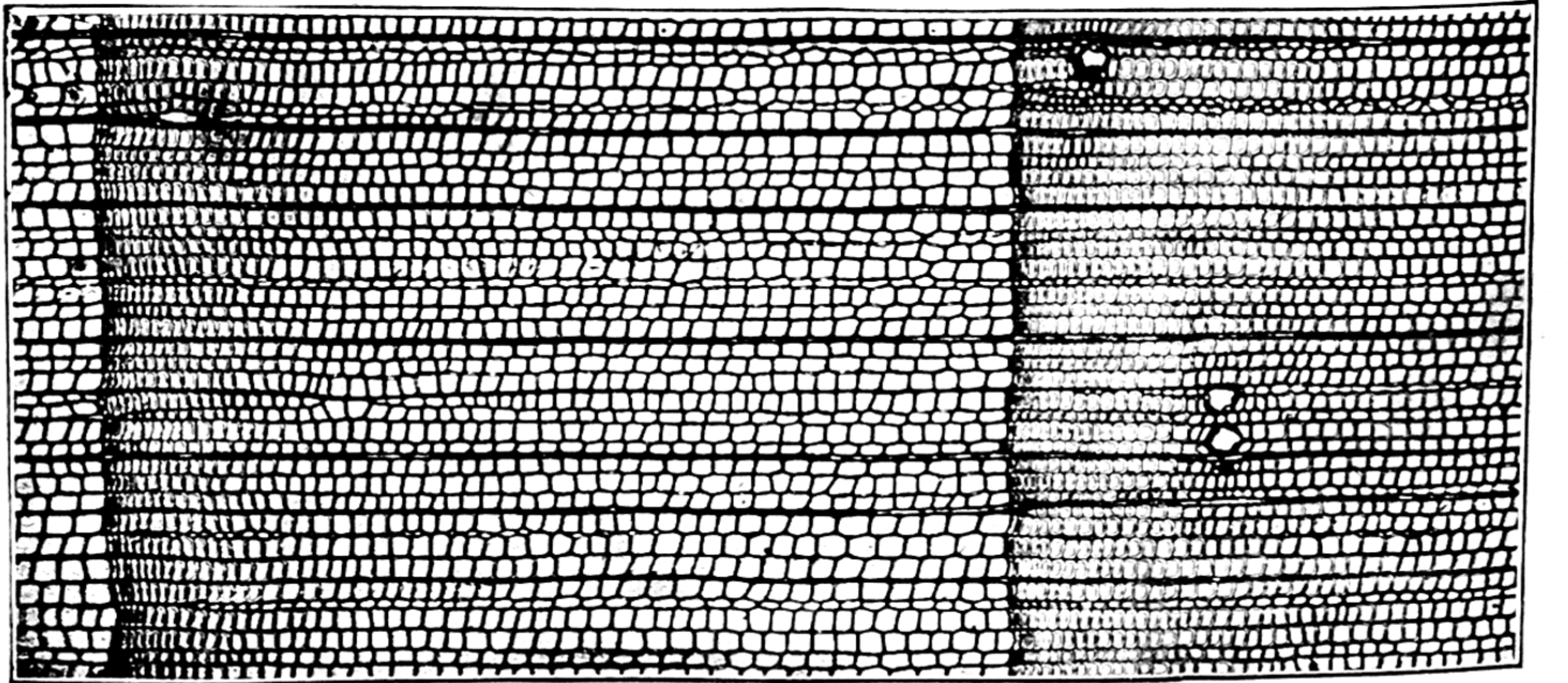
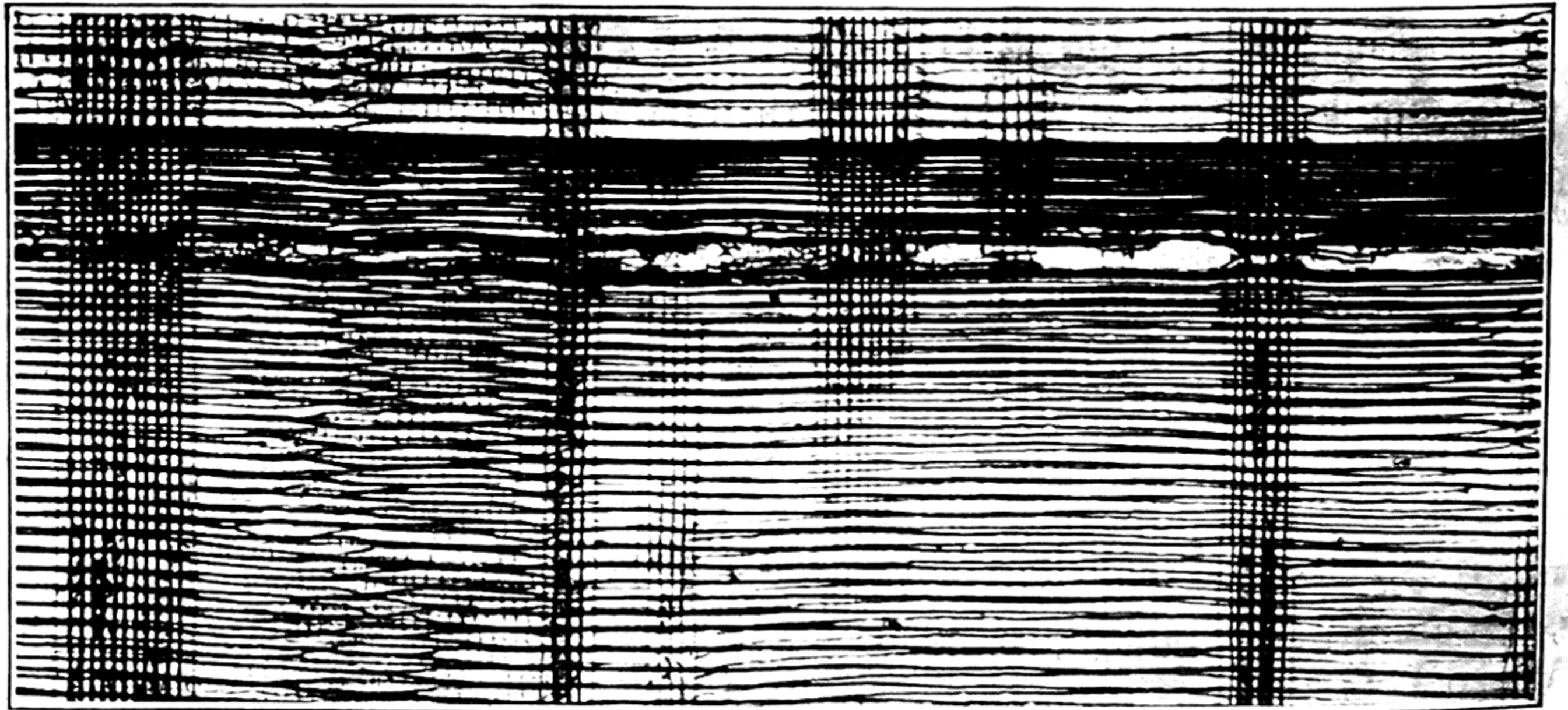
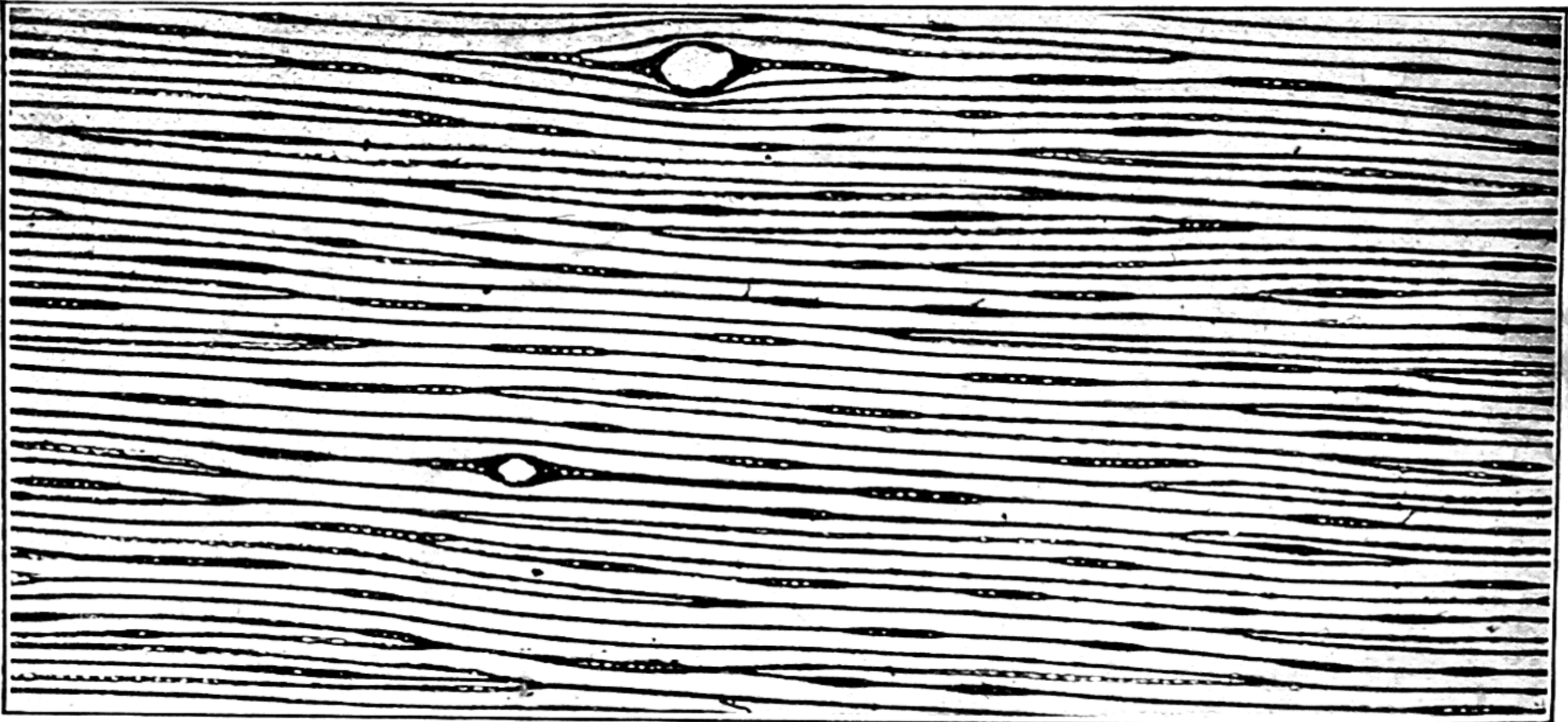
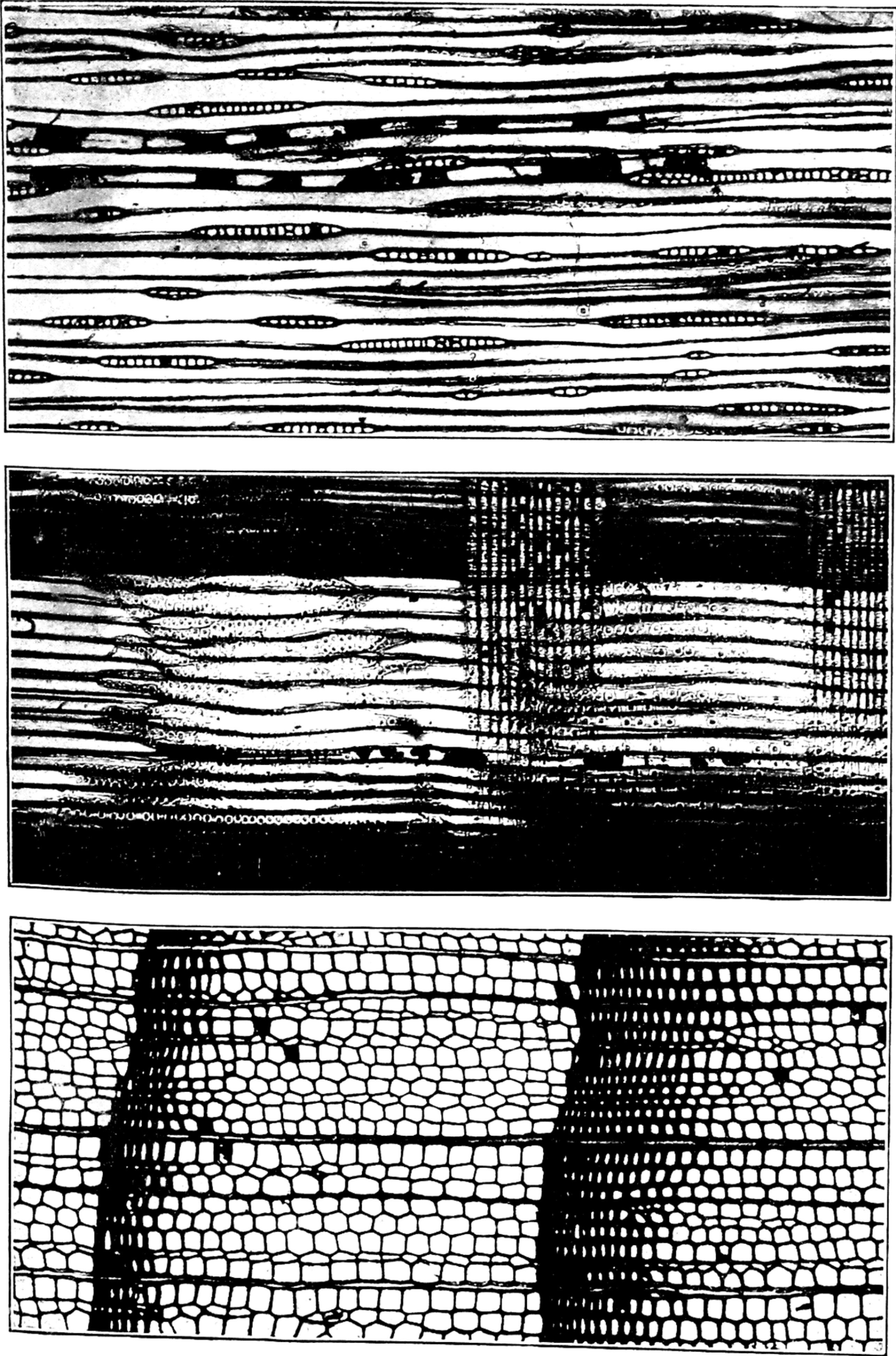


FIG. 98.—Secondary xylem of *Picea rubra*.  
A, transverse; B, radial; C, tangential.





A  
B  
C  
Fig. 99.—Secondary xylem of *Sequoia sempervirens*. A, transverse; B, radial; C, tangential section.  $\times 50$ . (Courtesy of the U.S. Forest Products Laboratory.)



herbaceous stems, such as those of *Ranunculus*, where vascular bundles are separated by projecting parenchymatous wedges (which may perhaps be called true "medullary rays"), and in vines, such as *Clematis*, where the bundles are separated by bands of secondary parenchyma, vascular rays are lacking. In such plants the bundles are so small that no conducting cells are far removed from radial sheets of parenchyma. The absence of vascular rays in these plants is doubtless the result of loss during evolutionary specialization. The relation of contact or of closeness in position of living cells (ray cells or wood parenchyma) to conducting cells (tracheids and vessels) is apparently of the greatest importance to the functioning ability of these nonliving cells.


**Annual Rings; Growth Rings.**—The secondary xylem in perennial axes commonly consists of concentric layers (Fig. 3), each one of which represents a seasonal increment. When seen in cross section of the axis, these layers appear as rings, and the terms annual ring and growth ring or growth layer are applied to each layer. These layers are usually called annual rings because in the woody plants of temperate regions and in those of tropical regions where there is an annual alternation of growing and dormant periods, each layer represents the growth of one year. The term "growth ring" is best for general use because under some climatic conditions the growing periods may not be one per year.

An annual ring or growth ring of xylem is a layer of secondary xylem formed in one growing season over the entire plant and is, therefore, an extensive tubular structure having the general form of the axis of the plant. It is open at the ends where meristems occur.

The width of growth rings varies greatly and depends upon the rate of growth of the tree, which is, of course, controlled by many factors. Wide rings are formed in young trees and under favorable growth conditions generally. Unfavorable growing seasons produce narrow rings, and favorable seasons wide ones. Such injury as defoliation during the growing period also causes narrow-ring formation. Abrupt changes in the width of rings successively formed are produced by sudden changes in the growth conditions of the tree; serious accident to the tree, severe pruning, changes in soil drainage, fertilization, and removal of shading trees leave evidence of the changed conditions in the width of the ring. The growth rings of the tree provide a real record of some phases of the history of the tree.

A growth ring varies in width in different parts of the plant and in different parts of the circumference of the axis at a given level. The thickness around the axis is most uniform over parts that are free from branches, as the smooth trunks of trees. Below the insertion and along



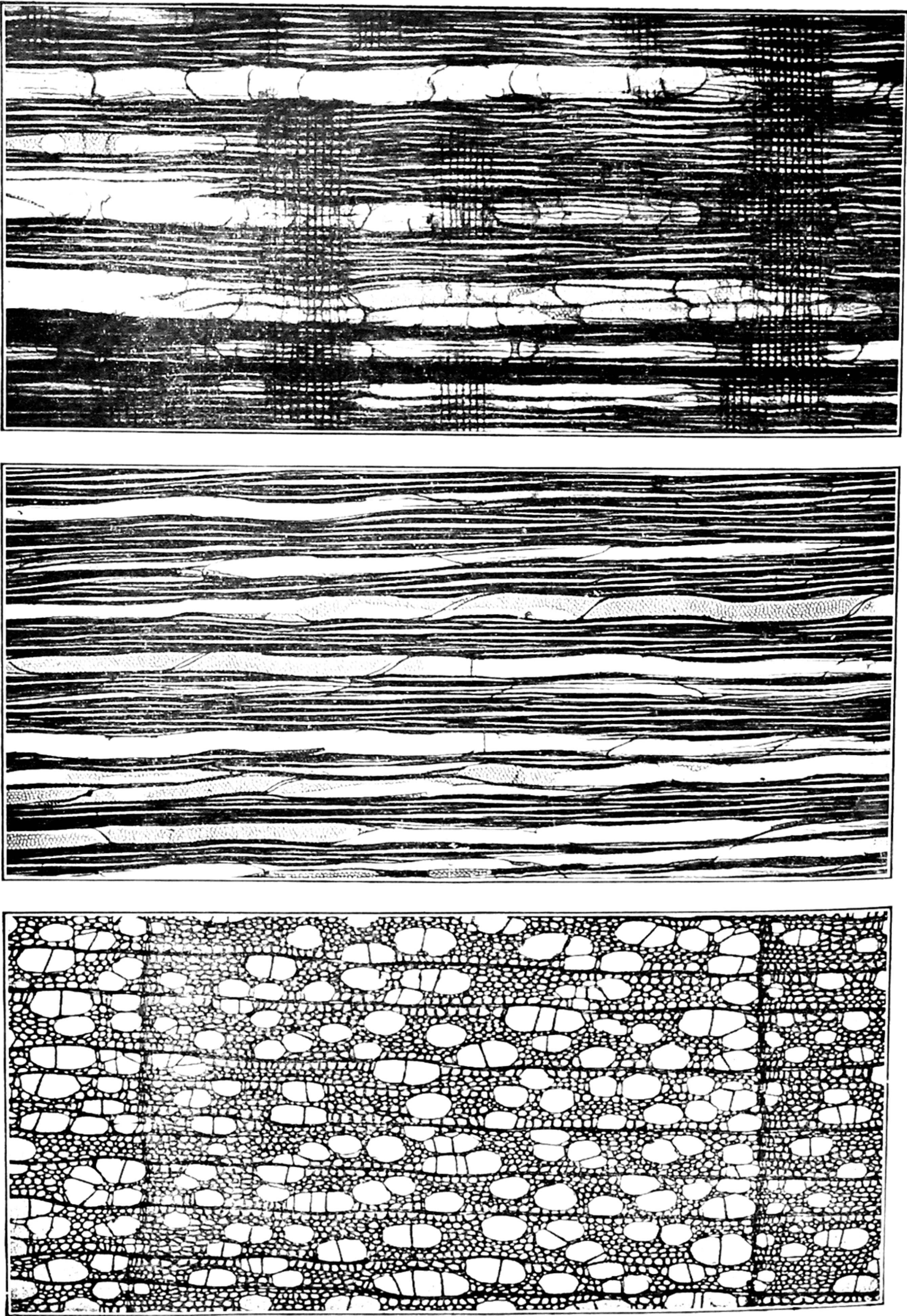


the underside of branches, in some types of crotches, above large roots, about wounds and other abnormalities, there may be a very decided thickening of the ring. Local increased food or water supply is apparently responsible for this condition. In trees, such as the apple tree with prominent large branches low on the trunk, the trunk may be built up in definite ridges or segments, each composed of the conducting tissues leading to the limb directly above. Where there are several large limbs near the same level, the entire trunk below may be obscurely divided into radial segments of tissue leading mainly to those limbs. The upper central part of the tree may thus be robbed of sufficient water and nutrients. Of course, the segments are not distinct, except as flutings on the stem, and merge into one another laterally. Experiments have shown that, even in smooth trunks, conduction is more or less restricted to vertical segments of the trunk; that is, roots on one side of a tree to a large extent supply the branches on the same side. Conduction laterally is slow in the trunk, the 'main current' passing directly upward. Tangential conduction takes place where no roots or branches occur on one side, as well as where wounds cut off direct communication. Buttressed tree trunks, such as are seen in elm trees and many others, especially tropical forms, are due to strong local thickening by the cambium above the main roots.

Growth rings are characteristic of woody plants of temperate climates; they are weakly developed or lacking in tropical forms except where there are marked climatic changes such as distinct wet and dry seasons. Annual plants and herbaceous stems of perennials show, naturally, but one layer.

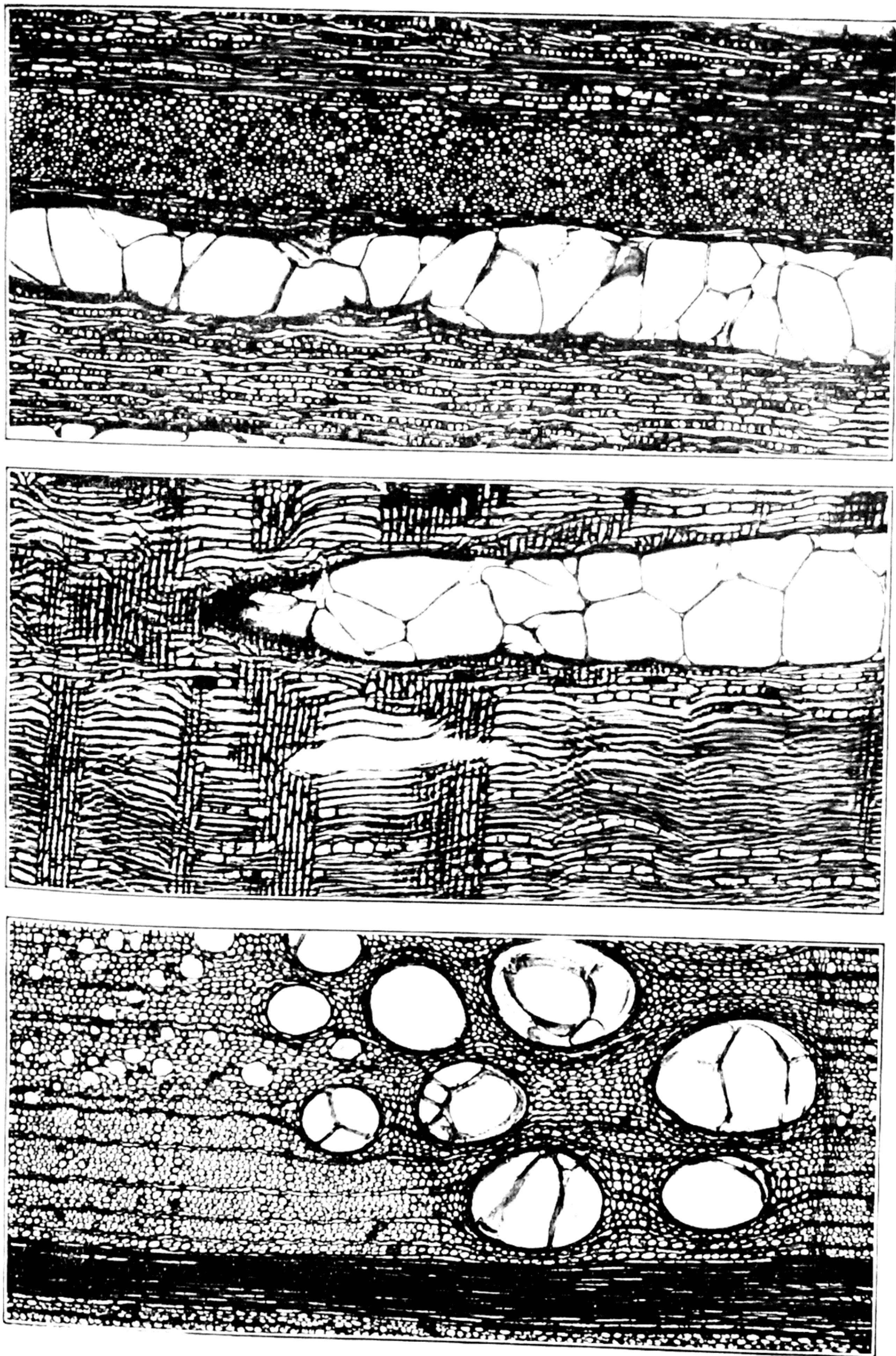
*Early Wood and Late Wood.*—The presence of growth rings is due to seasonal variations in growing conditions. Tissue formed in the early part of the growing period, *early wood*, differs in cell size, type, and arrangement, and in proportion of kinds of cells from that formed later in the period, the *late wood*. The terms *spring wood* and *summer wood* are in common use for early wood and late wood, respectively, but are not strictly applicable because in some plants the two parts of the ring are not so restricted seasonally, even in temperate regions. The terms "annual ring," "spring wood," and "summer wood" have been long in use and are generally apt for temperate climate plants; they will doubtless continue in use. (The terms *summer wood* and *fall wood*, formerly used for early and late wood respectively, have ceased to be used, since in most trees no wood is formed in the autumn, and some wood commonly develops in the spring.) An annual ring, therefore, consists of two parts: an inner layer, early wood, and an outer layer, late wood. No line exists





A  
B  
C  
FIG. 100.—Secondary xylem of *Populus tremuloides*. A, transverse; B, tangential; C, radial section.  $\times 50$ . (Courtesy of the U.S. Forest Products Laboratory.)





A  
B

FIG. 101.—Secondary xylem of *Quercus muor*. A, transverse; B, radial; C, tangential section.  $\times 50$ . (Courtesy of the U.S. Forest Products Laboratory.)



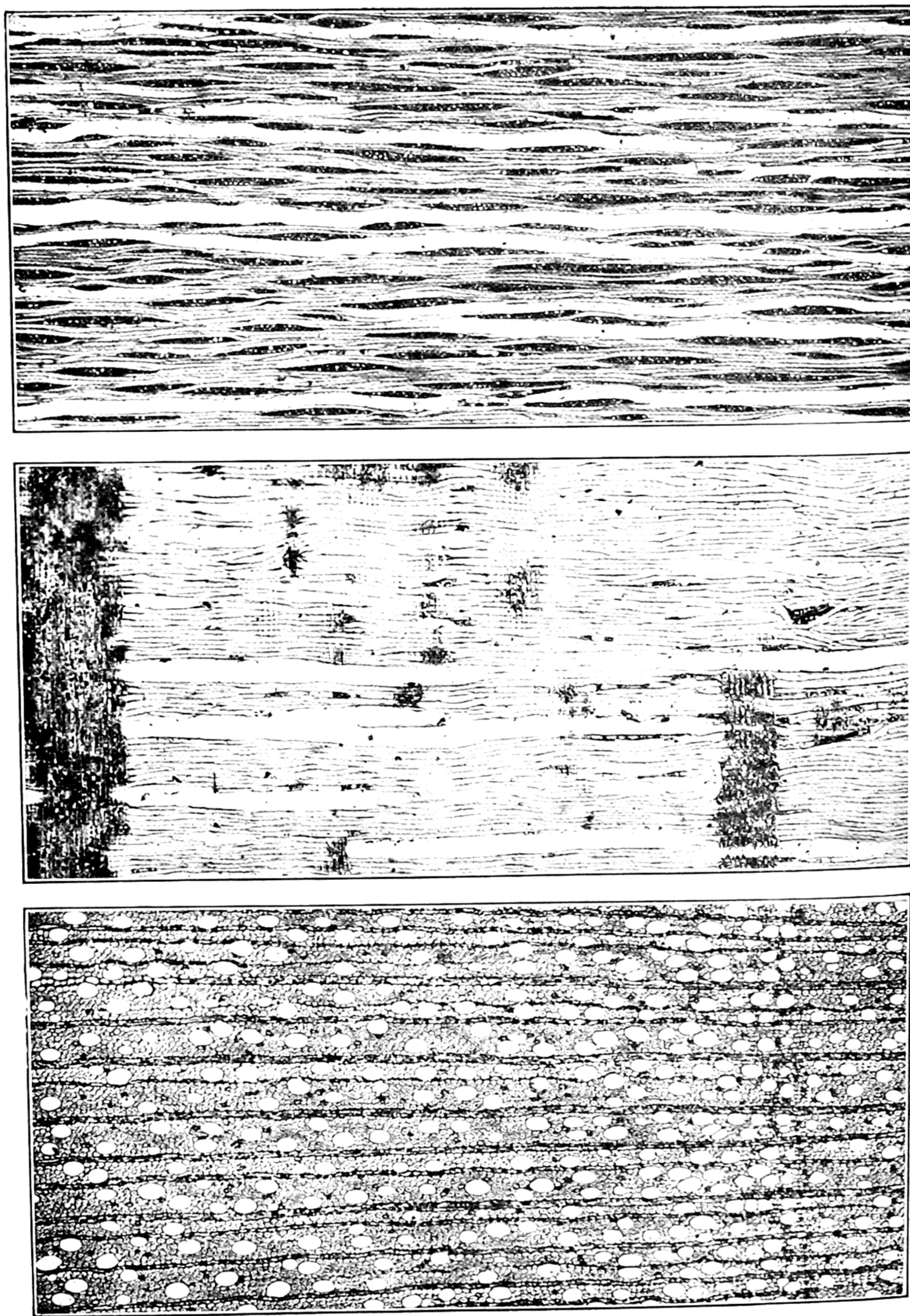


FIG. 102.—Secondary xylem of *Malus pumila*. A transverse; B radial; C tangential section.  $\times 50$ . (Courtesy of the U.S. Forest Products Laboratory.)



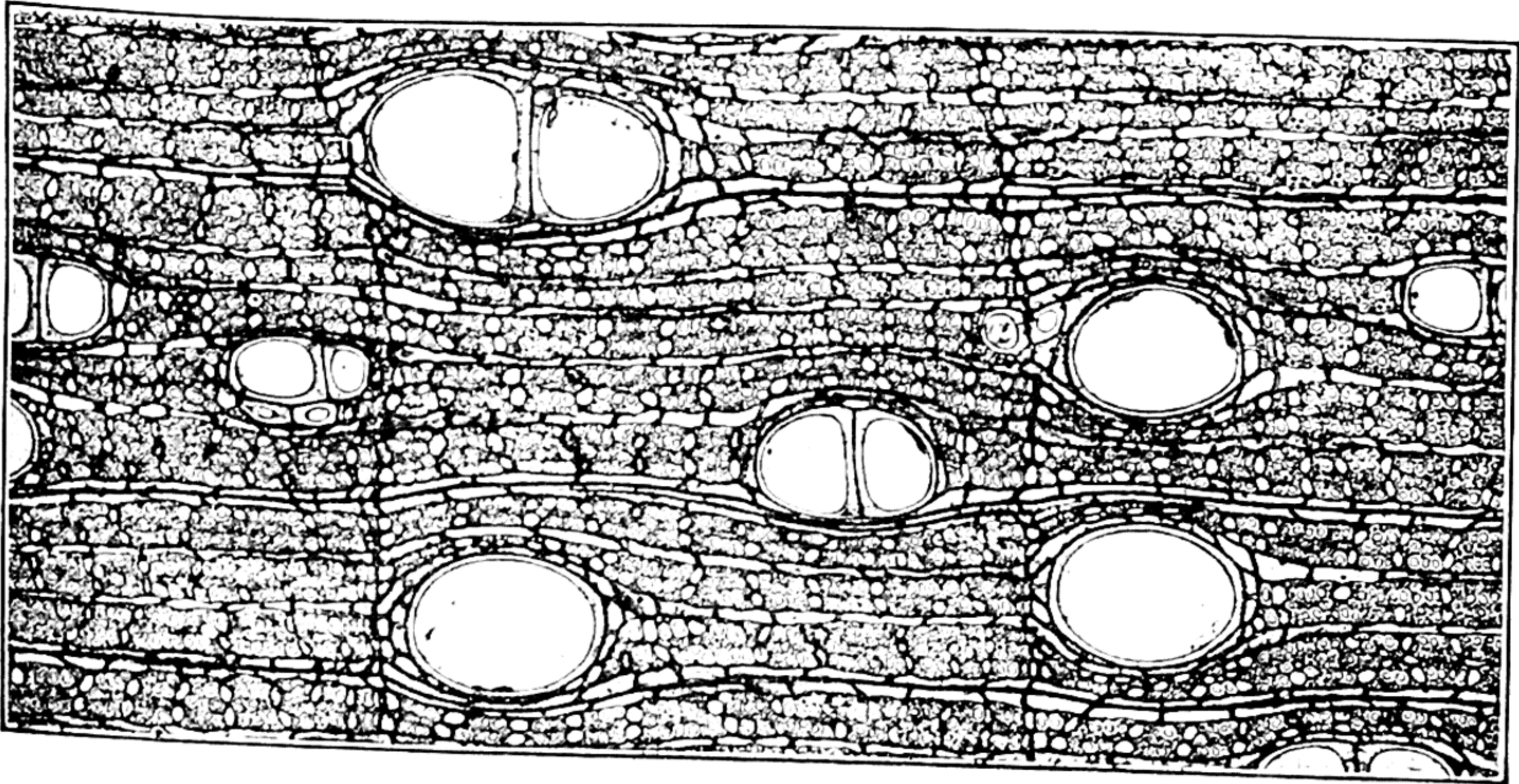
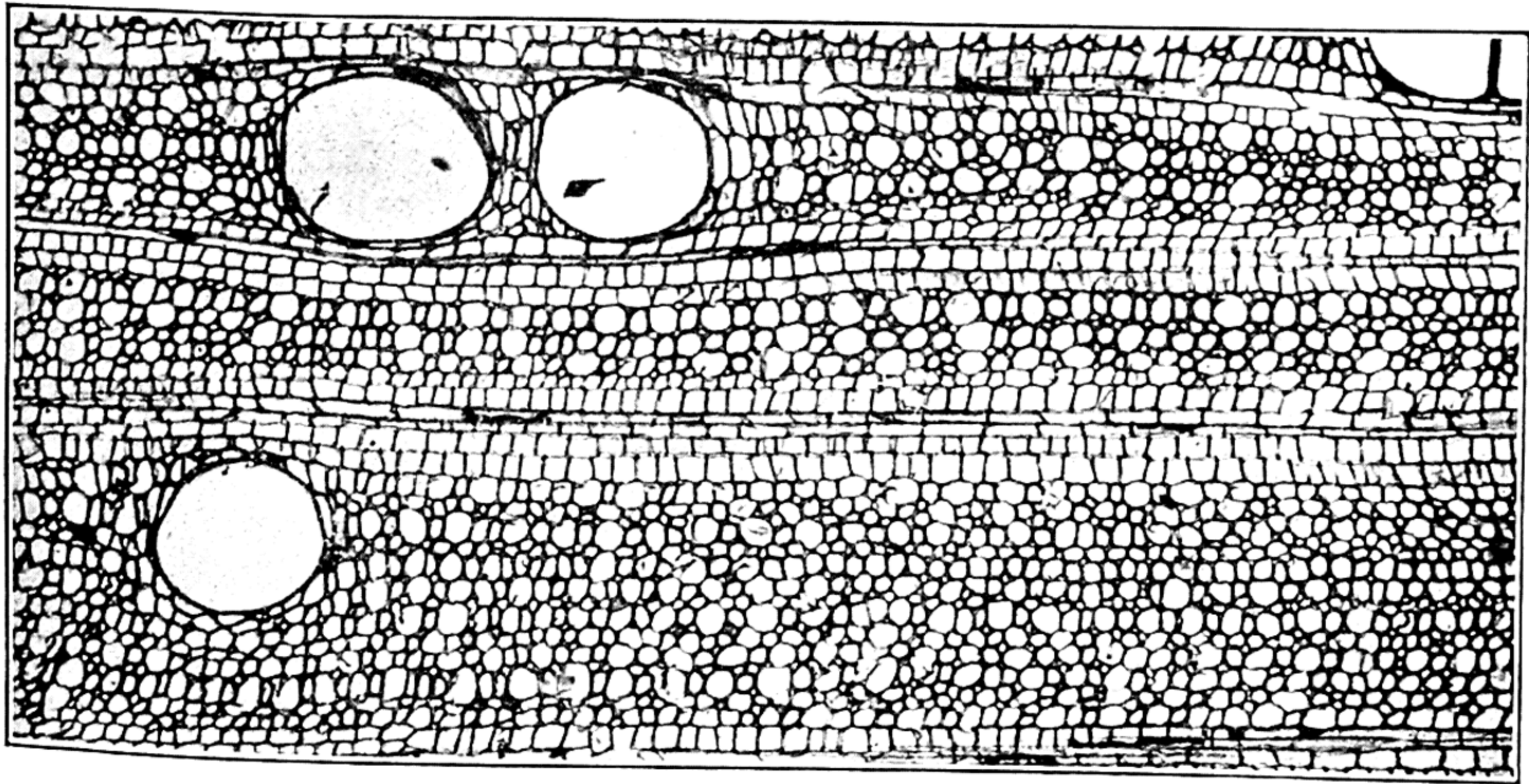
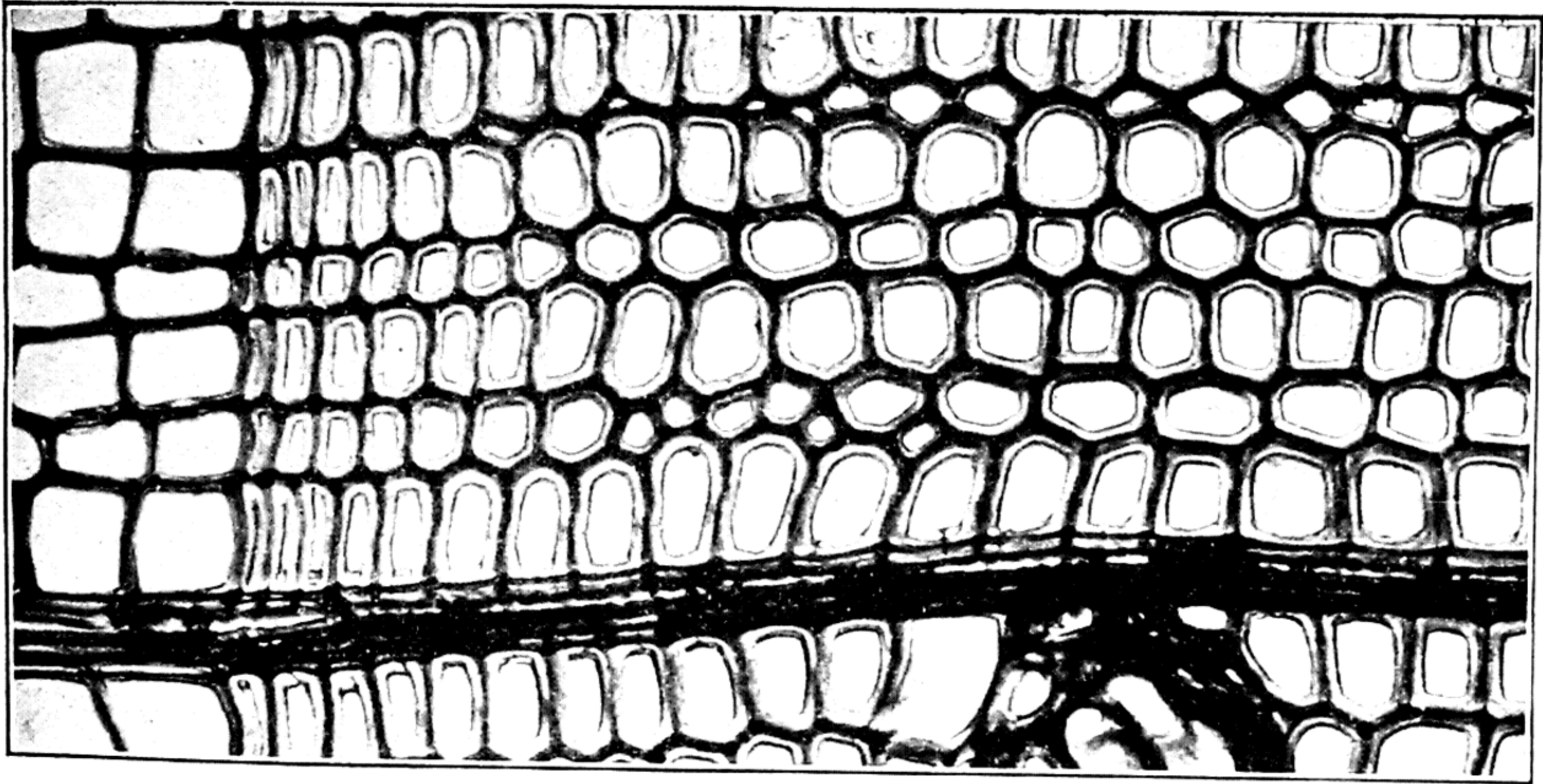


FIG. 103.—Secondary xylem in transverse section. A, a heavy wood, *Diospyros*,  $\times 50$ . B, a light wood, *Ochroma*,  $\times 50$ . C, *Picea sitchensis*,  $\times 250$ . (Courtesy of the U.S. Forest Products Laboratory.)



between these two parts of the ring because early wood merges into late wood. However, the line between the late wood of one year and the early wood of the next year is sharp; this line renders the annual ring distinct.

*False Annual Rings.*—The formation of *false annual rings* frequently occurs as the result of a check in normal development of xylem followed by a resumption of growth in the same period. Defoliation, drought, and other disturbances in development bring about premature formation of late wood. In trees with determinate growth, such as the oak, the winter buds, especially the terminal buds, may begin growth prematurely in late summer; the consequent growth activity is accompanied by the formation of a false ring. False rings can be readily detected by the less sharp delimitation at the outer edge of the late wood. An annual ring that is made up of two or more false rings is sometimes called a *double* (or *multiple*) *annual ring*.

*Ring-porous and Diffuse-porous Wood.*—Annual rings are often rendered conspicuous by the restriction of vessels to the early wood, or by the formation there of very large vessels, as in *Quercus* (Fig. 101A), *Catalpa*, *Ulmus* (frontispiece), or of more numerous and somewhat larger vessels there than in the late wood. When, for these reasons, xylem shows the early wood conspicuously distinct from the late wood, it is said to be ring porous, as in *Fraxinus* and *Quercus* (Fig. 101A); when the vessels are fairly uniformly scattered through the ring, as in *Betula*, *Acer*, and *Populus* (Fig. 100A), and where the transition in size or abundance is gradual from the early-formed to the late-formed cells, as in *Juglans* and *Malus* (Fig. 102A), the wood is called *diffuse porous*. Between these two types no line can be drawn and many woods are of distinctly intermediate type in this respect.

## ✓ GENERAL HISTOLOGICAL STRUCTURE OF SECONDARY XYLEM

✓ *Cell Types and Cell Arrangement in Secondary Wood.*—In both the longitudinal and radial systems, living and nonliving cells occur, the proportions and the arrangement of the two kinds varying greatly with the species, and to some extent also with the time of year when formed, with the organ in question, and with the individual plant. The radial system, that is, the wood rays, consists in most plants wholly of living cells; the longitudinal system, on the other hand, commonly possesses a rather small proportion of living cells. These, in the form of wood parenchyma, make up longitudinal, uniseriate strands of cells placed end to end, extending indefinitely in the wood (Figs. 99C, 101B). The water-conducting and the supporting cells of the different types occur in various proportions and arrangements. Usually, in a given wood only a few kinds of cells are present, but some species possess several cell types.



In *Abies*, for example, the wood (with the exception of the wood rays) consists wholly of tracheids, or, in some species, of tracheids and wood parenchyma; in *Picea*, of tracheids and fiber-tracheids, and in some species of wood parenchyma also; in *Larix*, of tracheids, fibers, and wood parenchyma; in *Liriodendron*, of vessels, fiber-tracheids, and wood parenchyma; in *Acer*, of vessels, fibers, and wood parenchyma; in some species of *Quercus*, of tracheids, fiber-tracheids, typical fibers, libriform fibers, gelatinous fibers, vessels, and wood parenchyma.

The different cell types are arranged in various ways. (The radial arrangement of all cells is, of course, the result of the method of development of secondary tissues.) The cell types may be fairly uniformly distributed through the wood (Figs. 100A, 103A), or there may be formed

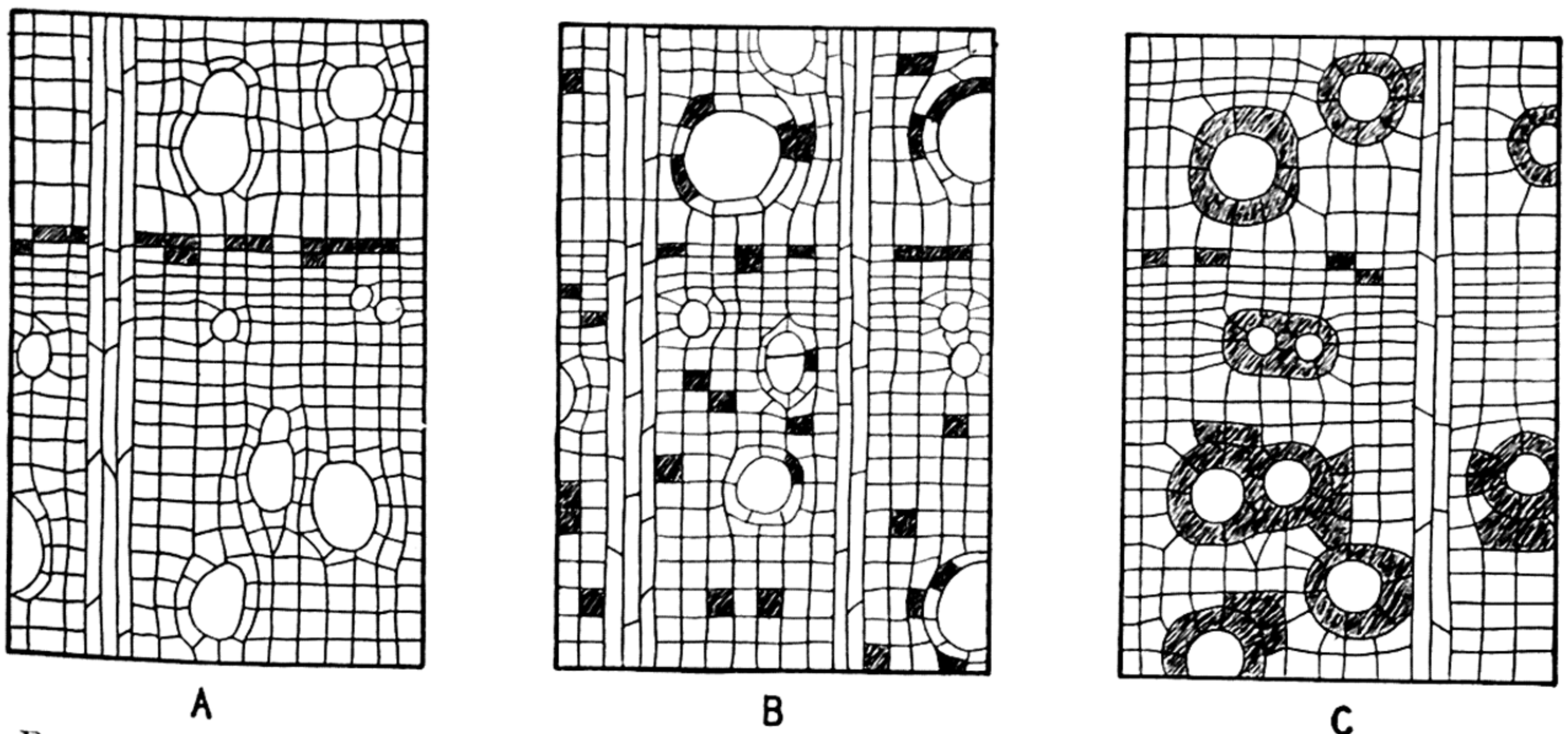


FIG. 104.—Diagrams illustrating wood-parenchyma distribution, the parenchyma cells shaded. A, terminal; B, diffuse; C, vasicentric.

a somewhat definite pattern of rows and masses of the different types (frontispiece). More or less definite tangential rows constitute a frequent type of arrangement; for example, in *Carya* and *Diospyros* (Fig. 103A), the wood parenchyma cells are so placed (in the figure the parenchyma cells are the small cells with large lumina). Vessels are often found in clusters, as in *Betula*, *Ulmus* (frontispiece), and *Robinia*.

**Wood-parenchyma Distribution.**—Wood parenchyma is distributed in three ways. These constitute types that are constant in genera and larger groups. In some gymnosperm woods, wood parenchyma is absent; in others, such as that of *Larix* and *Pseudotsuga*, and in some angiosperm woods such as *Magnolia* and *Salix*, wood parenchyma cells occur only in the last-formed tissue of the annual ring,—in other words “on the face of the late wood.” Such woods have *terminal wood parenchyma* (Fig. 104A). Where parenchyma occurs not only in this location, but is also



scattered throughout the annual ring, some of the cells lying among the tracheids and fiber-tracheids, the plant has *diffuse*, or *metatracheal*, wood parenchyma (Fig. 104B). *Malus* (Fig. 102A), *Quercus* (Fig. 101A), and *Diospyros* (Fig. 103A) have diffuse wood parenchyma. Where parenchyma occurs at the edge of the annual ring and elsewhere only about vessels, that is, in direct contact with the latter, or in contact with other parenchyma cells which are directly or indirectly in contact with vessels, and does not occur isolated among tracheids and fibers, the plant has *vasicentric*, or *paratracheal*, wood parenchyma (Fig. 104C). *Acer*, *Fraxinus*, and *Catalpa* have parenchyma of this type.

**Structure of Gymnosperm Wood.**—Certain general types of secondary xylem characterize the larger plant groups. That of the gymnosperms is simple and homogeneous, consisting of very few cell types, often of tracheids only—with the exception, of course, of the rays—as in species of *Abies* and *Agathis*. In such xylem the late wood differs hardly at all from the early wood; in other genera, as in *Larix*, *Sequoia* (Fig. 99A), and in the hard pines, the late wood is conspicuously different from the early wood. Some genera show intermediate conditions. In all genera the nonliving cells of the late wood, fiber-tracheids or fibers, differ from typical tracheids only in thickness of wall, width of lumen, and size and number of pits. Typical fibers are rare in gymnosperm woods. Wood parenchyma—often called *resin cells* in gymnosperm wood—is absent in a few genera, for example, *Araucaria*, *Taxus*, species of *Picea*, and *Pinus* (except for that about resin canals). It is scarce in many other genera, such as *Larix* and *Tsuga*, where it is terminal. More abundant parenchyma, arranged diffusely, characterizes such genera as *Juniperus*, *Thuja*, *Sequoia*, and *Podocarpus*. Vessels occur only in the Gnetales. Gymnosperm wood is simple in structure.

**Structure of Angiosperm Wood.**—The wood of the angiosperms is characterized by the presence of vessels, and, in general, by a complexity of structure far greater than that of the gymnosperms. This complexity is due to the presence of several kinds of cells—tracheids, vessels, fiber-tracheids, fibers of various types, wood parenchyma cells (or some of these); to variety in ray form; and to the arrangement and interrelations of the different kinds of cells with one another. In most genera, vessels are abundant, and in some woods they constitute a considerable percentage of the wood, as in *Tilia* and *Populus* (Fig. 100). They are also abundant in vines and many herbs. In herbs with complete woody cylinders they are frequently less abundant, and are small. In roots, vessels usually make up a large proportion of the wood. The wood of only a few groups of angiosperms—the Trochodendraceae and a few other primitive members of the Ranales; some xerophytes and hydrophytes;



secondary wood of monocotyledons—lacks vessels. Wood parenchyma is probably present in nearly all woody angiosperms, being abundant in some, as in *Carya* and *Platanus*, and scarce in others, as in *Acer* and *Liriodendron*. Typical wood parenchyma is absent in herbs with isolated vascular bundles and in some vines with bundles separated by wide parenchymatous rays. Fibers of several kinds may occur, even in a single species. Complexity and variety of structure are prominent features of angiosperm wood structure; in this respect no tissue, unless it be angiosperm phloem, surpasses secondary xylem.

**Xylem Rays.**—The xylem ray partakes in the general function of the vascular ray, of which it constitutes the part inside the cambium. The vascular ray, from its structure and position, seems to serve for transverse intercommunication in the living parts of vascular tissue, and perhaps also, through accompanying, radially extended intercellular spaces, to some extent makes possible an interchange of gases with the outside atmosphere. By the agency of the vascular ray, water may be readily transferred from the xylem to the cambium and the phloem, and food supplies moved from the phloem to the cambium and to the wood parenchyma. To the parenchyma and the inner ray cells, food for storage is readily passed inward from the phloem by the means of the rays. In the older, longer rays the terminal parts are not functional, the inner being included in heartwood, and the outer cut off, together with the surrounding cells, by periderm layers (Chap. IX).

The cells constituting a xylem ray are for the most part elongated in the direction of the long axis of the ray. Where all the cells are of this type the ray is *homogeneous*; where the cells are of different morphological types, some being vertically elongated or subcubical, the ray is *heterogeneous*. Ray cells are typically prismatic, often distinctly rectangular, though the corners are often rounded, and in very broad rays, as in *Quercus*, the cells may be nearly round in cross section. Xylem rays vary in width, height, and longitudinal extent. They may be one cell wide, as in *Picea* (Fig. 98C) and *Populus* (Fig. 100), when they are known as *uniseriate*; or two to many, *multiseriate*. Both uniseriate and multiseriate rays may be either homogeneous or heterogeneous. In angiosperms heterogeneous rays are apparently more primitive than homogeneous ones, and the condition where all rays are uniseriate and homogeneous is the most advanced. Groups of closely placed, narrow rays, such as are found in *Alnus* and *Carpinus*, are called *aggregate rays*; and multiseriate rays of certain types are sometimes known as *compound rays*. The latter term is a poor one because for some such rays it is a misnomer. The cells of a xylem ray lie in definite horizontal rows, and the cells of contiguous rows are so placed that the ends of a cell rarely coincide with the ends of the



cells above or below. Neither do the end walls of the ray cells bear any relation to the walls of the cells of the vertical system. Structurally, the ray is more or less like a brick wall, the individual cells representing the bricks; the uniseriate ray is like a wall one layer thick; the biseriate, two layers thick, etc. In height, the rays range from one cell to very many, from a fraction of a millimeter to 8 or 10 centimeters. Certain so-called "medullary rays" of vines and herbs may much exceed the maximum height given but these are of different morphological nature. In a given species the rays may be of various widths and heights (Figs. 99C, 102C), or all may be of approximately the same width and the same height. For example, in nearly all gymnosperms the rays are uniseriate, but vary much in height (Fig. 98C); in many species of *Quercus*, uniseriate and very large multiseriate rays occur (Fig. 101A,C), no intermediate types being found, and the height of the rays varies. In *Betula* and *Acer*, the rays range from two to ten cells in width and are fairly constant in height; in species of *Diospyros*, the rays are alike in width and in height. The shape of the cross section of the ray as seen in tangential sections of the wood varies greatly in different plants, being linear, oblong, fusiform, or round-fusiform. The type is usually constant for a species.

The length (radial extent) of a xylem ray is dependent upon the position of the point of origin of the ray in the xylem (for origin of rays, see Chap. VI). From that point the ray is continuous to the cambium; xylem rays are discontinuous between the point of origin and the cambium only in case of injury to the cambium. (False beginnings and endings of rays appear in sections because the ray passes out of the plane of section and seems to end.)

In most woods the rays are arranged without definite plan, except that of a fairly uniform distribution through the vascular tissue (Figs. 98C, 102C), such that two rays never come into contact, and no considerable areas exist between them. In certain woods, especially those of tropical genera, such as *Diospyros*, the rays occur more or less definitely in tiers. Aside from their position as radiating bands, rays bear in their arrangement no relation to general stem structure; but the distribution of certain of the first-formed and of the very large rays may be dependent upon phyllotaxy, these rays having a definite relation to the position of leaf traces.

*Ray Tracheids.*—The cells of the wood rays are usually all living, and of a type that differs from typical parenchyma chiefly in the presence of a thick, more or less lignified wall. However, in a few genera of the gymnosperms, for example, *Pinus*, the rays consist of both living and nonliving cells. The latter are termed *ray tracheids* because they are tracheid-like in the lack of protoplasts and in the pitting and chemical



nature of their walls, but resemble the living ray cells in their general shape and position in the ray (Fig. 105). In shape they are less uniform than the living cells, tending to be considerably longer, narrower, and

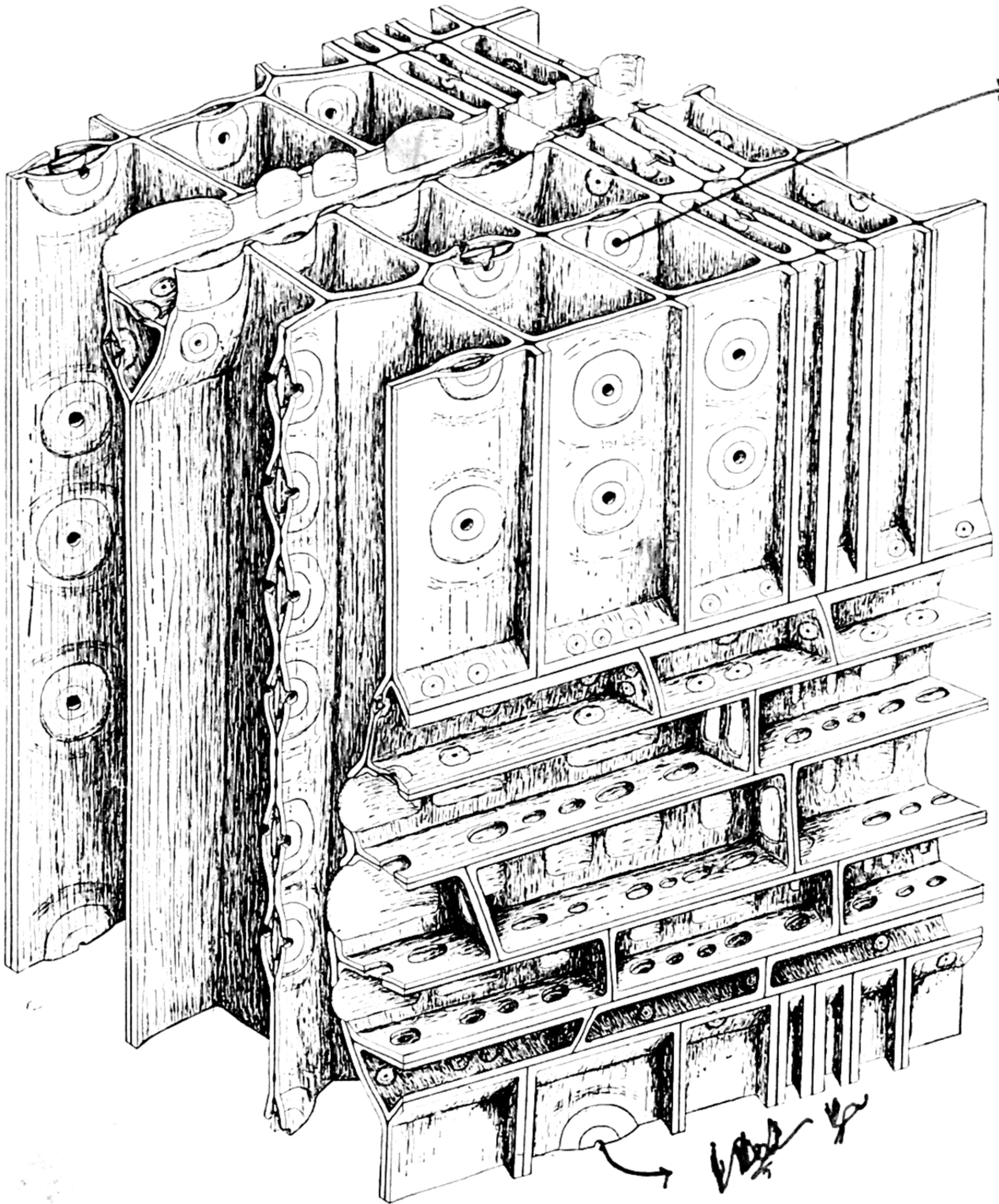


FIG. 105.—Secondary xylem of *Pinus Strobus*, showing details of structure. (The proportionate size of the ray is increased; only small parts of the tracheids are shown; the contents of the living ray cells are omitted.)

lower. Ray tracheids occur normally at the upper and lower margins of the rays; hence they are often spoken of as *marginal ray tracheids*. The marginal rows of ray tracheids consist entirely of this type of cell;



only rarely here or elsewhere in the ray are two kinds of cells formed in one row. The number of rows of cells which may be of ray tracheids varies from one to several, one to three being most common. Rays that consist of only one, two, or three rows of cells may be entirely of ray tracheids; and where the rays are very high, there are often, near the middle of the ray, rows of *interspersed ray tracheids* in addition to the normal marginal rows. Ray tracheids, from their structure and position, apparently serve to conduct water radially.

*Marginal Ray Cells of Angiosperms.*—Ray tracheids do not occur in the angiosperms but the rays of this group are not always homogeneous. The wood of many genera, such as *Salix* and *Nyssa*, possesses rows of *marginal cells* different in size, shape, and contents from the other cells, and obviously different in function. These cells are always living. Their longest diameter is vertical, or the cells are shorter than the typical ray cells. The pits of the lateral walls, especially those leading to vessels, are larger and more numerous than the corresponding pits of other ray cells. Marginal cells may form continuous rows, when they are said to be *conterminous*, or occur scattered along the marginal rows, when they are *interspersed*. The function of marginal cells in the angiosperms is not understood. In many woods these cells contain special secretions, such as essential oils, as in *Sassafras*.

*Tyloses.*—Balloon-like enlargements of parts of cell walls, projecting into adjacent cell lumina through pit cavities, are known as *tyloses*. These structures are found in both primary and secondary xylem but are largely features of secondary xylem and are therefore discussed here. Tyloses are formed by the enlargement of the pit membranes of the half-bordered pit-pairs between wood parenchyma or wood-ray cells, and vessels or tracheids. The delicate membrane is expanded and grows, apparently by intussusception, pushing out of the pit cavity and protruding far into the lumen of the nonliving cell (Fig. 106). Into these bladder-like extensions of the parenchyma cells pass part of the cytoplasm and even the nucleus. After the tyloses are full grown, starch, crystals, resin, and gum may be formed within them, but the presence of these substances in quantity is uncommon. The tylosis may remain small or become very large; its size and shape depend in part upon the size of the lumen of the tracheid or vessel into which it extends, and in part upon the number of other tyloses present. The wall of the tylosis may remain thin and delicate, becoming wrinkled and partially collapsed in heartwood, or may become thick and even lignified; pits may be formed in it when it comes in contact with other tyloses. The tyloses in a given cell may be few, as in *Populus* (Fig. 100C), or many, as in the white oaks (Fig. 101), when they fill the lumen and become angular by compression.) Tyloses



are to undergo division in some plants and form "multicellular tissue," which fills the lumen compactly, as in *Robinia* and *Maclura*. That such division is responsible for the multicellular appearance is doubtful. The appearance of separate cells may be brought about by the presence of multitudes of tyloses, each slender, and all mutually compressed, as are soap bubbles in a crowded mass. (Tyloses may develop from occasional pit-pairs only, as in *Juglans*, *Liriodendron*, and *Sassafras*, or from great numbers of pit-pairs, perhaps from every pit



FIG. 106.—Tyloses. A, two mature tyloses, derived from pits in the same ray cell, in *Aesculus octandra*,  $\times 680$ ; B, young tyloses in vessel of *Quercus lobata*. (After Gerry.)

(leading to a living cell) in a vessel, as in *Robinia*, *Rhus*, and *Catalpa*. More than one tylosis may develop from one parenchyma cell. Tyloses sometimes develop in the lumina of gymnosperm tracheids, as in the soft pines.)

In the wood of conifers there is also found to some extent a closing of the cavity of resin canals by the enlargement of the epithelial cells (Fig. 103C). These enlarged cells are often called tyloses, but are better termed *tylosoids*. Similar tylosis-like growths occur in protoxylem, where entire parenchyma cells or parts of cells protrude into the



weakened or ruptured tracheid or vessel between the rings or turns of the spiral.

(Tyloses are of common occurrence in angiosperm wood. They are characteristic of certain species, and always absent in others.) In many woods tyloses develop about the time of transformation of sapwood into heartwood, but they may be present to some extent even in the outermost rings of sapwood. (They are most abundant in heartwood, but may occur also in the sapwood whenever normally present in the heartwood. Tyloses occur in the vessels of herbs also.) They have been described or reported in such genera as *Cucurbita*, *Coleus*, *Canna*, *Portulaca*, *Rumex*, *Asarum*, and *Convolvulus*. Not only is tylosis development normal, but it may be induced in many plants by wounding. For example, they may develop in the region near wounds on the surface of a tree trunk or in the region where a branch has been removed; after the felling of a tree, tyloses may form in the sapwood throughout the log as it lies upon the ground. (They may be present in the inner part of leaf traces after the leaf has fallen. Such tyloses, however, are usually sporadic in occurrence, and irregular in shape and size.)

The development of tyloses either normally or as a result of wounding is said to be due to a difference in pressure in the cells on each side of a pit membrane; to the reduction of pressure; or to the cessation of conduction in the vessel, permitting the membrane to expand into the cell.

The distribution of tyloses in wood is not determined by type of wood, by rate of growth, by age of the plant, or by habitat. Where wood parenchyma is scarce, tyloses likewise are few.

(Tyloses are of considerable economic importance in the use of woods. They are a factor, though a minor one, in durability; durable species, with few exceptions, possess abundant tyloses—for example, *Maclura*, *Robinia*, *Juglans nigra*, *Morus*, *Catalpa*, and the white oaks. By blocking the vessel lumina they prevent rapid entrance of water, air, and fungal filaments. (Durability, however, is largely dependent upon the chemical nature of the wall.) The presence of tyloses prevents rapid penetration of artificial preservatives.) For example, under treatment with creosote, red oak wood, which is without tyloses, is penetrated for long distances through the vessels, whereas white oak wood, with tyloses, is hardly penetrated at all. Similarly, white oak wood can be used in "tight" cooperage, whereas red oak with its open vessels is of little value for this purpose.

*Sapwood and Heartwood.*—Although little is known definitely about the conductive activity of xylem of different ages, it is probable that cells when first mature are most active, and that there is a gradual slowing down of conduction until functional activity ceases. So long as xylem



contains living cells and is apparently conducting, at least to some extent, it is known as *sapwood*; after all activity ceases, it becomes *heartwood*.) The terms *alburnum* and *duramen*, formerly much used for sapwood and heartwood respectively, are passing out of use. (The sapwood of a tree serves for conduction, support, and food storage; the heartwood only for support.. In the transformation of sapwood into heartwood a number of important changes occur: all living cells lose their protoplasts; the cell sap is withdrawn, and commonly the water content of the cell walls greatly reduced; any food materials present in the living cells are removed; tyloses, if characteristic of the wood, are formed; the partly lignified walls of parenchyma cells may become more strongly lignified; there are formed within or brought into the changing cells certain substances new to the tissue, such as oils, gums, resins, tanniferous compounds, various aromatic and coloring substances; flexible pit membranes become fixed, usually in the closing position. In short, the xylem becomes physiologically functionless, being as heartwood merely a solid supporting column.)

The extent to which the water content of the xylem is reduced with change to heartwood varies greatly: in a few plants—for example, *Ulmus* and *Malus pumila*—the heartwood remains “wet,” that is, saturated with water (but such water is probably not in process of conduction); in other plants the heartwood may become very dry, as in *Fraxinus* (where in some species it is said even to become checked in the living tree). Such substances as oils, resins, and coloring materials may infiltrate the walls, and gums and resins may fill or partly fill the lumina of the cells. In *Diospyros* (ebony) and *Swietenia* (mahogany), the cell cavities are to a greater or less extent filled with a dark-colored, gummy substance. The color of heartwood, in general, is the result of the presence of these substances within the cell walls and, in some woods, the lumina. The fact that the heartwood is darker in color than the sapwood is incidental to the formation of these substances. Some genera, such as *Betula*, *Populus*, *Picea*, *Agathis*, have heartwood hardly if at all darker in color than the sapwood.

(Heartwood, as timber, is more durable than sapwood, because the reduction of food materials available for fungi and bacteria by the absence of protoplasm and starch, the formation of such substances as resins, tannins, and oils, and the blocking of the vessel cavities by tyloses and gums, render the wood less pervious to water and less subject to attack by the organisms of decay. For this reason, as well as for many others—such as the presence of desirable color or odor, or of substances of commercial value which may be removed, such as haematoxylin—heartwood is commonly of more value commercially than is sapwood.) The latter,



however, is preferred in some woods, as in some grades of quarter-sawed oak, and in hickory and ash for tool handles and spokes. (Owing to lack of resin, gums, and coloring substances, sapwood is also preferred for pulp wood, and for wood to be impregnated with preservatives.)

Apparently, there is no fixed length of functional life in xylem. The functional period is controlled by the physiological activity of the tree or of the organ or segment of the organ in question. Young, vigorous plants or vigorously growing parts of older plants have little or no heartwood, whereas slow-growing, weak, and most old trees have a very large proportion of heartwood in stem and root. In old trees the xylem remains sapwood but a very few years. In case vigorous growth is renewed, a large amount of sapwood is built up by the retention of all sapwood as such for many years. All parts of an annual ring are not changed into heartwood simultaneously; that is, the outer limit of heartwood bears no relation, necessarily, to the annual rings. Where strongly developed roots or branches are present on one side of a trunk, the xylem of the segment on that side remains alive long after other parts of the same age have died.

✓ **Relation of Microscopic Structure to Properties and Uses of Wood.**—The wood of different species varies greatly in its properties and in its value for different purposes. Characteristic qualities, and hence specific economic uses, depend largely upon the histological structure and upon the chemical nature of the tissue. Variations in histological structure which affect the properties of wood are chiefly those of the kinds, proportion, and arrangement of cells—for example, the presence or the absence of fibers and of large vessels and their restricted or widespread distribution; the diameter and the thickness of the wall of fibers; the length of fibers and the extent to which they overlap other fibers; the straightness of fibers; the abundance and the width of the wood rays; the presence of tyloses. The amount and the distribution of wood parenchyma seem to bear little relation to the properties of wood. Variations in the chemical nature of the wood are of the greatest importance in relation to certain qualities of wood, especially those in which heartwood differs from sapwood. The cell wall itself varies in chemical nature, the proportions of cellulose, lignocellulose, and “lignin” differing greatly. Occasionally, the walls are even gelatinous in nature. Tannin compounds may be present in considerable quantities as substances infiltrating the cell wall; the lumina may contain various amount of gums, resins, and tannins.

*Weight.*—The wall substance of woods, either light or heavy, is of nearly the same specific gravity, about 1.53. Variations in weight are due to variations in the proportion of wall substance and of lumen space.



Where the latter is small in amount, that is, where the wood is dense, it is, of course, heavy. Hence, abundance of slender, thick-walled fibers makes a wood heavy, as in *Guaiacum* (lignum vitae), *Diospyros* (Fig. 103A), and *Malus pumila* (Fig. 102). Where the walls of all cells are unusually thick and the lumina small, especially where the proportion of fibers is high, the wood is heavy, as in *Guaiacum* and *Diospyros* (ebony). Where all the walls are thin and the lumina of parenchyma and fibers are large, the wood is light. The presence of numerous thin-walled vessels, as in *Populus* (Fig. 100) and *Tilia*, reduces the specific gravity greatly even though the fiber walls are not especially thin. Extremely light woods, such as those of the "cork-wood" type—for example, *Ochroma* (balsa) (Fig. 103B)—have a high proportion of large, thin-walled parenchyma cells. The specific gravity of wood ranges from about 0.04 (*Aeschynomene*) to about 1.4 in black ironwood (*Krugiodendron*). The majority of well-known, commercially important woods range from 0.35 to 0.65 in specific gravity. Species of *Quercus* range from 0.65 to 0.95; *Carya*, 0.74 to 0.84; *Fraxinus*, 0.65 to 0.72; *Acer*, 0.62 to 0.69; *Pinus*, 0.37 to 0.79; *Abies*, 0.35 to 0.47; *Populus*, 0.36 to 0.41; *Sequoia*, 0.29 to 0.42. Examples of heavy woods are *Guaiacum*, 1.1 to 1.4; *Eucalyptus*, 0.8 to 1.25; *Acacia*, 0.8 to 1.3. Among very light woods there are few of economic importance. Of these, balsa (*Ochroma*), with a specific gravity of 0.12 to 0.37, is used extensively in insulation, airplane manufacture, and for life rafts. The structural strength of this wood is high for its weight. Histologically there are two types of lightweight woods: those with alternating bands of thick-walled, lignified cells and thin-walled, unlignified cells; and those with elements homogeneously arranged. In some woods, such as those of the *Caricaceae* (papaya) and *Phytolaccaceae* (*Phytolacca dioica*), only the vessels are lignified; the wood resembles the flesh of a turnip.

**Strength.**—The presence of a large proportion of fibers or fiber-tracheids makes a wood strong. Hence, dense and heavy woods are usually strong woods. The length of the fibers and the extent to which the ends overlap are apparently features of minor importance as regards the strength of the wood.

**Durability.**—Resistance to decay by the action of fungi and bacteria is dependent largely upon the chemical nature of the wood—of the cell walls and of the cell contents. It is not correlated to any degree (except in some very light woods) with physical properties, such as weight and strength, or with structure. The presence of tyloses that block vessels does, of course, reduce the rapidity of entrance of fungal hyphae, and of water and oxygen, but it is the presence or absence of infiltrating, natural preservative substances, such as tannin, resin, and oils, that determines the durability of wood. Both light and heavy woods are durable—for



example, those of *Sequoia*, *Catalpa*, *Castanea*, *Robinia*, *Maclura*; and other equally light and heavy woods decay rapidly—for example, those of *Populus*, *Tilia*, *Acer*, and *Carya*. Resistance to decay is not necessarily correlated with depth of color, though heartwood is generally more durable than sapwood, and, in a general way, the darker the color the greater the resistance. This condition results from the fact that depth of color often indicates roughly the amount of preservative substances. Durability as resistance to mechanical destruction depends upon hardness, density, and toughness.

*Other Properties.*—Flexible woods are fairly homogeneous and have long, straight, strongly overlapping fibers, and linear rays. This type of wood also cleaves readily. Toughness involves strength and pliability, and, to a large extent, the interlocking of the fibers. Where the fibers are strongly interlocked, the woods can be put to special uses, that of *Ulmus*, for example, for hubs and basket splints; of *Ostrya*, for mallets and tool handles. The interlocking of the grain may be due in part, as in *Platanus*, to the presence of low, proportionately very broad rays around which the fibers bend in their course. Woods with interlocked fibers and uneven texture are not readily “workable.” In all properties the proportion of water present is of much importance.

✓ **Penetrability by Preservatives.**—The rate of penetration of wood by preservatives, such as creosote, is dependent to a large extent upon the structure of the wood. Such open channels as vessels and resin ducts provide ready access to infiltrating fluids, but the preservation of regions about these openings alone is of little value. Penetration through thick cell walls can occur only slowly. More rapid penetration through closed cells must take place through the pit-pairs, from lumen to lumen, as does the passage of water in living tissue. Passage of fluids through the pit-pairs during translocation undoubtedly is chiefly through the marginal regions of the closing membranes. Upon this movement the structure and the behavior of bordered pits have an important bearing. When living sapwood is immersed in a preservative fluid under pressure, that is, where pressure is from all sides, there is little or no penetration; when the preservative is applied at one end of a piece of wood with light pressure, penetration is fairly rapid, but with increased pressure it is quickly cut down. The cessation of penetration under the higher pressure appears to be due to the closure of the pit-pairs by movement of the tori (Figs. 22C and 25C). Green timber is only slightly penetrable to preservatives. In certain processes such timber is treated under pressure, but the preservative is not forced into the wood until the green timber has had the water driven out in the treating retort, when it is, of course, seasoned



timber. It is practicable to treat only seasoned timber with preservatives. The structural conditions responsible for the penetration of seasoned wood by preservatives are not well understood. It has been believed that microscopic checking of the cell walls is responsible for the passage of fluids from lumen to lumen, but such checking does not always occur, and the checking slits do not pass through the wall (Fig. 27I,K). The pit membranes rupture only rarely in drying. It seems probable that the differences are due to changed conditions involving surface tension, capillarity, and the passage of fluids through very minute openings. In this case the openings involved are probably in the closing membranes of the bordered pit-pairs. Although the lumina and pits are larger in early wood than in late wood, the latter is more freely penetrated by preservative fluids, whether the wood is green or dry. This is doubtless due to the fact that valve action of the closing membranes of pit-pairs in late wood is weak or lacking. Sapwood is always much more penetrable than heartwood. This is doubtless because in the heartwood the tori have become fixed in the lateral position, and the cavities of the pits are often clogged with gummy or resinous material. Even the lumina may be more or less filled by these substances or by tyloses.

**Grain of Wood.**—Variations in size, shape, and orientation of cells, and in proportion and arrangement of cell types, determine variations in appearance of wood, known as *grain*. Coarse grain, fine grain, and cross-grain are largely self-explanatory terms. Spiral grain refers to a condition in which the cells of the vertical system lie parallel with one another, but the whole system winds spirally about the tree. The grosser features of wood structure, annual rings and wood rays, form the most conspicuous grain of wood. The alternation of layers of coarser and finer cells, early and late wood, produce the prominent markings in many woods, such as those of the hard pines and the ashes. Wood rays when cut longitudinally, as in radial section, or obliquely longitudinally in sections that approach the radial, form conspicuous markings which are the more prominent because of the dense structure of rays and their tendency to take a high polish. Large rays, as in *Quercus*, form the *silver grain* of wood. The presence of silver grain renders the wood of great value for furniture and cabinet work. *Curly grain* is the result of an undulate course of the cells. This occurs in individual trees or parts of trees, and is frequent in *Betula*, *Castanea*, *Acer*, and *Prunus*, for example. *Bird's-eye grain* is related to the presence of numerous dormant adventitious buds; these buds maintain their position in the bark of the tree, building up weak central cylinders, chiefly parenchymatous, as the tree trunk increases in diameter. The pith-like steles form the



“eye” when cut in cross section (tangential section of the wood), and the fibers and other cells of the vertical system swing around them as they do about the bases of branches.

**Compression Wood.**—A type of wood somewhat darker than the sapwood, often reddish and resembling heartwood, is present in many conifers, as in *Pseudotsuga*, *Pinus*, and *Araucaria*. It occurs on the underside of branches, and on the lower side of tree trunks in trees that do not stand vertically. This wood is known as *redwood* or as *compression wood* because of its color and its location in the tree where compression seems to occur. In properties it is denser, more brittle, and shrinks longitudinally to a greater extent than the normal wood. Histologically it differs in only minor ways from normal wood: its cells are somewhat shorter and perhaps thicker walled; in cross-sectional shape, the tracheids are more rounded, and intercellular spaces are frequently present. Compression wood is apparently formed in response to geotropic stimuli, not as a result of compression during development.

**Pith-ray Flecks.**—Injury to the cambium region by insects known as “cambium-miners” produces ultimately areas of wound tissue in the mature xylem. These areas when seen in cross section appear as small patches of irregularly arranged, thick-walled parenchyma cells. They resemble wood rays (“medullary rays” or “pith rays”) in that they consist of parenchyma; hence they are commonly known as *pith-ray flecks* and as *medullary spots*. But they have nothing to do with rays or with the pith. These injuries are common in rosaceous woods, and also in the wood of *Salix*, *Acer*, *Betula*, and other genera. The insects causing the injury apparently belong to different groups, but are chiefly Diptera. The larvae bore along the branches and trunk, forming tunnels downward through the cambium or the immature xylem. The cavity so formed is soon filled by the proliferation of surrounding cells. The cambium, if injured, is replaced, and growth is continued normally, burying the strands of wound tissue in normal wood. Such injury is of minor importance to the tree, but may greatly reduce the economic value of the wood, as in *Acer* and *Prunus*. (Pith-ray flecks are, unfortunately, sometimes explained as normal features of wood structure.)

**Gummosis.**—Another pathological condition, *gummosis*, deserves brief mention because of its frequent occurrence. As a result of injuries of various types which bring about exposure of tissue to slight drying, the wall of cells around the injured region are transformed into gum. The transformation appears to be the result of enzyme action, which first affects the middle lamella and may ultimately dissolve the entire wall. Tissues affected by gummosis may be only partly broken down, or become completely transformed into a mass of gum. The gum may fill the



lumina of the affected cells, entering from the pits or may be exuded from the tissue. Gummosis is common in woody plants, being extensive after insect and other injury in such plants as cherry, peach, and acacia. It perhaps occurs in the xylem of many plants as a response to injury or diseased conditions, and may incidentally protect tissues from further injury.

### References

(Further references for Xylem under Chap. IV)

- AUCHTER, E. C.: Is there normally a cross-transfer of foods, water, and mineral nutrients in woody plants?, *Univ. Md. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bull.*, 257, 1923.
- BAILEY, I. W.: The effect of the structure of wood upon its permeability. No. 1. The tracheids of coniferous timbers, *Amer. Ry. Eng. Assoc. Bull.*, 174, 1-17, 1915.
- : The structure of the bordered pits of conifers and its bearing on the tension hypothesis of the ascent of sap in plants, *Bot. Gaz.*, 62, 133-142, 1916.
- : The structure of the pit membranes in the tracheids of conifers, and its relation to the penetration of gases, liquids, and finely divided solids into green and seasoned wood, *For. Quart.*, 11, 12-20, 1913.
- BARGHOORN, E. S., JR.: The ontogenetic development and phylogenetic specialization of rays in the xylem of dicotyledons. I. The primitive ray structure, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, 27, 918-928, 1940. II. Modification of the multiseriate and uniseriate rays, *Ibid.*, 28, 273-281, 1941.
- : Origin and development of the uniseriate ray in the Coniferae, *Bull. Torrey Bot. Club*, 67, 303-328, 1940.
- BROWN, H. P.: Pith-ray flecks in wood, *U.S. Dept. Agr. For. Serv. Circ.*, 215, 1913.
- and A. J. PANSIN: "Commercial Timbers of the United States," New York, 1940.
- CIESLAR, A.: Das Rotholz der Fichte, *Centralbl. Ges. Förstwesen*, 22, 149-165, 1896.
- GERRY, E.: Fiber measurement studies: length variations, where they occur and their relation to the strength and uses of wood, *Science*, new ser., 41, 179, 1915.
- : Microscopic structure of wood in relation to properties and uses, *Proc. Soc. Amer. For.*, 8, 159-174, 1913.
- : Tyloses: their occurrence and practical significance in some American woods, *Jour. Agr. Res.*, 1, 445-469, 1914.
- HIGGINS, B. B.: Gum formation with special reference to cankers and decays of woody plants, *Ga. Exp. Sta. Bull.*, 127, 1919.
- HYDE, K. C.: I. Tropical light weight woods, *Bot. Gaz.*, 79, 380-411, 1925.
- JEFFREY, E. C.: "The Anatomy of Woody Plants," Chicago, 1917.
- KANEHIRA, R.: Anatomical characters and identification of Formosan woods with critical remarks from the climatic point of view, Taihoku, 1921.
- : On light-weight woods, *Jour. Soc. For. Japan*, 15, 601-615, 1933. (Abstract in *Trop. Woods*, 37, 52-53, 1934.)
- KLEIN, G.: Zur Ätiologie der Thyllen, *Zeitschr. Bot.*, 15, 417-439, 1923.
- KOEHLER, A.: "The Properties and Uses of Wood," New York, 1924.
- KRIBS, D. A.: Salient lines of structural specialization in the wood rays of the dicotyledons, *Bot. Gaz.*, 96, 547-557, 1935.
- KÜHNS, R.: Die Verdoppelung des Jahresringes durch künstliche Entlaubung, *Bibl. Bot.*, 70, 1-53, 1910.



- KÜSTER, E.: Secundäres Dickenwachstum: Holz und Rinde, *In* Linsbauer, K.: "Handbuch der Pflanzenanatomie," IX, 1939.
- MULLER, C.: Über die Balken in den Holzelementen der Coniferen, *Ber. Deut. Bot. Ges.*, **8** (sup.), 17-46, 1890.
- PENHALLOW, D. P.: Anatomy of North American Coniferales together with certain exotic species of Japan and Australasia, *Am. Nat.*, **38**, 243-273, 331-359, 523-554, 691-723, 1904.
- PILLOW, M. Y., and R. F. LUXFORD: Structure, occurrence, and properties of compression wood, *U.S.D.A. Tech. Bull.*, 546, 1937.
- RECORD, S. J.: "Identification of the Timbers of Temperate North America," New York, 1934.
- and C. D. MELL: "Timbers of Tropical America," New Haven, 1924.
- and R. W. HESS: "Timbers of the New World," New Haven, 1943.
- ROBINSON, J.: The microscopic features of mechanical strains in timber and the bearing of these on the structure of the cell wall in plants, *Phil. Trans. Roy. Soc. London*, **210B**, 49-82, 1920.
- SIFTON, H. B.: The bar of Sanio and primordial pit in the gymnosperms, *Trans. Roy. Soc. Can. Sect.*, **V**, **16**, 83-99, 1922.



## CHAPTER VIII

### SECONDARY PHLOEM

In the preceding chapter consideration is given to those secondary tissues formed by the cambium toward the inside of the stele and known as secondary xylem, or wood. The present chapter deals with the analogous tissues formed by the cambium toward the outside of the stele, the *secondary phloem*. The terms "inner bark" and "bast" have been used by various authors to indicate these tissues, but these terms are not specific enough to be valuable in technical usage. The terminology used in the description of phloem structure is given in Chap. IV; part of that terminology and description is repeated here for completeness of discussion.

**Extent and Amount of Secondary Phloem.**—The extent and the amount of the secondary phloem depend upon the type of plant and upon the age of the part in question. The distribution of secondary phloem is, of course, controlled by that of the cambium. Hence, this tissue in its entirety may form a layer over all parts of the plant axis except the tips and may extend outward in the leaf traces into the larger veins of the leaf. In herbaceous stems, particularly those in which the vascular tissue is reduced and the stele broken, it may comprise bands or strips of tissue which, as seen in cross sections of the stele, appear as isolated groups of cells between the cambium and the pericycle (Fig. 111A,B). In such forms the tissue is radially thin, so that the total amount of such phloem is small. On the other hand, in a woody plant of considerable age, all the thick layer of tissue outside the cambium may be phloem, living and dead, combined with varying amounts of periderm. Between these extremes are all gradations. Normally, the amount of secondary phloem is less than the amount of secondary xylem, both in the space occupied and in the number of cells formed. In woody plants this difference in amount is exaggerated, not only because the older phloem becomes crushed, but also because the dead outer layers of phloem are actually lost either by weathering or by abscission.

**Importance of Secondary Phloem.**—The special importance of the secondary phloem is that, in the majority of cases in the dicotyledons and the gymnosperms, it very soon replaces the primary phloem which becomes crushed and functionless. This is particularly true of the woody plants in which secondary thickening is initiated close to the growing

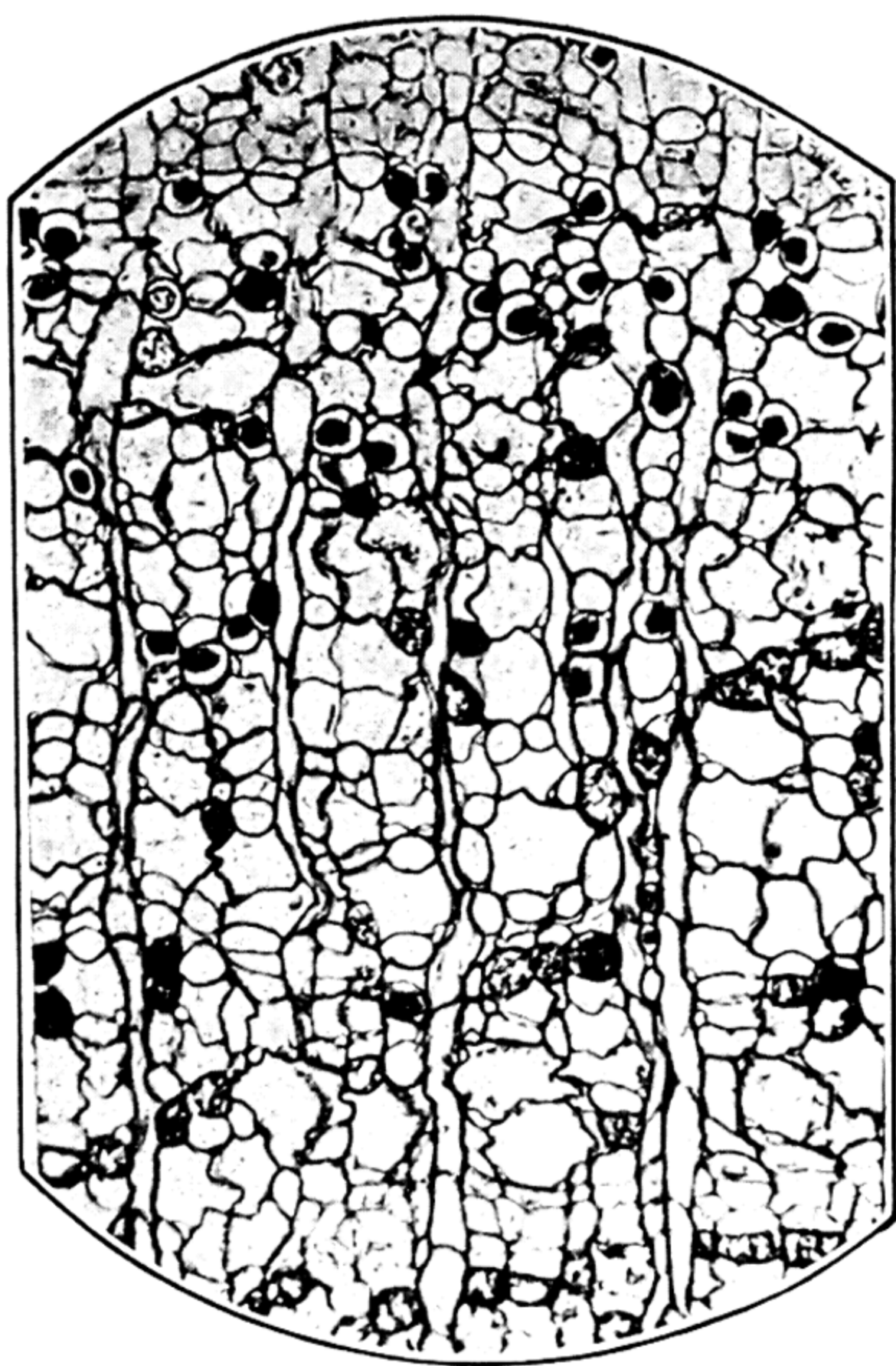


point and soon crushes the delicate primary phloem tissue. In fact, in such plants, the existence of the conducting cells of the primary phloem as functioning tissue is of such short duration that it is difficult to study. It appears in transverse sections of young twigs as obscure lines of crushed, thin walls and wall substance that have lost all semblance of their original cell form and structure. In some herbaceous dicotyledons this obliteration of the primary phloem is not so complete or, as in the potato plant, does not occur. In monocotyledons that have secondary thickening, the primary tissues remain intact. In general, however, in plants where secondary thickening takes place, the secondary phloem is the only phloem which is functionally important over any considerable length of time. The development of this tissue by the cambium provides for its constant renewal, a necessary feature since even secondary phloem is of short duration as a functioning tissue.

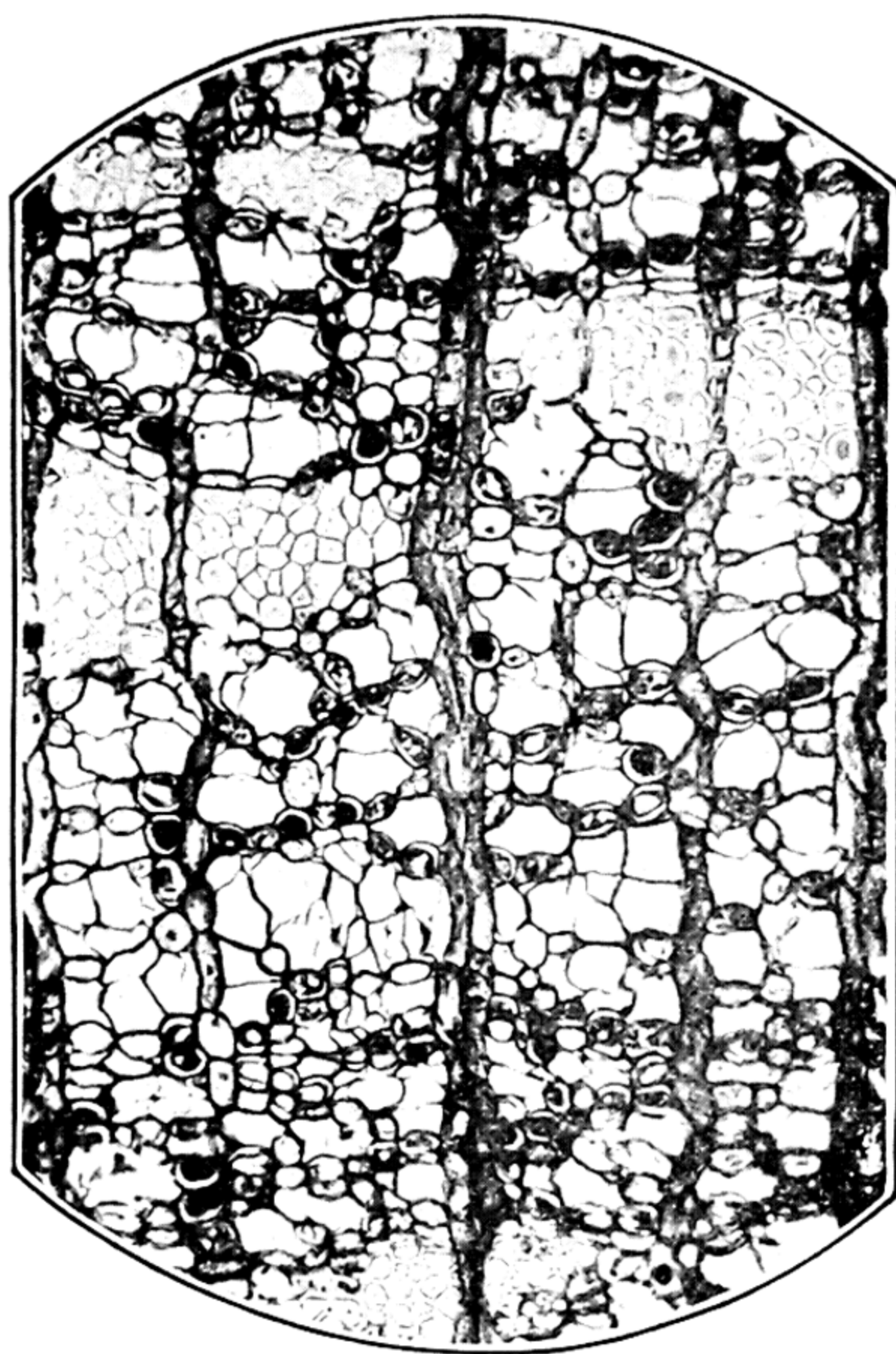
✓ **Structure of Secondary Phloem.**—Considered as a whole, secondary phloem is a complex tissue made up of a number of cell types, all of which have a common origin in the cambium. It does not differ fundamentally from the primary phloem as the same types of cells occur in both. The secondary phloem, however, in comparison with the primary phloem of the same species, usually has a more regular arrangement of cells in radial rows, a higher proportion of sieve tubes which are larger and have thicker walls, shorter sieve-tube elements and fibers, and a longer functioning life. The elements which are normally present in secondary phloem are sieve cells or sieve tubes; companion cells, which accompany sieve tubes in the angiosperms; parenchyma cells of one or more types; phloem-ray cells. Usually some type of sclerenchyma is also present, and, less commonly, secretory cells, latiferous ducts, and resin canals. The arrangement and the proportion of cells of the different types vary greatly in different species.

*Sieve Cells and Sieve Tubes.*—*Sieve cells* and *sieve tubes* (Fig. 52) are the characteristic elements in all secondary phloem from the standpoint both of structure and of function. *Sieve cells* are characteristic of gymnosperms. They are separate and distinct cells, in this respect resembling tracheids. *Sieve tubes* are characteristic of angiosperms. They are series of sieve-tube elements attached end to end with certain sieve areas more highly specialized than others. The sieve tubes of the secondary phloem of dicotyledons are of many different types with respect to the shape and nature of the end and side walls. In many woody species, such as *Carya cordiformis* (Fig. 109B), the oblique end walls of the sieve-tube elements frequently extend for nearly half the length of the element. These oblique walls have many specialized sieve areas which together form *compound sieve plates*. Sieve plates of this type are mostly confined

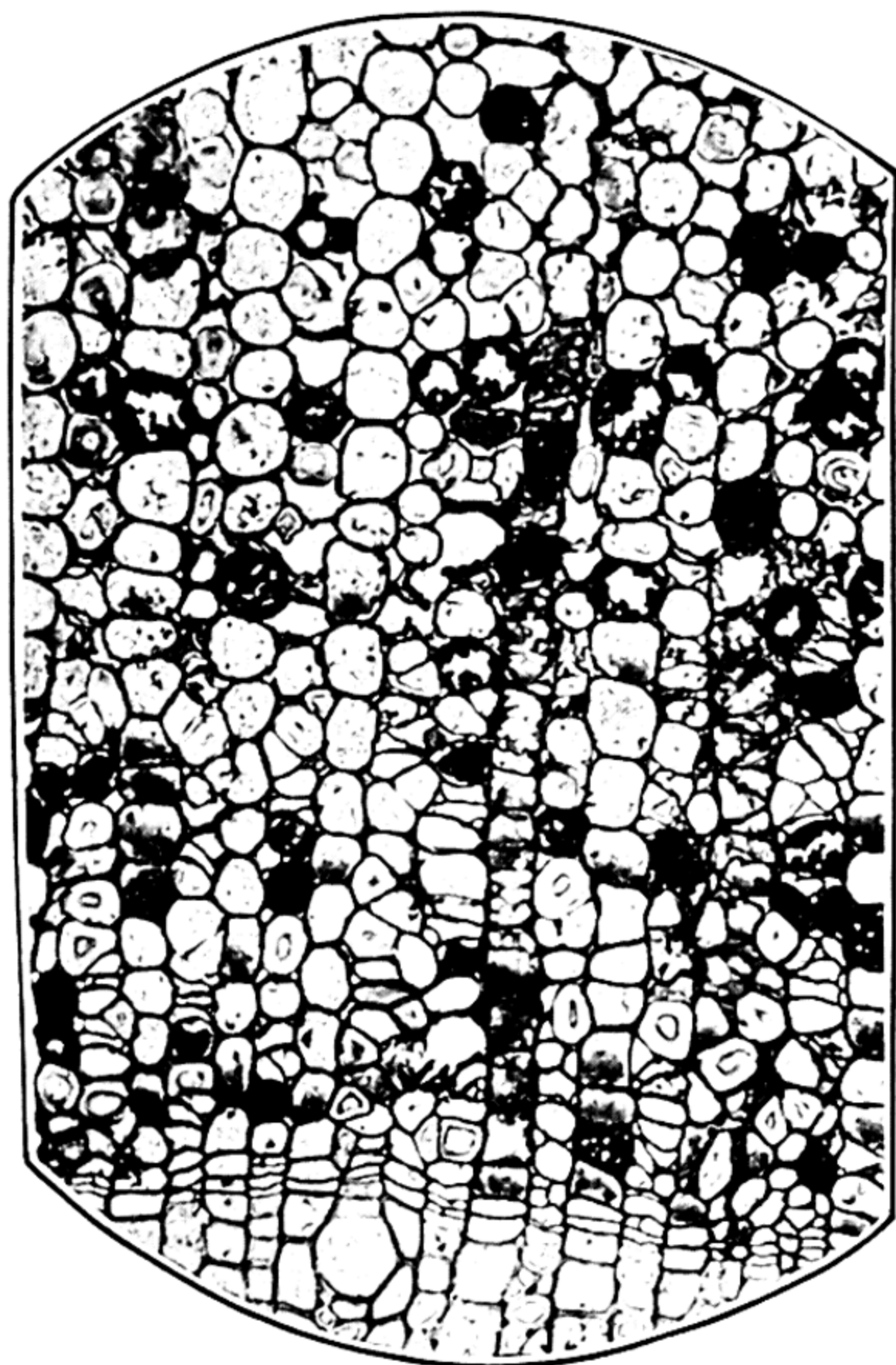




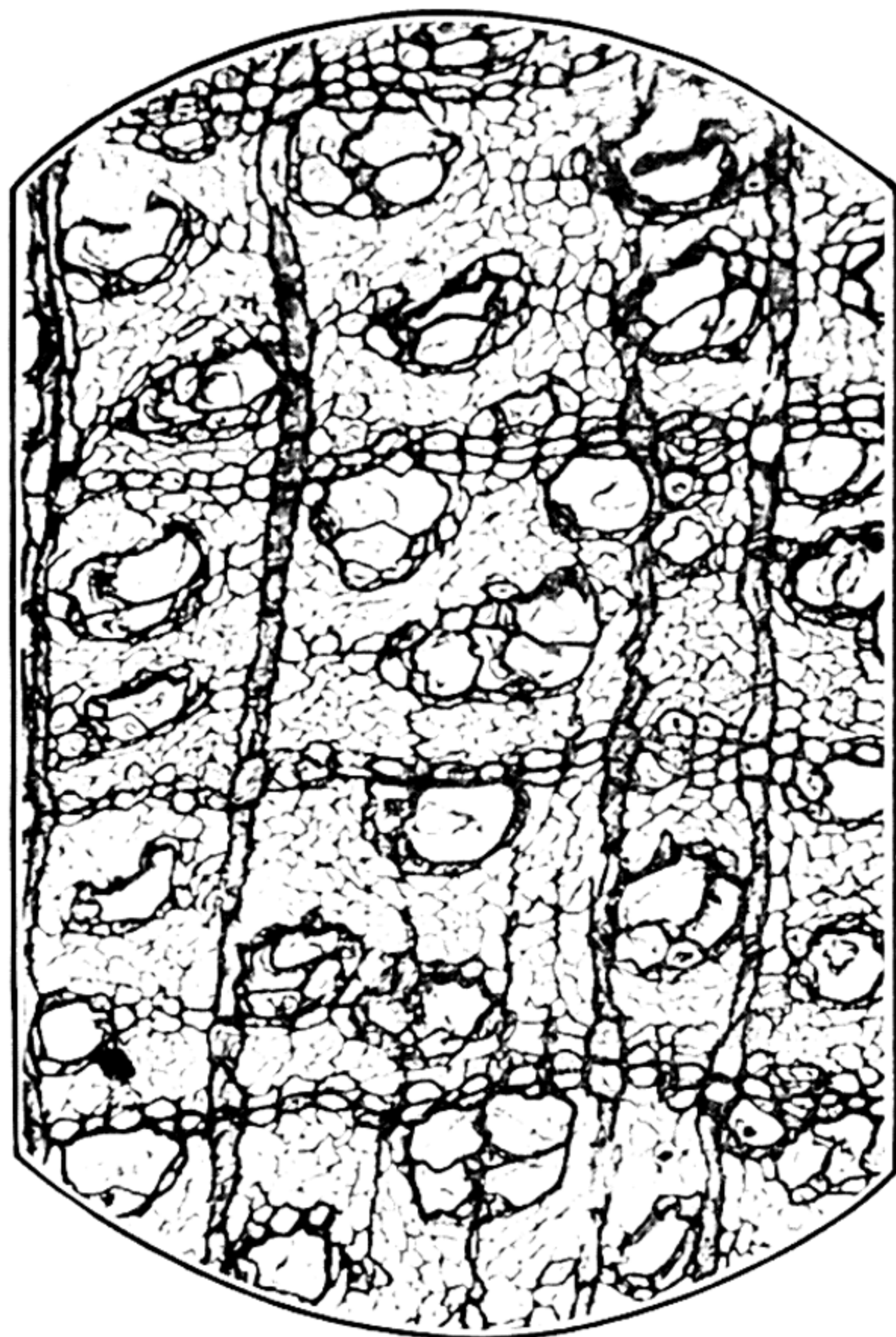
A



B



C



D

FIG. 107.—Secondary phloem in transverse section. A, *Populus deltoides*; B, *Juglans nigra*; C, *Cephalanthus occidentalis*; D, *Carya cordiformis*. All  $\times 100$ . (After MacDaniels.)



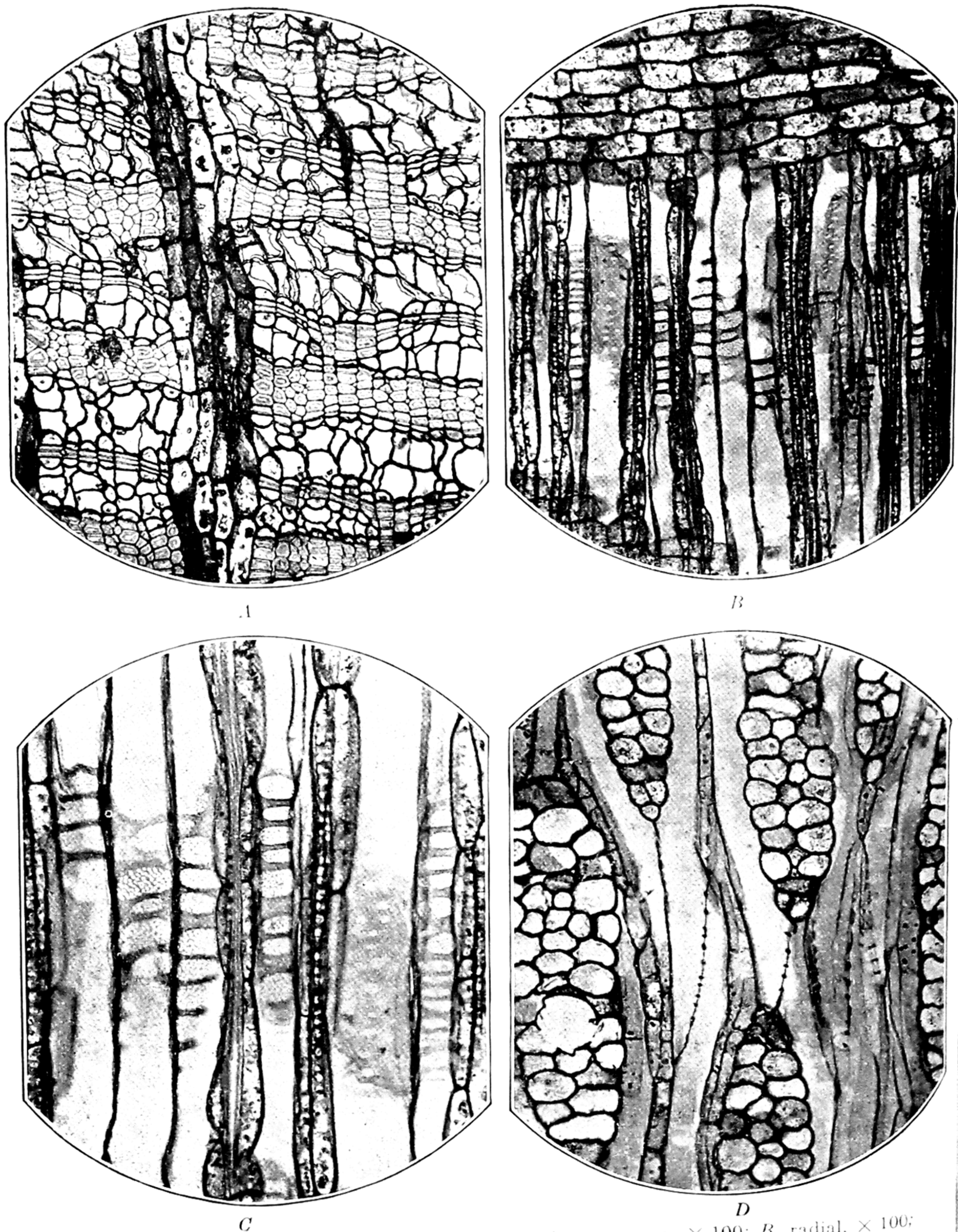


FIG. 108.—Secondary phloem of *Liriodendron*. A, transverse,  $\times 100$ ; B, radial,  $\times 100$ ; C, radial,  $\times 200$ ; D, tangential,  $\times 100$ . (After MacDaniels.)

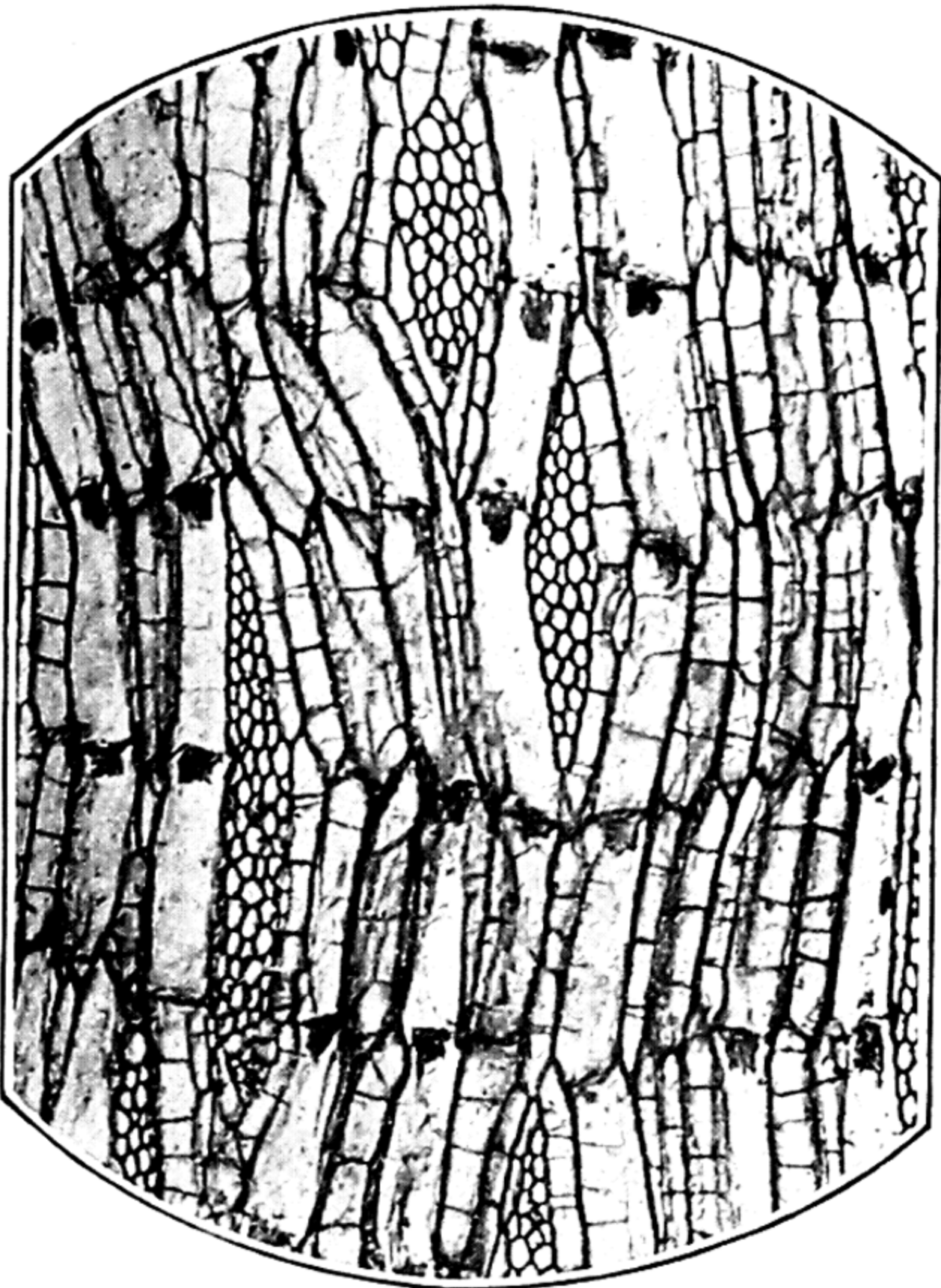




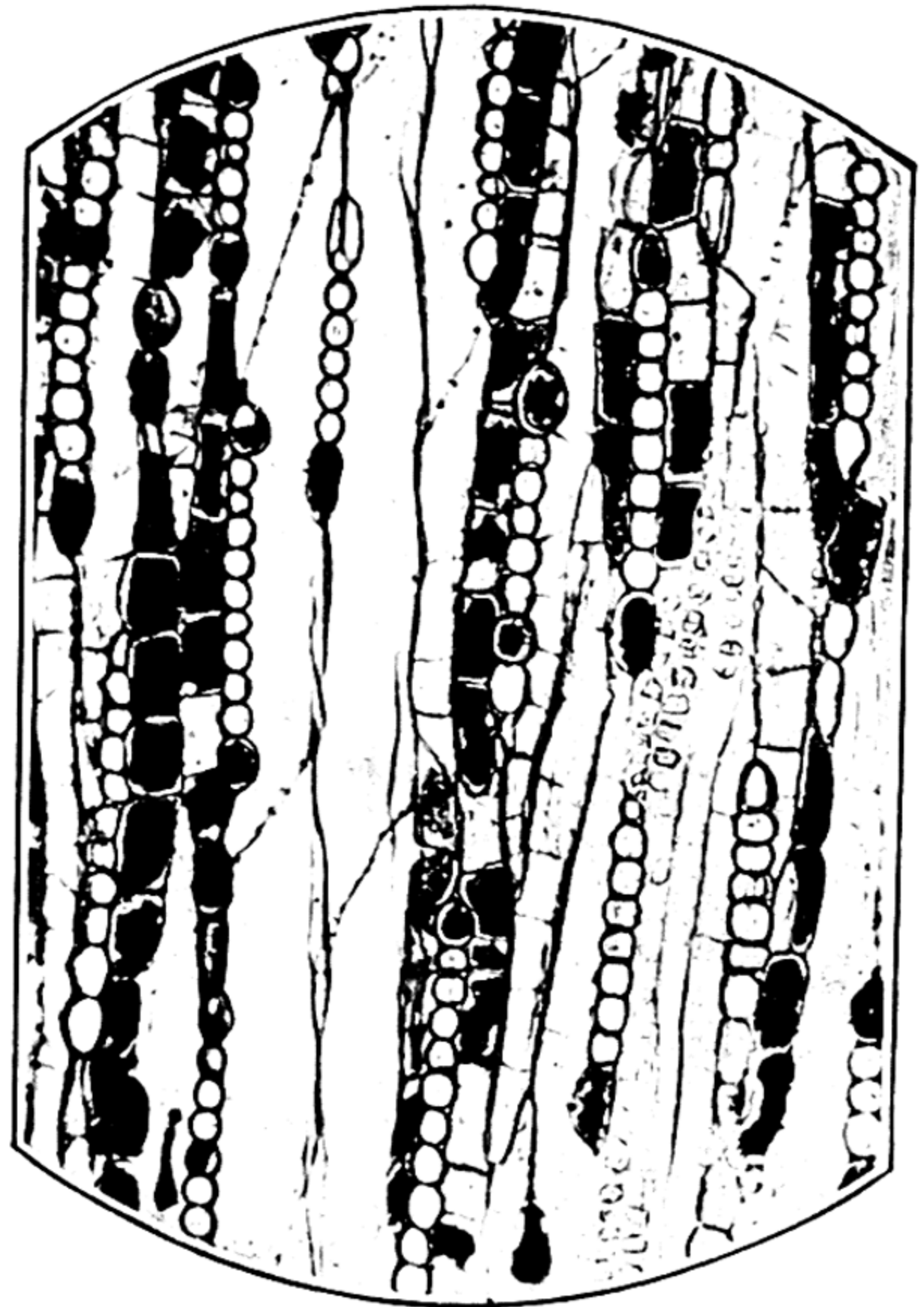
A



B



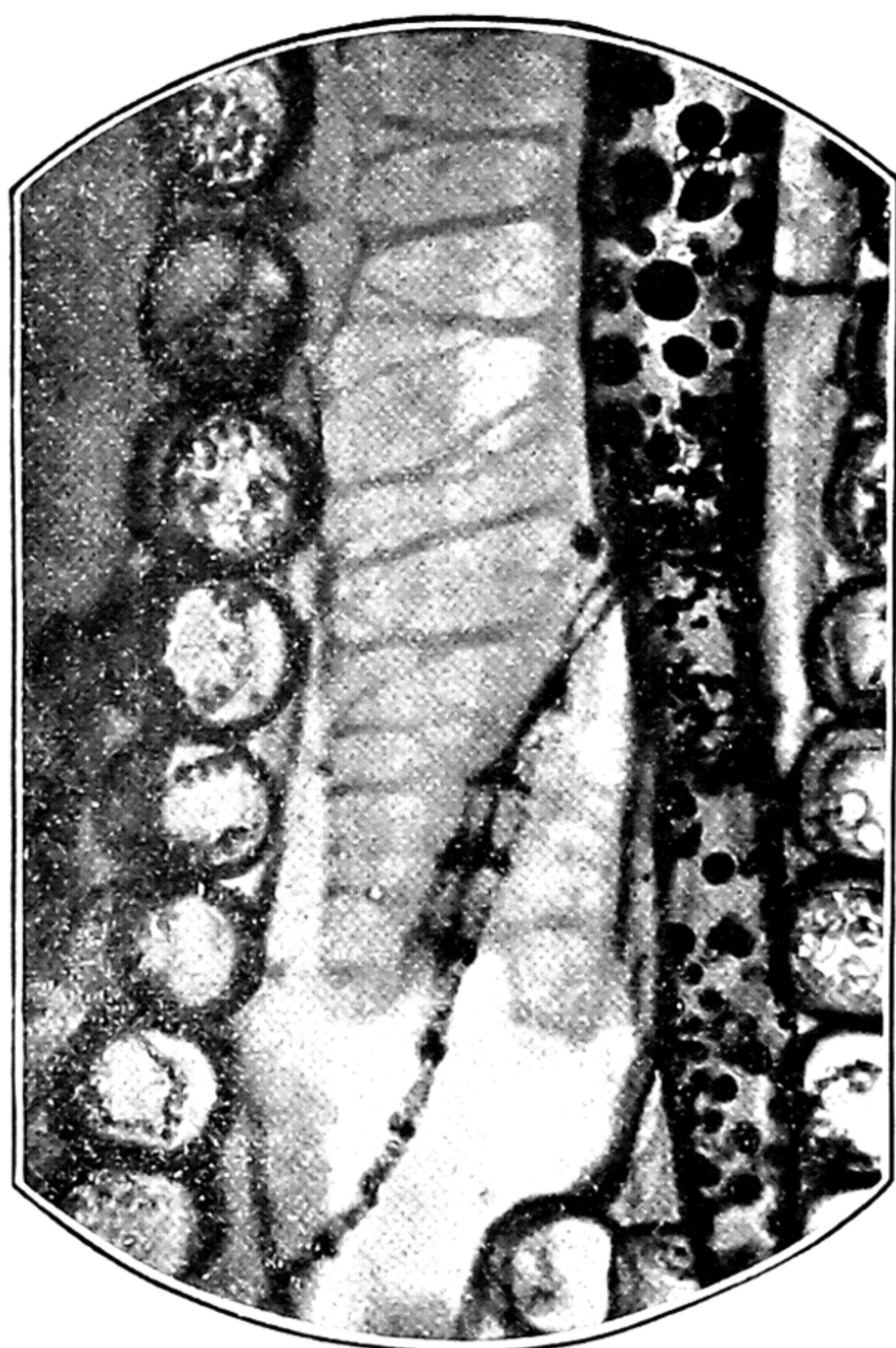
C



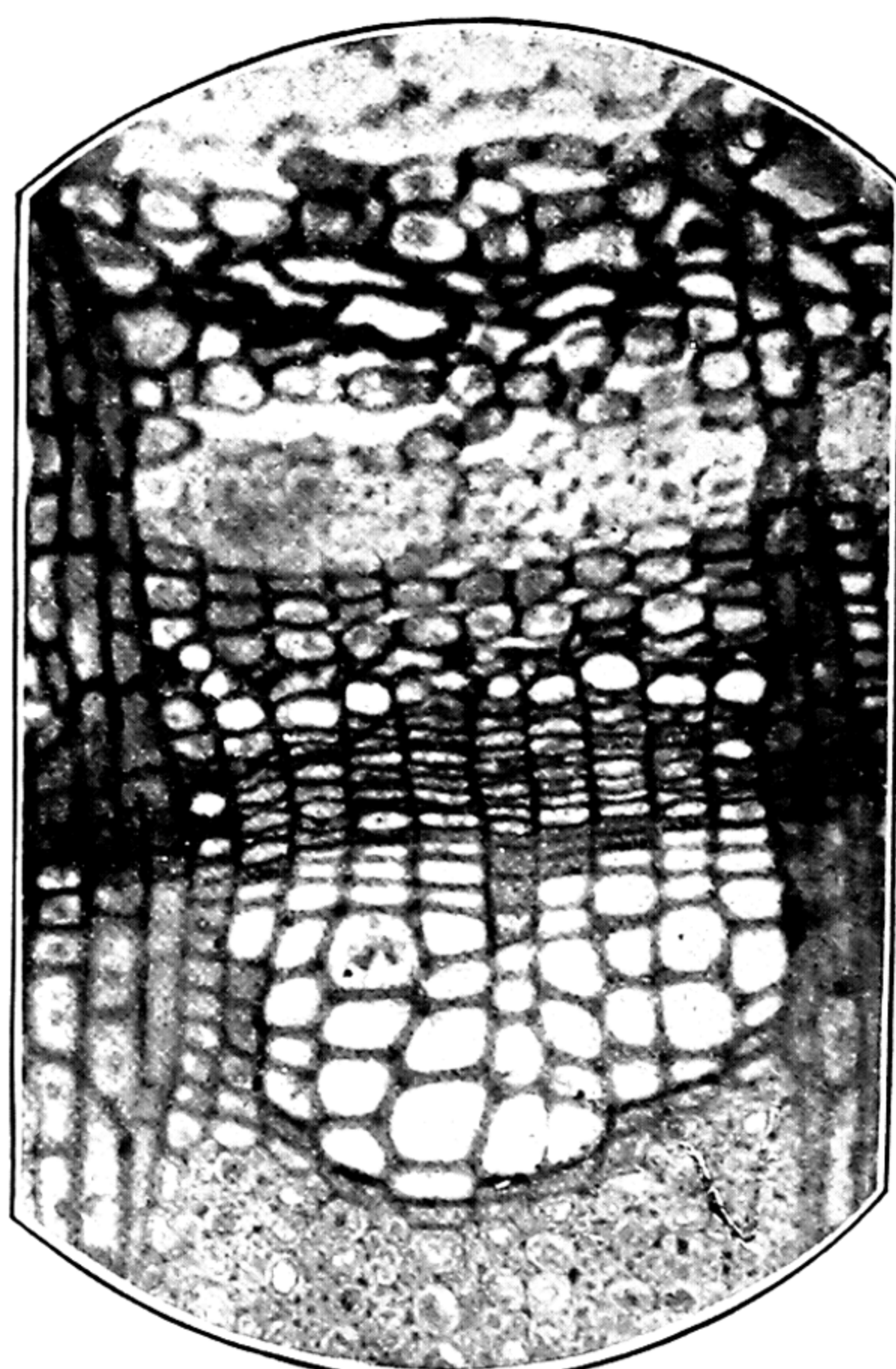
D

FIG. 109.—Secondary phloem in tangential section. A, *Pinus Strobus*,  $\times 250$ ; B, *Carya cordiformis*,  $\times 100$ ; C, *Robinia Pseudo-Acacia*,  $\times 100$ ; D, *Salix nigra*,  $\times 100$ .

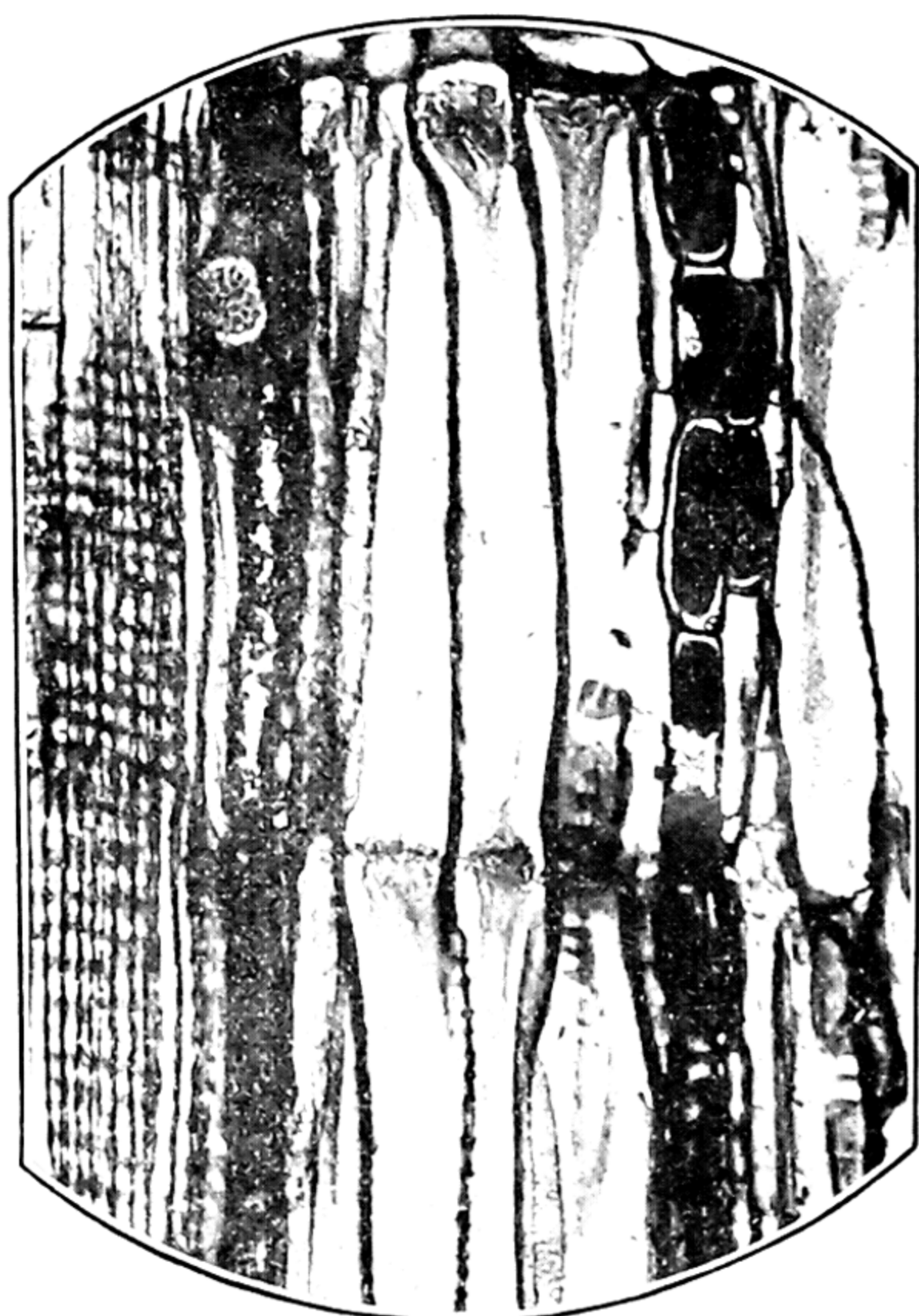




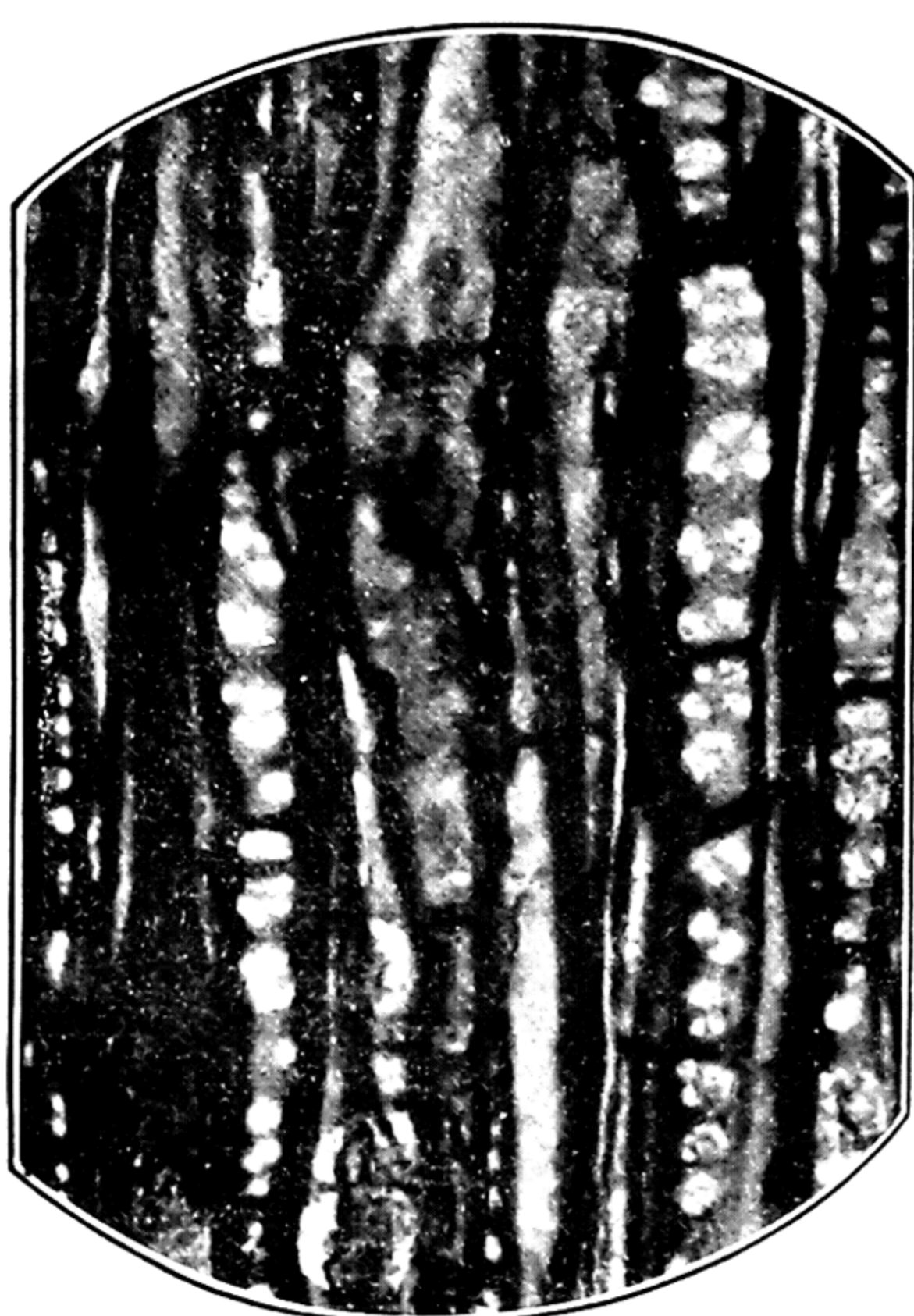
A



B



C



D

FIG. 110. —A, lattice, face view, and sieve plate, in section, of *Populus*,  $\times 450$ ; B, cross section of cambium region of *Robinia*, dormant state, showing the collapsed condition of all mature sieve tubes,  $\times 100$ ; C, radial section of cambium and phloem of *Ulmus*, dormant state; the cambium at the left; sieve tubes with transverse end walls and slime plugs in the center,  $\times 100$ ; D, phloem parenchyma of *Cornus*, showing sieve-plate-like



to the radial walls and thus connect cells of the same functioning stage. The other extreme of variation is the type found in *Robinia* (Fig. 109C), *Machura* and some species of *Ulmus* (Fig. 110C), in which the terminal walls of the sieve-tube elements are transverse. Here there is a single specialized sieve area. Such an end wall forms a *simple sieve plate*. Between these two extreme types is a series of intergrading forms. No one type is predominant in the woody angiosperms; even closely related species, as those of *Fraxinus*, may have markedly different types. In the majority of species, the sieve-tube elements of the secondary phloem of herbaceous plants have simple sieve plates (Fig. 111C); where compound sieve plates occur, they are not of the extreme type found in the Juglandaceae. The sieve tubes of seedlings and of the phloem formed in the first few years in woody twigs are of relatively small size with few compound sieve plates. In a given species, the type of sieve plate is usually constant in tissues of the same age.

The proportion and arrangement of sieve cells and sieve tubes in secondary phloem vary greatly in different species. In the gymnosperms, the sieve cells may make up the greater part of the phloem; parenchyma and sclerenchyma occur in small amounts. On the other hand, in most herbaceous plants, in seedlings, in young twigs of woody plants, and in the mature secondary phloem of some woody plants, for example, *Carya cordiformis* (Fig. 107D) and *Dirca palustris*, the proportion of sieve tubes may be much smaller than that of the other cell types. Sieve tubes also show great variety in arrangement with respect to other cell types in secondary phloem. In some plants, such as *Liriodendron* (Fig. 108A), *Juglans*, and *Tilia*, they occur in more or less definite tangential rows or bands; in others, such as *Carya* (Fig. 107D), they are in somewhat isolated groups of three or four surrounded by fibers or other types of cells. In *Cephalanthus* (Fig. 107C), the sieve tubes form, in cross sections of the phloem, radial rows which are frequently interrupted by fibers, a condition not uncommon in shrubs which approach the herbaceous type. In fact, in woody plants, almost any arrangement of sieve tubes or sieve cells with parenchyma and sclerenchyma may occur. In the secondary phloem of herbaceous plants generally, sieve tubes are without regularity of arrangement (Fig. 111A,B), although in certain groups, such as the Ranales, there may be a definite plan.

The lateral walls of sieve-tube elements that abut upon other sieve tubes in secondary phloem are frequently covered with pronounced lattices (Fig. 52H,S). These are abundant in some woody plants, such as *Ulmus* and *Populus* (Fig. 110A) but may be rare or absent in other genera. The presence of well-marked lattices is not correlated with sieve-tube type as classified on the basis of the angle of the end wall;



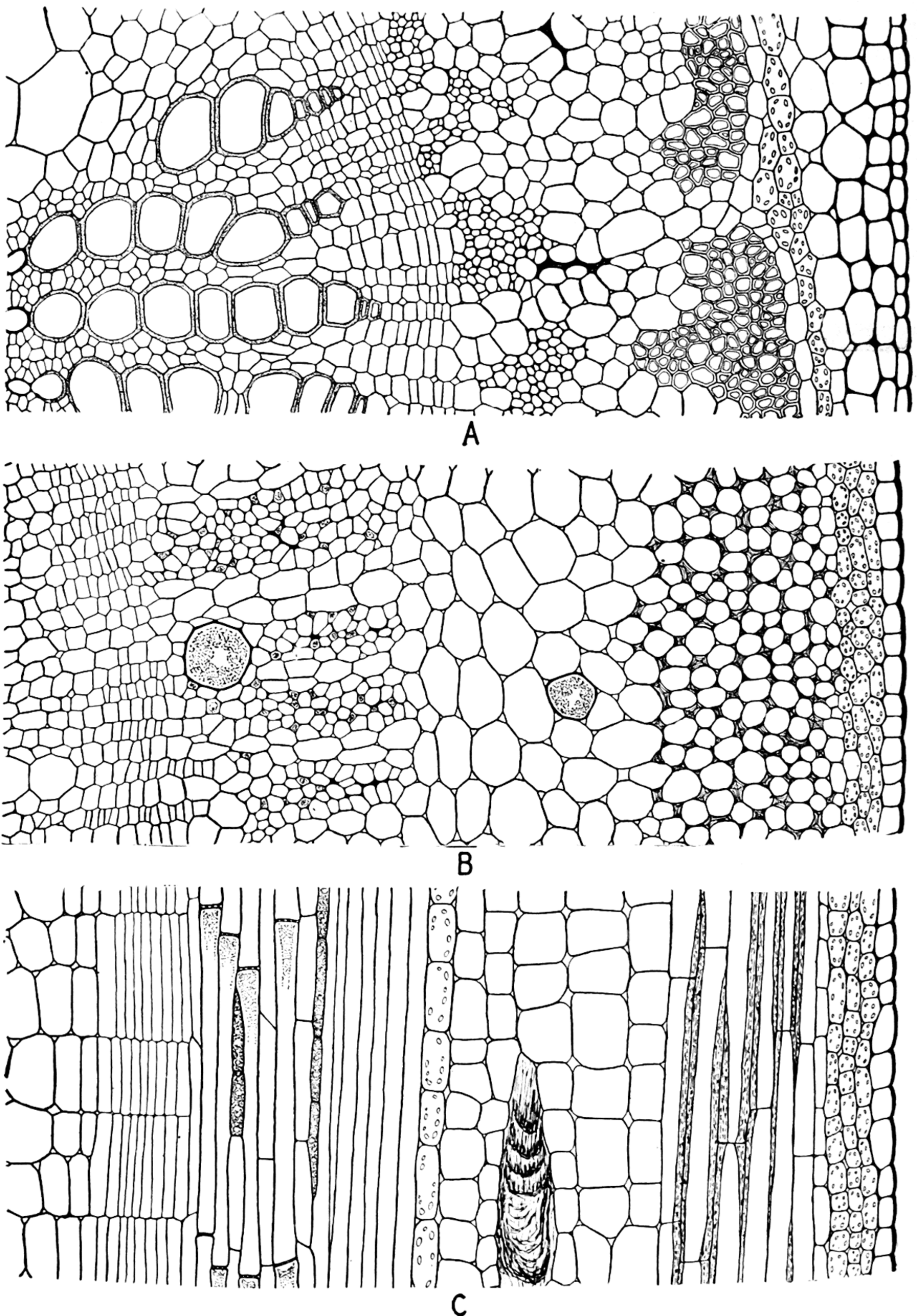


FIG. 111.—Secondary phloem in herbaceous stems. *A*, *Pisum*, transverse section showing primary phloem crushed; *B*, *C*, *Hibiscus esculentus*: *B*, transverse section showing companion cells (with protoplasmic contents); *C*, radial section showing sieve tubes with transverse end walls and several companion cells associated with each sieve tube. (Courtesy of E. F. and E. Artschwager.)



lattices may occur in any type. The sieve tubes of the secondary phloem of herbaceous plants are usually without prominent lattices.

*Companion Cells.*—Companion cells (Fig. 52H,I,S,T') are absent in gymnosperms but are probably present in greater or less abundance in angiosperms of all types. In some plants, such as *Juglans* and *Solanum*, they accompany only a part of the sieve tubes; in others, for example, *Tilia*, from one to three companion cells are seen in cross section with every sieve tube. A companion cell may extend the entire length of the sieve-tube element to which it is adjacent or only part way, or several shorter cells may extend along the sieve-tube element, the series occupying the full length of the element or only a part of it (Fig. 111C). As seen in transverse section, therefore, a sieve tube may have no companion cell or one to several, each of which in turn may be a member of a vertical series of companion cells. Ordinarily, companion cells can be most readily identified in transverse sections of the phloem by their appearance as small, triangular or rounded cells apparently located in the corners of the sieve tubes (Fig. 107A), the two kinds of cells together outlining the mother cell from which they have been derived. In some plants, companion cells may extend as narrow cells across the entire width of the sieve tube. In the secondary phloem of herbaceous plants, where the vascular cylinder is well developed, as in *Lobelia* and *Solanum*, they are frequently difficult to recognize because of the small size of all phloem elements in this type of plant. In plants with less well-developed vascular cylinders, such as *Cucurbita* and *Ranunculus*, the companion cells are distinct and large enough to be easily recognized. Companion cells show no great diversity of type, varying chiefly in length.

*Phloem Parenchyma.*—Parenchyma cells are found in the secondary phloem of all plants (except extreme herbaceous types where secondary phloem is small in amount), some vines, and woody forms of some genera and families which are predominantly herbaceous. The proportion of parenchyma varies through wide limits. In the gymnosperms, parenchyma cells are relatively few in comparison with the number of sieve cells, a condition fairly constant in all species. In the angiosperms, however, there is great diversity. The secondary phloem of the seedlings and of the younger twigs of woody dicotyledons is largely composed of parenchyma, but in the more mature condition the proportion of these cells is much smaller. In some plants, for example, *Carya* and *Robinia*, there are few parenchyma cells in the secondary phloem of the older stems; in others, such as species of *Cornus*, parenchyma may predominate. In herbaceous dicotyledons, the proportion of parenchyma is usually smaller—frequently much smaller—than that of sieve tubes and companion cells. In many of the Compositae, the proportion of parenchyma is larger. In



some families, such as the Ranunculaceae, and in certain genera in other families, no parenchyma is present, the phloem consisting wholly of sieve tubes and companion cells.

The arrangement of the parenchyma in secondary phloem varies as does that of the sieve tubes. As seen in cross sections of phloem, parenchyma may occur in tangential bands alternating with bands of sieve tubes and fibers, as in *Liriodendron* (Fig. 108A) and *Tilia*; in radial rows, as in *Cornus* and *Sambucus*; singly or in groups of a few cells, as in *Pinus*; or more or less definitely clustered about the sieve tubes, as in *Carya* (Fig. 107D). In longitudinal section, the cells are seen to form vertical series parallel with the sieve tubes (Fig. 109C, D).

The types of cells constituting the parenchyma of secondary phloem show considerable diversity. This can be most readily understood by a consideration of the development of these elements from the cambium (Chap. VI). Briefly stated, phloem parenchyma cells are formed directly from parenchyma mother cells, which, in turn, are formed from cambial cells. The cambial derivative may develop directly into a parenchyma cell or, as is more commonly the case, divides transversely, forming two or more cells. Phloem parenchyma cells, therefore, as seen in longitudinal section, may be elongated and pointed at both ends, resembling the cambial cell from which they were derived, or they may be rectangular or cylindrical, ranging from very elongate to short cylindrical or nearly cubical. The former, sometimes called *cambiform cells*, are not commonly found in the secondary phloem of woody plants, but rather generally in primary phloem, in herbaceous types, and especially in vines such as *Cucurbita*. Parenchyma cells formed by the transverse division of the parenchyma mother cell are common in the secondary phloem of all types of plants. The end cells resulting from such division remain pointed at one end.

In many woody angiosperms two or more types of phloem parenchyma, distinct in form and function, are often found in the same tissue. In *Tilia americana*, for example, one type of parenchyma cell is elongate, heavily pitted, and usually associated with the sieve tubes; the other is short and broad, apparently without an active protoplast, and usually contains large crystals. In other woody plants, such as *Robinia*, the parenchyma cells are uniformly short and broad with thin walls and abundant pits. The secondary phloem parenchyma of herbaceous plants does not show the diversity of type shown in the woody plants. For the most part, its cells are thin-walled and elongate, rectangular or rounded in cross section (Fig. 111A,C).

*Phloem Fibers and Sclereids*.—Sclerenchyma of one type or another is a characteristic feature of the secondary phloem of many plants. Fibers



are common and occur in a variety of form and arrangement. Frequently, they occur in definite tangential bands, for example, in *Liriodendron* (Fig. 108A) and *Populus*. In other genera they are found singly, as in *Cephalanthus* (Fig. 107C). In some woody plants which have a hard, tough bark, as in *Carya* (Fig. 107D), the fibers make up the greater part of the secondary phloem and may nearly surround the groups of softer tissues. When abundant, they provide considerable mechanical support for the stem. In *Dirca*, the twigs owe their toughness largely to the phloem fibers.

In the gymnosperms, all conditions are found from a complete lack of sclerenchyma, as in the phloem of *Pinus Strobilus*, to well-developed tangential bands of fibers, as in *Juniperus*, and large masses of sclereids as in *Tsuga*. In *Thuja occidentalis* the fibers are arranged in uniseriate tangential rows which alternate with rows of sieve cells and parenchyma.

Sclereids frequently occur in secondary phloem either alone or in combination with fibers. In some plants, for example, *Platanus* and *Fagus*, sclereids are the only type of sclerenchyma present in the phloem. In active phloem, sclereids are not generally so abundant as fibers, but, as the phloem loses its conducting function, the sclereids often increase in number by transformation of parenchyma cells. In the older, living, but probably nonconducting phloem of the woody plants, they may be abundant and present a great variety of form and arrangement. The occurrence of sclereids in phloem is further discussed in the consideration of the obliteration of this tissue.

*Phloem Rays.*—In vascular tissues formed by the cambium, rays are usually present. Only in reduced herbaceous types and in some specialized vines, such as *Clematis*, where secondary tissues are small in amount, are true vascular rays lacking. Vascular rays are initiated in the cambium and develop on the inside and the outside with the secondary xylem and the secondary phloem of which they are a part. The diversity of type of vascular rays in secondary phloem is, therefore, as great as is that of the rays in secondary xylem. The phloem rays vary in width and height, as do the xylem rays, and make up the same proportion of the tissue. They may be one cell wide, as in *Castanea* and *Salix* (Fig. 109D); two or three cells wide, as in *Malus pumila*; or several to many cells wide, as in *Robinia* and *Liriodendron* (Fig. 108D); or rays of various widths may exist in a single species. In the oaks there are two types of ray, one very broad and the other uniseriate. Usually, the phloem rays are of uniform width throughout their extent. They may increase in width outwardly, the increase being due to the multiplication of the cells or to the increase in size of cells toward the outer end of the ray. This provides in part for the necessary adjustment to the increase in circum-



ferential extent of the phloem caused by the increase in the diameter of the axis. Phloem rays enlarging distally are especially prominent in twigs of certain genera, such as *Tilia*. The vertical extent of the ray in the phloem is as varied as its width, ranging from that of two or three cells, as in *Thuja*, to 8 to 10 cm, as in the broad rays of the oaks. Rays consisting of a single row of cells occasionally occur. Marginal cells, different in form, pitting, and content from the other ray cells, but parenchymatous, are found in some plants, as in *Salix* and *Nyssa*.

The abundance of rays is, in part, related to size. Broad rays are spaced farther apart than are those of the narrow type. In woody plants that in structure approach the herbaceous type, as, for example, *Cephalanthus*, the rays as seen in transverse section of the phloem (Fig. 107C) are separated by only one or two rows of sieve tubes or parenchyma. With the exception of the large rays found in some families, herbaceous plants are characterized by uniseriate rays spaced at short intervals. In herbs with reduced vascular tissue, the vascular rays have in evolutionary development been reduced and have disappeared in some forms.

Phloem ray cells are for the most part of uniform type. In woody plants, the common form, as seen in cross section, is rectangular and radially elongated. In semiherbaceous and herbaceous plants the cells tend to become cubical or globose. Transitional forms are frequently seen in shrubs, such as *Cephalanthus*, and in "woody" herbs, such as *Agrimonia* and *Potentilla*. In such plants phloem ray cells closely resemble phloem parenchyma and can only be distinguished from the latter by a study of the series of cells back to the cambium and to the rays of the xylem. All phloem ray cells are parenchymatous with active protoplasts. With age, many of them become sclereids.

A special type of ray cell is the so-called *albuminous cell* of the gymnosperms. These albuminous cells are situated at the upper and lower margins of the phloem rays and differ from the ordinary ray cells both structurally and functionally. Structurally they differ from ordinary ray cells in that they are joined directly with the sieve cells by sieve areas, are of much greater vertical diameter than the normal ray cells and do not contain starch. They are closely related to the sieve cells in their development and retain their protoplasts only as long as the sieve cells with which they are connected function. (Ray cells adjacent to them remain alive as long as does the surrounding tissue.) At the time that callus pads form within the albuminous cells over the sieve-like connections with sieve cells, similar pads cover the sieve areas in the sieve cells themselves. Functionally, they are apparently intimately connected with the sieve cells; it is believed that they may function much as do companion cells in the angiosperms. In similarity



of position and difference in function from other ray cells albuminous cells are like the marginal ray tracheids of the xylem. Cells suggestive of albuminous cells in appearance and position are found in the phloem rays of some woody dicotyledons, such as *Nyssa* and *Cornus*; these are not, however, the functional equivalents of such cells.

*Seasonal Rings in Secondary Phloem.*—As has been previously stated, the secondary phloem tissues are frequently arranged in definite tangential bands. Such layers of tissue often have the appearance of annual rings. These ring-like bands do not, however, have such definite seasonal limits as do those of the secondary xylem, because there is no sharp distinction between the phloem cells formed in the early part and those in the late part of the growing season comparable to the difference between early wood and late wood. Further, the last xylem cells formed in a season from the cambium become fully mature and lignified before growth ceases. On the phloem side of the cambium, on the other hand, at the end of the growing season there are usually several rows of cells that have not completely differentiated, but which remain dormant until growth is renewed, when they mature to form normal tissue. Therefore, no line can usually be drawn between the cells formed in two consecutive seasons. Seasonal formation of sclerenchyma bands may exist, but it is not known that there is any constancy in such growth. In fact, the number and width of these bands of sclerenchyma is apparently dependent upon environmental factors and vigor of growth. In tropical plants, new layers of phloem as well as of xylem are formed with each “flush” or period of new growth; these have, in general, no distinctness strictly comparable with the annual rings of temperate-zone plants.

**Function of Secondary Phloem.**—The function of the secondary phloem is, in general, that already discussed in Chap. IV as that of phloem as a whole. From the standpoint of function, the secondary phloem is a complex tissue with most of its parts interrelated in a definite manner. The sieve tubes, sieve cells, companion cells, and some parenchyma cells are structurally adapted to vertical conduction, whereas the phloem rays provide a means of horizontal conduction to and from the xylem and cambium. In gymnosperms, sieve cells are ordinarily pitted heavily only with other sieve cells and albuminous cells; in dicotyledons, sieve tubes are ordinarily pitted heavily only with other sieve tubes and with companion cells. The different types of parenchyma concerned with conduction frequently lie adjacent to the sieve tubes, from which they are separated by only a thin wall. These parenchyma cells are not, however, conspicuously pitted with the sieve tubes or with the companion cells, although they are usually heavily pitted with each other upon both radial and transverse walls. In some woody plants, for example, *Cas-*



*tanea* and *Cornus*, the pits in these cells are clustered in a way that strongly suggests sieve areas (Fig. 110D). Phloem ray cells are frequently pitted with parenchyma of this type. Taken as a whole, phloem has to do with the conduction of elaborated food products, both protein and carbohydrate, and possibly with mineral nutrients as well. Just which substances, however, move in the sieve tubes and which in the parenchyma is not known. From the fact that the proportion of such parenchyma to sieve tubes and sieve cells shows such great variation, that its pitting may be sieve-area-like, and that sieve tubes are few or sometimes possibly lacking, as in slender vascular bundles in leaves and in primary phloem of some woody plants, it may be inferred that parenchyma under some conditions may perform the functions of sieve tubes or that the functions of the two types of cells may be interchangeable.

Another function of the phloem parenchyma is storage of crystals, starch, and various organic materials. Such storage occurs in specialized parenchyma cells which differ from the heavily pitted parenchyma cells in being usually of rather large diameter with inconspicuous pits. Phloem ray cells are often packed with starch during the dormant season. This is especially true in roots where the phloem rays are usually relatively large. The abundance of this type of parenchyma in roots seems to be correlated with a small amount or absence of sclerenchyma. Parenchyma cells storing crystals lie usually close to fibers, where they may form extensive rows and even ensheath the strands of fibers. Specialized parenchyma cells containing various secretions occur abundantly in the secondary phloem of some plants (Fig. 111B), both in the vertical system and in the rays.

*Cessation of Function of the Phloem.*—The length of the functioning life of the secondary phloem, at least that of the sieve cells, sieve tubes, and companion cells, is brief as compared with that of secondary xylem. In many woody plants the sieve tubes and sieve cells function for a single season or less, and in some tropical trees for a single “flush” of growth. In other species, and frequently in roots, these cells may be active over a longer period, though probably rarely more than two years. The phloem parenchyma and the phloem ray cells—other than the marginal albuminous cells of the gymnosperms—commonly remain alive and apparently in normal condition long after the sieve tubes have lost their protoplasts. The cessation of function in the secondary phloem is in some ways comparable to the formation of heartwood in the xylem except that the phloem is being continually stretched, crushed, and torn by circumferential increase and the pressure of cambial growth, and that its outer layers are lost by weathering and exfoliation. The cessation of activity of the entire tissue appears to be gradual, becoming complete



only when periderm layers have formed within it, depriving all cells of food and water supply from the tissues within.

The exact time of loss of function by the sieve tubes and sieve cells is in doubt. It is generally believed that these cells function from the time of disappearance of the nucleus until the protoplast is lost. The opinion has been expressed that the functional life of the sieve tube or sieve cell ends with the disintegration of the nucleus, but the preponderance of evidence does not support this view.

Closely tied up with the functioning life of the sieve tube is the formation of the callus pads over the sieve plates. In many plants these are deposited at the end of the growing season, thus occluding the sieve tube while the plant is dormant; with the resumption of growth in the spring, the pads are dissolved, and the sieve tubes again become functional. In other plants, particularly in herbaceous forms, however, the plugging of the sieve pores with callus marks the permanent cessation of function of the cell.

The disappearance of the protoplasts of the sieve tubes and companion cells certainly indicates loss of function in these cells. In many genera, for example, in *Robinia*, *Quercus*, and *Pyrus*, this is accompanied by, or followed by, the crushing and flattening of the sieve tubes. This cell destruction—collapse of radial walls and obliteration of lumina—is caused by the pressure of the growing tissues beneath upon unlignified, empty cells. The crushing of the sieve tubes may be so complete that a group or layer of such cells is represented only by an irregular band of structureless wall substance. In some genera even this is quickly removed by absorption. This crushing and removal of the sieve tubes is commonly spoken of as the *obliteration* of these cells.

In the dormant phloem of many plants, such as *Pinus Strobus*, *Robinia Pseudo-Acacia*, and *Clematis virginiana*, there is only a narrow band of tissue with intact sieve tubes. Outside of this region all sieve tubes are functionless and crushed. There may even be no mature sieve tubes that are uncrushed (Fig. 110B). In other plants, such as *Tilia* and *Populus*, the sieve tubes may not be crushed for a considerable distance from the cambium, but all those not close to the cambium have lost their contents and thus apparently have ceased to function. In other plants, for example, *Salix*, the sieve tubes are not crushed at any time but remain normal in size and shape even after the formation of periderm layers which cut them off from the living tissues beneath. It is doubtful that the sieve tubes in woody dicotyledons become lignified as the phloem grows old as do many of the surrounding parenchyma cells.

The changes which take place in phloem as it ages show great diversity in minor details in different species but, in general, involve approximately



the same phenomena. Simultaneously with, or following, the death of the sieve tubes, lignification of many or all phloem parenchyma and ray cells may occur. Druses and other crystals are formed in great numbers, both in parenchyma and in the newly formed sclerenchyma. In many plants the crystals form in thin-walled parenchyma, which lies beside and often ensheathes the fibers (Fig. 9N). Additional gums, tannin, and resins may be deposited in the parenchyma at this time. In annual herbaceous stems, the secondary phloem probably remains functional throughout the life of the stem or, at least, until the maturation of the seed. Few changes occur in such tissue, although in certain Compositae the phloem parenchyma becomes lignified toward the end of the growing season.

The manner and the extent of sclerification in the outer secondary phloem are varied. In such woody plants as *Fagus* and *Platanus*, nearly all cells, with the exception of sieve tubes and companion cells, become transformed into sclereids, and the bark is, consequently, very hard but not tough. Fibers in these genera are few or wanting. Many trees, for example, *Quercus*, show a mixture of sclereids and fibers in old secondary phloem. Phloem rays frequently become lignified at their outer ends, that is, as the cells become old. In the oak, the cells of the broad phloem rays become lignified when still young and close to the cambium. In *Juglans* and many other genera, no sclereids are formed; the outer phloem consists largely of fibers. The increase in the proportion of sclerenchyma in the outer phloem of some species is in part only apparent and is due to the collapse of the softer tissues, rather than to the lignification of additional cells.

**Economic Value of Secondary Phloem.**—Fibers of secondary phloem were formerly used commercially to a considerable extent and are still of some importance. The secondary phloem of various trees and shrubs of the Malvaceae, Tiliaceae, Moraceae, etc., has provided “bast” or “bast fibers” (Chap. IV) for economic purposes for centuries. The tapa cloth of the tropical Pacific Islands is composed chiefly of phloem fibers. Other uses of phloem are as a source of tannin, as in oak, chestnut, and hemlock bark, and, together with the cortex, as a source of some spices and drugs, for example, cinnamon and quinine. Secretory canals are often abundant in phloem, and the secretions may be of much economic value, as are rubber, which is obtained from the latex of *Hevea* and other genera; and various resins, such as kauri gum, obtained from *Agathis*, and spruce gum, from *Picea*.

#### References

- ABBE, L. B., and A. S. CRAFTS: Phloem of white pine and other coniferous species, *Bot. Gaz.*, **100**, 695–722, 1939.



- CHAUVEAUD, G. L.: L'appareil conducteur des plantes vasculaires et les phases principales de son évolution, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 9 sér., **13**, 113-438, 1911.
- : Recherches sur le mode de formation des tubes criblés dans la racine des dicotylédones, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 8 sér., **12**, 333-394, 1900.
- CHEADLE, V. I., and N. B. WHITFORD: Observations on the phloem in the Monocotyledoneae, I. The occurrence and phylogenetic specialization in the structure of the sieve tubes in the metaphloem, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **28**, 623-628, 1941.
- CURTIS, O. F.: "The Translocation of Solutes in Plants," New York, 1935.
- DE BARY, A.: "Comparative Anatomy of the Vegetative Organs of the Phanerogams and Ferns," 1877. Engl. ed. 1884.
- ESAU, K.: Ontogeny and structure of the phloem of tobacco, *Hilgardia*, **2**, 343-424, 1938.
- : Development and structure of the phloem tissue, *Bot. Rev.*, **5**, 373-432, 1939.
- HEMENWAY, A. F.: Studies on the phloem of the dicotyledons, I. Phloem of the Juglandaceae, *Bot. Gaz.*, **51**, 131-135, 1911.
- : Studies on the phloem of the dicotyledons, II. The evolution of the sieve tube, *Bot. Gaz.*, **55**, 236-243, 1913.
- HILL, A. W.: Histology of the sieve tubes of Pinus, *Ann. Bot.*, **15**, 576-611, 1901.
- : The histology of the sieve tubes of angiosperms, *Ann. Bot.*, **22**, 245-290, 1908.
- HUBER, B.: Das Siebröhrensystem unserer Bäume und seine jahreszeitlichen Veränderungen, *Jahrb. Wiss. Bot.*, **88**, 176-242, 1939.
- JANCZEWSKI, DE, E.: Études comparées sur les tubes cribreux, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 6 sér., **14**, 50-166, 1882.
- LECOMTE, H.: Contribution à l'étude du liber des angiospermes, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 7 sér., **10**, 193-324, 1889.
- LÉGER, L. J.: Recherches sur l'origine et les transformations des éléments libériens, *Mém. Soc. Linn. Normandie*, **19**, 51-182, 1897.
- MACDANIELS, L. H.: The histology of the phloem in certain woody angiosperms, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **5**, 347-378, 1918.
- PERROT, É.: "Le Tissue Criblé," Paris, 1899.
- POIRAULT, G.: Recherches anatomiques sur les cryptogames vasculaires, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 7 sér., **18**, 113-256, 1893.
- RUSSOW, E.: Sur la structure et le développement des tubes cribreux, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 6 sér., **14**, 167-215, 1882.
- SCHMIDT, E. W.: "Bau und Funktion der Siebröhre der Angiospermen," Jena, 1917.
- STRASBURGER, E.: "Ueber den Bau und die Verrichtungen der Leitungsbahnen in den Pflanzen," Histologische Beiträge III, Jena, 1891.
- WILHELM, K.: "Beiträge zur Kenntniss des Siebröhrenapparates dicotyler Pflanzen," Leipzig, 1890.
- WILSON, C. L.: Lignification of mature phloem in herbaceous types, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **9**, 239-244, 1922.



## CHAPTER IX

### PERIDERM AND ABSCISSION

#### PERIDERM

The protection of living tissues from desiccation is characteristic of all plants except submersed aquatics. In plants with primary growth only, such protection is usually given by the cuticle and the cutinization of the epidermis or possibly the hypodermis or outer cortex, as described in Chap. II. In plants with secondary growth there is an adjustment of the epidermal, cortical, and phloem tissues to the resulting increase in diameter, or, when any of these outer layers are ruptured, new protective layers arise that prevent desiccation. In herbaceous types, generally, and in some woody plants, the formation of new cells by radial division, and the increase in size of the cells are the means of adjustment to an increasing diameter. The cells of the outer primary regions in herbaceous plants often do not lose their capacity for division until the axis has attained approximately mature size, and cell division in these regions in woody plants may continue for a year or longer, for example, in species of *Acer* and *Cornus*. In the older stems and roots of most woody plants, however, secondary growth is followed by the rupture and death of the outer tissues and the formation of a new protective layer known as the *periderm*.

**Structure of the Periderm.**—The periderm commonly consists of three layers of tissue: the initiating layer of meristematic cells known as the *phellogen*, or *cork cambium*; the layer of cells formed by this meristem toward the outside, the *phellem*, or *cork*; and usually a layer formed toward the inside, the *phelloderm* (Fig. 112A).

— *Phellogen*.—The phellogen is an excellent example of a secondary meristem in that it arises from living cells that have become permanent, that is, they have differentiated and are mature epidermal, cortical, or phloem cells. It is a lateral meristem, in that it increases the diameter of the axis, cutting off cells on the tangential face for the most part in much the same way as does the true cambium. In shape, the phellogen cells show little variation. As seen in tangential section, they appear polygonal and more or less isodiametric, except in a few special plants; in transverse section they appear rectangular and radially flattened (Fig. 112A, B, D). Except in the lenticels, intercellular spaces are lacking.



In the formation of a phellogen layer, mature living cells become meristematic and form a continuous uniseriate layer of initials. This meristematic activity always occurs in epidermal, cortical, or other

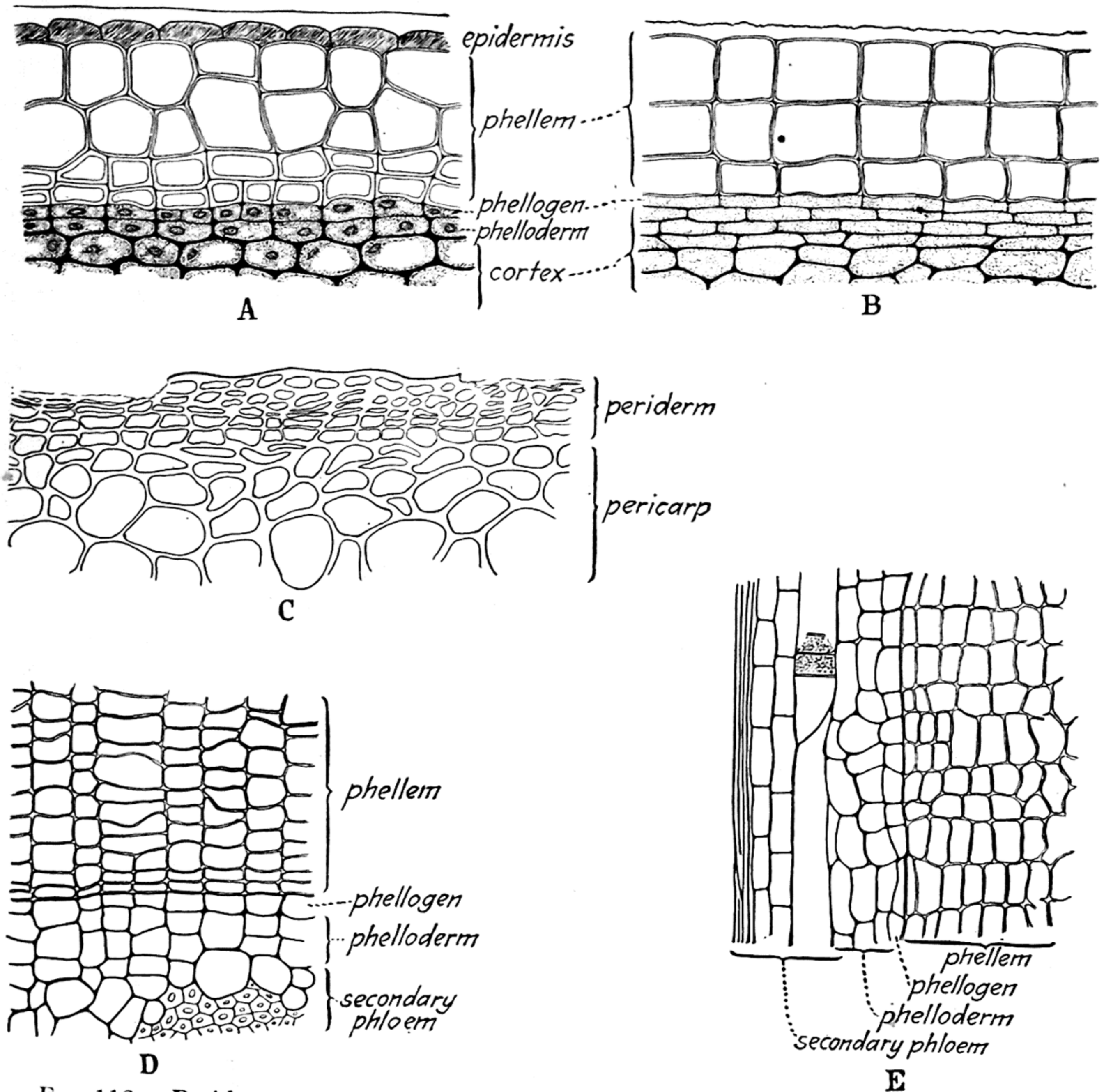


FIG. 112.—Periderm. A, B, C, cross sections of superficial layer; D, E, cross and radial sections of a deep layer. A, in twig of *Populus deltoides*: the phellogen arose in the outermost cortical cells, and has formed four layers of phellem cells and one of phelloderm; the phellem is capped by the dead, tannin-filled epidermal cells. B, in twig of *Solanum dulcamara*: the phellogen arose in the epidermis, the outer halves of the epidermal cells have become typical phellem cells; they are capped by the cuticle; no phelloderm has been formed. C, in fruit of *Malus pumila*: the outer cells are readily loosened, the periderm becoming "scurfy." D, E, in secondary phloem of *Salix alba*, var. *vitellina*. The phelloderm cells are somewhat irregularly arranged.

parenchymatous tissue where living cells are sufficiently abundant to permit the formation of a layer of considerable vertical and tangential extent. When the formation of a phellogen is about to take place in



epidermal cells, the protoplasts lose their central vacuoles and the cytoplasm increases in amount and becomes more richly granular. After the formation of this initial layer, tangential, and, to a lesser extent, radial division takes place, much in the same manner as does division in the true cambium.—The derivative cells are normally arranged in radial rows, the cells of the phelloderm being less markedly so than those of the phellem.—In periderm, the number of tangential rows of undifferentiated cells present at any one time during the period of activity of the phellogen is usually much less than the number of similar rows in the cambium zone during the growth period of the cambium. In fact, in periderm the only immature cells to be found are frequently the row of initials, the cells formed by this meristem having all matured before further division of the phellogen.

In the ratio of the number of cork cells to phelloderm cells formed by the phellogen, considerable diversity is shown in different plants. Generally, several to many times as many cells are cut off toward the outside (phellem) as toward the inside (phelloderm). Phelloderm cells may be few or none; rarely, phelloderm is greater in amount than the phellem. In the cork oak, *Quercus suber*, and in plants with corky-winged stems, such as species of *Euonymus*, *Liquidambar*, and *Ulmus*, the phellogen forms great numbers of soft cork cells and relatively little phelloderm.

✓ *Phellem*.—The cells constituting phellem, commonly known as cork cells, are like the cork cambium cells from which they are cut off. They are uniform in shape—polygonal, as seen in tangential section, and often radially thin as seen in transverse sections of the stem (Fig. 113). In the maturing of phellogen derivatives there is no complicated differentiation comparable with that which occurs in the formation of vascular tissues. In shape, the cells of some types of thin-walled cork may be radially elongated, as in commercial cork (Fig. 113A,B); in the superficial persistent periderm of plants like *Betula* and *Prunus*, the cork cells are conspicuously elongated tangentially (Fig. 113D,F). Cork cells lack intercellular spaces.

Mature cork cells are nonliving and usually appear to be without pits. Where pits have been reported, they are described as in the inner cellulose layer (that next the lumen) only, a condition possibly related to the translocation of materials in the formation of the suberin lamella.

A number of different types of cork cells occur. Of the two common types, in one the cells are thin-walled, empty, and radially elongate, making up a light tissue of the bottle-cork type; in the other the cells are thick-walled and radially thin with the lumen filled with dark-staining material of a resinous or tanniferous nature. These two types may be found in different plants or in alternating bands in the same plant.



for example, in *Betula* (Fig. 113D,E). It is because of this alternate formation of thick-walled and thin-walled cells and the ease of rupture of the latter, that birch periderm splits into thin papery sheets. Rarely,

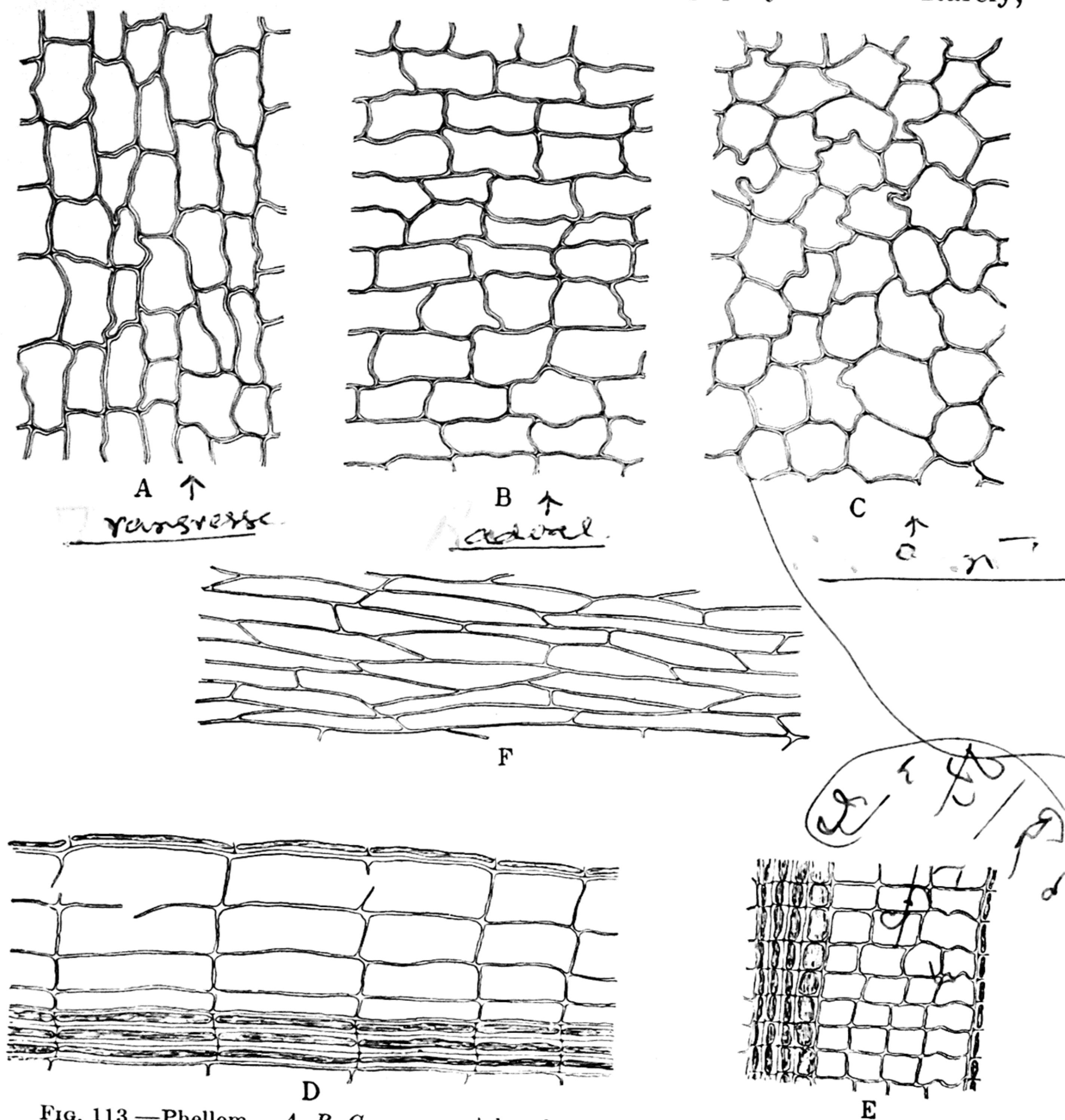


FIG. 113.—Phellem. A, B, C, commercial cork, from *Quercus suber*, transverse, radial, and tangential sections respectively; D, E, F, birch "bark," from *Betula alba*, transverse, radial, and tangential sections respectively. D and E show a complete (probably annual) layer, of two kinds of cells, the larger, thinner cells showing the tendency to rupture which causes birch "bark" to peel in thin, papery sheets.

sclereids and cells with crystals form part of the phellem.

The cell wall of cork cells is characteristically made up of the primary wall which is of cellulose, or in some plants lignified, and in others slightly



suberized; next to the primary wall, a thick median suberized layer of the secondary wall called the *suberin lamella*; and next to the lumen the thin inner cellulosic layer of the secondary wall, which in some plants is lignified. In thin-walled cork the inner, cellulose layer is absent. Often the various layers are not readily seen. The substance suberin, which is believed to make up the suberin lamella, is similar in its properties to cutin, in that both are highly impervious to gases and water, are highly refractive as seen under the microscope, and resist the action of acids. Cork tissue in some few species, notably, *Quercus suber*, is elastic to a high degree, this quality depending in part upon the elasticity of the cell walls themselves and in part upon a change in the shape of the cells as the

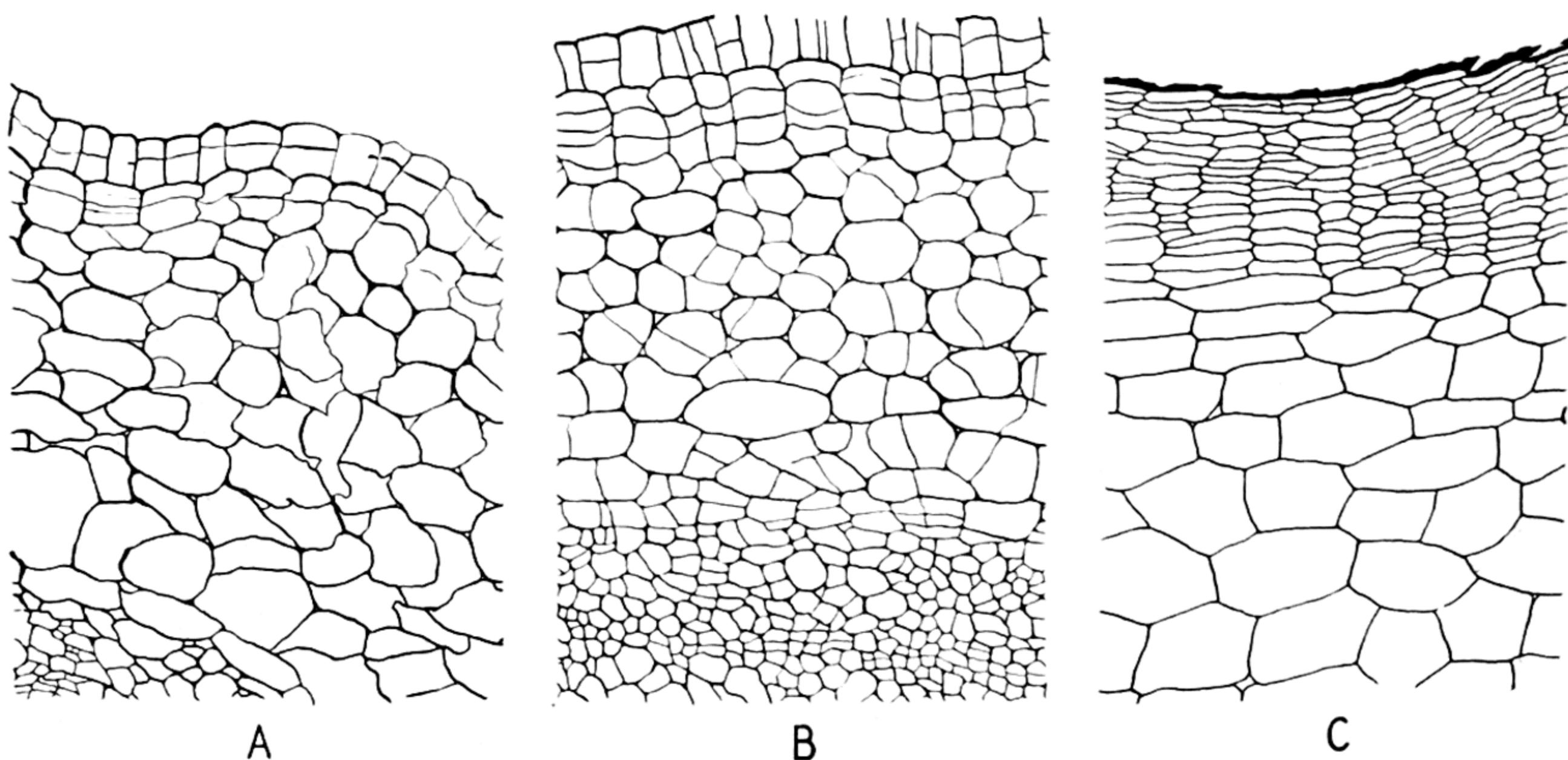


FIG. 114.—Periderm in the potato tuber (var. Irish cobbler). *A, B*, cross sections of outer part of young tuber, showing origin of periderm: *A*, two phellogen layers arising, one in the epidermis, one in the subepidermal layer; *B*, the inner phellogen dividing, the outer not developing. *C*, cross section of outer part of mature tuber showing thick phellem. (After Artschwager.)

stretching takes place. In the majority of plants, however, the cork tissue is both inextensible and inelastic. The prevention of water loss by the periderm is secured by the suberization of cell walls and compact arrangement of the cork cells.

— *Phelloderm*.—The cells of the phelloderm are living cells with cellulose walls. They are more or less loosely arranged and in most plants, do not differ from adjacent cortical cells except in their more or less definite arrangement in radial rows (Fig. 112*A*). In some species they function in photosynthesis and in starch storage. They are pitted like other parenchyma cells. Sclereids and other specialized cells occasionally occur in phelloderm. The term “secondary cortex” is sometimes applied to phelloderm, but is more often applied to periderm as a whole. The basis for the latter use is that as a protective layer it is a cortex in the



physiological sense. Since the periderm commonly develops secondarily in phloem, however, the term "cortex" cannot logically be applied to it. The use of the term "secondary cortex" in either sense is clearly inaccurate and undesirable.

✓ **Origin of the Periderm.**—The origin of the first phellogen layer to be formed on the young stem is always in mature living cells in the tissues

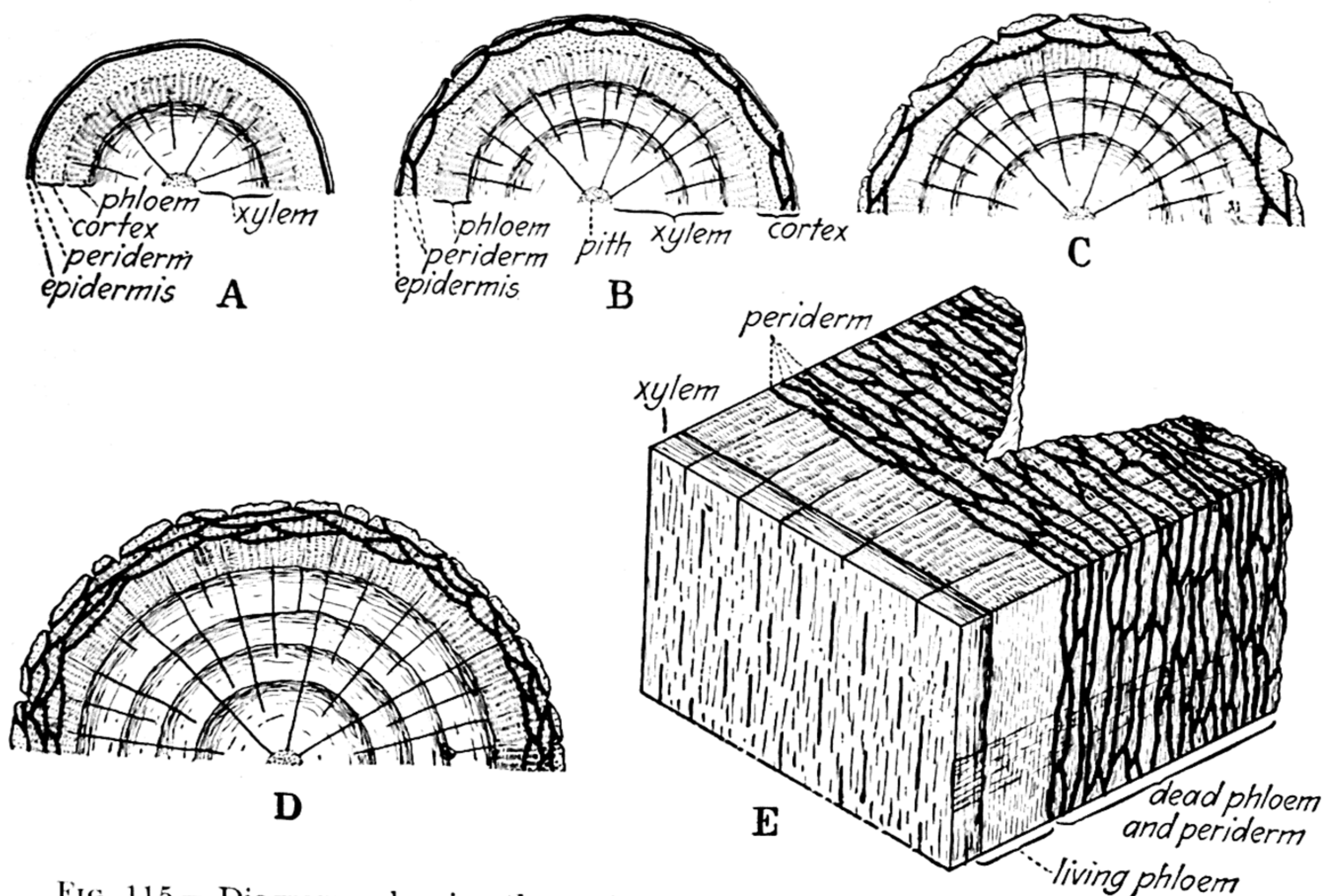


FIG. 115.—Diagrams, showing the position and extent of successively formed periderm layers in a typical woody stem. A, a one-year-old twig, the first periderm layer, a complete cylinder, formed beneath the epidermis; B, a two-year-old twig, the epidermis and first periderm ruptured and new, shell-shaped layers formed deeper in the cortex; C, a three-year-old stem, the outer tissues weathered away and more periderm layers formed still more deeply in the stem, invading the secondary phloem; D, a four-year-old stem, the cortex and outer secondary phloem with their periderm layers largely weathered away, the new cork layers invading the younger phloem; E, the outer tissues of an old tree trunk, showing the narrow band of young, living secondary phloem, and the thick, deeply fissured rhytidome made up of dead phloem and its many shell-shaped periderm layers; a considerable amount of similar tissue has weathered away.

outside the phloem. In many species, for example, *Malus pumila*, *Viburnum Lantana*, *Quercus suber*, and *Solanum Dulcamara* (Fig. 112B), the first layer of cork cambium is differentiated in the epidermis itself. More frequently, the phellogen layer is formed in the layer of cells just beneath the epidermis, as in *Populus* (Fig. 112A), *Magnolia* (Fig. 77), *Castanea*, *Ulmus*, and *Juglans*. When origin is in this position the epidermis is soon ruptured and disintegrates. In the potato tuber a phellogen arises in both the epidermis and the subepidermal layer (Fig. 114),



but the outer meristem does not function. Rarely, the first-formed cork cambium of stems has its origin deeper in the cortical tissues, or even in the pericycle, as in *Ribes* and *Thuja*. Under these conditions the outer tissues, deprived of food and water, soon die, are ruptured, and sloughed off.

With the increase in diameter of the stem and the consequent deep splitting of the outer tissue, including the first periderm bands, additional periderm layers are formed, progressively deeper in the stem. The newer layers are formed successively in the inner cortex, the pericycle, and the phloem (Fig. 115). In old stems all layers, after the first few, are formed in the secondary phloem; the majority of periderm layers in large branches and tree trunks have formed in secondary phloem. The formation of each periderm layer shuts off all tissues to the outside from food and water supply, so that soon after the initiation of a layer, all tissues outside of it die. As a result there is formed an outer "crust" of successive and overlapping layers of cork enclosing pockets of dead cortical or phloem tissue. These tissues make up the *rhytidome*, often known as *shell bark* and *scale bark* (Fig. 115D,E).

The many uses of the term *bark* have led to considerable confusion. In a nontechnical sense, bark is applied to the tissues which are readily removed when logs or twigs are peeled, that is, to those outside the cambium. Both "bark" and "outer bark" have been used to designate the superficial layers of dead tissue made up of periderm layers and enclosed tissues, and "inner bark" to designate the living phloem tissues next to the cambium. The term "inner bark" has also been applied to the cambium zone itself. Periderm alone is sometimes called "outer bark," as in *Betula*, and sometimes "the bark." Some authors have used "bark" as synonymous with "cortex" in the technical sense, and still others use "outer bark" in this sense. The further use of the term "bark" in a technical sense is obviously inadvisable. The term may best be restricted to nontechnical usage as designating all tissues outside the cambium, a usage already long-established. The more specific terms "cortex," "pericycle," "phloem," and "periderm" can well be employed in anatomical usage, and the term "rhytidome" may be used to indicate alternate layers of periderm and dead cortical or phloem tissues.

The age of the stem at which the formation of periderm starts varies with different species and with different environmental conditions. In woody twigs the first (outermost) periderm forms usually in the first season, the epidermis rupturing at that time. In some genera deeper periderm formation may also begin the first year. The first layer often suffices for a few seasons, after which the deeper layers form. The apple tree and the pear tree begin to form internal periderm in the sixth



to eighth year. Some species of *Populus* and *Prunus* retain their superficial smooth bark for twenty or thirty years or more, and *Fagus* and some other genera do not form internal periderm throughout the life of the plant.

In roots deep periderm formation is characteristic; the phellogen forms just beneath the endodermis. The first-formed periderm may persist as a continuous layer over the entire root system except near the tips. Adjustment to the increase in diameter of the root is secured by radial division of the phellogen cells and the living cells underneath. Underground roots of many species because of favorable conditions for decay, soon lose the dead outer tissues and have a continuous smooth outer surface of periderm, but roots exposed to the air develop a rough bark like that on the stem. In many herbaceous roots no periderm is formed, but the superficial layers become suberized.

✕ **Extent of the Periderm.**—Considered in its entirety, the periderm of woody plants covers the plant axis except slender, “fibrous” roots and the younger parts of roots and stems near the growing points. In twigs, the first-formed layer makes a continuous cylinder. In a few genera, for example, *Fagus* and some species of *Betula*, this first phellogen layer covers the trunks until they are old. In *Vitis*, the first and also later formed periderm layers form continuous sheets of tissue parallel with the outer surface, and concentric cylinders of cork result. But in most woody species the extent of later formed layers is only rarely as great as the first and usually is much less, sometimes only a few square centimeters. The longitudinal and circumferential extent of any one phellogen layer varies greatly with the species and the age of the axis. The central portion of such a restricted layer of periderm may be parallel with the outer surface of the stem, but its edges curve outward and meet the older, outer cork layers; in this way a lenticular scale of cortical or phloem tissue is cut off. The periderm layers formed at different times overlap or join each other so that together they form a continuous corky covering over the stem (Fig. 116). The innermost last-formed layers have a living phellogen. The outer periderm layers are lost through weathering or exfoliation or remain and build up the rhytidome (Fig. 115).

The periderm layer of roots is commonly a continuous layer covering the entire surface except the growing tips.

✓ **Duration of Periderm.**—The length of time that the first-formed periderm layers persist as functioning tissue varies greatly. In trees with smooth bark, for example, *Fagus*, *Carpinus*, and *Betula*—the original periderm may persist for a great many years or for the life of the tree. In these plants the increase in circumference of the periderm is accomplished by the radial division and subsequent enlargement of the phel-



logen cells. In the majority of woody plants, however, the first-formed periderm layer is replaced sooner or later by other periderm layers which arise successively deeper and deeper in the cortical, and ultimately in the phloem tissues (Fig. 115). These later formed phellogen layers are active for only a brief period of time; their component cells then mature to form cork cells. In *Vitis*, the successive periderm layers of the first few years are complete cylinders, and the outer cylinder is ruptured and sloughed away immediately, so that usually but one or two layers of phellem are present in the younger stems.



FIG. 116.—Inner (tangential) surface of rhytidome of *Pinus Strobus* with living phloem tissues weathered away exposing (face view) the overlapping shells or scales of the innermost periderm layers.

In plants in which a given periderm layer is active for only a brief period, there is no seasonal regularity of activity. On the other hand, in species with persistent, superficial periderm layers, for example, species of *Betula*, *Prunus* (Fig. 113D,E), and the cork oaks, *Quercus suber* and *Q. occidentalis*, there is seasonal variation in type of phellem cells formed by the cork cambium with the resultant formation of rather conspicuous bands or layers of cork which probably represent “annual rings” (Fig. 117B). This condition is readily visible in bottle cork, where the layers resemble the annual rings of xylem. In *Betula* also, the layering is prominent (Fig. 113D,E).

✓ **Commercial Cork.**—The development of the periderm layers in the cork oaks is of special interest. Here the phellogen first arises in the epidermis, forming externally masses of cork tissue and internally rela-



tively few phelloderm cells. This phellogen persists indefinitely. At the age of about twenty years, when the tree is about 40 cm in circumference, this outer layer, known as virgin cork, is removed by stripping, the separation being made probably through the phellogen layer, though possibly through the phelloderm. The underlying exposed phelloderm and cortical cells die, and a new phellogen layer is formed several millimeters deeper in the cortex. By this phellogen new cork is formed more rapidly than by the first layer, and after nine or ten years the new cork layer has attained sufficient thickness to be commercially valuable and is in turn

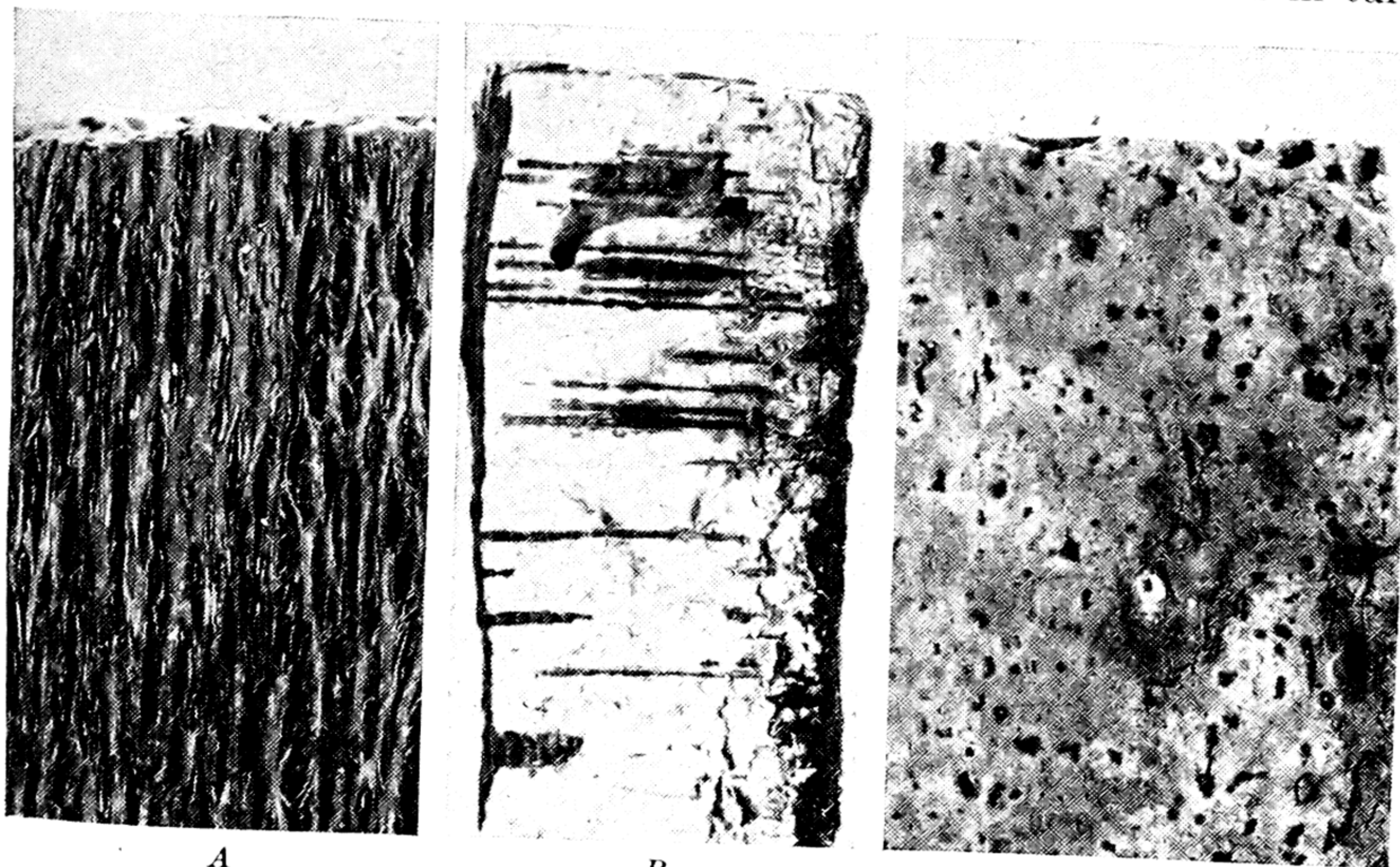


FIG. 117.—Phellem of *Quercus suber*, commercial cork as it comes from the tree. *A*, the weathered outer (tangential) surface, showing fibers and rays of the secondary phloem, tissues cut off and killed by the formation of the underlying phellem; *B*, cross section, showing "annual rings," and lenticels in longitudinal section, the torn phloem fibers of the outer surface; *C*, the smooth inner (tangential) surface, along which the layer was peeled from the trunk, showing cross sections of the lenticels.

removed. This cork is of better quality than the nearly useless virgin cork, but is not so good as that obtained at the third and subsequent strippings which take place at intervals of about nine years until the tree is 150 or more years old. After the successive strippings the new phellogen layers develop at greater and greater depth in the living tissue. The cortex is lost in the first few strippings and the subsequent cork layers form in the secondary phloem. A strip of "cork bark," therefore, has one smooth surface, the inner, where the phellogen was split (Fig. 117C), and one rough surface which has been cracked by weathering. Upon the rough surface there is apparent the remains of the secondary phloem



which was killed by exposure after the stripping of the previous layer (Fig. 117A). The cross section (Fig. 117B) shows the bands which are probably annual layers. This section and the tangential surface (Fig. 117C) show longitudinal and cross sections respectively of lenticels (page 262). If the trees are not stripped, the initial periderm layer probably persists indefinitely, forming cork of considerable thickness.

Most commercial cork probably is obtained from the cork oak, *Quercus suber*. The thin, tough sheets of cork from the canoe birch, *Betula papyrifera*, and related species, were important in the North American Indian civilization but are little used today. The properties which make commercial cork valuable are its imperviousness, its lightness, toughness, and elasticity.

\* **Morphology of the Periderm.**—All stages in the formation of periderm can be observed in a tree of considerable age. In a pear tree, for example, early in the growing season the new shoots are covered with epidermis only. Extending down the stem from these young shoots to a region six or eight years old is the zone covered by the first-formed superficial periderm, of epidermal origin, which gives a smooth, tan or gray-green surface. On the upper part of this zone the scaling remains of the epidermis can be seen. Below this is a comparatively short zone where the internal periderm has been formed in small areas, but where the outer layer has not yet been broken. The discoloration of the dead tissue cut out locally by the internal periderm layers gives the stems of this zone a blotchy appearance. The surface of the dead patches may be somewhat sunken because of the shrinkage of the dead tissue (Fig. 118A). This zone shades into a region of scaly bark where the outer scales have broken loose and are dropping off (Fig. 118B). Below this on large trunks the bark persists in weakly defined ridges, formed of periderm and dead phloem tissues.

The character of the older bark of different plants is dependent partly upon the number, extent, and nature of the periderm layers and partly upon the nature of the cortical and phloem tissues which are cut off by the successively formed phellogen layers. In many plants the outer phloem and the cortical tissues undergo extensive sclerification in which all parenchyma cells are converted into sclereids. This may take place in part before the tissues are cut off by the phellogen and in part afterward as the cells are dying. It is to these masses of sclerenchyma, together sometimes with firm or stony periderm cells, that the bark of species of *Quercus*, *Carya*, and of *Acer saccharum* owe their extreme hardness. Soft bark such as that of *Magnolia acuminata* and *Ulmus americana* has soft cork layers and few sclerenchyma masses.

Variations in the extent and firmness of the periderm layers account



in large part for the different methods of bark exfoliation. The "scale bark" of the younger parts of the trunk and branches of many trees, for example, *Acer rubrum* and *Pyrus communis* is the result of the formation of small, isolated periderm layers which cut off scales of tissue. The breaking of the bark of the shagbark hickory, *Carya ovata*, into narrow, persistent strips attached by their upper ends is due to the method of

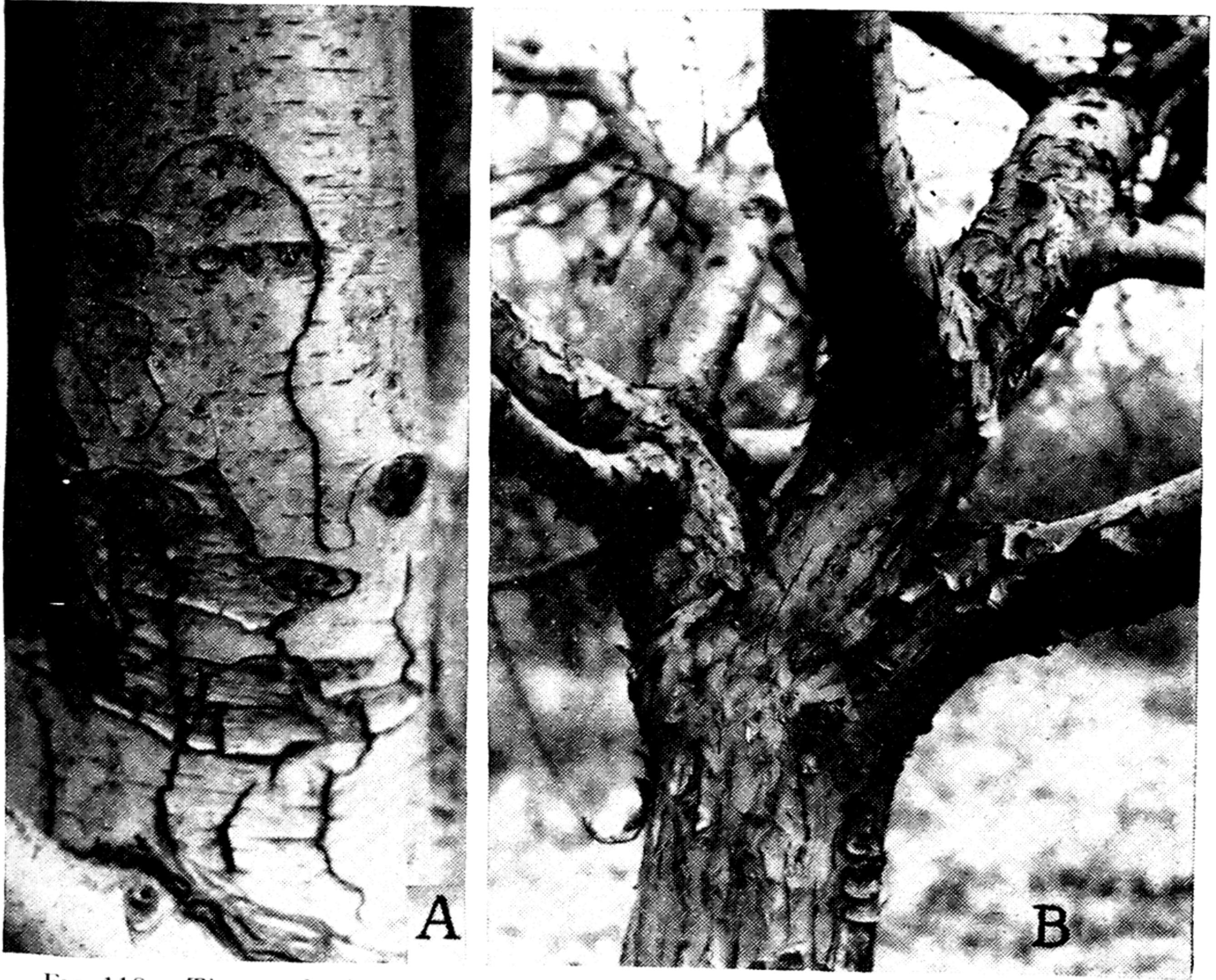


FIG. 118.—The trunk of young trees, *A*, *Pyrus communis*; *B*, *Malus pumila*, showing the cracking and scaling of the outer tissues. In *A*, the smooth, continuous, outer periderm is cracking, and small, restricted, inner periderm layers are beginning to form, two of which, just below the center of the figure, have "cut out" and killed patches of outer tissue; *B* shows stages ranging from that seen in *A* to that where the trunk is freely scaling over its entire surface.

splitting of long and narrow, vertical strips of periderm and to the abundance of fibers in the phloem. In some of the red oaks and many other trees, the periderm layers are firm throughout, and, as a result, the bark adheres tightly to the trunk without exfoliation, gradually disintegrating on the surface.

In some species the periderm forms definite abscission layers which bring about the shedding of the outer bark in sheets. In *Platanus*



*occidentalis* the outer bark of the trunk and larger limbs is cut off every spring in this way. The "ring bark" of *Vitis* is shed in a somewhat similar manner, but the outer tissues usually hang to the old vine in shreds for some time. Such exfoliation has been ascribed to two types of periderm formation: one in which a layer of thin-walled unsuberized cells is laid down by the phellogen between layers of firmer cork, and the other in which thick-walled lignified cells are formed between layers of thin-walled cork tissue. In both types the periderm layer splits under the action of moisture upon the unsuberized tissue and the strain set up by the increase in the diameter of the stem.

**Protective Layers in the Monocotyledons.**—In herbaceous monocotyledons a persisting epidermis with its cuticle, and often cutinized walls, is usually the only protective layer. When this is weakened or ruptured, the primary cortical cells beneath become secondarily suberized by the formation of a suberin lamella on the cellulose wall, as in typical cork cells. This occurs commonly in the Gramineae, Juncaceae, Typhaceae, and other families.

The long-lived stems of woody monocotyledons show a variety of structure in their external layers. Typical periderm formation is infrequent. In the royal palms (*Roystonea*), which have a smooth white trunk, a persistent periderm, with a layer of hard phellem, covers the entire surface. In species of *Cocos* and some other genera, successive continuous layers of periderm cut off the outer layers of the stem, including ends of leaf traces and some of the stem bundles, forming a rhytidome-like layer, somewhat resembling that of dicotyledons. Some woody genera, such as species of *Aloë*, that have specialized secondary thickening, have continuous outer layers of periderm, the phellem made up of layers of thin-walled cells alternating with thick-walled cells (Fig. 119C).

**Storied Cork.**—In many monocotyledons with secondary thickening—for example, *Dracaena*, *Cordyline*, *Curcuma*, some species of *Aloë*—the protective layer consists chiefly of *storied cork*. Such cork differs from the phellem of typical periderm in origin and in arrangement of its radial rows of cells. In typical periderm, the phellogen cells form continuous rows of closely similar phellem cells (Fig. 112A,B); in storied cork, the initials—primary cortical cells—lie in an irregular, often broken line, and each cell by tangential divisions forms a limited number (three to eight) of phellem cells. The cells of a row so formed differ in size and shape and show by their size and arrangement their origin from a single mother cell (Fig. 119A). Tangential bands of these cell rows form "stories." The bands are irregular in outline and indefinite in extent. They enclose undivided cortical cells, which become suberized, and may merge with other similar bands laterally or radially (Fig. 119B,C). Radial series of



bands formed in this manner constitute a type of cork probably restricted to monocotyledons.

Layers of storied cork form progressively deeper and deeper in cortical tissue but the margins of these do not join according to a characteristic pattern as in dicotyledons and conifers. The rhytidome formed in monocotyledons consists of alternating and overlapping, irregular layers of storied cork, suberized cortical cells, and unsuberized, crushed cortical cells (Fig. 119C). Such a layer is therefore a complex mass of protective tissue, lacking the completeness of phellem layers characteristic of the stems of woody plants of other groups.

✓ **The Function of Periderm.**—The principal function of the periderm is protection of the underlying tissues from drying out, effected by

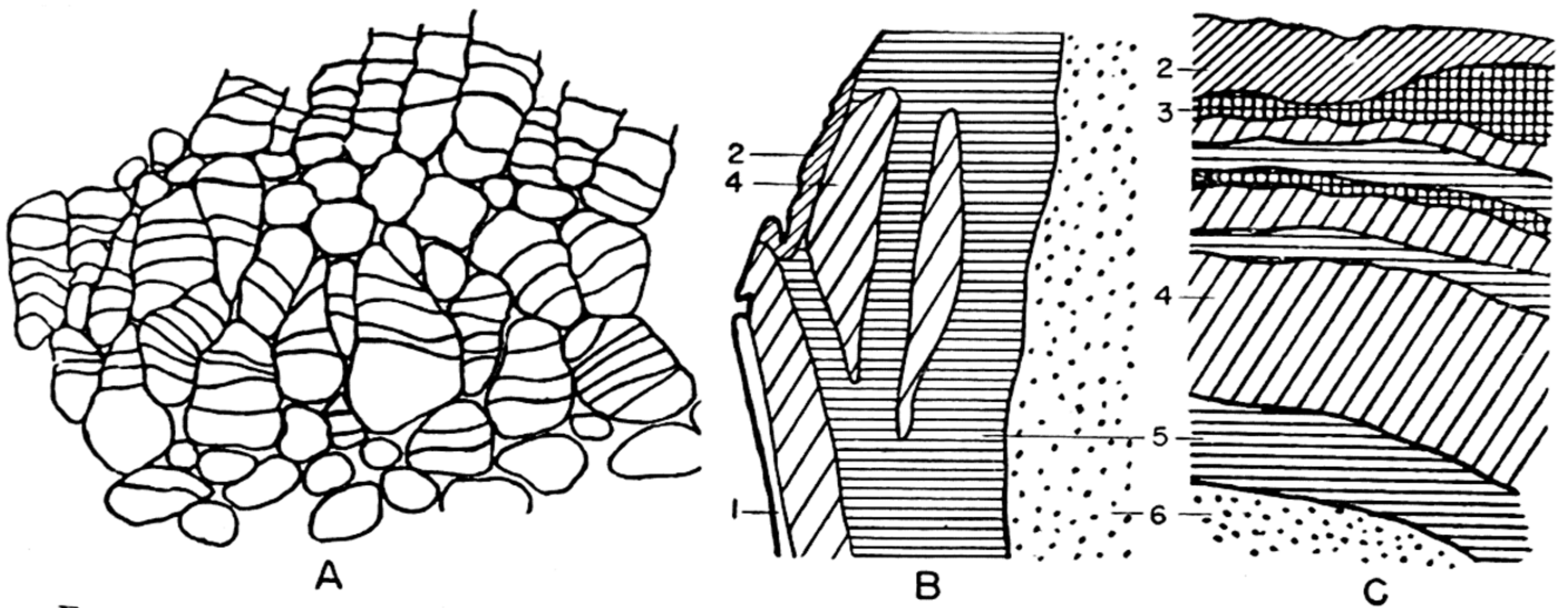


FIG. 119.—Protective layers in monocotyledons. A, *Curcuma longa*, transverse section of part of cortex showing storied cork—successive tangential divisions have occurred in an irregular layer of these cells; B, *Cordyline australis*, radial section of stem showing layer of storied cork (5) enclosing clusters of suberized, undivided cortical cells (4), 1, epidermis; C, *Cordyline indivisa*, transverse section of stem showing superficial layer of crushed cells (2), alternating tangential layers of cortical cells (3), suberized, undivided cortical cells (4), storied cork (5), and cortex (6). (After Philipp.)

maintenance of corky and suberized layers. Cork layers, when of considerable thickness, may also afford a certain amount of protection against mechanical injury to the tissues beneath. In addition to these functions, the periderm layers serve for the protection of various specialized structures or plant parts. Thus in fruits and tubers a periderm layer frequently takes the place of a heavily cutinized or cuticularized epidermis, as in the russet apple (Fig. 112C) and the common potato (Fig. 114). In some tropical fruits—for example, the sapodilla (*Achras zapota*) or the sapote (*Calocarpum mammosum*)—surface cork layers are well developed and give the fruit a gray-brown, somewhat rough appearance. Cork layers also occur on the dorsal side of bud scales of many woody plants, and as wings and ridges on many dry fruits (Fig. 171). They also occur rarely on leaves, as on the petioles of some species of *Ficus*.



**Wound Cork.**—One of the special functions of the periderm is the protection of wounds by the production of *wound cork*. Dead tissue is usually shut off from that which is healthy by a suberized layer formed from preexistent cells that become chemically changed. This change may be followed by formation of a phellogen layer in the layers of uninjured living parenchymatous tissues adjacent to the wound. This layer forms phellem and phelloderm in the normal way, thus sealing the wound. Such a layer not only prevents water loss from the wound, but also protects the healthy tissues against infection by fungi and bacteria for cork is particularly resistant to the action of microorganisms.

Wound cork may occur in any part of the plant though the readiness with which it is formed varies with the species, the organ or tissues concerned, and the environmental conditions. In general, wound cork forms more readily in woody plants and dicotyledons than herbaceous plants and monocotyledons. It develops only occasionally in leaves and rarely in sclerenchymatous tissue. Even where wound cork forms readily, as in the potato, a low temperature and low humidity may greatly retard its formation.

**Lenticels.**—In the periderm of nearly all plants, small restricted areas have loosely arranged cells with abundant, small intercellular spaces. These areas, known as *lenticels*, are thicker radially than the rest of the periderm layer because of the loose arrangement, the larger size, and possibly greater number of the cells.

*Distribution of Lenticels.*—Lenticels are conspicuous on twigs, and on other smooth-surfaced organs, as more or less raised, often somewhat corky spots where underlying tissues break through the epidermis. They are of almost universal occurrence on the stems of woody plants. Only a comparatively small number of these have been reported to be without them, among them *Philadelphus*, *Tecoma radicans*, *Vitis vinifera*, and some others, mostly vines, which shed the outer layers of bark annually, and thus maintain new tissues in close relation to the outer air. Lenticels are also found on many roots. The large lenticels of *Morus alba* are conspicuous features of the orange-colored surface. The so-called “dots” on apples and plums are familiar examples of lenticels on fruit.

The number of lenticels per unit of surface area varies greatly with different species. In some plants a lenticel forms beneath each stoma or group of stomata and the number of lenticels is therefore dependent upon the number of stomata or groups of stomata. In other plants lenticels may form between the stomata, if stomata are few or if stomata are abundant, lenticels may form under only a small proportion of them. In stems, lenticels are usually scattered, but are occasionally in vertical or horizontal rows. Where there are large multiseriate vascular rays,



rows of lenticels may be found opposite these bands of tissue, suggesting that the ray and the lenticel together may form radial passageways for gaseous interchange between the inner tissues and the external atmosphere. In roots, lenticels occur in pairs, one on each side of a lateral

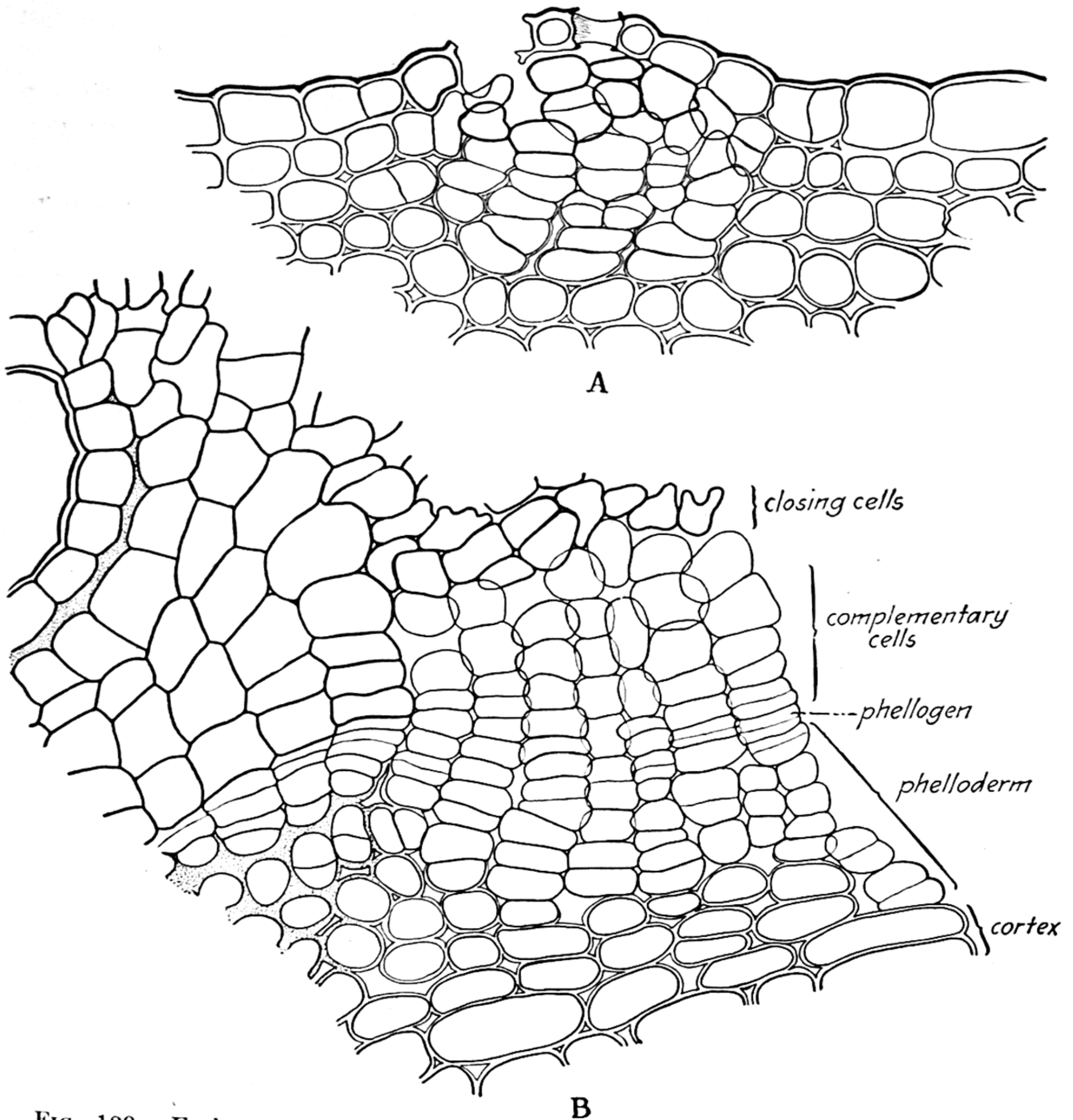


FIG. 120.—Early stages in lenticel formation. A, the lenticel phellogen has just arisen beneath a stoma, and the development of the first complementary cells has broken the epidermis; B, the lenticel (only one-half shown) is well developed. (After Devaux.)

rootlet. In storage roots, for example, the carrot, the lenticels occur in vertical rows in the position of the rows of secondary roots.

*The Origin of Lenticels.*—Lenticels on young stems commonly originate beneath stomata (Fig. 120) just previous to, or coincident with, the forma-



tion of the first periderm layer. Inasmuch as the lenticel is a part of the periderm, and the formation of the normal periderm usually spreads outward from the edges of the lenticel, the initiation of the periderm may be said to start with lenticel formation. The time of lenticel formation varies in different species with the duration of the epidermis. In the majority of plants, lenticel formation occurs during the first growing season and sometimes even before growth in length has ceased.

In lenticel formation in stems, the cells immediately below the stoma, or group of stomata, divide in different planes forming a mass of rounded, thin-walled cells known as *complementary tissue*. These early divisions are followed sooner or later by the differentiation in the adjoining inner

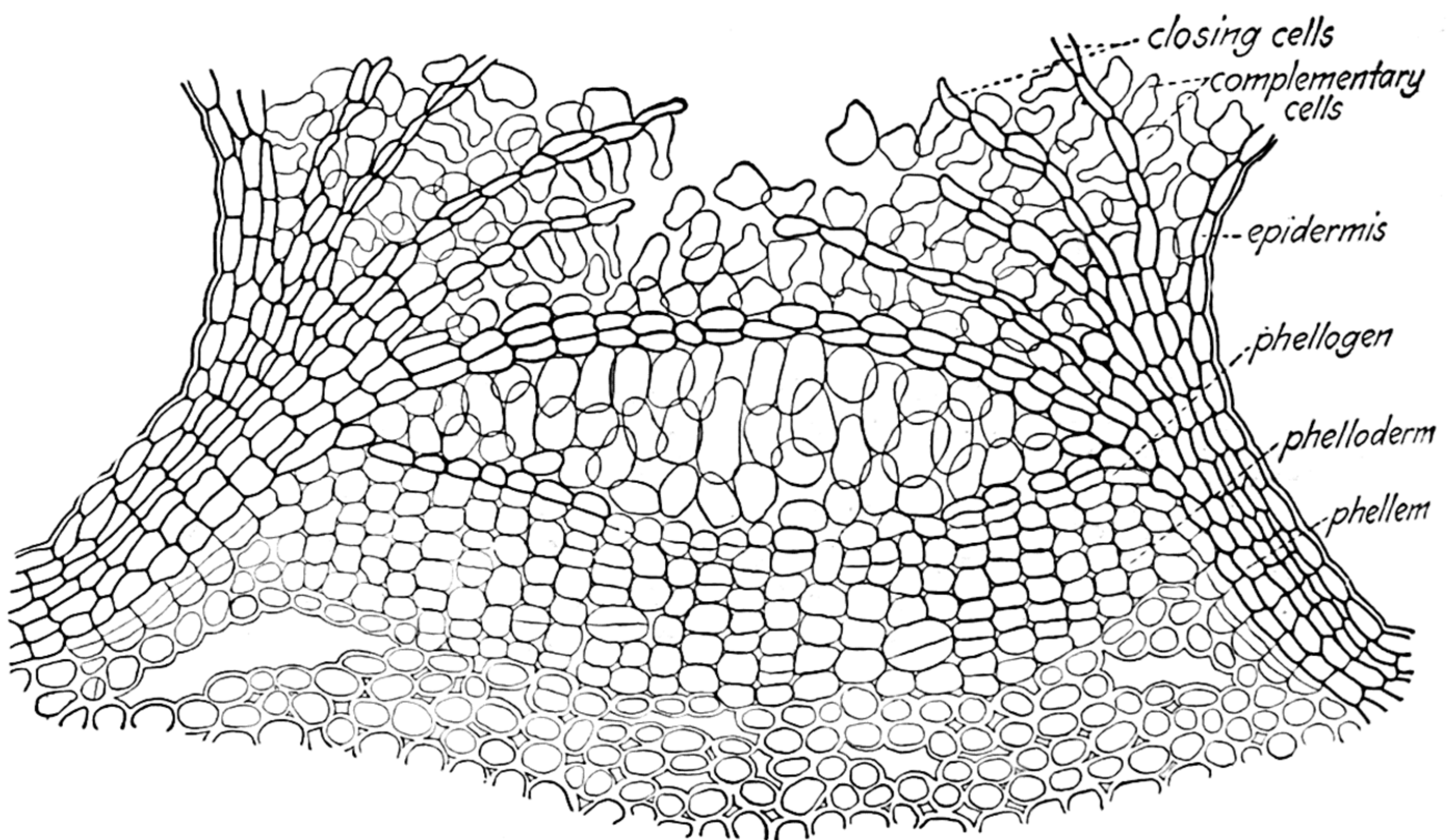


FIG. 121.—Lenticel of *Prunus avium* in transverse section of stem. A number of successive layers of complementary and closing tissue have been formed, and the large layer of phelloderm dips inward into the cortex. (After Devaux.)

tissue of a normal phellogen layer in which divisions are in the tangential plane only. The young complementary cells enlarge in size, lose their chlorophyll, and later their protoplasts, finally becoming colorless and light. Additional complementary cells are formed beneath the first by the phellogen. The formation of any considerable mass of such cells ruptures the epidermis through the stoma over the growing tissues (Fig. 120A) and exposes the mass of complementary tissue. With the continued growth of the phellogen, the epidermis around the opening of the lenticels is thrust back as flaps of tissue allowing pale masses of complementary cells to protrude (Fig. 120B).

*Structure of Lenticels.*—The lenticel, as a complete structure, is usually a lens-shaped mass of tissue bulging somewhat into the cortical parenchyma



on the inside and raising the surface of the organ on the other (Figs. 121, 122). According to the orientation on the axis of the breaks in the epidermis, lenticels are called transverse or longitudinal. In roots, lenticels are always transverse; in stems, they may be transverse or longitudinal. Orientation of lenticels is related to the type of vascular ray within—transverse lenticels tend to be associated with uniseriate rays and vertically short rays; longitudinal lenticels tend to be related to elongated rays and so-called “compound rays.”

In the development of lenticels, the phellogen does not form normal suberized phellem cells but gives rise to large numbers of unsuberized cells. All the cells formed to the outside may be of the same type—the thin-walled, more or less rounded, cells of complementary tissue—or the

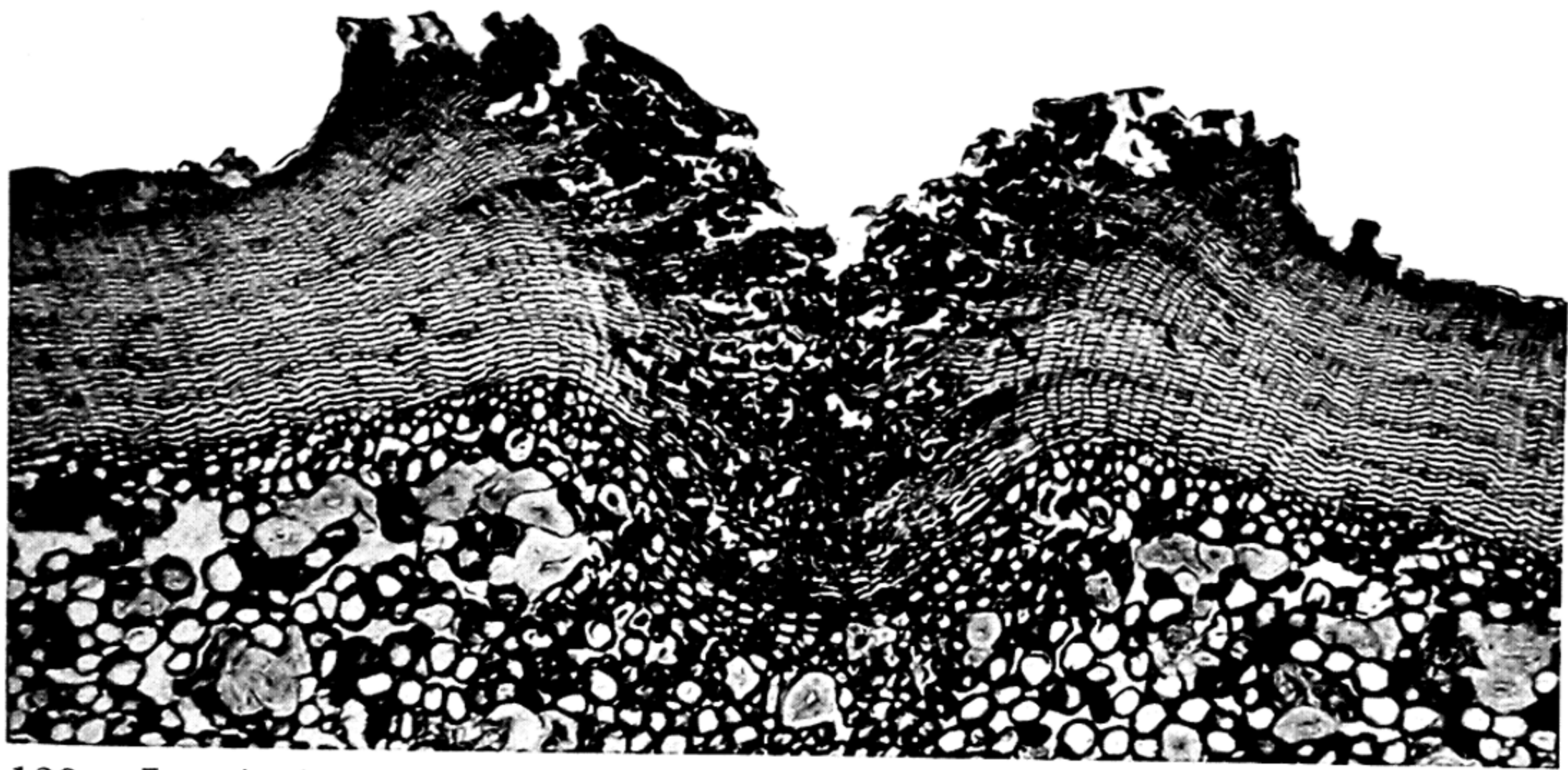


FIG. 122.—Lenticel, several years old, of a young stem of *Prunus serotina* in transverse section of the stem, showing relation to periderm, alternate layers of closing and complementary cells, and the layering of the periderm.

masses of complementary tissue may alternate with bands of denser, more compact tissue known as *closing layers*.

The cells of the complementary tissue are only loosely attached to each other, so that abundant radial air passageways are present. Two types of this tissue are recognized: one in which the cells are more or less firmly united, forming a fairly compact tissue, for example, in *Salix* and *Ginkgo*; the other in which the complementary tissue is composed of almost wholly unattached cells, which give the tissue a powdery consistency. Examples of this latter type are found in the stems of *Betula* and *Prunus* (Figs. 121, 122), and in the roots of *Morus*. Here the masses of powdery complementary tissue are held in place by the closing layers which although sufficiently dense to hold the looser complementary tissues in place are traversed by radial air passages as is also the phellogen layer itself. With the continued formation of new masses of complementary cells, the closing layers are ruptured. During the growing



season the lenticel is filled chiefly with complementary cells; all closing layers are ruptured. At the end of the growing season the lenticel is "closed" by the formation of a closing layer which closes the passages except for the minute intercellular spaces between these cells. In the spring the rapid development of complementary tissue breaks open the closing layer.

*Duration of Lenticels.*—The duration of a lenticel depends upon the formation of internal periderm. In those plants which form internal periderm early, the lenticel may be cut off early and lost by the exfoliation of the outer tissues. On the other hand, in plants with persistent superficial periderm layers, such as *Betula* and *Prunus avium*, the lenticel may persist for a great many years. In such species the lenticels become greatly elongated tangentially, due to the increase in circumference of the periderm layer accompanying secondary growth. The phellogen layer of the lenticel is increased in extent by radial division of its cells at about the same rate as is that of the surrounding periderm. The elongated lenticels form conspicuous markings on the smooth bark of birch and cherry trees and the roots of *Morus*.

With the formation of internal periderm, new lenticels are formed by the specialized functioning of special areas in the phellogen. The lenticels in the deeper layers occur beneath the cracks in the outer bark and gaseous interchange takes place through them. Lenticels on rough bark surfaces are not readily seen. In *Quercus suber*, where the layer of phellem may be several centimeters thick, the lenticels persist, forming cylindrical masses of loose complementary tissue reaching to the surface (Fig. 117B,C). This lenticel tissue forms the spots of dark, porous, crumbling tissue in commercial cork. Because of the presence of these pervious radial cylinders of tissue, bottle corks are cut vertically from the cork sheet so that the lenticel cylinders extend transversely through them. Because sheets of cork as they come from the tree are rarely more than 3 cm thick, cork with a diameter greater than that cannot be obtained by cutting in the usual manner. Corks of large diameter are sometimes cut radially from the sheet but in these the lenticels run longitudinally in the cork and the cork is not "tight." Large corks are usually cut from sheets of ground and compressed cork or from "multiple sheets" composed of layers cemented together. Such corks are of low quality.

#### ABSCISSION

In vascular plants the loss of various plant parts is a common occurrence. In annual herbaceous plants, this may be no more than the loss of bracts or floral parts. In perennials in which there is seasonal renewal of growth, particularly in woody plants, there is continual death and



from the abscission of leaves of herbaceous plants. A separation layer is formed, but not long in advance of the fall of the floral appendage, nor is there the specialization and differentiation of layers associated with leaf abscission in woody dicotyledons.

② **The Abscission of Stems.**—In addition to the abscission of leaves and other appendages, most plants lose parts of the stem by abscission. These parts may be immature or herbaceous stems in which there is little hard vascular tissue or sclerenchyma, as in flowers and young fruits, or they may be mature and woody with well-developed hard tissues such as the foliage branches of poplar and elm, the fruit-cluster stalks of horsechestnut, and the pedicels of mature fruits of apple, pear, plum, and walnut.

Conditions unfavorable to growth hasten or bring about abscission whereas favorable conditions tend to delay or prevent abscission. Lack of pollination and of fertilization may cause the fall of flowers; unfavorable growth conditions may cause young fruits to fall. (The factors causing early or late fall of mature fruit are not fully understood.) Some senile parts may be lost by abscission.

③ **Abscission of Immature and Herbaceous Stems.**—In stems in which the tissues are soft, no definite abscission zone is apparent, and the separation layer forms immediately before abscission. The location of this separation layer is variable, even in a given plant: in the apple flower, for example, the separation layer may form anywhere in the basal region of the pedicel. The cells of the separation layer undergo changes similar to those described in leaf abscission. Abscission occurs in this simple way by the formation of a separation layer just before the cutting off of flowers and young fruits and of the tips of leafy stems. The cutting off of the tips of leafy stems is characteristic of many genera that have indeterminate growth, for example *Ailanthus*, *Morus*, and *Ulmus*.

**Abscission of Woody Stems.**—In woody plants only a small proportion of the twigs and small branches persist in a living condition for more than a few years. In most species the dead twigs and small branches cling to the larger branches or trunks until they are mechanically broken off or decay. In other plants, for example, *Populus*, *Ulmus*, *Quercus*, and *Agathis*, the shedding of branches is brought about by abscission. In these plants a definite abscission zone is present in which the hard tissues are greatly reduced and modified and through which a separation layer is formed. In *Populus*, *Ulmus*, and some other genera, the majority of the branches, cut off by abscission toward the end of the growing season, are living and many have leaves attached. The age at which branches are shed varies: in *Populus alba*, abscised branches range in age from 1 to 20 years; in *Ulmus americana* abscised branches are rarely older than 7 or 8



years. The size of abscised branches also varies with the species. In *Populus* the largest are about two centimeters in diameter at the scar; in *Agathis* and *Castilloa*, up to five centimeters in diameter.

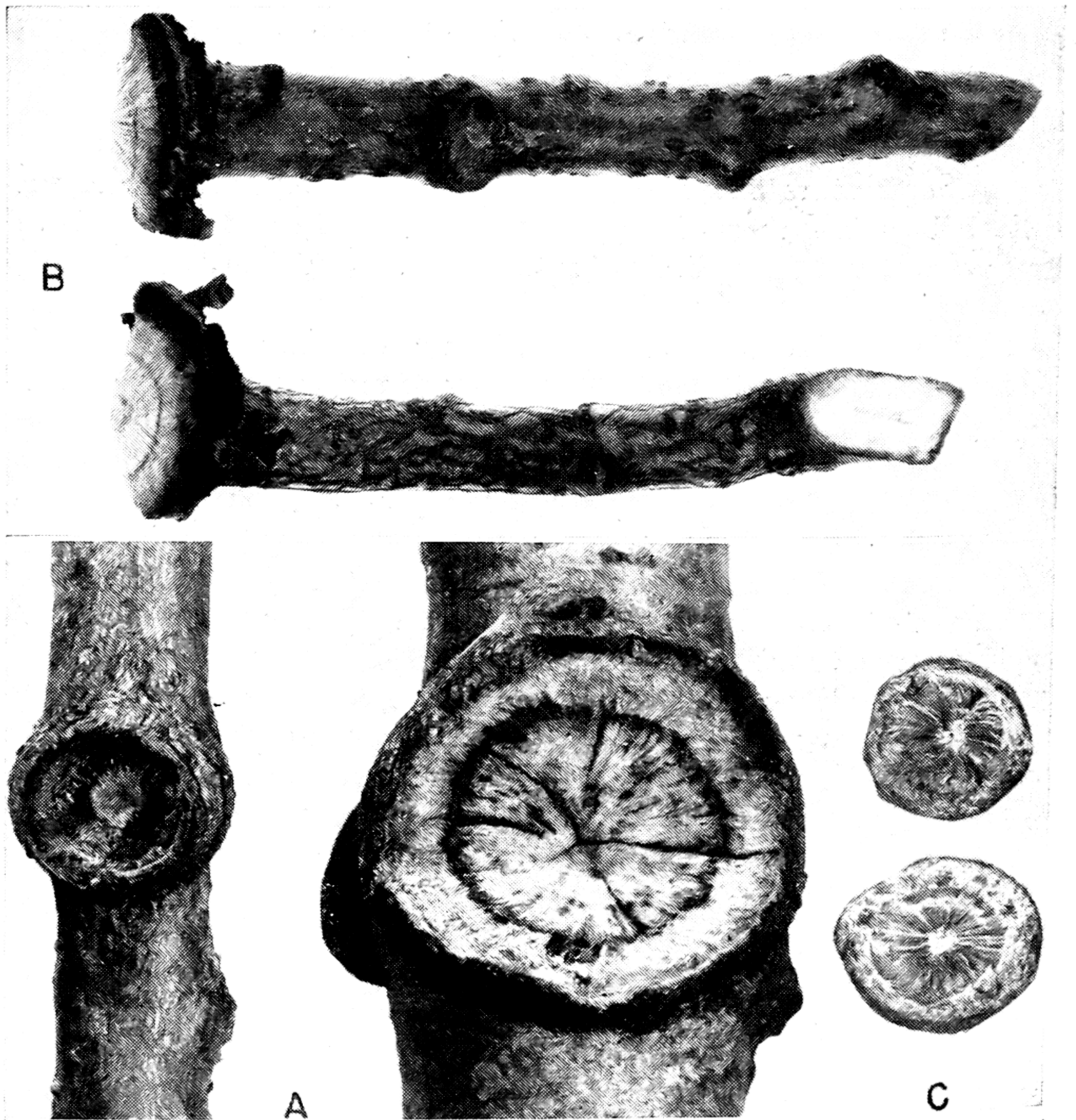


FIG. 124.—Abscission scars on branches of *Populus*, showing smooth surface. A, main branch showing concave ("socket") scar in face view; B, lateral branches showing swollen bases and convex ("ball") scar in side view; C, scars on abscised branches in face view. (Natural size.)

Abscission of woody stems is best described by examples. In *Populus grandidentata*, the smaller limbs are swollen at the base where they are attached to the trunk or main branches (Fig. 124). This swelling consists largely of thickened parenchymatous cortex in which stone cells, but no fibers, are present (Fig. 125A). In the xylem, the vessels of this region are reduced in number and are conspicuously modified, with



abundant scalariform or reticulate pits instead of the usual circular pits (Fig. 125*B*). The vessels, fibers, and other cells are less strongly lignified, with their walls apparently mostly of cellulose as indicated by their staining reactions. Parenchyma cells are more abundant than elsewhere in the xylem. Through the living cells of this zone—both those of the xylem and those of the other regions—the separation layer

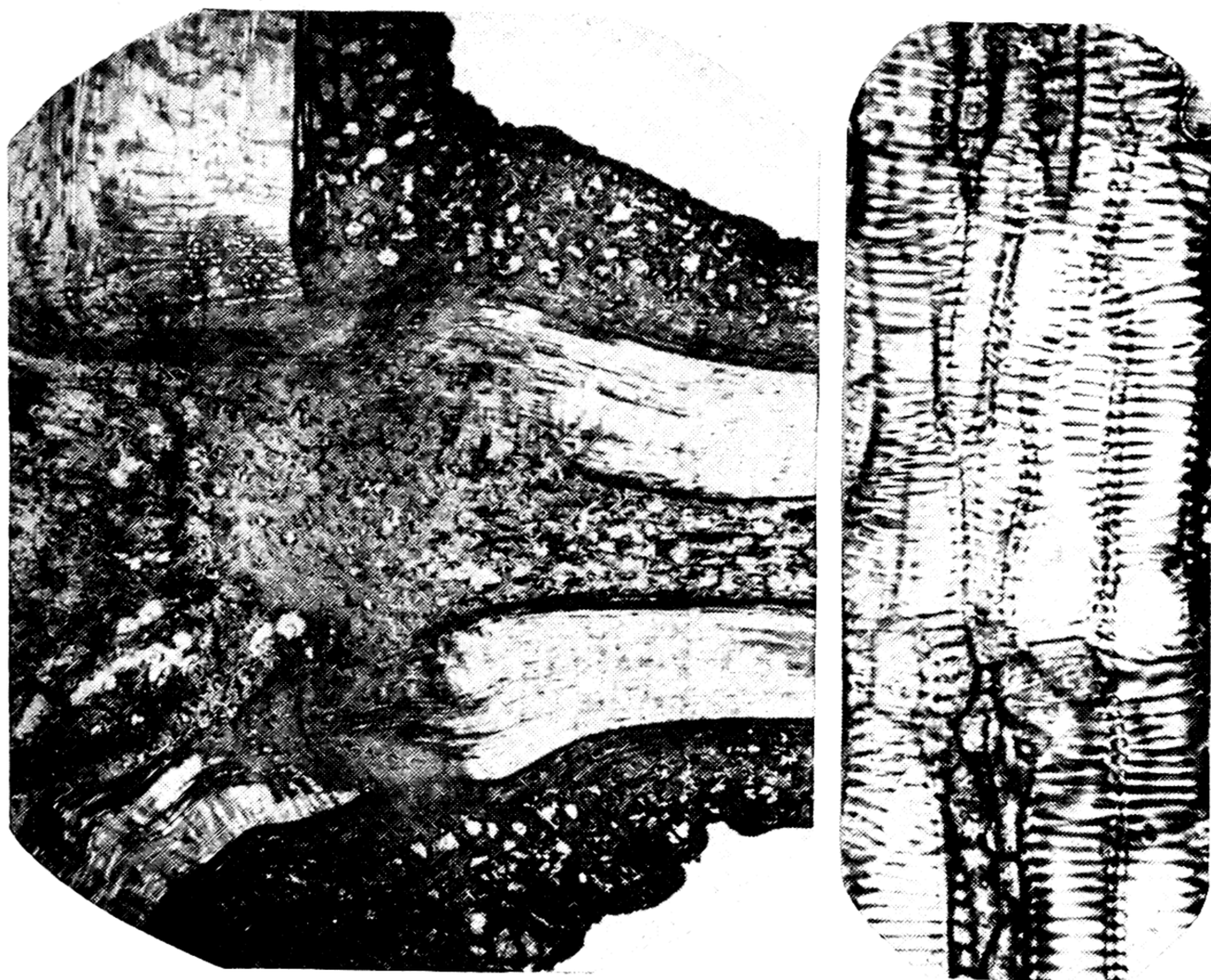


FIG. 125.—Branch abscission in *Populus*. A, radial section of lateral and main branch showing abscission zone with lateral branch swollen at base, parenchymatous cortex with sclereids but lacking fibers, and the modified xylem cylinder at the base of the lateral branch; B, scalariform-pitted vessels from the abscission zone in A at higher magnification.

is formed. Those xylem cells in which the separation layer does not form—the weakly lignified vessels and fibers—rupture easily because of their chemical nature and the transverse scalariform pitting.

When the branch falls, the surfaces of the two scars are smooth (Fig. 124) because the separation extends chiefly through living cells of the vascular tissue; and their surfaces follow the curved separation layer (Fig. 124*A,B*). The two surfaces are related to each other as those of a ball and socket joint—the scar of the abscised branch has a convex



surface; that of the main branch a concave surface (Fig. 124A,B). Following the fall of the branch, or possibly even before its separation, a periderm layer, which is continuous with the periderm of the main branch, is formed in the living tissue just below the face of the scar.

The formation of an abscission zone in lateral branches does not necessarily result in their shedding. In *Populus*, although a well marked

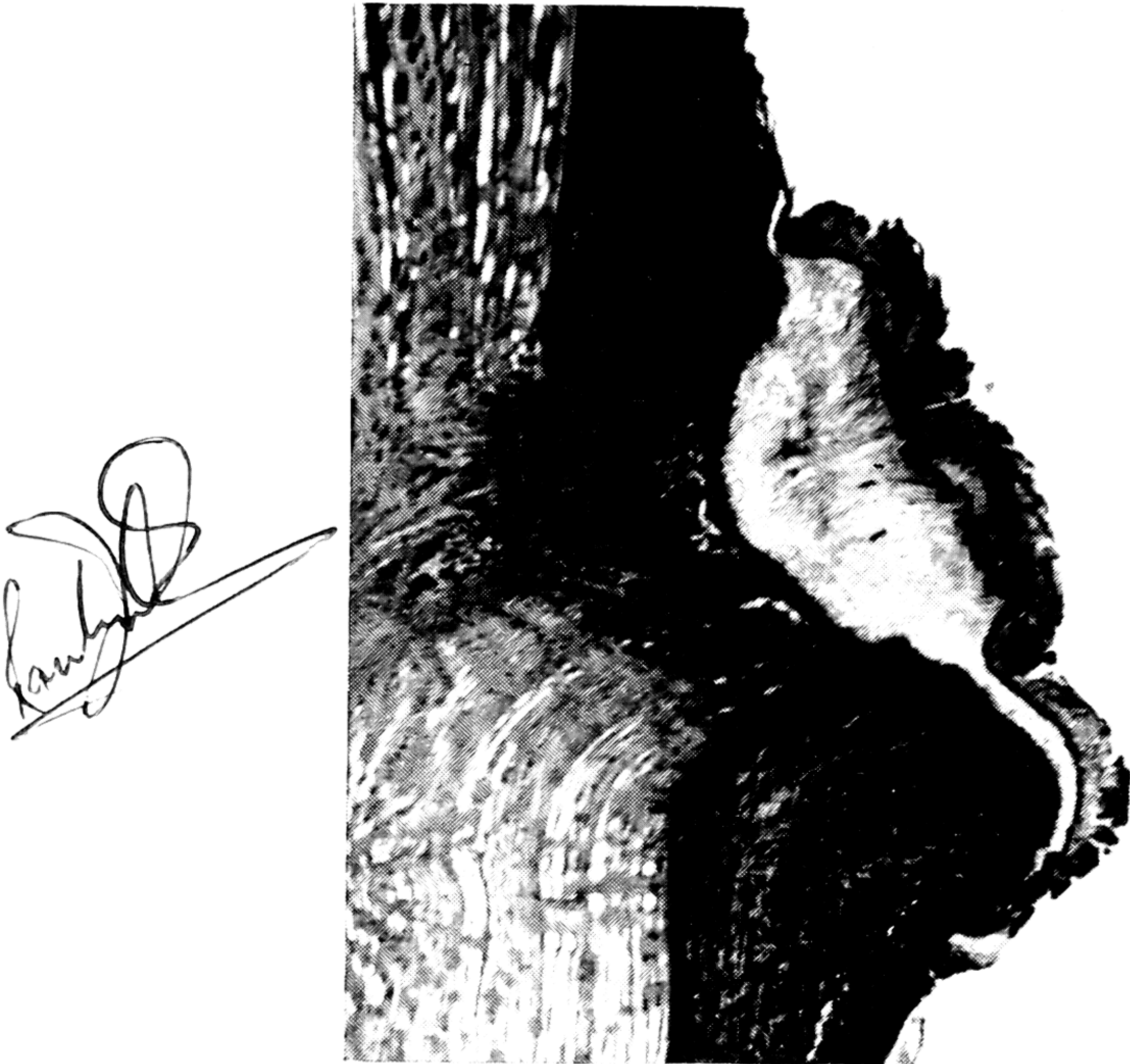


FIG. 126.—Radial section of *Ulmus americana* through region of branch-abscission after development of protective layer of periderm. The periderm (light-colored tissue) extends over the entire scar area. On its external surface are the ragged remnants of vascular tissue and cortex cut off by the phellogen which arose some distance below the wound surface. The phellem is thick over the stele, filling the central concave area, and thin in the cortical regions.

abscission zone is formed in all the lateral branches while they are small, those branches that receive abundant light and make rapid growth are not shed, and this weak zone of soft tissue is buried and reinforced by later formed annual rings of normal xylem. When these older branches die, they are not cut off but remain until they are lost by decay.

In species of *Ulmus* and *Quercus*, the process of abscission is much the same as in *Populus*, but the position of periderm formation over the wound is deep in the abscission zone (Fig. 126). In *Dirca palustris*, the



periderm, functioning in much the same manner as a separation layer, forms beneath the scar cutting off the ends of the severed vessels and fibers.

A breaking away of living twigs different from the abscission described above is present in some species of *Salix*, for example, *S. nigra* and *S. fragilis*. No separation layer is formed, but somewhat above the base of the small twigs, there is a weak zone. In this zone the cortex is considerably thicker than in the normal internode, and the cortex and phloem lack fibrous sclerenchyma, which is abundant in these tissues elsewhere in the twig. The xylem of this region is less strongly lignified than in the normal internode. Because of these structural weaknesses, mechanical stress causes rupture of the twig straight across the weak zone. The fall of the branch is not followed by the formation of a smooth periderm layer over the wound as in species whose branches are abscised. The base of the branch persists as a dead stub and is eventually buried by secondary growth of the main stem. Under favorable conditions twigs in which these weak zones are present—like those with abscission zones—persist indefinitely and with addition of xylem each year become strong branches.

In the pedicel of the mature apple fruit an abscission zone is present where the pedicel joins the fruit cluster base. The specialization of this zone is comparable to that of abscission zones of woody branches generally, with reduced fibrous and vascular tissue and increased parenchyma. At the point where the separation layer is formed the pedicel is constricted and here rupture occurs through the separation layer and the weak vascular tissues.

Entire mature inflorescences may be similarly cut off, as in chestnut, oak, willow, or they may remain attached to the parent plant until they are lost by weathering or decay, as in sumach and lilac.

#### References

- ARTSCHWAGER, E. F.: Anatomy of the potato plant, with special reference to the ontogeny of the vascular system, *Jour. Agr. Res.*, **14**, 221–252, 1918.
- : Studies on the potato tuber, *Jour. Agr. Res.*, **27**, 809–835, 1924.
- BLOCH, R.: Wound healing in higher plants, *Bot. Rev.*, **7**, 110–146, 1941.
- CLEMENTS, H. F.: The morphology and physiology of the pome lenticels of *Pyrus Malus*, *Bot. Gaz.*, **97**, 101–117, 1935.
- DEVAUX, H.: Recherches sur les lenticelles, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 8 sér., **12**, 1–240, 1900.
- DOULIOT, H.: Recherches sur le periderm, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 7 sér., **10**, 325–395, 1889.
- FOUILLOY, E.: Sur la chute des feuilles de certaines monocotylédones, *Rev. Gén. Bot.*, **11**, 304–309, 1899.
- GILSON, E.: La subérine et les cellules du liège, *La Cellule*, **6**, 67–114, 1890.
- HÖHNEL, VON, F. R.: Ueber den Ablösungsvorgang der Zweige einiger Holzgewächse und seine anatomischen Ursachen, *Mitt. Förstlich. Versuchswesen Oesterr.*, **1**, 255–282, 1878.



- : Ueber den Kork und verkorkte Gewebe überhaupt, *Sitzungsber. Kais. Akad. Wiss.*, **76**, 507–662, 1877.
- KLEBAHN, H.: Die Rindenporen. Ein Beitrag zur Kenntniss des Baues und der Function der Lenticellen und der analogen Rindenbildungen, *Jenaische Zeitsch. Naturwiss.*, **17**, 537–592, 1884.
- KUHLA, F.: Ueber Entstehung und Verbreitung des Phelloderms, *Bot. Centralbl.*, **71**, 81–87, 113–121, 161–170, 193–200, 225–230, 1897.
- LEE, E.: The morphology of leaf fall, *Ann. Bot.*, **25**, 51–106, 1911.
- LLOYD, F. E.: Abscission in *Mirabilis Jalapa*, *Bot. Gaz.*, **61**, 213–230, 1916.
- MACDANIELS, L. H.: Some anatomical aspects of apple flower and fruit abscission, *Proc. Amer. Soc. Hort. Sci.*, **34**, 122–129, 1937.
- MASSART, J.: La cicatrisation chez les végétaux, *Mém. Cour. et autres Mém. Acad. Roy. Belgique*, **57**, 3–68, 1898.
- MOHL, VON, H.: Ueber die anatomische Veränderungen des Blattgelenkes welche das Abfallen der Blätter herbeiführen, *Bot. Zeit.*, **18**, 1–7, 9–17, 1860.
- : Einige nachträgliche Bemerkungen zu meinem Aufsätze über den Blattfall, *Bot. Zeit.*, **18**, 132–133, 1860.
- : Ueber den Ablösungsprocess saftiger Pflanzenorgane, *Bot. Zeit.*, **18**, 273–277, 1860.
- MYLIUS, G.: Das Polyderm. Eine vergleichende Untersuchung über die physiologischen Scheiden: Polyderm, Periderm, und Endodermis, *Bibl. Bot.*, **79**, 1–119, 1913.
- NAMIKAWA, I.: Contributions to the knowledge of abscission and exfoliation of floral organs, *Jour. Coll. Agr. Hokkaido Imp. U.*, **17**, 63–131, 1926.
- OLIVIER, L.: Recherches sur l'appareil tégumentaire des racines, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 6 sér., **11**, 5–133, 1881.
- PARKIN, J.: On some points in the histology of monocotyledons, *Ann. Bot.*, **12**, 147–154, 1898.
- PFEIFFER, H.: Die pflanzlichen Trennungsgewebe, In Linsbauer, K.: "Handbuch der Pflanzenanatomie," V, 1928.
- PHILIPP, M.: Über die verkorkten Abschlussgewebe der Monokotylen, *Bibl. Bot.*, **92**, 1–28, 1924.
- PRIESTLEY, J. H., and L. M. WOFFENDEN: Physiological studies in plant anatomy, V, Causal factors in cork formation, *New Phyt.*, **21**, 252–268, 1922.
- SAMPSON, H. C.: Chemical changes accompanying abscission in *Coleus Blumei*, *Bot. Gaz.*, **66**, 32–53, 1918.
- TISON, A.: Recherches sur la chute des feuilles chez les dicotyledonées, *Mém. Soc. Linn. de Normandie*, **20**, 121–327, 1900.
- VAN TIEGHEM, P.: Sur les diverses sortes de méristèles corticales de la tige, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 9 sér., **1**, 33–44, 1905.
- WEISSE, A.: Ueber Lenticellen und verwandte Durchlüftungseinrichtungen bei Monocotylen, *Ber. Deut. Bot. Ges.*, **15**, 303–320, 1897.
- WETMORE, R. H.: Organization and significance of lenticels in dicotyledons, *Bot. Gaz.*, **82**, 71–88, 113–131, 1926.



## CHAPTER X

### THE ROOT

That part of the plant axis which normally develops beneath the surface of the soil is commonly called the "root" as distinguished from the aerial portion of the axis, the stem. There are, of course, roots that are aerial and stems that develop underground, but from the standpoint of anatomy, there are fundamental differences between root and stem in the arrangement and method of development of the primary tissues: the primary xylem in the root is exarch, as contrasted with the endarch condition in the stem (typical of gymnosperms and angiosperms); and the root has radial arrangement of vascular tissue, with alternating strands of xylem and phloem, whereas the bundles of stems are collateral, bicollateral, or concentric. Roots differ further from stems in that they do not have appendages comparable with leaves, do not give rise directly to flowers, lack stomata, and form lateral branches from relatively permanent tissue in the pericycle, rather than from the promeristem at the growing point. Other differences are the presence of the root cap, a structure wholly lacking in stems; the almost universal occurrence of an endodermis, which is frequently lacking in stems; and the usual pericycle origin of the initial periderm layer in roots, a condition found only rarely in the normal aerial axis.

**Function of the Root.**—The function of the root is twofold. Physiologically the root is the absorbing organ of the plant, taking up water and mineral salts in solution and conducting them to the stem; it also serves as a storage organ for food materials translocated to the root from the leaves. Mechanically, the root anchors the plant and holds the stem in a position that makes possible the support of a large leaf surface. It is structurally effective for support in its tensile strength, flexibility, and extensive ramification through the soil. Absorption takes place for the most part by diffusion through the walls of the root hairs, although in some plants—for example, species of *Ranunculus*—root hairs are wanting, and water enters the root directly through the thin-walled epidermis. Water may be also absorbed through the epidermis of the root in the region distal to the zone of root hairs. Usually the older roots and those in which secondary thickening has taken place are incapable of absorption because of the presence of periderm and serve only for con-



4/15/57

duction, support, and storage. Storage may take place in the cortex, phloem, and xylem of typical roots or in specialized fleshy roots, such as the sweet potato and carrot. There is also abundant starch in the roots of herbaceous perennials during the season when the tops are dormant or wanting.

**Gross Morphology of Roots.**—Roots show great variation in form and structure. This variation may be directly related to function or may be characteristic of the species. Roots with obvious function or structure are described as storage, fleshy, fibrous, aquatic, brace, tap, aerial, and holdfast. Different species have in general root systems of a characteristic structure and habit but environment, particularly soil moisture and soil type, may cause considerable variation. For example, plants growing in dry soils usually have much more extensive root systems than plants of the same species growing in moist soils. In a natural environment in which are living various kinds of plants a variety of root systems occupy the soil—some species fill the surface soil with masses of fibrous roots, others have sparsely branched tap roots which occupy the deeper parts of the soil, and small herbs may fill in surface pockets with seasonal or transitory root systems.

The length of time that a root functions as an absorbing organ varies with the type of plant. In many herbaceous plants, particularly spring-flowering bulbs and herbs with storage roots, the fibrous roots make rapid growth for a short time and then die. The roots of tulips and narcissi start growth in the fall, continue to grow in the early spring, and die in early summer. With woody plants also there may be an annual renewal of small or “feeder” roots which at the end of a growing season die back to the more permanent part of the root system. Probably most perennial plants show renewal of the “feeder” roots.

**Primary and Secondary Roots.**—The part of the main axis of the plant growing down into the soil is called the *primary root*; its branches are *secondary roots*. Primary and secondary roots differ in their mode of origin. The primary root is present in early stages of the seedling, in some plants in the embryo within the seed. The apical growing region of the primary root is developed as a part of the differentiation of the embryo; one end of the axis possesses root structure, or at least root-tip meristem. The origin of secondary roots as lateral structures is discussed later in the chapter.

Between the root and the stem, a transitional region is formed in which the exarch xylem and the radial structure of the root pass over into the normal stem structure. The anatomy of this region is discussed in Chap. XI.



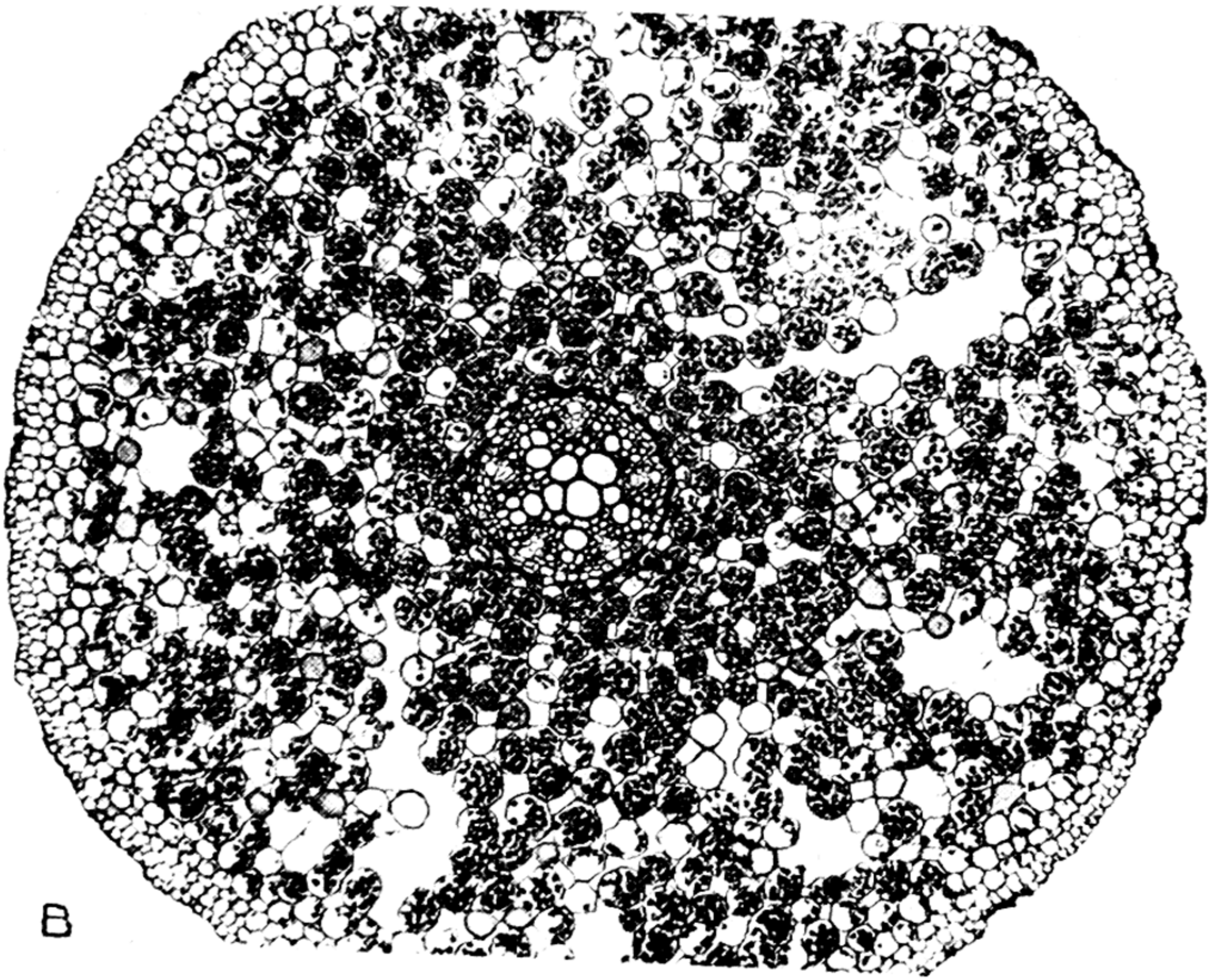
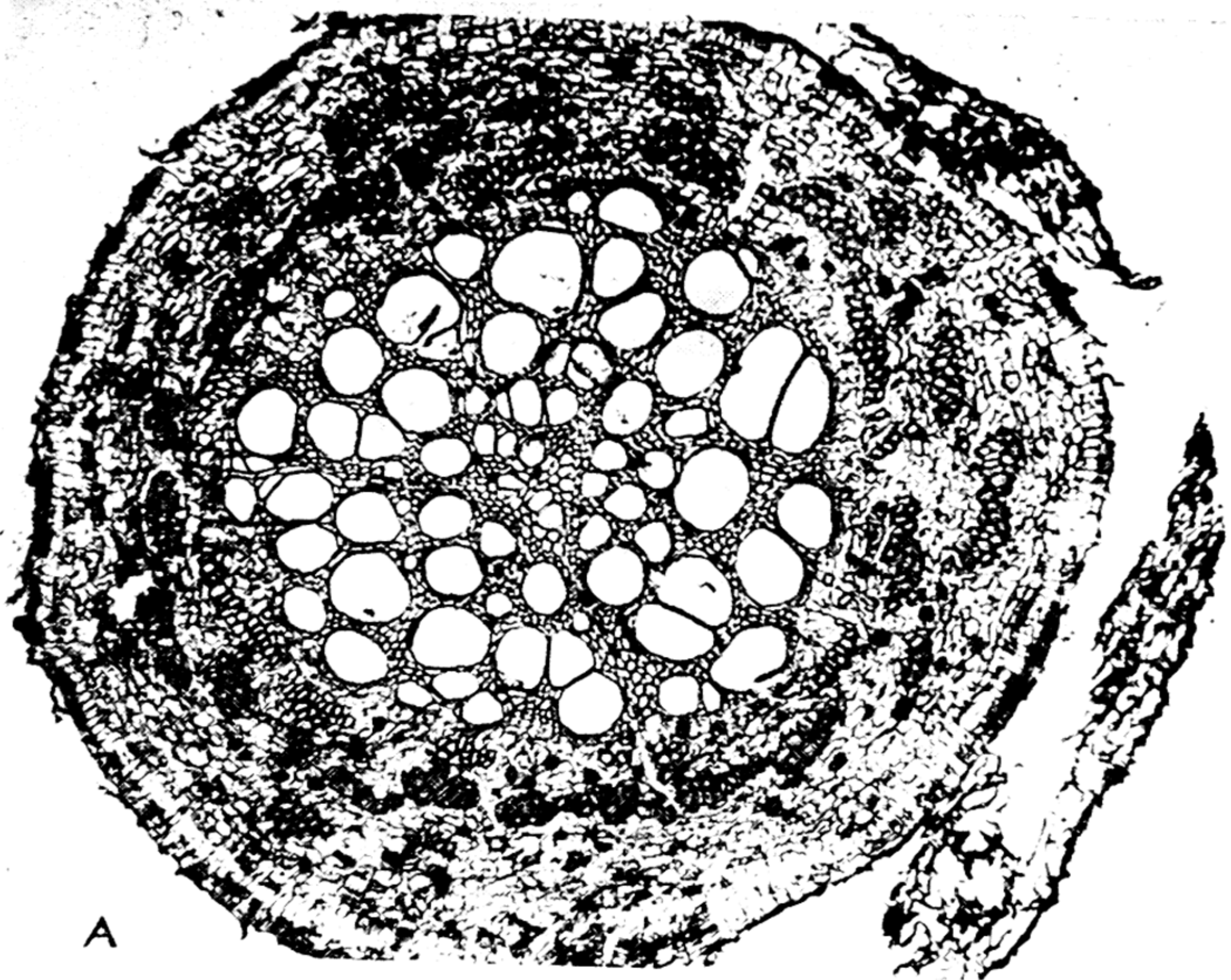
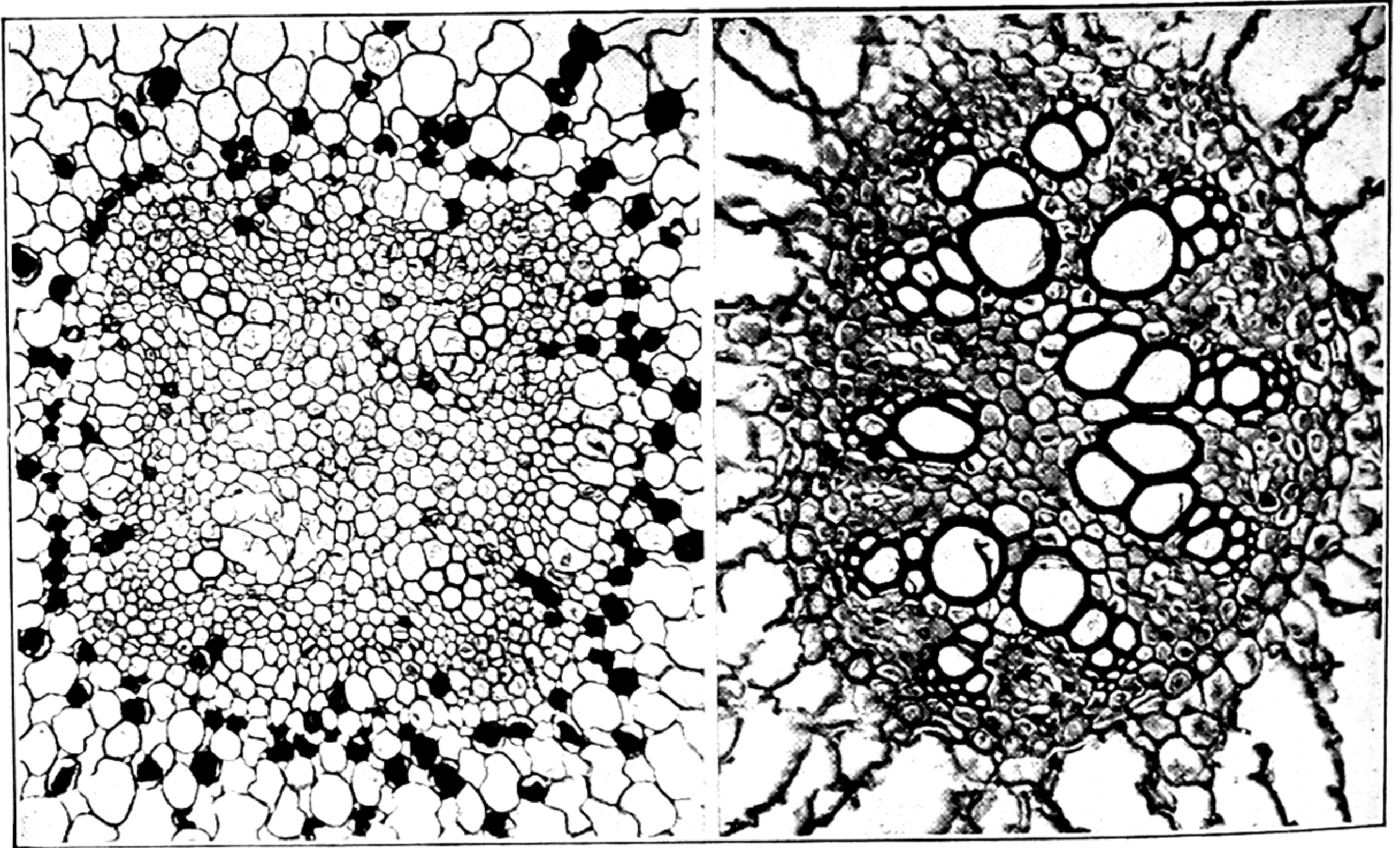


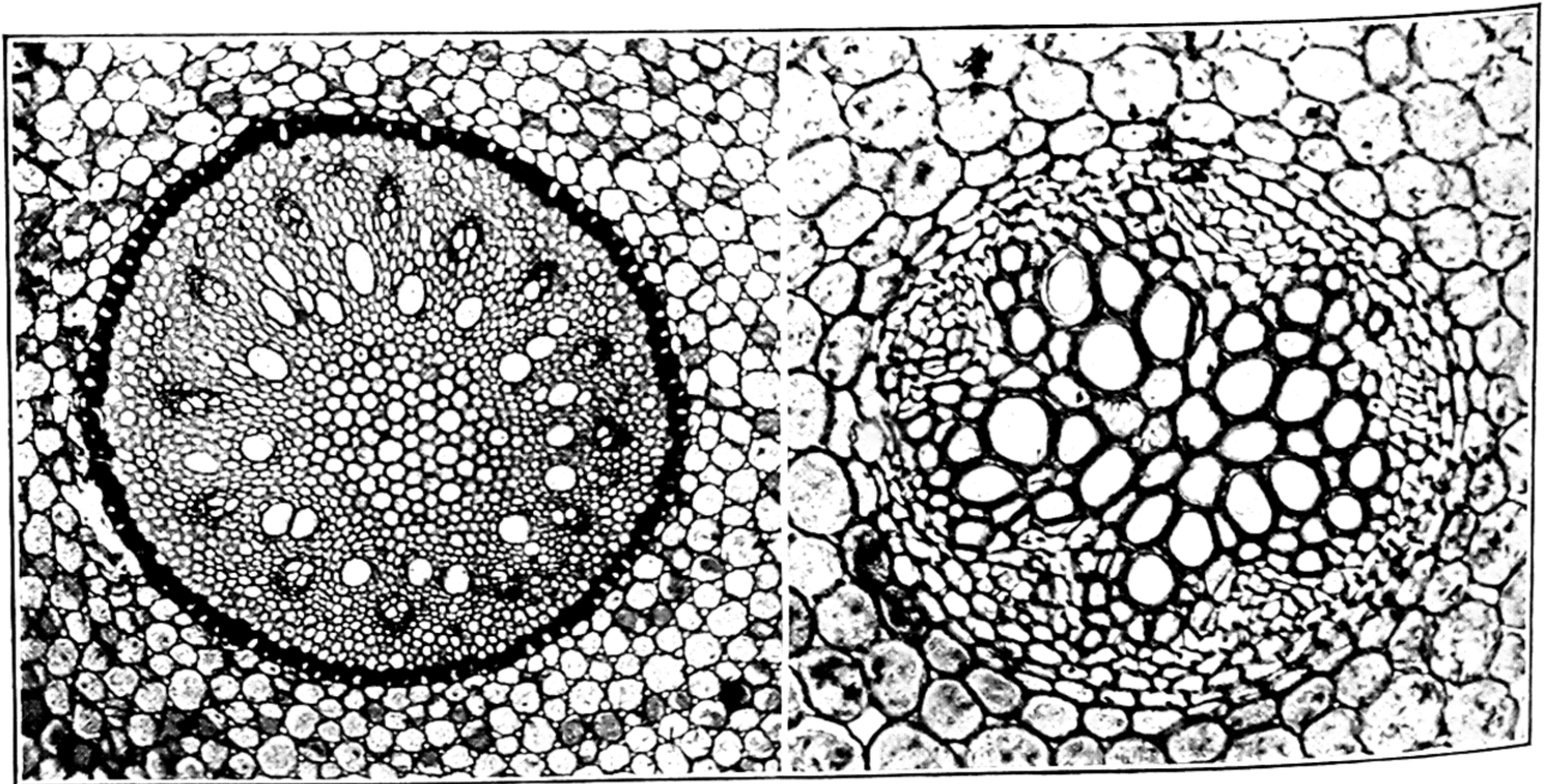
FIG. 127.—Root structure, as seen in cross section. *A*, a woody root of *Populus deltoides* with large amount of secondary tissues, showing a periderm formed in the pericycle, and the cortex sloughing off. *B*, a root of *Ranunculus acris* without secondary tissues, showing that the protostelic central cylinder is pentarch; the parenchymatous cortex is fleshy, with large intercellular spaces, its outer layers have become suberized and form a hypodermis; the epidermis is decaying. (The central parts of similar roots are shown enlarged in Figs. 129A and 128D respectively.)





A

B



C

D

FIG. 128.—The primary structure of the stele of roots. A, young root of *Salix nigra*, tetraarch; only the outer parts of the xylem strands are mature; the phloem is hardly separable from the parenchyma and the procambium; the thin-walled endodermis is evident. B, polyarch root of *Polygonatum biflorum*; a small, irregular pith is present; the phloem and the endodermis are seen indistinctly set off from surrounding cells. C, polyarch root of *Smilax herbacea*; the phloem strands are dark-stained; the xylem strands are distinguishable with difficulty from the sclerenchyma in which they are embedded, but the darker-stained protoxylem region and the large innermost vessels limit the strands; a large pith is present; the thick-walled endodermis is prominent. D, pentarch root of *Ranunculus acris*; no pith is present,



In the large roots of many trees, the first periderm persists indefinitely and the bark is smooth, commonly showing conspicuous lenticels. In some trees, other periderm layers arise successively deeper and deeper in the phloem, as in stems, and the outer tissues are lost. There is no extensive accumulation of rhytidome on roots because of the rapid decay of dead tissues beneath the soil. When roots are exposed at the base of a tree, bark is formed resembling that on the trunk.

There are many exceptions to the usual course of periderm development in roots. In those roots without secondary thickening, the epidermis may persist intact, often becoming cutinized, or it may be lost by decay and be replaced as the limiting layer by an outer primary cortical layer which becomes cutinized, as in many monocotyledons. In such plants the true epidermis may shrivel and disappear as soon as the root hairs cease to function. Such an accessory protective layer, serving as an epidermis, is sometimes called an *exodermis* but it is merely a type of hypodermis. Further, the term "exodermis" is also applied to a uniseriate layer in certain specialized roots, for example, the innermost layer of the velamen of orchid roots. A persistent epidermis is especially common among the roots of the monocotyledons. In this group periderm forms the protective layer only in the larger, older roots, as in the Araceae and Liliaceae. In herbaceous dicotyledons a hypodermis is often the protective layer (Fig. 127B). Periderm layers also frequently occur in the roots of the Primulaceae, Gentianaceae, and others; these layers occur in the outer cortex, but not superficially, as in the monocotyledons. In the pteridophytes, periderm does not form in the roots, but the epidermis and the outer cortical layers become cutinized or lignified without change in size or shape of the cells. The chemical nature of these lignified or cutinized walls is apparently unlike that in similar cells in most of the seed plants.

Unusual types of structure are found in roots as in stems, but in roots these are associated chiefly with secondary tissues as in some of the Centrospermae. Anomalous structure in roots is similar to that in stems which is discussed in Chap. XI.

Roots show great specialization related to environmental conditions and to particular functions. A discussion of the modifications found in some of these specialized forms are found in Chap. XIV.

#### References

- ALTEN, H.: Beiträge zur vergleichenden Anatomie der Wurzeln nebst Bemerkungen über Wurzelthyllen, Heterorhizie, Lenticellen, Göttingen, 1908.  
ESAU, K.: Developmental anatomy of the fleshy storage organ of *Daucus Carota*, *Hilgardia*, **13**, 175-209, 1940.  
———: Vascular differentiation in the pear root, *Hilgardia*, **15**, 299-311, 1943.



- FLAHAULT, C.: Recherches sur l'accroissement terminal de la racine chez les phanérogames, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 6 sér., **6**, 1-168, 1878.
- FRIEDENFELT, T.: Der anatomische Bau der Wurzel in seinem Zusammenhänge mit dem Wassergehalt des Bodens, *Bibl. Bot.*, **61**, 1-118, 1904.
- JANCZEWSKI, DE, E.: Recherches sur le développement des radicules dans les phanérogames, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 5 sér., **20**, 208-233, 1874.
- KROEMER, K.: Wurzelhaut, Hypodermis, und Endodermis der Angiospermenwurzel, *Bibl. Bot.*, **59**, 1-151, 1903.
- LEMAIRE, A.: Recherches sur l'origine et le développement des racines laterales chez les dicotylédones, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 7 sér., **3**, 163-274, 1886.
- MAXWELL, F. B.: A comparative study of the roots of the Ranunculaceae, *Bot. Gaz.*, **18**, 8-16, 41-47, 97-102, 1893.
- NÄGELI, C.: Ueber das Wachsthum des Stammes und der Wurzel bei den Gefäßpflanzen, *Beit. Wiss. Bot. (Nägeli)*, **1**, 1-156, Leipzig, 1858.
- and H. LEITGEB: Entstehung und Wachsthum der Wurzeln, *Beit. Wiss. Bot. (Nägeli)*, **4**, 73-160, Leipzig, 1868.
- OLIVIER, L.: Recherches sur l'appareil tégumentaire des racines, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 6 sér., **11**, 5-133, 1881.
- PRIESTLEY, J. H., and R. M. TUPPER-CAREY: Physiological studies in plant anatomy, IV. The water relations of the plant growing point, *New Phyt.*, **21**, 210-229, 1922.
- SACHS, J.: Ueber das Wachsthum der Haupt und Nebenwurzeln, *Arb. Bot. Inst. Würzburg*, **1**, 384-474, 585-634, 1874.
- TUBEUF, C.: Die Haarbildungen der Coniferen, V. Die Wurzelhaare der Coniferen, *Förslich. Naturwiss. Zeitsch.*, **5**, 173-193, 1896.
- VAN DER LEK, H. A. A.: Onderzoekingen over de vegetatieve vermenigvuldiging van houtige gewassen, 1. Over de wortelvorming van houtige stekken. Laboratorium voor Tuinbouwplantenteelt, No. 1. Overdruk uit Deel 28 der Mededeelingen van de Landbouwhoogeschool te Wageningen (Nederland).
- VAN TIEGHEM, P.: Recherches sur la symétrie de structure des plantes vasculaires, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 5 sér., **13**, 5-314, 1870.
- and H. DOULIOT: Recherches comparatives sur l'origine des membres endogènes dans les plantes vasculaires, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 7 sér., **8**, 1-660, 1888.
- WHITAKER, E. S.: Root hairs and secondary thickening in the Compositae, *Bot. Gaz.*, **76**, 30-59, 1923.



## CHAPTER XI

### THE STEM

The part of the axis of a plant that bears the leaves and reproductive structures and is commonly aerial and ascending is called the stem. Stems and roots are alike in general structure, each possessing a stele with xylem and phloem, pericycle, endodermis, and cortex with an epidermis. Stems differ from roots in fundamental vascular structure and in the possession of appendages borne at definitely fixed positions known as nodes. The difference in vascular structure lies chiefly in the arrangement of the xylem and phloem: in the root the strands of primary xylem and phloem lie in different radii, separated from one another; in the stem the strands lie side by side in the same radius. Further, the xylem of the root is always exarch, whereas that of the stem is exarch, endarch, or mesarch, being endarch most commonly in present-day plants. In the development and structure of secondary vascular tissues, roots and stems are very much alike.

**Origin of the Stem.**—The first stem meristem develops during the specialization of the embryo. Lateral stems normally arise by the development of new apical meristems laterally in the terminal meristem of the mother stem. Adventitious branches develop, on both stems and roots, by the formation of similar meristems secondarily in the pericycle, phloem, or even in the cambium. In a few plants, they are said to arise in epidermal or subepidermal cells. Branch meristems also develop freely in wound tissue of some species. Such meristems arise by the division of meristematic cells, or of more or less permanent parenchyma, in several planes, forming an apical growing point like that of the normal stem tip. If this meristem is deeply buried in the stem tissues, it breaks its way through to the surface much as the lateral root meristem breaks through the root cortex. (The course of development of the mature stem from meristem is discussed in Chap. III.)

**Root-stem Transition.**—Root and stem form a continuous structure, the axis. There is, therefore, a transition region where root and stem meet, and where the various parts of each organ merge into those of the other. The epidermis, cortex, endodermis, pericycle, and secondary vascular tissues are directly continuous from the root into the stem. The primary vascular tissues are also continuous, but not directly so, since the



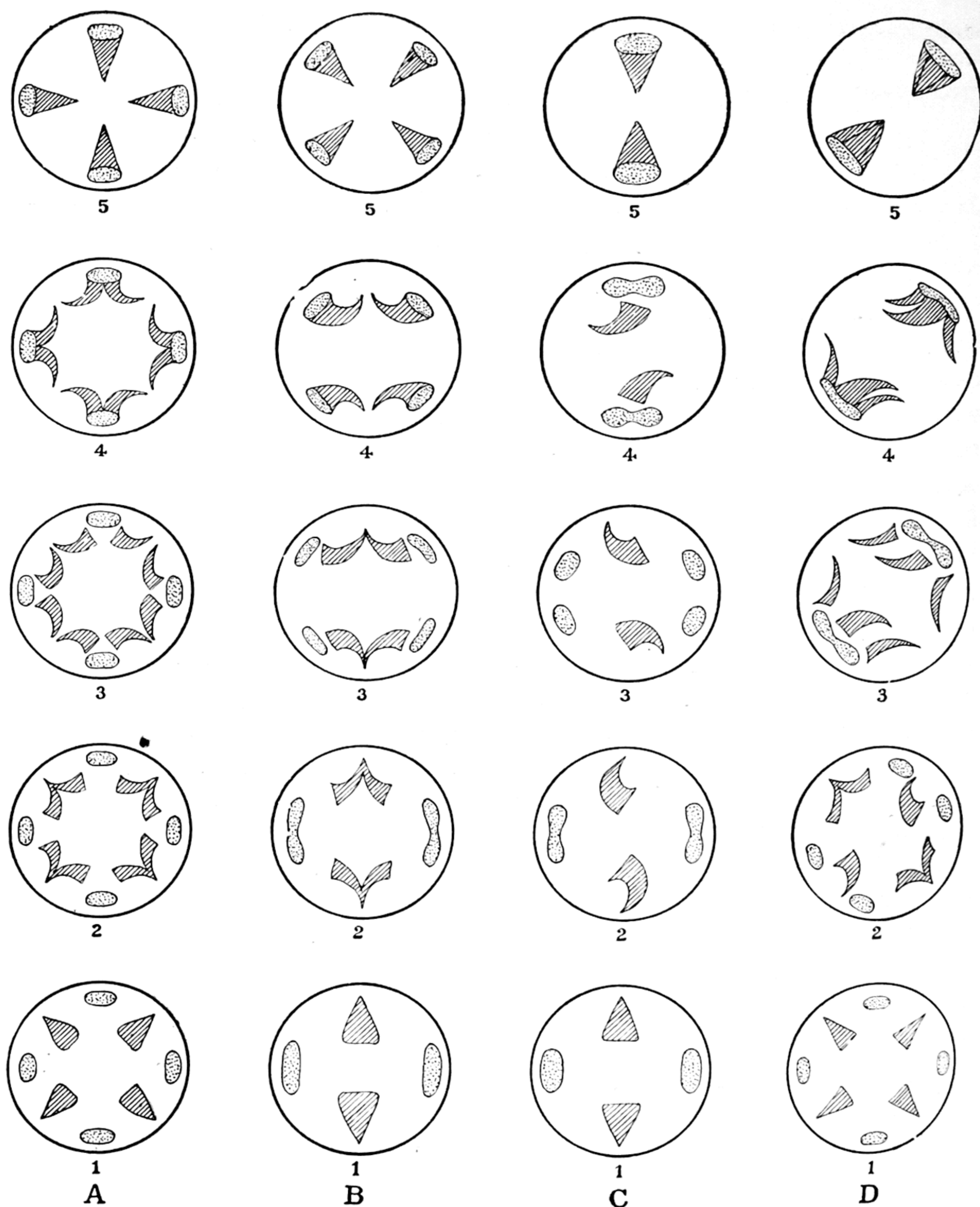


FIG. 134.—Root-stem transition; diagram of four types, *A*, *B*, *C*, *D* (see text). Figures *A*-1, *B*-1, etc., root; *A*-5, *B*-5, etc., stem; intermediate figures represent stages in transition found at successive levels, showing splitting, rotation, and fusion of the vascular strands. Xylem cross-hatched; phloem stippled.

types of bundles and of arrangement are markedly different in the two organs—the radially arranged, independent strands of xylem and phloem, the xylem exarch, of the root pass into bundles containing collaterally placed xylem and phloem, the xylem usually endarch. In the xylem



this change of position involves a twisting and inversion of the strands (Fig. 134). The change from one type of vascular structure to the other takes place in a part of the axis called the *transition region*. The transition occurs either abruptly or gradually; the length of the transition region, which is commonly short, varies from less than a millimeter to two or three, rarely several, centimeters. It may occur in the top of the radicle, at the very base of the hypocotyl, near its center, or in the upper part. The hypocotyl may, therefore, possess root structure or stem structure through most of its length, or may be largely given over to transition region. Often the transition region coincides with that of the origin and departure of the cotyledonary traces, and the structure of the region is especially complex. Whenever the inversion of the bundles has not been accomplished at the level at which the cotyledonary traces depart, these outgoing strands are inverted during their passage into the cotyledons. Rarely the transition region extends to the first or even the third or fourth node above the cotyledons; a part of the stem then possesses bundles which are partly inverted. In the monocotyledons and the pteridophytes the region is usually short.

Externally, this region which limits root and stem may be visible as a zone of depression, or of change in diameter, but in many plants such an external line does not correspond exactly with the transition region.

In the change from root to stem there is commonly a considerable increase in the diameter of the stele. Accompanying this, go multiplication of vascular tissues and a forking, rotation, and fusion of strands. These changes take place according to a definite plan, of which four somewhat different types have been recognized.

*Type a.* (Fig. 134A).—Each xylem strand of the root forks by radial division; the branches, as they pass upward, swing laterally, one to the right and one to the left, turning at the same time through 180 degrees, and join the phloem strands on the inside. The latter have meanwhile remained unchanged in position and orientation; they pass as straight strands from the root into the stem. In this type there are formed in the stem as many primary bundles as there are phloem strands in the root. Examples of plants in which this type occurs are *Dipsacus*, *Mirabilis* and *Fumaria*.

*Type b.* (Fig. 134B).—This type differs from the first type in that the strands of phloem, as well as those of xylem, fork, the branches of each swinging laterally as they pass upward to meet in pairs in positions alternating with those of the strands in the root. The xylem strands become inverted as before; the phloem strands retain their orientation. In this way there are formed in the stem twice as many bundles as there are phloem strands in the root. This type of transition is more common



than the first. It occurs, for instance, in *Acer*, *Cucurbita*, *Phaseolus*, and *Tropaeolum*.

*Type c.* (Fig. 134C).—In the third type, the xylem strands do not divide, but continue their direct course into the stem, twisting, however, through 180 degrees. The phloem strands meanwhile divide, and the halves swing laterally to the position of the xylem, joining the xylem strands on the outside. In this type, as in the first, as many bundles are formed in the stem as there are phloem strands in the root. Examples of plants in which this type occurs are *Medicago*, *Lathyrus*, and *Phoenix*.

*Type d.* (Fig. 134D).—In the fourth type, half of the xylem strands divide and the branches swing laterally to join the other unforking strands, which meanwhile become inverted. The phloem strands do not divide, but unite in pairs with the triple strands. Thus a bundle of the stem is made up of five united strands, and there are but half as many bundles in the stem as there are phloem strands in the root. This type of transition is rare, and apparently is known only in a few monocotyledons, such as *Anemarrhena*.

Where internal phloem is present in the stem, branches depart from the phloem strands of the root at the level at which the root structure begins to change. These branches pass inward and come to lie inside the new xylem strands, establishing bicollateral bundles. Where the xylem strands of the root are united laterally to form a hollow cylinder (a pith is probably always present in the very top of the seedling root adjacent to the transition region), the strands become separated before the forking or the change in position and orientation occurs.

In some of the monocotyledons the transition region is very short and its structure difficult of determination, owing to the development of a ring of vascular tissue in connection with the attachment of numerous strong lateral roots which develop at that point. In the cycads, the transition region contains a plate or a ring of vascular tissue into which all the strands of the stem and root pass. In these plants the bundles of the stem and root do not, therefore, pass directly into one another.

### TYPES OF STEMS

The fundamental structure of stems has already been discussed (Chap. V). In review, it may be said that stems are commonly siphonostelic—protosteles occurring in living plants only among the ferns and some other pteridophytes—and usually possess secondary growth. Stems differ greatly in the amount and arrangement of primary vascular tissue and in the amount of secondary tissues. The primary vascular tissue ranges in amount from that of a solid cylinder of considerable thickness to that of a few small strands forming isolated bundles. The various conditions



apparently represent stages in evolutionary progress where there has been a thinning of the cylinder of primary vascular tissue, a breaking up of the cylinder into longitudinal strands, and changes in the arrangement of the resulting bundles so that these no longer form a cylindrical series. Whatever the amount and the arrangement of the primary xylem, the secondary vascular tissues may form a solid cylinder enclosing it and in this way develop an unbroken vascular cylinder even from a series of unevenly placed strands. The amount and the arrangement of secondary xylem also vary from that of the complete cylinder of indefinite thickness formed in typical perennial woody axes to the isolated thin strands of certain types of annual herbaceous stems, and to the condition in other plants where secondary growth is absent. Secondary vascular tissues, like primary, have been reduced in evolutionary modification, the cylinder being first thinned radially and then broken up tangentially. In forms most specialized in this respect, no secondary vascular tissues are formed. All stages in these changes in primary and secondary vascular tissues are represented among living plants. Great variety is found in stem structure.

**The Woody Stem.**—Perennial woody plants present apparently simple stem structure. In these an unbroken layer of secondary vascular tissue sheaths a more or less continuous cylinder of primary xylem. Variations in the structure of this cylinder (already discussed under *Primary Vascular Skeleton* in Chap. V), range from cylinders that are unbroken except by leaf and branch gaps to those consisting of discrete bundles often complex in arrangement. The simplicity of the secondary cylinder, concealing the basic primary structure, seems to make the entire structure simple. Even where the primary cylinder is broken only by leaf and branch gaps (Figs. 72A, *Thuja*; 71A, *Populus*) prominent “bundles” stand out as protoxylem-containing ridges in the otherwise very thin cylinder. These ridges represent the downward continuation of the leaf traces and other early maturing parts of the cylinder (Fig. 71A). In other plants the cylinder consists of more or less closely placed bundles of varying size (Fig. 71B)—with proportionate amounts of protoxylem—without connecting primary xylem. The areas between these primary strands are ray-like projections of the pith on the inside and pericycle on the outside. They are soon closed by the cambium which builds secondary vascular tissue in these spaces.

Woody, perennial stems, such as those of some palms and other large monocotyledons, may be developed without secondary growth.

**The Herbaceous Stem.**—Herbaceous plants have no distinctive anatomical structure. Annual stems are commonly supposed to have their vascular tissues—whether it is primary only, or primary plus second-



ary—characteristically in the form of discrete bundles arranged in a cylinder (Fig. 135*F*), but this condition is not typical of herbaceous plants. Among dicotyledons, the majority of herbaceous forms possess

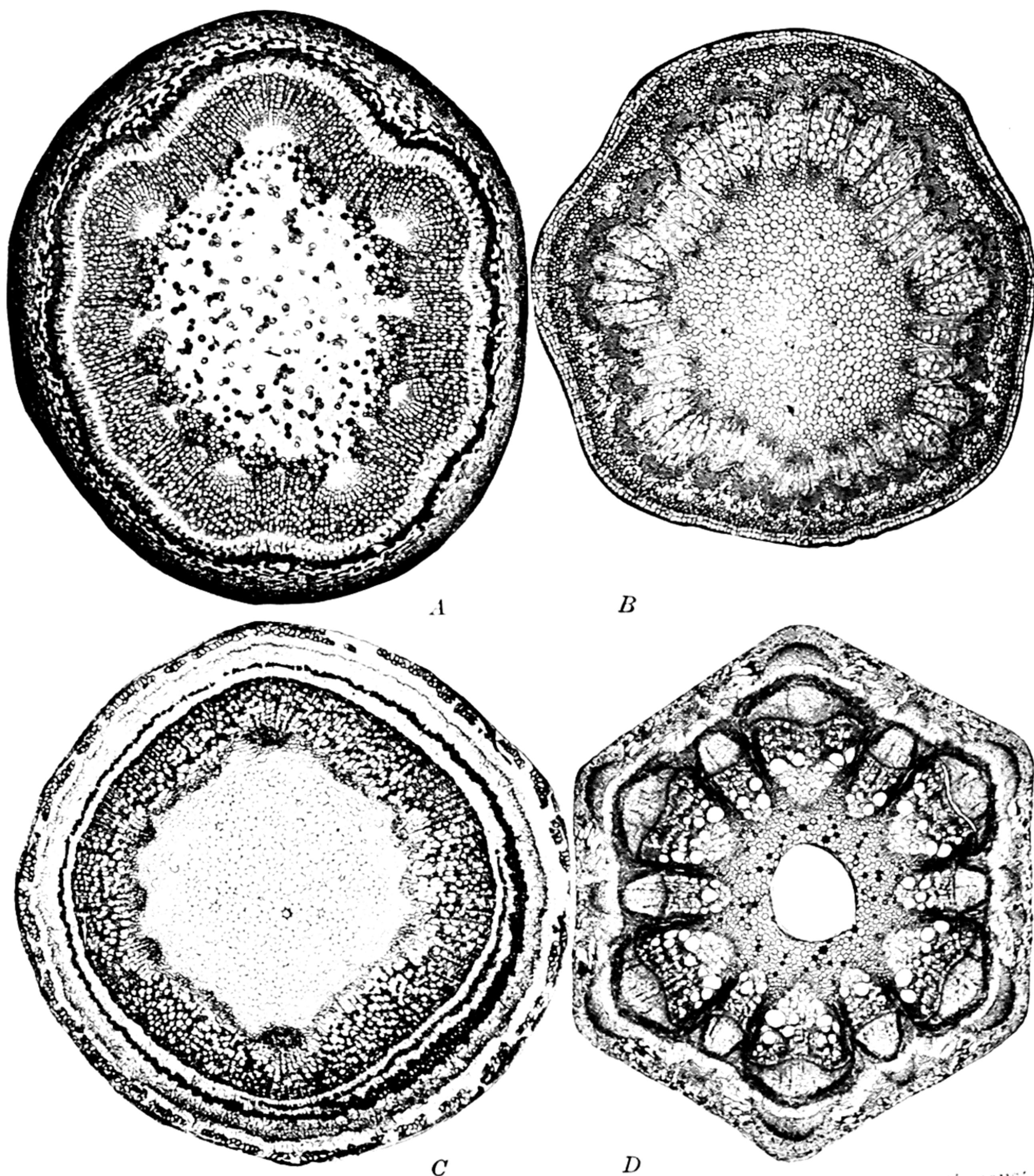


FIG. 135.—Types of dicotyledonous stems. A, *Liquidambar*, tree, stele continuous; B, *Platanus*, tree, stele dissected; C, *Lonicera*, woody vine, stele continuous; D, *Clematis*, woody vine, stele dissected. (Figure continued on opposite page.)

cylinders of vascular tissue that are complete, except for the presence of leaf and branch gaps (Fig. 135*E*). Such conditions obtain not only in coarse and stout stems, such as those of many composites, mints, and legumes, but even in slender delicate stems, such as those of species of



*Veronica* and *Stellaria*. The herbaceous stem with discrete bundles is not to be considered typical of annual stems. It represents, clearly, the extreme stage of reduction of vascular tissues. Although infrequent in

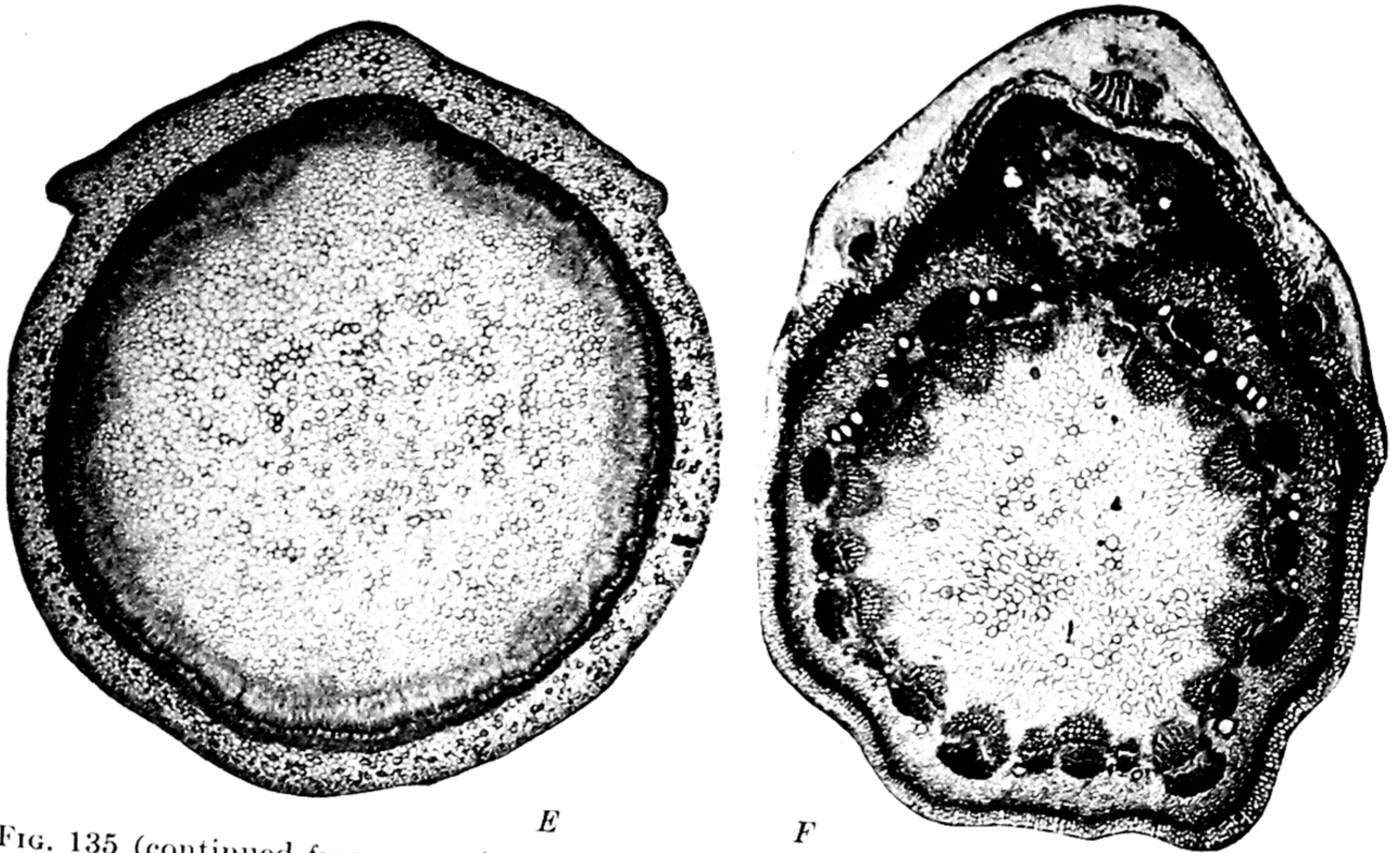


FIG. 135 (continued from opposite page).—Types of dicotyledonous stems. *E*, *Digitalis*, herb, stele continuous; *F*, *Artemisia*, herb, stele dissected. (After Sinnott and Bailey.)

occurrence, it is found in various families and in both stout and slender plants. In some forms, for example, in species of *Trifolium*, *Geum*, and *Agrimonia*, the lower part of the stem may have a complete cylinder of

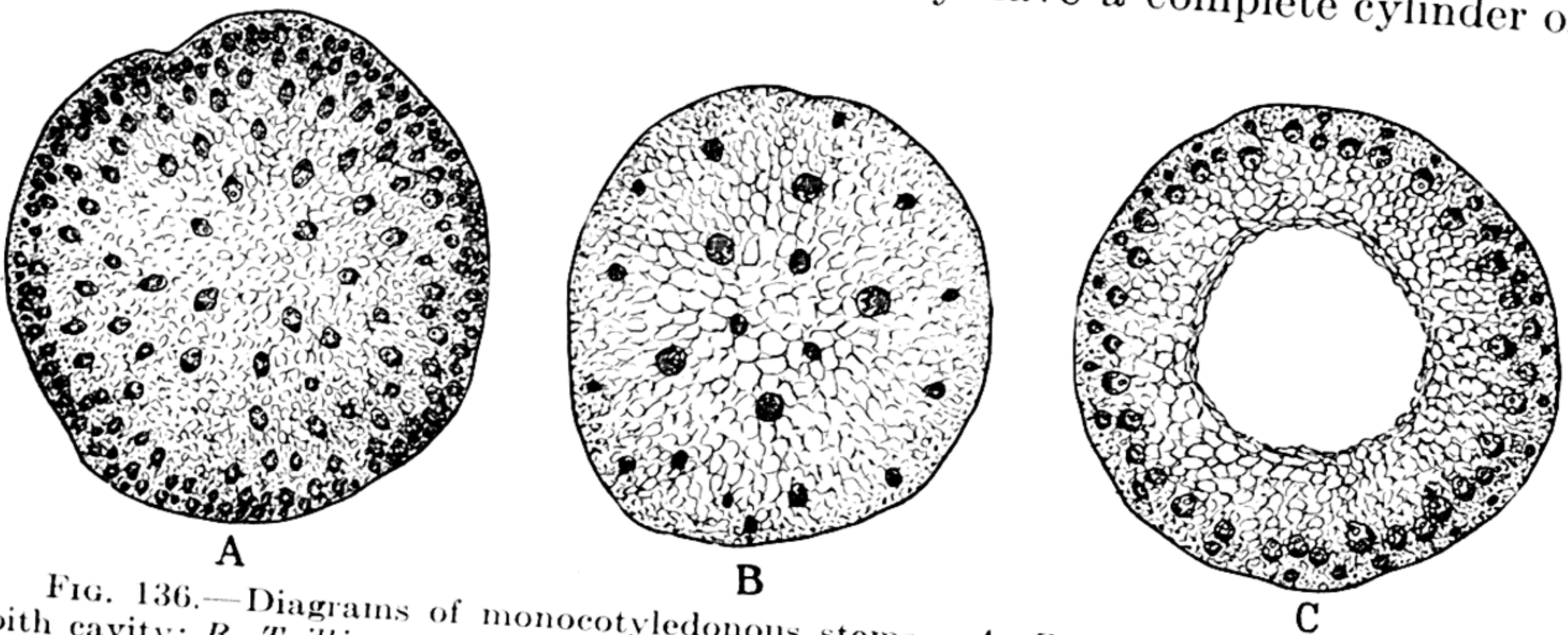


FIG. 136.—Diagrams of monocotyledonous stems. *A*, *Zea mays*, many bundles, no pith cavity; *B*, *Trillium grandiflorum*, few scattered bundles; *C*, *Triticum sativum*, many bundles about the periphery, central pith cavity.

vascular tissue, and the upper part separate bundles. The condition in monocotyledons is essentially the same as that in extreme dicotyledonous herbs; here the bundles may lie in a ring, but more frequently they are



distributed through the stele according to a plan determined by the number of leaf traces, leaf arrangement, and other factors (Fig. 136).

Herbaceous stems, except those of the extreme type where the cambium fails to unite the primary skeleton, are structurally like woody stems; differences are those of period of persistence, not of basic structure. The herbaceous stem is one in which cambial growth is limited to one season or part of one season, or is lacking. The amount of vascular tissue, primary or secondary, is not necessarily less in a mature herbaceous stem than in the one-year-old stem of a closely related woody plant of the same type.

The type of stem in a given herb depends upon the type of stele present in the woody ancestral forms. Where the vascular cylinder of the woody type possesses primary tissues in the form of a continuous cylinder, related herbaceous forms also possess unbroken primary cylinders; where the primary cylinder of woody forms is discontinuous, related herbaceous plants have a type of stele in which the cylinder consists of discrete bundles.

In some details, a mature herbaceous stem with well-developed secondary vascular tissue may differ from a similar woody stem. Commonly, in annuals, as seasonal growth of the stem ceases, the cambium disappears, all its cells maturing as xylem and phloem elements. All tissues outside the cambium become strongly compressed—cortical parenchyma, especially delicate, photosynthetic types, may be completely flattened; and, even before flowering and seed-formation is completed, the softer cells of the phloem, including sieve tubes, are crushed. The phloem fibers of such plants show structural evidence of this lateral compression in their “jointed,” or “broken” structure. In herbaceous stems the epidermis rarely is ruptured with increase in diameter. It is maintained at first by slow division; later, the compacting and crushing of the outer tissues provide space for the developing secondary xylem and phloem.

The morphological problem underlying the evolutionary changes in structure from the typical woody stem to the extreme herbaceous stem lies outside the scope of this book. From the evidence of comparative morphology and of the fossil record, it is clear that in angiosperms the herbaceous type of stem has been derived from the woody, undoubtedly independently in many families. In a few families, such as the Berberidaceae, woody types have been derived from herbs. Woody plants of this type have many features in common with herbs, especially structure of the primary skeleton and histological structure of the xylem.

**The Monocotyledonous Stem.**—Secondary growth of the usual type is typically lacking throughout the body of monocotyledons but vestiges



of cambial activity in the bundles both of the stem and the leaves have been found in nearly all groups. The stele is broken up into bundles which are commonly distributed throughout the axis; the endodermis is lacking, and the limits of cortex, pericycle, and pith are often indistinguishable, since bundles are scattered throughout (Fig. 136A,B). In many forms, as in most grasses, there is present a central region (Figs. 136C, 181A)—which may or may not represent the pith morphologically—in which no bundles occur; in other forms a more or less readily separable cortical region may also be seen.

The vascular system of most monocotyledons is highly complex. The leaf-trace bundles are numerous and follow various types of courses in their descent, uniting in different ways with other strands (Fig. 72E-M). A common condition is that where all bundles are common bundles. The traces, upon entering the stem from the leaf, penetrate deeply, the median traces more deeply than the lateral, and then in their descent return toward the periphery. The downward course may be vertical, or the traces may swing laterally and become oriented in various ways. Each common bundle sooner or later fuses with other similar bundles. The anastomoses occur chiefly at the nodes, and in some groups, such as the grasses, are abundant and largely restricted to that region.

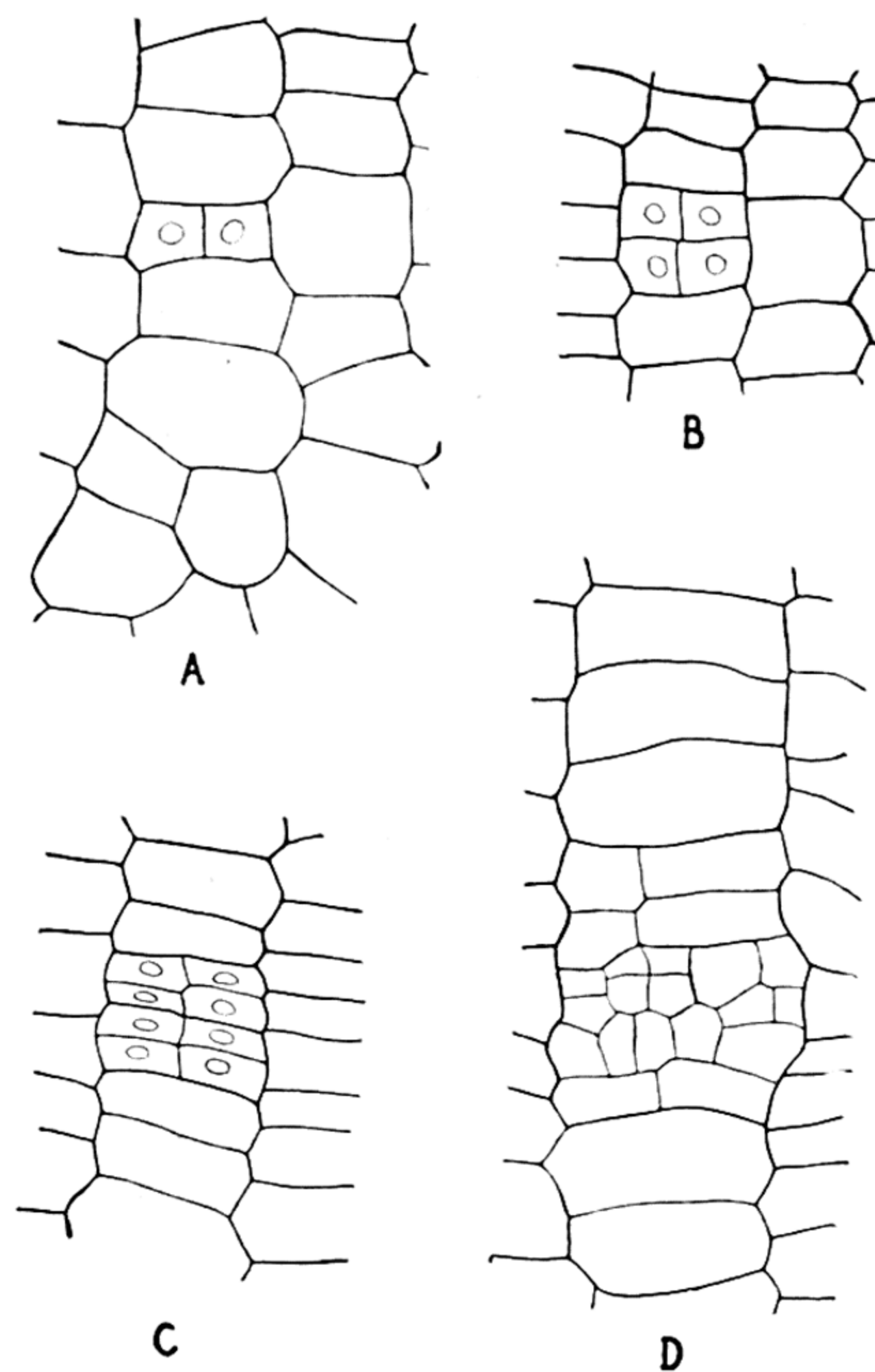


FIG. 137.—Diagrams illustrating early development of bundle in secondary growth of monocotyledons; *Aloë pleuridens*. A-D, successive stages. (After Chamberlain.)

✓ **Secondary Growth in Monocotyledons.**—The type of secondary tissue formed in the monocotyledons is very different from that formed in other groups. The cambium does not produce phloem on the outside and xylem toward the inside in the normal way but forms on the inner side amphivasal or collateral bundles in parenchymatous ground tissue commonly called *conjunctive tissue*. The bundles are usually without definite arrangement but may lie to some extent in radial rows. Occasional anastomoses occur. The extracambial tissues formed are small



in amount and parenchymatous in nature. In the cambium layer proper, the divisions are largely tangential, and the cells so formed are consequently radially arranged. This order is usually evident in the conjunctive tissue and aids in the separation of the secondary from the primary tissues in which the interfascicular parenchyma has no definite arrangement (Fig. 97). It is not evident in the tissues of the bundles because of the method of development of these strands. A very small group of cambium derivatives divide longitudinally—at first anticlinally and periclinally, then haphazardly (Fig. 137)—forming a strand of cells that mature as xylem and phloem. The cells that form the tracheids become 15 to 40 times their original length; the other cells elongate little or not at all. The tracheids may be scalariform, a type rare in secondary tissue. The mature bundles differ from the primary bundles in the small amount of phloem and the absence of annular and spiral protoxylem cells. In some genera differences in relative abundance of bundles and in wall thickness of the conjunctive cells set off weakly limited growth rings. The relation of these rings to annual growth is unknown.

Secondary tissue of this type is indefinite in amount, as is that of the normal type, but usually develops slowly, and large trunks are not commonly formed.

Increase in diameter of this type occurs in the arborescent Liliiflorae, for example, *Dracaena*, *Yucca*, *Aloë*, *Cordyline*; some of the palms; rarely in herbs, as in *Veratrum*; and in fleshy parts of some of the Dioscoreae.

The thickening which takes place in the bases of some palm stems is not due to the activity of a definite cambium layer but is, rather, the result of gradual increase in size of cells and of intercellular spaces, and, rarely, of the proliferation of strands of tissue to form new fibers; it represents long-continuing primary growth.

**The Vine Type of Stem.**—The stems of vines are of both structural types. Many vines, such as *Vitis*, *Celastrus*, and *Solanum Dulcamara*, have vascular steles in the form of woody cylinders (Fig. 135C); others, such as *Clematis*, *Humulus*, and *Pisum*, have vascular tissues arranged in the form of a ring of bundles (Fig. 135D). These bundles are separated by rays of parenchyma, which in many forms are increased, like the bundles, by cambial growth. In such forms, as in the type of herbaceous stem with discrete bundles, the xylem and phloem are highly specialized in structure—vascular rays are commonly absent; the vessels are porous and of large diameter and great length; tracheids and fibers are proportionately few; sieve tubes are of the highest type; and phloem parenchyma and fibers are scarce or lacking. Many vines show not merely these tissue specializations, but also possess anomalous general structure. In this group fall *Aristolochia* and *Menispermum*, which, unfortunately,



are often cited as examples of typical stem structure, and used to demonstrate the origin of a woody from an herbaceous stem.

In the stem of the young herbaceous vine, such as that of *Pisum*, *Apios*, and *Adlumia*, the vascular bundles are separated by wide segments of parenchyma. In these stems the cambium may be restricted to the bundles, as in *Adlumia*, or may form a complete cylinder by extension across the interfascicular rays of parenchyma. This interfascicular cambium may be vestigial, as in the upper parts of the pea vine, forming no secondary tissue, or a very few vascular cells, as at the base of the pea vine; or it may be very active, increasing the parenchymatous rays at the same rate as the fascicular cambium builds up the bundles, as in *Clematis*. In such plants as the last, the type of structure found in the one-year stem is maintained as the stem becomes woody and perennial. Yet, since the bundles increase in tangential extent as secondary growth continues, the stem apparently becomes a woody stem. The bundles are, however, still separated, though by wedges of secondary rather than primary parenchyma. These radial plates or rays of tissue commonly extend unbroken from node to node, often for several internodes and constitute an important feature of vine structure. Such rays, either of primary structure, or of both primary and secondary structure, are prominent structural features of many vines, both annual and perennial. Similar parenchymatous segments are present also in some vines with complete woody cylinders, and constitute one of the prominent modifications of such steles found in lianas (Fig. 141). Since they consist of soft tissue, they are sometimes crushed as the stem becomes older, perhaps by the "play" of the bundles upon one another during the periods of lateral stresses to which a vine stem is peculiarly subject. Apparently, this type of structure represents one type of modification related to the mechanical requirements of vines.

**"Medullary Rays" of Vines and Herbs.**—In vines and herbs with dissected vascular cylinders, the vascular bundles are in early stages separated by sheets of parenchyma which merge internally with the pith and externally with the cortex (Fig. 135D, F). In these early stages there is usually little or no evidence of limitation of pith or cortex in the region of these bands, nor is there histological evidence that they belong morphologically, even in part, to the vascular cylinder. Since they appear as radiating portions of the pith, they are commonly called *medullary rays*. When these primary structures are later increased in radial extent by secondary growth, as they are in many vines, such as *Clematis* (Fig. 135D), they closely resemble broad "medullary rays" (vascular rays) of secondary wood and phloem. For this reason both these rays and true vascular rays have been termed "medullary rays," and believed to be



homologous. The theory that the woody stem is developed from the herbaceous stem is based in large part upon this misconception. The broad rays of vines and herbs extend from node to node and often through several internodes and in this respect differ much from the vascular rays which are of very limited vertical extent. Further, they clearly represent, morphologically, entire segments of the vascular cylinder, being equivalent to many vascular rays plus the tissue surrounding and included between these rays. It is obvious that the same term should not be applied to both types of rays. The term "medullary ray" as applied to rays of secondary vascular tissue is inapt, and has been supplanted by the term "vascular ray." Since the broad rays of vines and herbs, when only primary, resemble projections of the pith, they may perhaps aptly be called medullary rays, especially if this term is not applied to vascular rays. That they are not homologous with the structures hitherto known commonly as medullary rays is obvious.

**Internal (or Intraxylary) Phloem.**—In the siphonosteles of ferns the amphiphloic condition is usually prominent. Here the internal phloem forms a continuous layer and is closely similar to the external phloem. In the angiosperms, where internal phloem is also frequently present, this tissue is less conspicuous. It occurs usually as strands, large or small, more or less closely associated with the primary xylem (Fig. 138). In amphiphloic ferns, where the cylinder is broken by leaf gaps, the internal phloem unites with the external through the gaps, and amphicribal bundles are formed (Fig. 139*B*). In angiosperms with internal phloem and broken vascular cylinder, the internal phloem forms the innermost part of bicollateral bundles, as in *Cucurbita*; where the primary xylem forms a more or less complete cylinder, strands of internal phloem also form a fairly continuous layer. Internal phloem is in most plants only primary; rarely a cambium arises inside the primary xylem and a small amount of internal secondary phloem is formed, as in *Tecoma*.

The cells of internal phloem are like those of external phloem, except that fibers are few or lacking, and the sieve tubes and companion cells occur in small, restricted groups, surrounded by parenchyma (Fig. 138). This parenchyma, together with that of the protoxylem region, forms the perimedullary zone of the pith (Chap. V). In ontogeny internal phloem develops later than external primary phloem. Such a layer is, of course, morphologically, a part of the vascular cylinder and not the outer layer of the pith. Where an inner endodermis is present, this layer separates the inner phloem from the pith. The internal phloem and the internal endodermis are often continuous through leaf and branch gaps with the outer phloem and the outer endodermis.

Internal phloem occurs in many families among the angiosperms,



chiefly in the more highly specialized groups, such as the Solanaceae, Gentianaceae, Myrtaceae, Cucurbitaceae, Convolvulaceae, Apocynaceae, Asclepiadaceae, Onagraceae, Campanulaceae, and Compositae. In some of these plants the internal phloem is apparently degenerate; in others it probably plays a prominent part in conduction. The latter is the condition in the tomato and potato plants, especially in the rhizomes and tubers of the potato. In the potato tuber, except for a slender central core, strands of internal phloem are present throughout most of the region inside the thin xylem cylinder. Like the pith, the cortex is narrow. The storage tissue of the potato is, therefore, to a large extent a par-

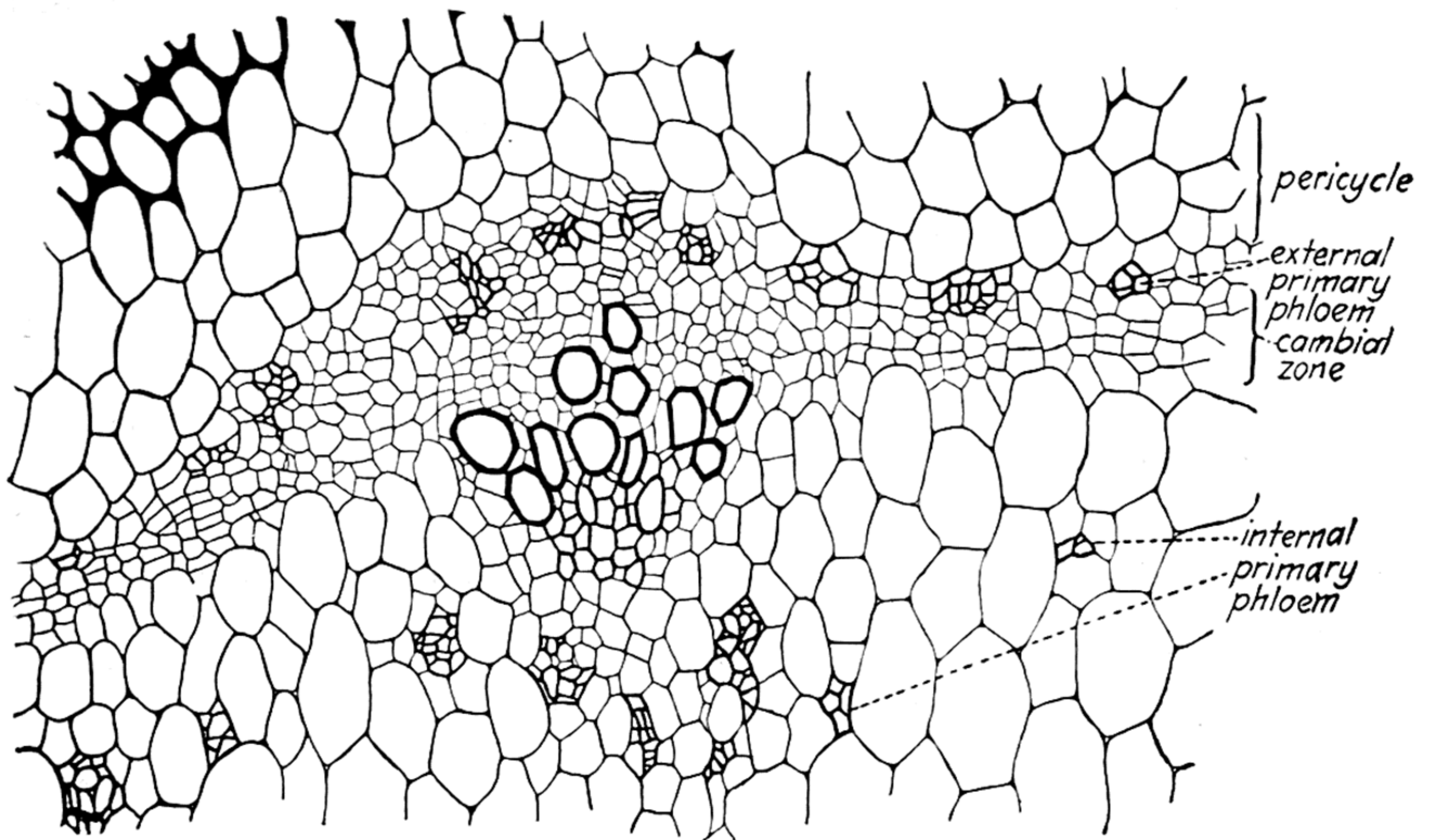


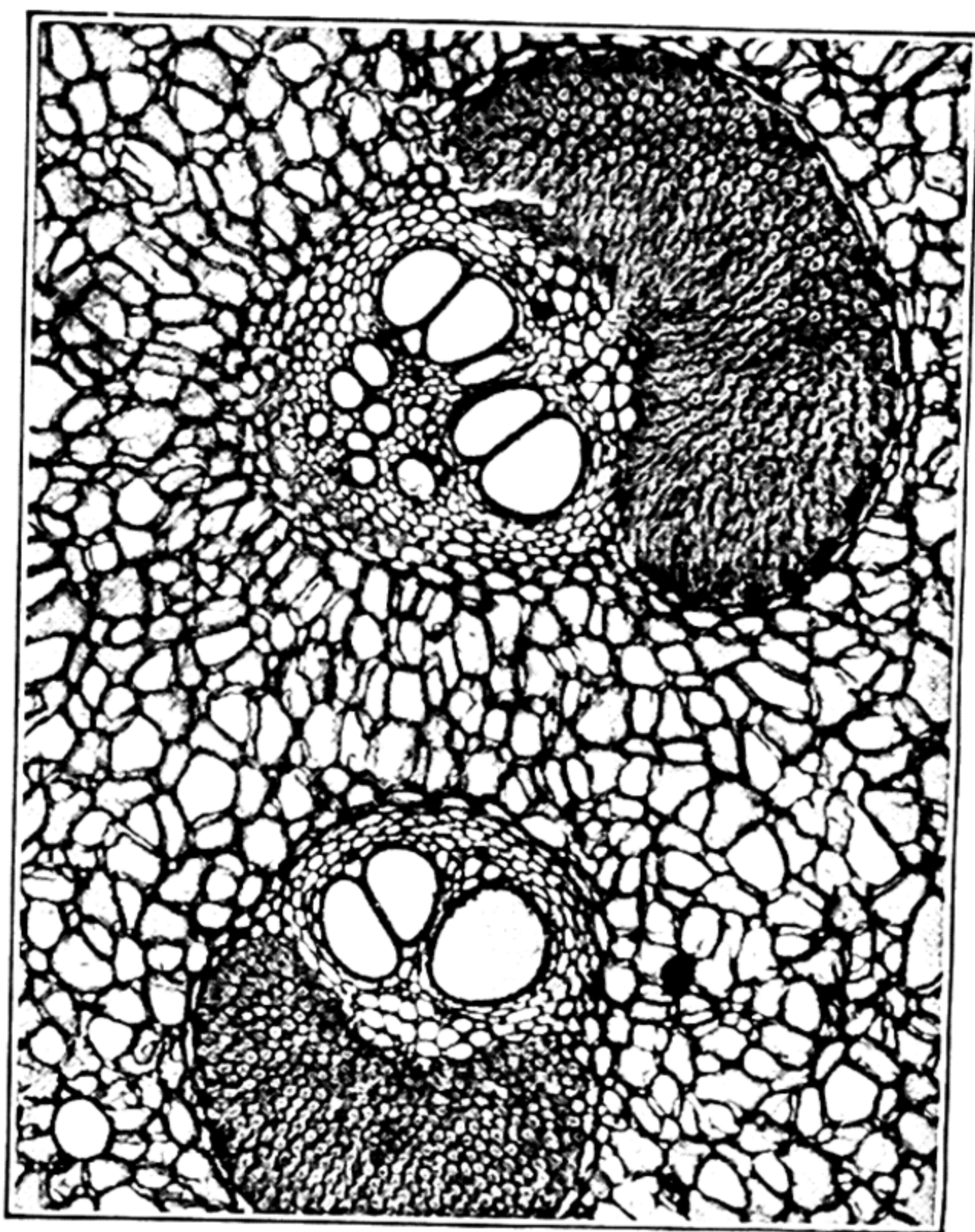
FIG. 138.—Internal (intraxylary) phloem in young stem of *Solanum tuberosum*. The primary phloem cells are in small groups external and internal to the cambial zone. (After Artschwager.)

enchymatous vascular cylinder; the pith makes up only a small part of the tuber.

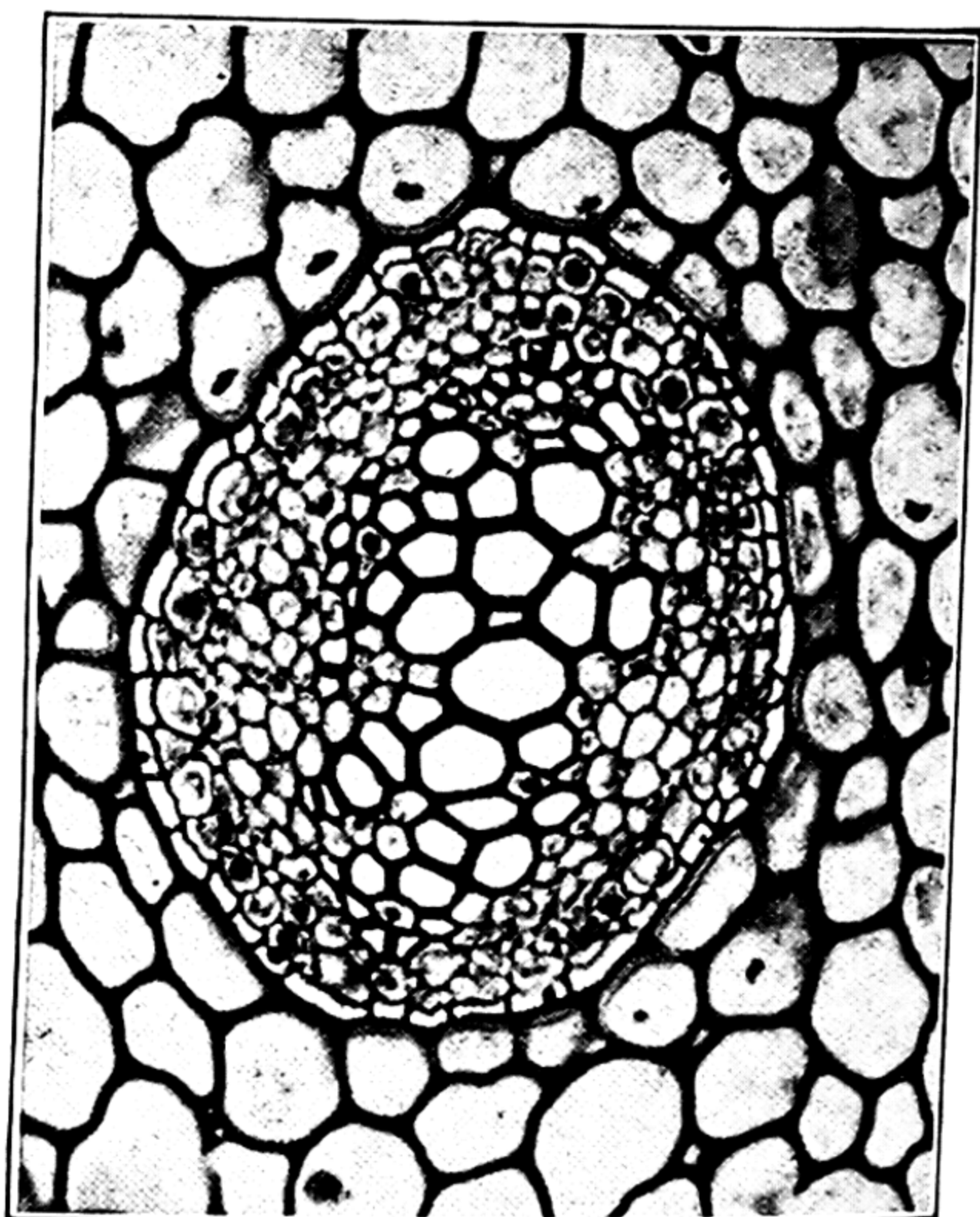
**The Vascular Bundle.**<sup>1</sup>—The vascular tissues of a plant form a continuous system. In the axes of the majority of plants these tissues are arranged in the form of solid or hollow cylinders. But in the axes of other plants, and in appendages generally, the vascular tissues occur in more or less distinct strands, which are united proximally and sometimes also distally with other similar bundles or with the central vascular

<sup>1</sup> A general discussion of the vascular bundle is placed in this chapter for convenience alone. Bundles are not, of course, restricted to stems. Further discussion of bundle structure will be found in other chapters.

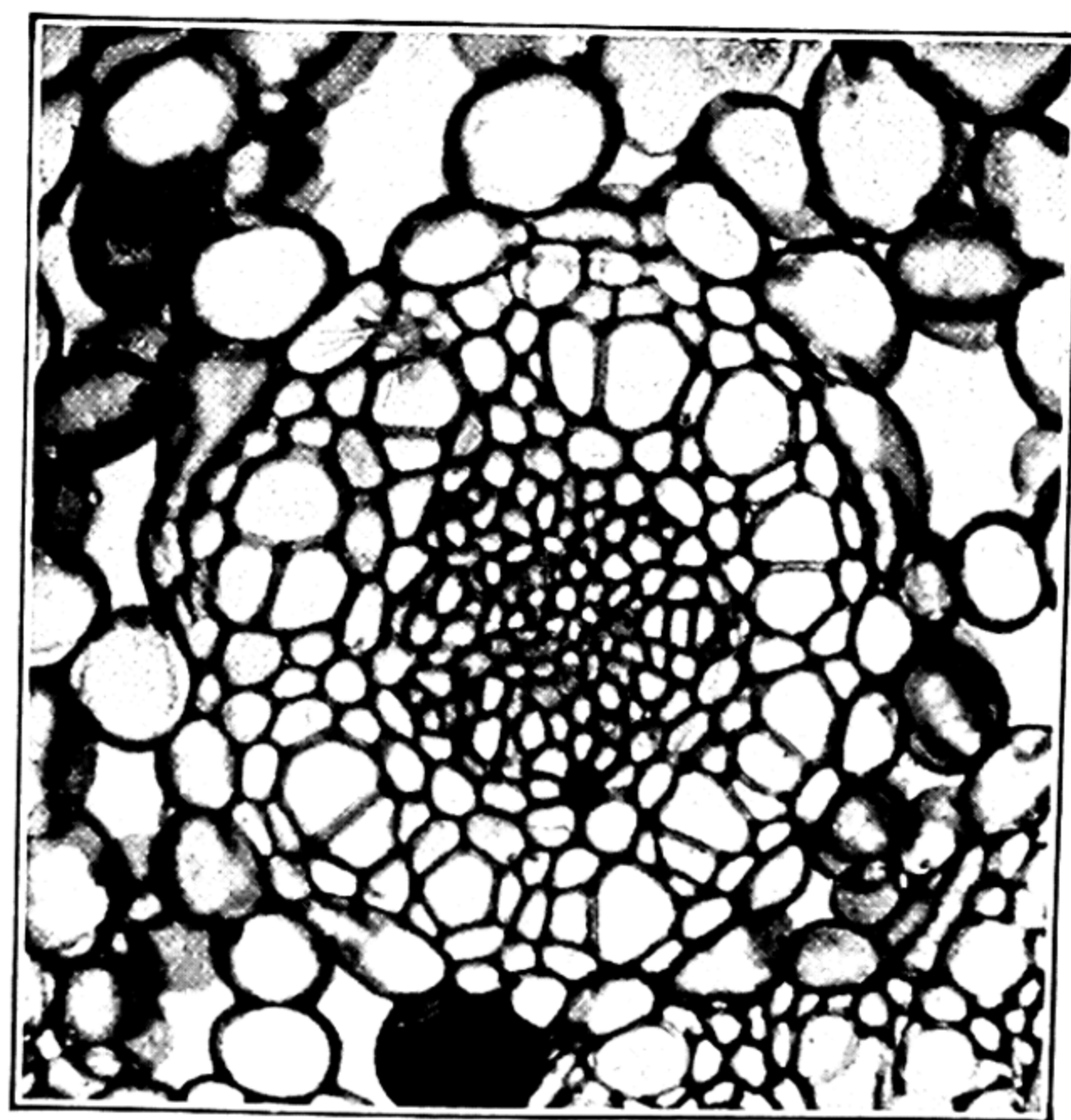




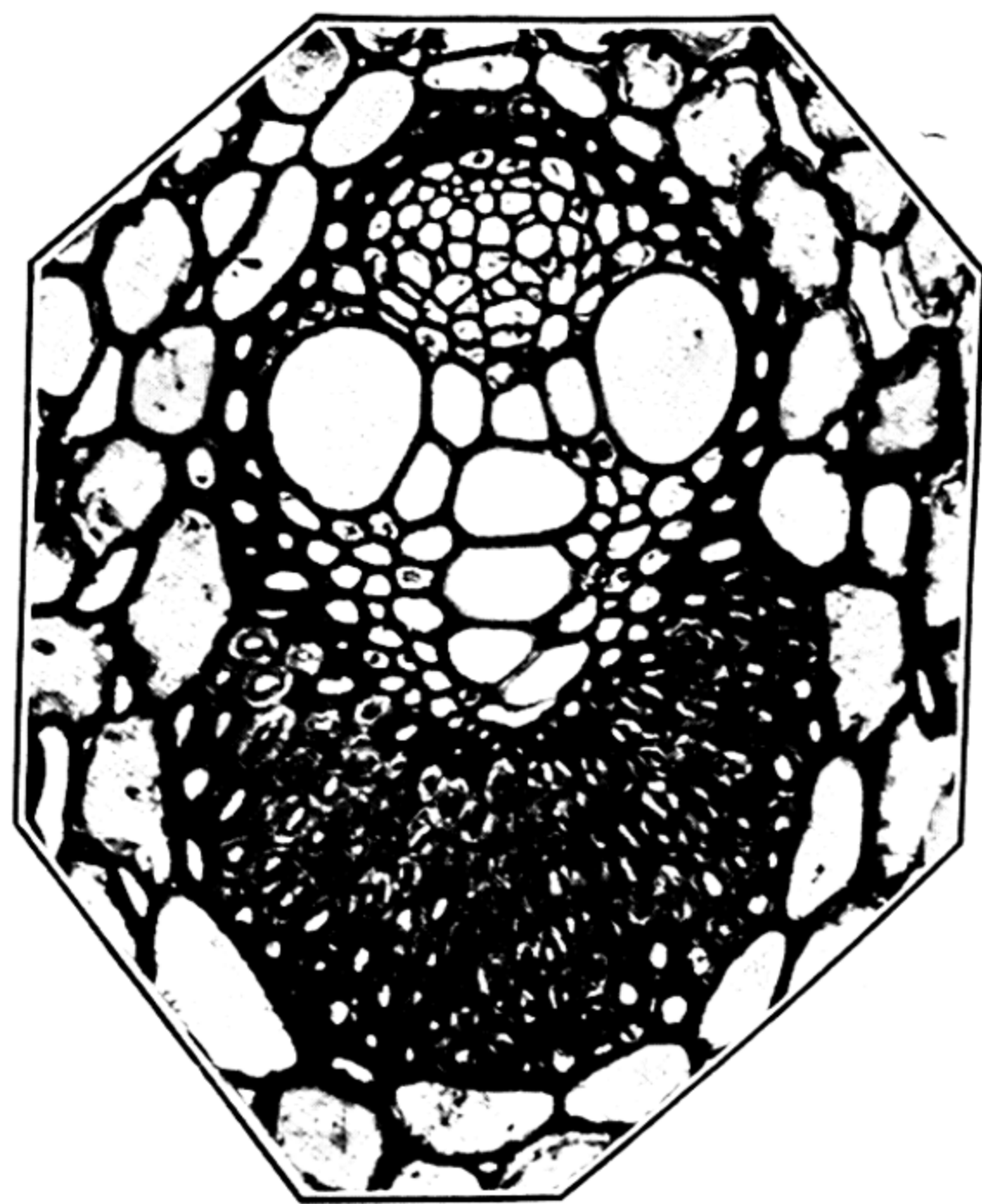
A



B



C



D

FIG. 139.—Vascular bundles. A, *Sabal Palmetto*, collateral monocotyledonous bundles with heavy bundle cap; B, *Polypodium vulgare*, amphicribal bundle; C, *Acorus Calamus*, amphivasal bundle; D, *Scirpus lineatus*, collateral monocotyledonous bundle, with sclerenchyma sheath, two prominent vessels flanking the circular phloem mass. (A, Courtesy of the U.S. Forest Products Laboratory.)



tissues. To these more or less free parts or extensions of the vascular body the term *vascular bundle* is applied (Chap. V). The bundle is, obviously, an important structural feature of the plant; but as such it has doubtless received undue attention. The study of the stele and of the relationship of axis and appendages shows clearly that the bundle is merely a segregated portion of the conducting system. In the axis the bundle is not the fundamental unit of structure from which the vascular cylinder has been built up. The disposition of the tissues in a cylinder is the primitive condition, and the discrete bundles of axes are the portions of such a cylinder broken up in specialization (Chap. V).

*Size and Shape of the Vascular Bundle.*—Vascular bundles vary greatly in structure and shape, in course taken in the plant body, and in relation to other bundles and the central vascular body. The various types of bundles, in so far as they depend upon the relationship of xylem and phloem to each other in the bundle (concentric, collateral, etc.), and upon the course of bundles in the axis (cauline and common), have been considered in Chaps. IV and V. Since any essentially free strand of the vascular system, large or small, can be called a “bundle,” a bundle, as seen in cross section, may consist of an indefinite number of cells, or of very few, even two (Fig. 150). Bundle tips in leaves and fruits often consist of a single cell. In cross-sectional shape, the bundle is most commonly oblong, or elliptical, but linear, forked, and irregularly shaped bundles also occur.

*Histological Structure of the Vascular Bundle.*—The proportionate amount of xylem and phloem varies much in both collateral and concentric types of bundles. In both types the bundle may consist largely of one tissue, and collateral bundles are sometimes (reduced or vestigial bundles, and bundle tips) made up of xylem or phloem alone. In collateral bundles, the xylem, especially when small in amount, may extend laterally about the phloem to a greater or less extent, a condition found in *Equisetum*, in some monocotyledons, and in other herbaceous angiosperms. In bundles of this type the xylem may even be separated into groups.

In some specialized bundles, the cells of both xylem and phloem are reduced in number; fibers and parenchyma cells are few or lacking in each tissue. The phloem of such bundles may consist wholly of sieve tubes and companion cells; the xylem, of vessels and tracheids, or of tracheids or vessels alone. This is the condition in many monocotyledons and in some dicotyledons, such as certain genera of the Ranunculaceae. Under these conditions, the sieve tubes and companion cells are often symmetrically arranged, and of the few vessels one, two, or three are of large diameter. In the bundle of many monocotyledons there are two huge vessels, one on each “shoulder” of the xylem group, as in *Zea*;



in fewer forms, there is one large central vessel, as in *Musa*. In still other genera, there are several vessels much alike in size.

Small bundles are, of course, largely or wholly of primary tissues, and commonly have their cells arranged irregularly. In many dicotyledons even the primary vascular tissues are arranged in radial rows, for example, in *Trifolium* (Fig. 140A) and *Asclepias*. Where the bundle has a small amount of secondary tissues, the central part usually shows weak radial arrangement and the inner and outer cells are irregularly arranged.

Just as the proportion of primary and secondary tissues varies, so

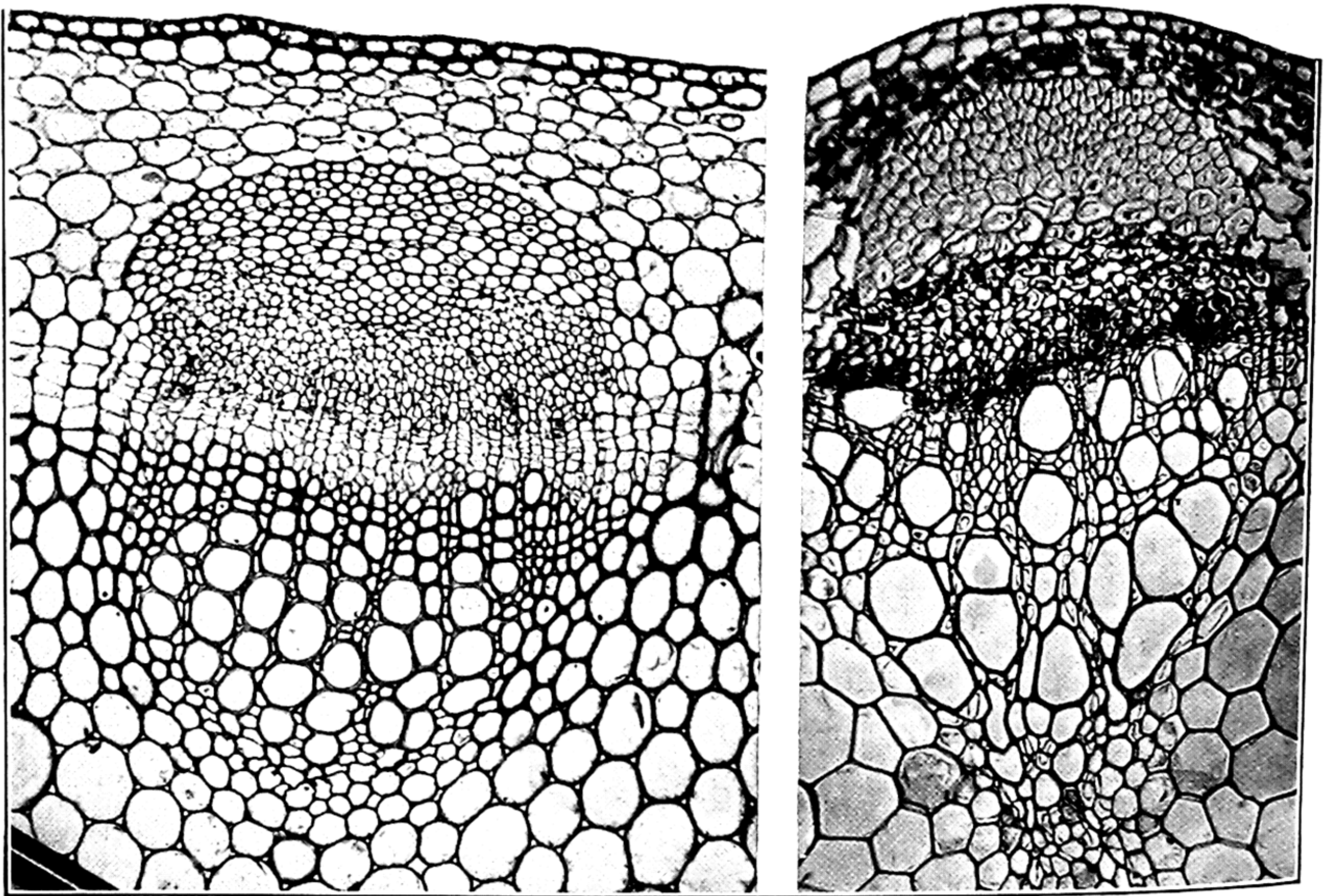


FIG. 140.—Collateral dicotyledonous vascular bundles. A, *Trifolium pratense*, young bundle, secondary tissues in early stages, primary xylem radially arranged, bundle cap immature; B, *Pisum sativum*, mature bundle, cell arrangement distorted by vessel development.

does that of protoxylem and metaxylem, the former being commonly large in amount in small stem and leaf bundles. The extent to which protoxylem lacunae are formed likewise varies; such spaces are especially large in many of the monocotyledons.

Strands or sheaths of fibers are often associated with conducting cells of xylem and phloem to form a complex conducting and supporting structure that was long aptly called a “fibrovascular bundle.” The term was extended to bundles without caps or sheaths and came to be applied loosely to all vascular strands, simple or complex. Morphologically



the fibrous part of the bundle may constitute a part of the vascular tissues—bundle-cap fibers in some plants are a part of the protophloem—or may lie outside those tissues. The term “*vascular bundle*” has supplanted the older term.

The association of fibers morphologically external to the bundle with the vascular tissues is apparently connected with the mechanical relations of support for the organ concerned, and support and protection for the softer conducting cells. The fibrous cells associated with vascular bundles—whether a part of the phloem, pericycle, or cortex—commonly form “caps” or crescent-shaped masses (in cross section) external, or both external and internal, to the bundle (Figs. 135*D,F*, 139*A,D*). These caps may be united laterally by flanges of similar cells, so that a complete supporting and protecting cylinder is formed. Where the bundles are rather widely separated, and especially where they are much reduced and specialized, they are often completely sheathed by fibers (Fig. 139*D*). This is the condition in the stems of many monocotyledons and other herbaceous forms.

The term “vascular bundle” is used in studies of physiological anatomy to denote bundles without fibrous sheaths and in which the xylem and phloem themselves contain no fibers. In the physiological sense the term “fibrovascular bundle” indicates a bundle whose xylem and phloem contain fibers as a constituent part of these tissues, whether or not fibers external to these conducting tissues are also present.

### ANOMALOUS STRUCTURE IN STEMS

Though the great majority of plants possess stelar structure of the type considered normal, many have unusual structure. This unusual structure is of many different types, which, however, fall into two groups: (a) those in which a cambium of normal type and persistence, by peculiarity or irregularity in its activity, develops vascular tissues of unusual arrangement and proportion of xylem and phloem; (b) those in which the cambium, and, consequently, the secondary xylem and phloem, is abnormally arranged, or in which the original cambium is replaced by other cambium layers secondarily formed. These additional cambia also may be of unusual extent and arrangement. To the many combinations of unusual structure that are produced by these modifications is added the anomaly of the presence of medullary and cortical bundles. As a result, extremely complex structures are formed. The interpretation of all such conditions can usually readily be made by ontogenetic studies, either of the developing axis itself or of the seedling. Descriptions of a few of the many varieties of anomalous structure will give an idea of the principal types of departure from the normal.



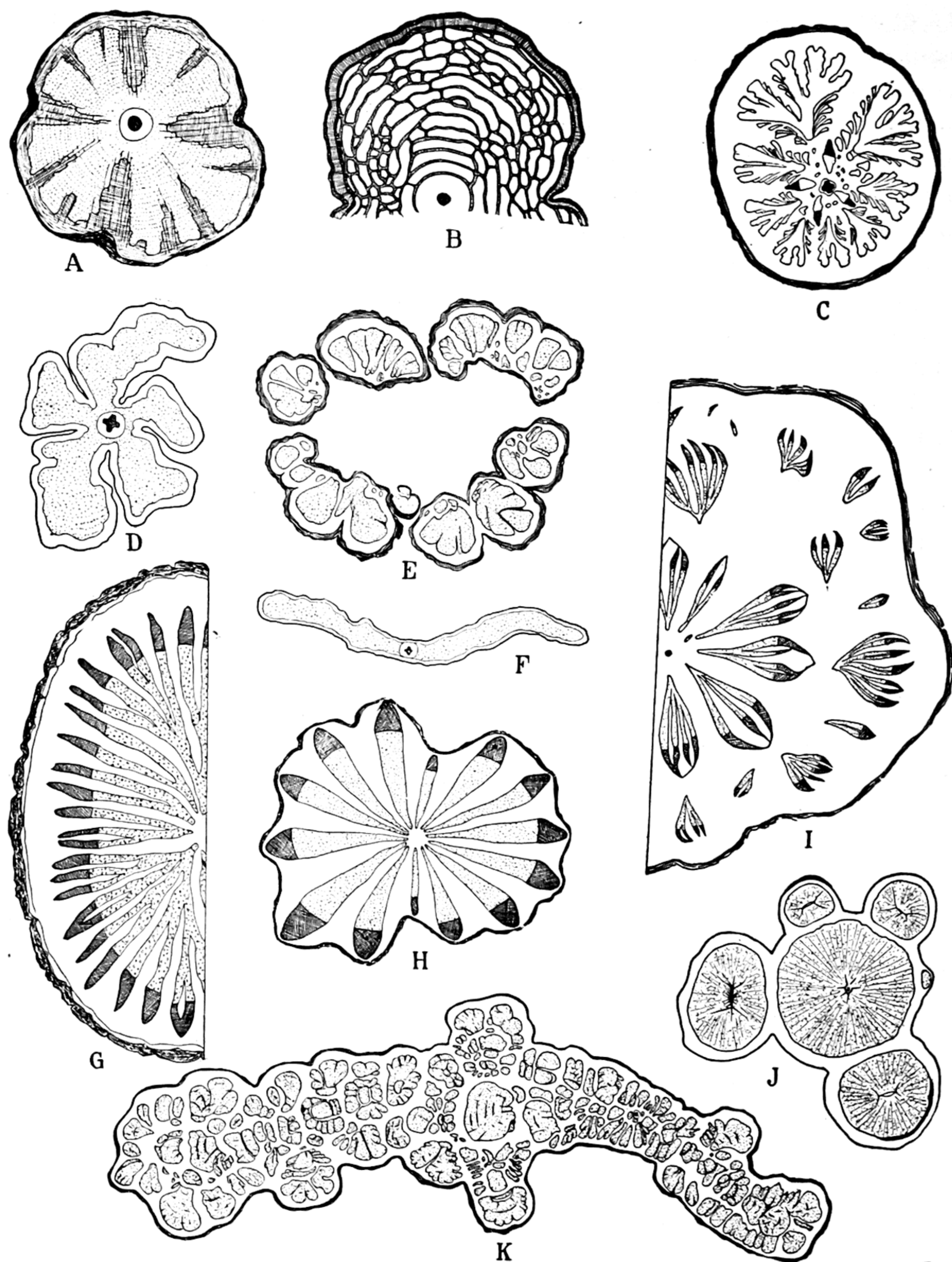


FIG. 141.—Anomalous stem structure—liana types. A, A Bignoniaceous genus; B, *Securidaca lanceolata*; C, *Bignonia* sp.; D, *Bauhinia rubiginosa*; E, *Serjania ichthyoctona*; F, *Bauhinia* sp.; G, *Aristolochia triangularis*; H, *Begonia fruticosa*; I, *Piper fluminense*; J, *Thinouia scandens*; K, *Bauhinia Langsdorffiana*. (After Schenck.)



Where a cambium, normal in position and activity, forms in some segments much larger proportions of xylem than of phloem, and in others more phloem than xylem, a ridged and furrowed xylem cylinder is formed. This may be of simple structure, as in Fig. 141A, or very complex, as in Fig. 141C. In some genera, as in *Aristolochia* (Fig. 141G), segments of the cambium form only ray-like parenchyma and, with increase in diameter, new areas of cambium are constantly given over to the formation of rays of parenchyma. A strongly fluted vascular cylinder is thus formed. Restriction of the activity of the cambium to certain regions also results in the formation of ridged stems (Fig. 141D). Strap-like stems (Fig. 141F) are formed in the same manner.

Stems of other peculiar shapes or types are formed by unusual position of the cambium. This layer, while the stem is young, is thrown into folds or ridges; the tips of the ridges are pinched off and after separation develop "steles" by themselves (Fig. 141J). In some plants the cambium appears originally in several separate strips, each of which surrounds portions, even individual strands, of the primary tissue. A stem with this structure appears to be made up of several fused stems. This apparently compound condition becomes more marked as the stem becomes older and the parts separate as the outer layers of each strand die because of the development of periderm layers (Fig. 141E). In this way there is formed a stem composed of strands lying together more or less like the strands of a rope. A somewhat similar structure is brought about by the breaking into strips of the original cambium cylinder, and even of the vascular cylinder formed by this meristem, by the proliferation of xylem parenchyma (Fig. 141K). Excessive increase of parenchyma in the xylem and phloem ruptures the first-formed, original tissues and the cambium sheet which formed them.

**Interxylary Phloem.**—Variations of another type in the activity of the cambium produce *interxylary phloem*. Phloem of this type is secondary phloem in the form of strands embedded in secondary xylem. There appear to be two methods by which interxylary phloem comes to lie embedded in secondary xylem. Although it is possible that there is only one method (the second described below), since behavior of the cambium in such growth types has been studied in detail in but few plants. In genera like *Combretum* and *Entada*, small segments of the cambium are said to produce phloem cells toward the inside for a brief period, in place of the xylem cells which are normally produced. After a brief period of such activity these cambium segments return to normal function, and thus bury the inwardly formed phloem with xylem. In other forms, such as *Strychnos*, the interxylary phloem strands are formed by the cambium toward the outside as a part of the normal external phloem, but the



strands later become embedded in the xylem in the following manner. Small segments of the cambium cease to function, their cells becoming transformed into mature conducting tissue. New segments of cambium then arise, as secondary meristems, in the phloem some few rows of cells out from the original cambium, or in the pericycle. These unite with the edges of the segments of the general cambium cylinder—which have continued meanwhile their normal activity—and thus enclose a strand of phloem cells. This is repeated in other segments of the cambium so that the secondary xylem possesses numerous scattered strands of embedded phloem.

The formation of phloem embedded in other secondary tissues occurs also in secondary growth in monocotyledons (Chap. VI). Other types of phloem burial are brought about by the development of accessory cambium layers external to the phloem, as discussed in the following paragraphs. In some genera, a combination of these methods occurs.

**Accessory Cambium Formation and Activity.**—The formation of secondary cambial zones is responsible for many of the unusual types of stems. These meristems commonly develop in the pericycle and function as does a normal cambium, or, when the first cambium has functioned in an unusual manner, repeat this peculiar behavior. Such secondary cambial activity follows the cessation of function of the first layer, one or even many additional layers successively appearing and ceasing to function. Thus a cylinder of alternate concentric layers of xylem and phloem is formed (Fig. 141*B*). The restriction of the extent of the secondary cambium layers to certain narrow parts of the circumference results in the formation of much ridged or flattened stems, and, where the secondary layers form on but one side, or on two opposite sides, of a strap-like stem (Fig. 141*F*).

Of these types of modified stele, the majority are found in plants of special growth habit, many of them lianas; the modifications appear to be largely associated with the habit of the stem and with the mechanical demands upon its structure.

In the Chenopodiaceae, Amaranthaceae, and allied families a somewhat different type of unusual growth is present. Here there is first formed a hollow cylinder of vascular tissue or a ring of irregularly arranged bundles. These bundles are partly of secondary nature, but cambial activity soon ceases and a new, secondary cambium arises in the pericycle just outside the bundles. In some species the cambium forms tissues centripetally, consisting of bundles (similar to those already formed) embedded in nonvascular tissue. This embedding tissue, which has been variously termed *conjunctive tissue*, *interfascicular tissue*, and *intermediate tissue*, consists of elongate, lignified cells, which in some



the different methods of fusion, division, or twisting of the leaf traces in their course through the petiole. In many plants, traces that enter the petiole separately remain distinct and pass to the blade without change of structure or orientation. In others, the traces fuse in the petiole to form a single strand of various cross-sectional shape, a hollow cylinder, or a group of more or less complete stele-like cylinders (Fig. 153A,B); in still others, the traces divide into several or many strands which become arranged and oriented in any one of many ways. Many of the bundles

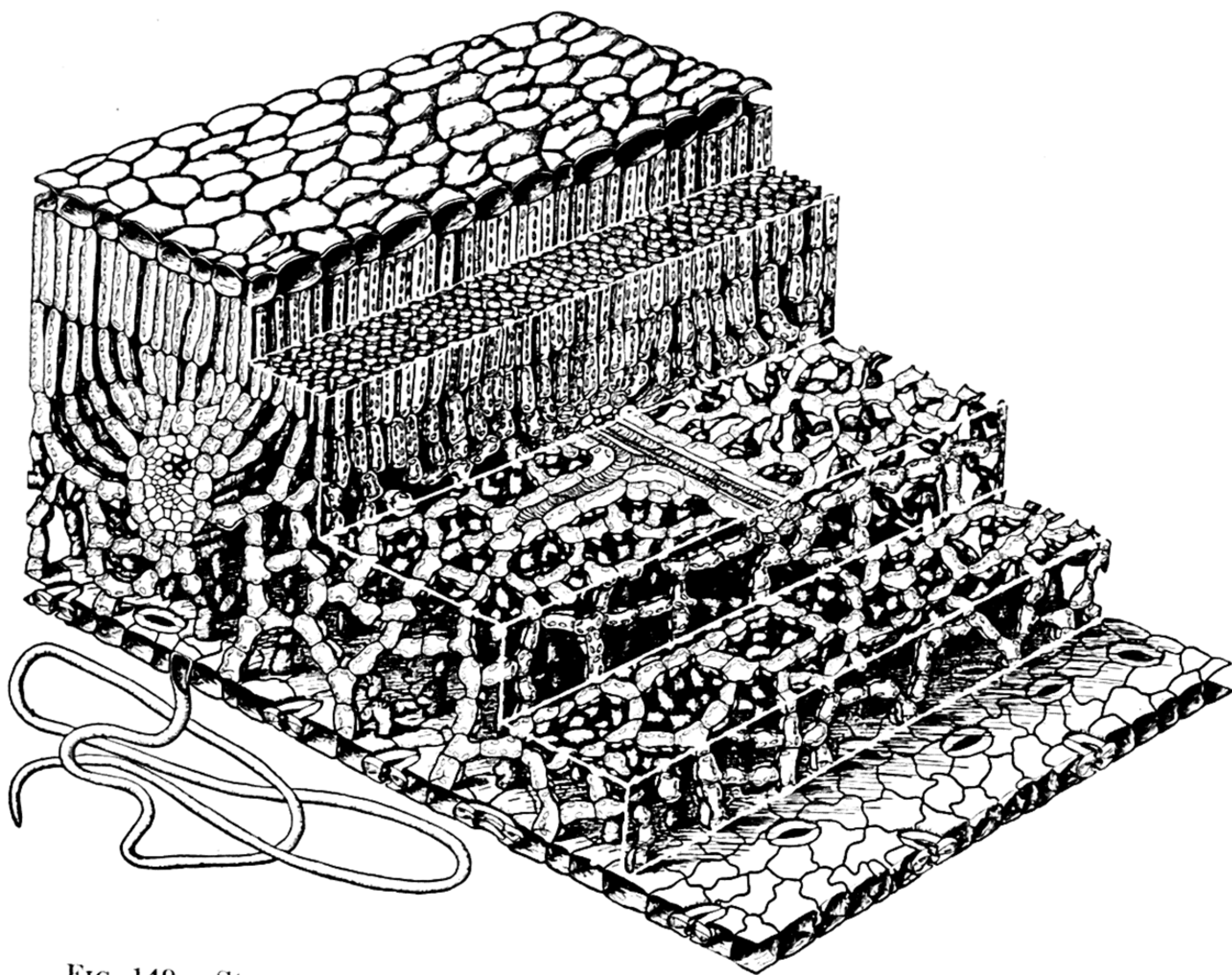


FIG. 149.—Structure of apple leaf showing relation of cells in the various tissues.

so formed may be amphicribal within the petiole. On passing out of the petiole into the blade, the vascular bundles usually again assume collateral structure with dorsal phloem; sometimes, however, the petiolar arrangement is maintained in the larger veins.

In many ferns the traces to a single leaf make up a considerable portion of the stele below the point of attachment. These large traces are in most ferns a part of an amphiphloic siphonostele, and as soon as freed from the stele become amphicribal bundles by the union of the external and internal phloem at the sides of the trace. The external and the internal endodermis also unite about the traces. These bundles pass up the



which function in digestion, have more elaborate structure than typical bundle ends.

**The Bundle Sheath.**—With but few exceptions, notably in some aquatic plants and delicate ferns, the vascular bundles of leaves are enclosed in a structure known as the bundle sheath. The elements forming this sheath are parenchyma cells elongated parallel with the vein axis (Figs. 146C, 150B) and joined laterally in such a way as to surround the vascular tissue with a tight sheath resembling an endodermis but lacking

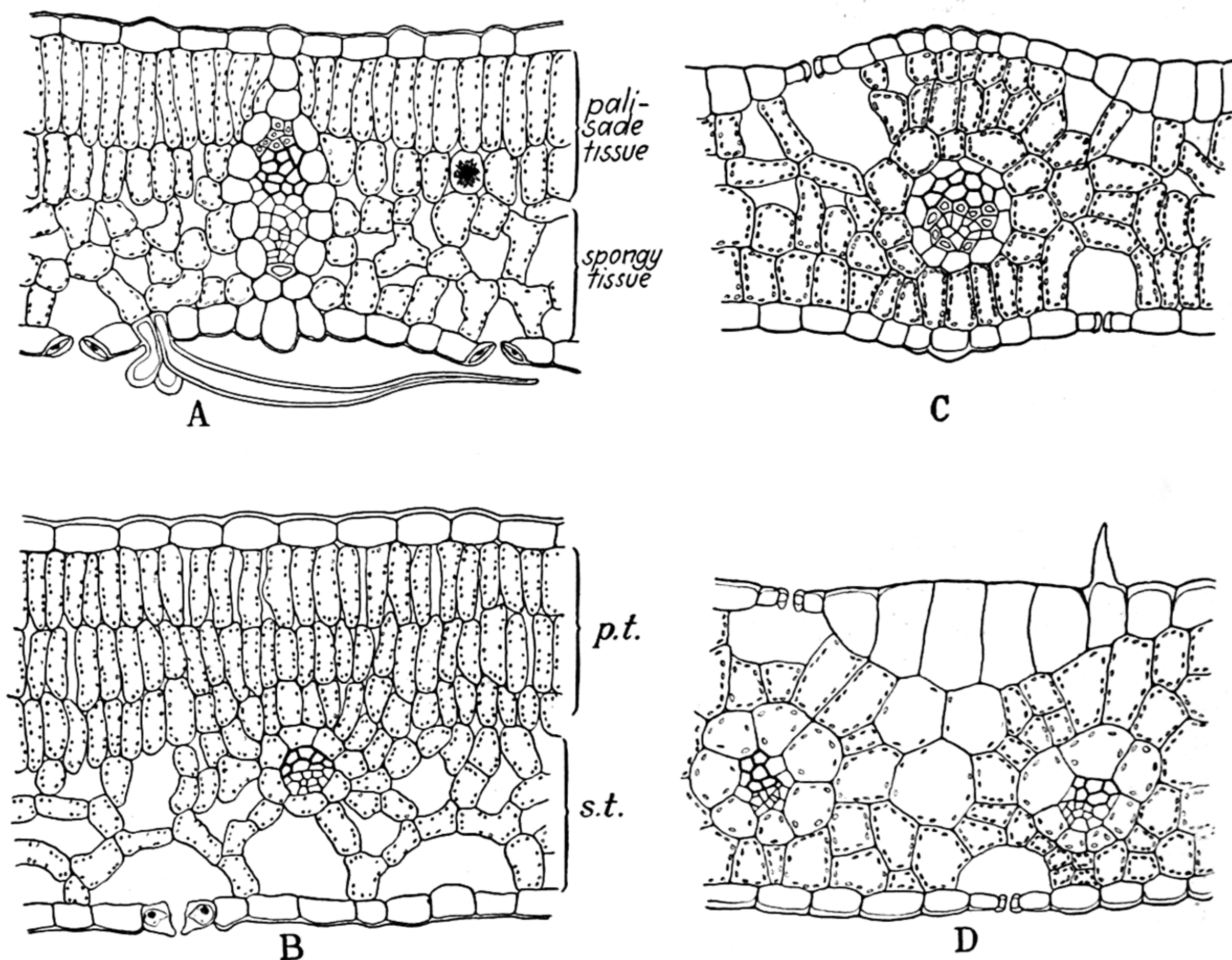


FIG. 151.—Leaf structure, in cross section. A, *Quercus*; B, *Malus pumila*; C, *Avena sativa*; D, *Zea mays*. A, B, with palisade and spongy parenchyma; C, D, without differentiated mesophyll.

Casparian strips. In many species, for example, *Malus pumila*, these cells contain chloroplasts and resemble the adjacent mesophyll cells except that they are more regular and elongated in shape and contain relatively fewer plastids than the mesophyll cells. In other species, for example, *Carya Pecan*, the bundle sheath cells are more sharply differentiated from the mesophyll in that they take a different stain and do not contain chloroplasts.

The cells of the bundle sheath are in intimate contact on their inner faces with the conducting elements of the vascular bundle or adjacent



of the petioles and larger veins of dicotyledonous leaves are usually smaller than those of the stem and the bundles of these parts have relatively less secondary tissue as compared with primary tissue. The amount of secondary tissue in leaves varies with the species.

As the vascular bundles branch and become progressively smaller, the secondary tissues are reduced in amount until in veins of medium and small size, there is none. At the same time the size of the vascular elements is greatly reduced. In the leaf of a woody dicotyledon like the apple, the smaller veins consist of several close-spiral or reticulate elements accompanied by about the same number of small sieve tubes, companion cells, and parenchyma cells enclosed in the bundle sheath (Fig. 150B). With further reduction the xylem may consist of only a single spiral element (Fig. 150A) and the phloem of a single elongate parenchyma cell. In the transition from phloem consisting of sieve tubes, companion cells, and parenchyma cells to phloem made up of a single parenchyma cell, the sieve tube before its disappearance is reduced in diameter to that or less than that of the companion cell. In the smallest veins, the phloem mother cell fails to divide. The resulting parenchyma cell, which resembles a companion cell in form, has been called a *transition cell*.

**Bundle Ends.**—The ultimate divisions of the vascular bundles in leaves terminate in what are known as “bundle ends.” In leaves that have more or less definite vein islets, the bundle ends bend into the mesophyll of the islet and end abruptly near its center. Some bundle ends may be somewhat enlarged at the tip or branched in various ways (Fig. 146C,D). In leaves with parallel veins, for example, the leaves of grasses, or in leaves without definite vein islets, the bundle ends may be merely short spurs from the veins extending into the mesophyll. The bundle ends and the small veins forming the vein islets supply the mesophyll with water and nutrients and absorb and remove the products of photosynthesis. Because of the distribution of the vein islets and bundle ends the distance through which water and materials in solution travel through the mesophyll is always about the same. In the apple leaf, for example, the distance between bundle ends or between bundle ends and veins bordering the vein islets is about 88 micra.

The structure of bundle ends varies somewhat with the species. Probably in mesophytic dicotyledons the bundle end commonly consists of a single spiral or reticulate xylem element accompanied by a single specialized parenchyma cell, the two elements surrounded by the parenchymatous bundle sheath. Such a bundle end in the leaf of the apple is shown in Figs. 150A, 146D. The bundle ends of hydathodes and some glands, especially the glands of insectivorous plants (Chap. XIV),



fibers above and below the vascular tissue, the bundle sheath has contact with the mesophyll on the sides of the bundle only (Fig. 157*B*).

The morphological nature of the bundle sheath is uncertain. The nature of the cells and their contents suggest that it is a part of the mesophyll which it resembles.

**Mechanical Support in the Leaf.**—Considered mechanically, the dicotyledonous leaf is a complex network of strands which supports a relatively large blade or photosynthetic surface at the end of a slender

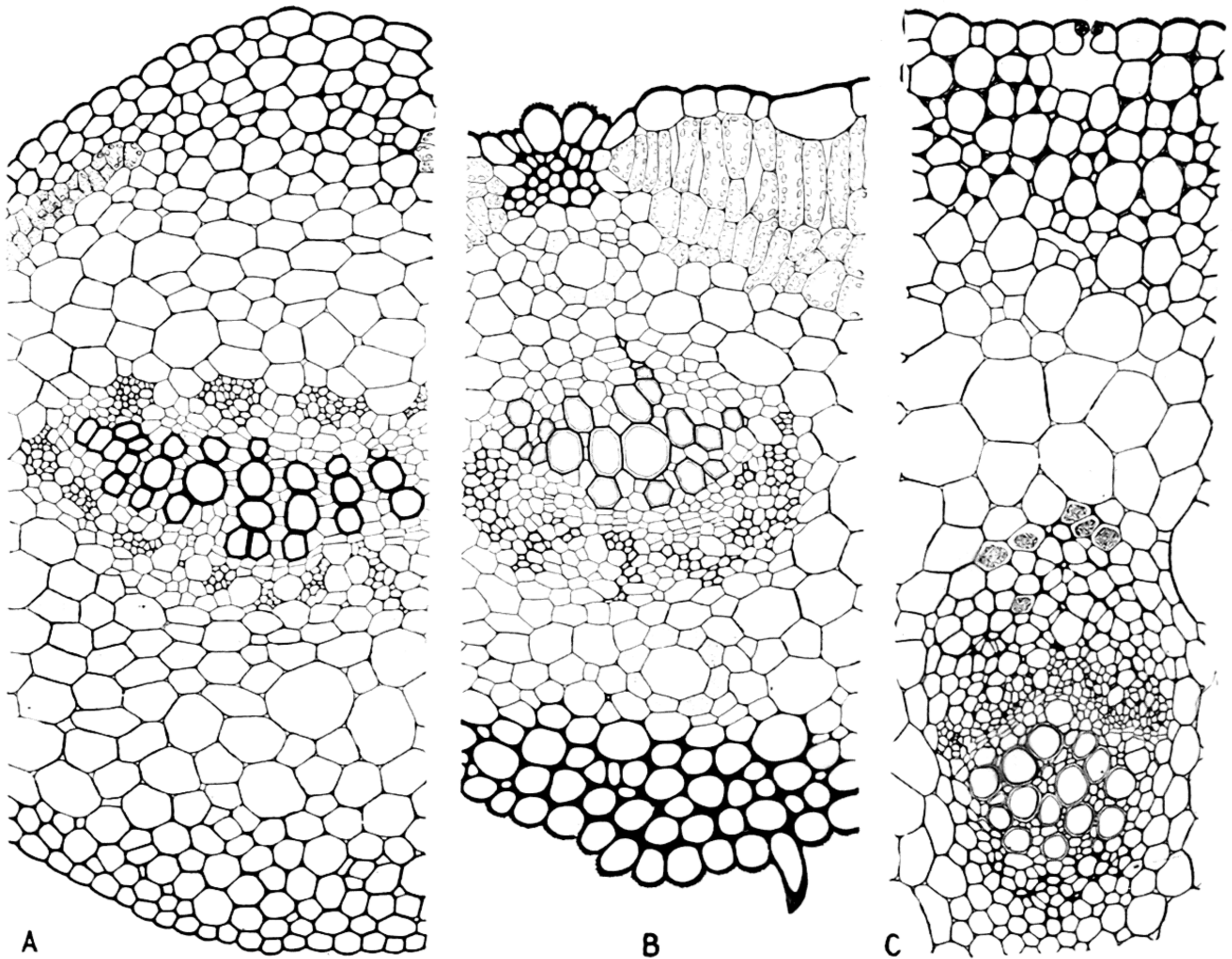


FIG. 154.—Collenchyma in leaves. A, *Ipomoea Batatas*, midrib; B, *Apium graveolens*, vein of leaflet; C, *Rheum Rhaponticum*, petiole. (Courtesy of E. F. and E. Artschwager.)

petiole. In this support, collenchyma, sclerenchyma, and the woody xylem play an important part. In early stages of development, collenchyma is of major importance in supporting the developing petiole and leaf blade. Collenchyma is most abundant in the outer cortical layers of the petiole and the larger veins (Fig. 154*A,B*). It is also commonly associated with veins of intermediate size where it lies above the vascular tissue. The turgor of the parenchyma itself is also important in support during the developmental stages of the leaf.

In dicotyledonous leaves fibers are usually associated with the



vascular tissues of the petiole, where they occur as bundle caps adjacent to the phloem. Groups of fibers are found also on both the ventral and dorsal sides of many of the larger veins. In this position, often in combination with collenchyma, these fibers above and below the vascular bundles build up vertical plates of supporting tissue extending through the leaf and connecting the upper and lower epidermis (Fig. 157B). This so-called "I-beam" structure is considered most efficient in strengthening the leaf, and much has been written emphasizing the theory that this arrangement of mechanical tissues provides maximum strength with a minimum amount of supporting tissue.

The veins with their sclerenchyma make a network of plates through the leaf dividing the mesophyll into more or less definite compartments. Within these compartments, the upper epidermis supports the palisade tissue which is in a very real sense suspended from it. The upper epidermis is in turn supported by the plates of mechanical tissues extending through the leaf. As the larger bundles divide to form successively smaller and smaller vascular strands, the amount of sclerenchyma becomes much reduced, until in the smaller bundles mechanical elements are lacking. Some leaves are further strengthened or stiffened by large branching sclereids, scattered through the mesophyll, or by lignified epidermal and subepidermal cells.

Considered morphologically, the supporting elements of leaves and petioles may be formed from any of the tissues. Commonly, however, the fibrous strands or sheaths that are closely associated with the vascular bundles are either phloem fibers or pericyclic fibers. Occasionally, they are derived from xylem or from cortical tissues.

**The Mesophyll.**—The photosynthetic tissue between the upper and lower epidermis consists typically of thin-walled parenchyma known as *mesophyll*. This tissue usually forms the larger part of the substance of the leaf. The cells of the mesophyll show great variation in shape and arrangement, but, in general, they are grouped in two classes: the *palisade parenchyma*, or *palisade cells*, and the *spongy parenchyma*, or *spongy mesophyll* (Figs. 145C, 151A,B).

In the palisade parenchyma the cells are elongate and more or less cylindrical and arranged in one or more rather regular, relatively compact layers near the ventral, or upper side of the leaf with the long axis of the cells perpendicular to the leaf surface. The cells, which in transverse sections of leaves appear to be closely packed together, are really usually separate from each other or at least exposed to air spaces over a part of their surface (Figs. 145D, 149). In many species, these elongate cells are joined end to end to form filaments which connect with the upper epidermis at one end and with the bundle sheath at the other (Fig. 145C).



In leaves that stand more or less vertically or in a drooping position, palisade parenchyma may occur on both sides. A frequent modification of the columnar palisade cell is the cone-shaped type, which lies with its larger end against the epidermis. In many leaves, especially those of plants growing in water or in shaded situations, there is no well-developed palisade parenchyma; this is also the condition in the leaves of most gymnosperms (Fig. 182C), of grasses (Fig. 183C), and of other specialized types. The number of palisade layers and the density of the cell structure in those layers depend largely, either directly or indirectly, upon light intensity. There may, therefore, be great variation in the proportion and arrangement of the palisade parenchyma in the same species growing under different conditions. The mesophyll structure of leaves from different parts of the same plant also shows considerable variation depending on amount of light and other factors.

In the spongy parenchyma, the cells lack regularity in shape and are arranged loosely, so that a large part of their surface is exposed to the gases in the intercellular spaces. Some cells are very irregular in shape, with radiating arms connecting with the arms of similar cells, thus making an irregular network of green tissue (Fig. 146C). In some species, the spongy mesophyll cells form a network of filaments that arch over the stomatal regions and connect directly with the bundle sheaths (Figs. 145C, 149).

The lens-shaped chloroplasts in mesophyll cells are usually located next to the cell wall with the sides of the disk parallel with the wall. In elongate palisade cells the plastids may be arranged in several vertical rows. Chloroplasts can change their shape with changes in light intensity and other factors. With light of low intensity striking the leaf surface from above, the plastids may become more nearly spherical and thus expose a relatively large surface to the light. With intense light the plastids may become flattened so that light strikes only their thin edges. Other variations in chloroplast orientation have been reported.

The internal structural conditions in the leaf are advantageous to the function of photosynthesis. Briefly, these are, in part, the exposure of a large number of chloroplasts to sunlight, the exposure of a large cell-membrane surface to the intercellular spaces where interchange of gases takes place, and such an arrangement of cells in relation to each other and to the vascular bundles that the products of photosynthesis can be rapidly removed and the cells supplied with water and mineral nutrients.

**Epidermis of Leaves.**—The epidermis envelops the tissues of the leaf with a protective layer broken only by the stomata and the hydathodes. The general nature of this layer, the shape and size of the cells, and the structure and mechanism of stomata have been discussed in Chap. V.



of the monocotyledons are the tubular leaves characteristic of some species of *Allium* and *Narcissus*. The flattened leaves of *Iris*, V-shaped at the base, show bundles on the one side inverted with relation to those on the other (Fig. 156). The inversion of bundles may have come about by the longitudinal folding and fusion of the halves of a leaf, as in *Iris*, or by the flattening of a tubular leaf.

Of special interest are the leaves of the palms. Here are found the largest angiosperm leaves; some species have an overall leaf length of 25 ft. The compound leaves, both pinnate and palmate, are apparently the result of a splitting of the leaf blades as they expand. The leaves of

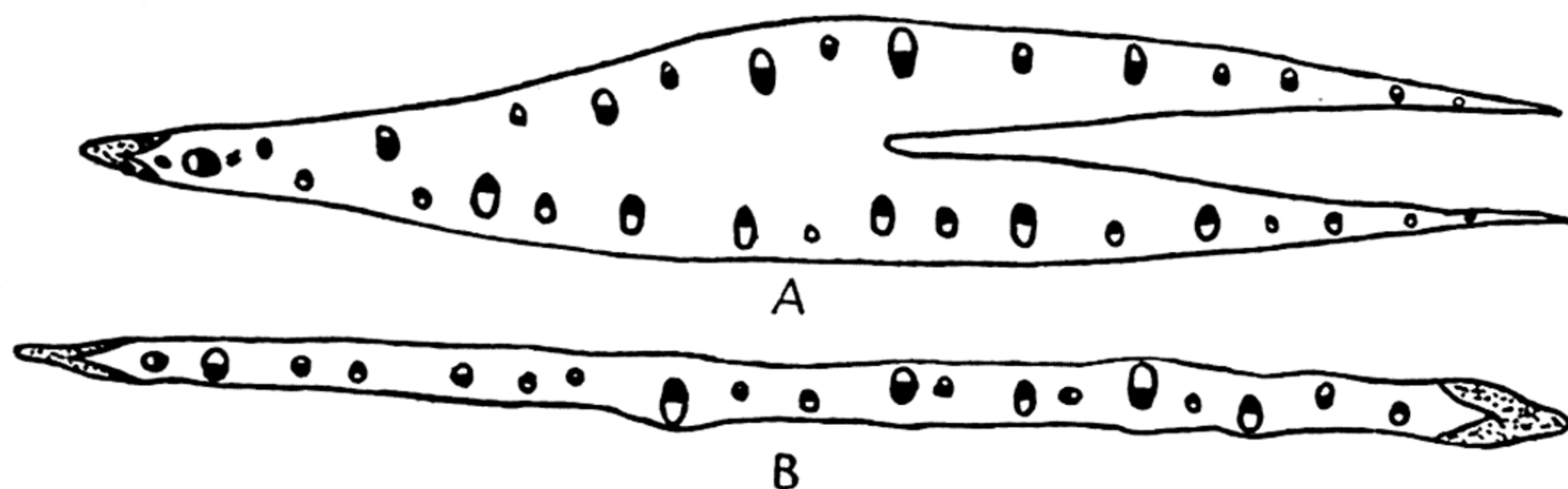


FIG. 156.—Monocotyledonous leaf, *Iris*; transverse sections of sheathing base (A) and upper part (B). A, showing folded leaf; B, showing sides of leaf fused and some of the vascular bundles inverted. (After Arber.)

the banana and other Musaceae are split by the wind to form what are essentially pinnately compound leaves.

**The Grass Leaf.**—The grass leaf merits special treatment because of the botanical and economic importance of the grass family and its complex leaf structure. The leaves of the grasses are alike in general structure, with variations resulting from adaptation to xerophytic or other ecological conditions. Fundamentally, the grass-leaf blade consists of a skeleton of parallel vascular bundles between which the mesophyll is supported. The bundles are of nearly the same size throughout their length and, except for occasional small connecting strands, are separate from one another. Frequently, the leaf blade has a large median bundle associated with a pronounced midrib projecting on the dorsal side. The other bundles may be of two or three sizes differing chiefly only in the amount of mechanical and conducting tissue present. The smaller bundles are spaced alternately between the larger. The entire leaf consists of a sheathing base and a linear blade; the former surrounds the culm for some distance and merges in a more or less prominent joint with the leaf blade, which is set at an angle with the culm. In many species the sheathing base extends above the joint in a short membranous structure called the ligule.



*Sclerenchyma in the Grass Leaf.*—Sclerenchyma in grass leaves is usually associated with the vascular bundles. In the larger bundles there are often two strands of fibers, one above and one below the vascular tissues. These join with the xylem and phloem to form a plate of hard tissue extending through the leaf (Fig. 157B). In smaller veins the strand of fibers may be on the dorsal side of the leaf only and joined either with the vascular tissue or free from it (Fig. 157B). In some species, strands of fibers occur beneath the epidermis on both sides of the bundle but free from it (Fig. 157D). Small bundles may lack sclerenchyma

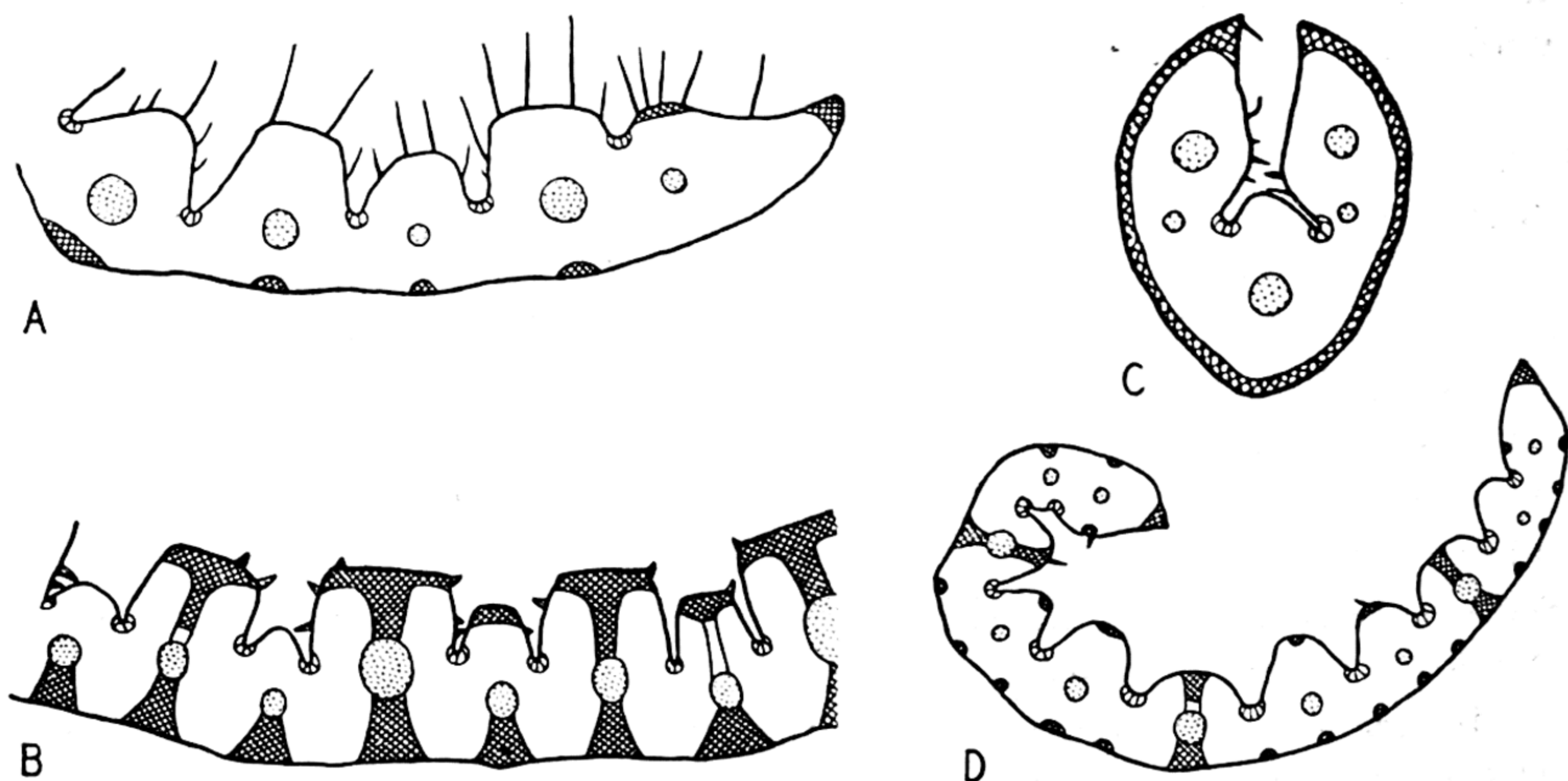


FIG. 157.—Types of sclerenchyma distribution in the grass leaf. *A*, *Festuca duriuscula*, showing sclerenchyma strand on the margin of the leaf and strands on the dorsal side free from the vascular bundles; *B*, *Elymus arenarius*, showing strands of sclerenchyma joined above and below with vascular bundles forming I-beam plates of tissue through the leaf; *C*, *Festuca ovina*, showing sclerenchyma over the dorsal surface only; *D*, *Agrostis canina*, showing strands of sclerenchyma on margins and on both sides of the leaf but free from the vascular bundles except for occasional I-beam plates. Vascular bundles, stippled; sclerenchyma, crosshatched. (After Lewton-Brain.)

altogether. There is thus great variation in the amount and position of the fibrous strands. In addition to the sclerenchyma associated with the bundles, nearly all grasses have a strand of fibers along each edge of the leaf (Fig. 157A,D). In leaves of some xerophytes, hard tissues may extend over the entire dorsal side (Fig. 157C).

*Bundle Sheaths in the Grass Leaf.*—Among the characteristic features of grass leaves are the specialized tissues immediately surrounding the vascular bundles. These occur commonly as two layers of cells, each one cell thick, completely surrounding the bundle next to the vascular tissues. The inner sheath is more or less thick-walled and lignified, resembling an endodermis in general appearance. Whether this is an endodermis in the strictly morphological sense is doubtful.



The thickening of the cell walls of this layer is frequently heavier on the inner tangential and radial than upon the outer tangential walls, although in some plants it extends entirely around the cells. The inner walls are pitted and presumably allow transfusion between the vascular tissue and this layer. Various functions have been ascribed to this layer, but protection against crushing, especially of the softer phloem cells, seems most probable. In bundles with well-developed sclerenchyma, this lignified sheath abuts directly upon the fibrous strands, thus adding rigidity to the whole structure by completing the so-called "girder structure." In some species, the inner sheath is absent or present in the larger bundles only. . . .

The outer sheath, often known as the *mestome sheath*, is made up of thin-walled parenchyma cells, which appear mostly isodiametric in transverse sections of the leaf, but much elongated in longitudinal section. These cells form about the bundle a parenchymatous girdle, to which has been ascribed the function of conducting the soluble food products from the photosynthetic tissues to the conducting tissues. In the larger bundles of some species the cells of this girdle lack chlorophyll, and are hence readily recognized. In the smaller bundles the cells may contain chlorophyll (Fig. 151C), but usually in less amount than other photosynthetic cells. In some species the cells of this sheath extend to the epidermis on one or both sides of the bundle.

*Mesophyll of the Grass Leaf.*—In the leaves of grasses, as in other leaves, the photosynthetic tissue fills the space between the vascular bundles more or less solidly. Usually there is no well-developed palisade layer of elongate cells such as is characteristic of dicotyledonous leaves generally (Fig. 151D). Sometimes, however, there is a weakly developed palisade layer next to the epidermis on one or both sides of the leaf. The cells of such a palisade layer are nearly isodiametric and differ from the spongy mesophyll cells chiefly in their more compact arrangement. The cells in the spongy mesophyll are also frequently irregular in shape, and arranged in branching conduction systems, as in analogous tissues of other types of leaves. In a few xerophytic grasses and some species of *Cyperus* the green tissues themselves are limited to a sheathing girdle about the vascular bundle.

*Epidermis of the Grass Leaf.*—Although variations in the structure of the epidermis of the grasses often occur, especially in plants adapted to growth in extremes in environmental conditions, the general features are fairly constant. The epidermal cells are elongate-rectangular in shape (Fig. 79I) and are nearly square in transverse section. They are arranged in regular rows extending lengthwise of the leaf. Over the vascular bundles the cells are often smaller and thick-walled, to some extent



resembling sclerenchyma. Great variation occurs in the extent of cutinization. In surface view the cells do not show marked irregularity of outline as does the epidermis of many dicotyledons.

A type of cell common to the leaves of nearly all grasses is the so-called *motor cell*, or *bulliform cell*, which, apparently, constitutes the mechanism that functions in the rolling of grass leaves in dry weather (Fig. 151D). These cells have much more depth than the ordinary epidermal cells and are arranged in rows extending throughout the length of the leaf upon its upper surface, frequently lying at the bottom of well-defined grooves (Fig. 157B,D). The cells are thin-walled and lack chlorophyll, and with decrease in their turgor the leaf rolls upward and inward. Some species possess only one or two rows of this type of cells, whereas others have many. Few species lack them. At the edges of the groups of motor cells, as seen in cross section of the leaf, there are cell types transitional between typical motor cells and the ordinary epidermal cells.

*Arrangement of the Stomata in the Grass Leaf.*—The type of stoma found in the leaves of the grasses is surprisingly uniform, considering the diversity of habitat in which grasses are found. The stoma of the grass type is described in Chap. V (Fig. 79I,J,K). The stomata are elongate with their long axes parallel with that of the leaf and the epidermal cells surrounding them. They are usually arranged in rows alternating with rows of epidermal cells. Frequently several rows of stomata are spaced close together between wider bands of epidermal cells. Although in a considerable number of species stomata occur upon both surfaces of the leaf in approximately equal numbers, in the majority of species these openings are more numerous in the upper epidermis and in some species, chiefly xerophytic, may be wanting upon the lower side.

Various types of hairs are found in the epidermis of many species. Short, stiff projections, which give the surface of the leaf a harsh texture, are particularly common. In some forms these teeth give the leaf margin an effective cutting edge, as, for example, in species of *Leërsia*.

**Persistence of Leaves.**—A large proportion of the gymnosperms, many tropical and some broad-leaved, temperate-zone angiosperms, retain their leaves for more than one season. In evergreen plants possessing secondary growth, as in the gymnosperms and some dicotyledons, the persistence of leaves for more than one year involves the lengthening of the leaf trace as successive annual layers of xylem are added by the cambium. This lengthening is accomplished by the activity of a special meristematic layer in the trace itself (Chap. VI). Ordinarily, the needle leaves of the gymnosperms and the broad leaves of angiosperms do not persist more than three to five years, after which time they are cut off by abscission layers in the same manner as are deciduous leaves. In a few



genera, evergreen leaves may persist for many years as, for example, on the trunks of *Araucaria*. In most ferns, some of the palms, and other monocotyledons the leaves persist for a considerable number of years, the older leaves gradually ceasing to function. In many of these plants, particularly some palms, the leaves are not cut off by abscission layers but cling to the stem until they disintegrate by weathering. The leaves of many annual and perennial herbs are also "withering persistent." In the majority of temperate-zone plants, both woody and herbaceous, the leaves function for only a single season at the end of which they wither or are abscised. A discussion of leaf abscission is to be found in Chap. IX.

## References

- ARBER, A.: The phyllode theory of the monocotyledonous leaf, with special reference to anatomical evidence, *Ann. Bot.*, **32**, 465-501, 1918.
- AVERY, G. S.: Structure and development of the tobacco leaf, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **20**, 565-592, 1933.
- BOWER, F. O.: On the comparative morphology of the leaf in the vascular cryptogams and gymnosperms, *Phil. Trans. Roy. Soc. London*, **175**, 565-615, 1884.
- CLEMENTS, E. S.: The relation of leaf structure to physical factors, *Trans. Amer. Micro. Soc.*, **26**, 19-102, 1904.
- COLOMB, G.: Recherches sur les stipules, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 7 sér., **6**, 1-76, 1887.
- COPELAND, E. B.: The mechanism of stomata, *Ann. Bot.*, **16**, 327-346, 1902.
- CROSS, G. L.: The origin and development of the foliage leaves and stipules of *Morus alba*, *Bull. Torrey Bot. Club*, **64**, 145-163, 1937.
- DE CANDOLLE, C.: Anatomie comparée des feuilles chez quelques familles de dicotylédones, *Mém. Soc. Phys. et d'Hist. Nat. Genève*, **26**, 427-480, 1879.
- DUFOUR, L.: Influence de la lumière sur la forme et la structure des feuilles, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 7 sér., **5**, 311-413, 1887.
- EICHLER, A. W.: Zur Entwicklungsgeschichte des Blattes mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der Nebenblatt-Bildungen, Marburg, 1861.
- FLOR, L.: Recherches sur la naissance des feuilles et sur l'origine foliaire de la tige, *Rév. Gén. Bot.*, **17**, 449 passim 535, 1905. **18**, 26 passim 508, 1906. **19**, 29 passim 192, 1907.
- FOSTER, A. S.: Leaf differentiation in angiosperms, *Bot. Rev.*, **2**, 349-372, 1936.
- GERRESHEIM, E.: Ueber den anatomischen Bau und die damit zusammenhängende Wirkungsweise der Wasserbahnen in Fiederblättern der Dicotyledonen, *Bibl. Bot.*, **81**, 1-66, 1913.
- HABERLANDT, G.: Vergleichende Anatomie des assimilatorischen Gewebesystems der Pflanzen, *Jahrb. Wiss. Bot.*, **13**, 74-188, 1882.
- LEWTON-BRAIN, L.: On the anatomy of the leaves of British grasses, *Trans. Linn. Soc. Bot. London*, 2 ser., **6**, 315-359, 1903.
- MACDANIELS, L. H., and F. F. COWART: The development and structure of the apple leaf, *Cornell U. Agr. Exp. Sta. Mem.*, **258**, 1-29, 1944.
- PÉE-LABY, E.: Étude anatomique de la feuille des graminées de la France, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 8 sér., **8**, 227-346, 1898.
- PETIT, L.: Nouvelles recherches sur le pétiole des phanérogames, *Actes Soc. Linn. Bordeaux*, **43**, 11-60, 1889.



- RIPPEL, A.: Anatomische und physiologische Untersuchungen über die Wasserbahnen der Dicotylen-Laubblätter mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der handnervigen Blätter, *Bibl. Bot.*, **82**, 1-74, 1913.
- SINNOTT, E. W., and I. W. BAILEY: Investigations on the phylogeny of the angiosperms, 3. Nodal anatomy and the morphology of stipules, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **1**, 441-453, 1914.
- SMITH, G. H.: Anatomy of the embryonic leaf, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **21**, 194-209, 1934.
- STRASBURGER, E.: Ein Beitrag zur Entwicklungsgeschichte der Spaltöffnungen, *Jahrbuch. Wiss. Bot. Pringsheim.*, **5**, 297-342, 1866/1867.
- TRÉCUL, A.: Mémoire sur la formation des feuilles, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 3 sér., **20**, 235-314, 1853.
- TYLER, A. A.: The nature and origin of stipules, *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.*, **10**, 1-49, 1897.
- WYLIE, R. B.: The role of the epidermis in foliar organization and its relations to the minor venation, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **30**, 273-280, 1943.



## CHAPTER XIII

### THE FLOWER—THE FRUIT—THE SEED

#### THE FLOWER

Anatomically, the flower is a determinate stem with crowded appendages, with internodes much shortened or obliterated. The appendages are of leaf rank but differ from those of the vegetative stem in function and appearance, and the uppermost ones are often so placed as to appear terminal on the axis. But the flower is a typical stem differing in no fundamental way structurally or ontogenetically from the normal stem with leaves.

**Ontogeny of the Flower.**—The flower develops from an apical meristem that differs in only minor ways (Chap. III) from that of a leafy stem. The early stages of floral-appendage development are closely like those of leaves. All organs develop laterally on the apical meristem, initiated by periclinal divisions below the surface layer. The sequence of development of the whorls of organs varies but is commonly acropetal. All organs have, at least for a time, an apical meristem, and those that are laterally expanded have marginal initials. Procambium develops acropetally in all organs as does the phloem. The xylem matures either acropetally or both acropetally and basipetally from one or more points of beginning near the base of the organ. In carpels, especially in syncarpous ovaries, connection of the early-formed xylem with the xylem of the receptacle may be long delayed, even until the fruit is partly developed. The carpel remains an immature organ until the fruit is mature. In various parts it retains meristematic tissues of different types. The other organs are usually mature in the flower. Where fusion is present, the fusion may be ontogenetic, as it is frequently between carpel margins, or it may be phylogenetic, the fused organs arising from a common meristem, as in typical inferior ovaries. The latter type of union has been called "congenital fusion." In adjacent organs that arise as independent organs from independent apical meristems, for example, the members of a gamopetalous corolla, the initiating regions may shift from the apex to the base and merge, and the organs then continue growth as a single structure with only the vascular tissue showing its compound nature. Adnate organs, in any number, may arise independently but later continue growth from a single meristematic region as a fused but super-



ficially single structure. Such apparently simple structures may show evidence of their compound nature in the presence of independent vascular bundles for every organ within the common structure, or the vascular skeletons of the organs may also be so intimately fused as to show little or no evidence of their multiple morphological nature. The structure of mature floral parts is discussed in later pages and under Fruit.

### THE VASCULAR SKELETON OF THE FLOWER

**The Floral Stele.**—In structure, the pedicel is a typical stem with a ring of vascular bundles or an unbroken cylinder of vascular tissue. As the stele enters the receptacle, it conforms in shape to the shape of that part of the flower, commonly expanding and then constricting in its upper part. From the receptacular stele depart the vascular traces to the various floral organs (Fig. 158), traces which in origin, structure, and behavior are similar to those of leaves. Gaps accompany the exit of these traces, and the gaps and the crowding of the organs break up the cylinder into a network of strands (Fig. 158). Often the vascular cylinder is further dissected, as in the stems of herbaceous plants with reduced vascular cylinders. The receptacular stele may be simple but is usually highly complex.

The traces to sepals, petals, stamens, and carpels are given off successively from the stele in whorls or in spirals, according to the manner of arrangement of these organs in the flower. (Many organs that to external inspection are apparently whorled, such as the petals of some Ranunculaceae and the stamens of some Rosaceae, can be seen from anatomical evidence to be arranged in flat spirals.) The distal bundles of the receptacular stele commonly become the traces of the uppermost carpels (Fig. 158C,D), but in many floral types stelar bundles continue beyond the point where the last traces are given off and gradually fade out in the top of the receptacle (Fig. 158A,B). Such bundles are vestigial and usually consist of procambium or phloem only.

**Traces of the Floral Appendages.**—The traces to the various kinds of organs differ in number and, except in sepals, bear little or no relation in this respect to the leaf traces of the plant. The number—which is always odd—ranges from one to many. In all floral organs, constancy in trace number throughout angiosperms is high.

**Sepals.**—Sepals commonly resemble bracts anatomically. With few exceptions, they have a trace supply similar to that of the leaves of the plant.

**Petals.**—Typically, petals have a single trace, regardless of size, form, nature, or time of persistence. Three to several traces are present in some families.



*Stamens*.—A single trace is usually the vascular supply of stamens, without regard to size, shape, character of base, or period of persistence. In a few Ranalian families and rarely elsewhere, as in some members of the Lauraceae and Musaceae, three traces are present. (The three-trace

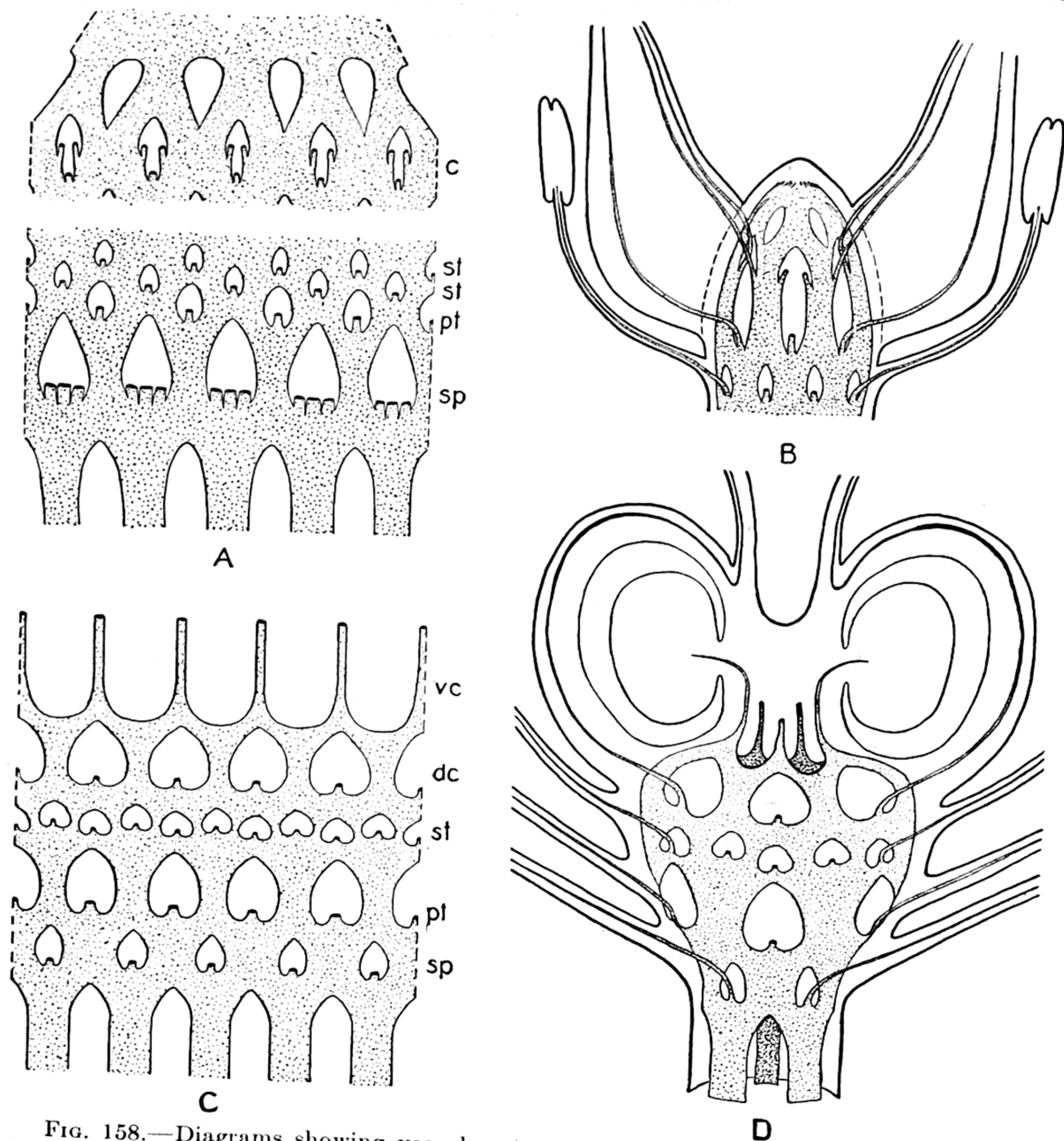


FIG. 158.—Diagrams showing vascular structure of simple flowers. A, B, *Aquilegia*; C, D, *Pyrola*. Description in text. c, carpel trace; dc, dorsal carpellary trace; pt, petal trace; sp, sepal trace; st, stamen trace; vc, ventral carpellary trace.

condition is apparently primitive—as is the similar condition in leaves and carpels—and one trace represents reduction from the primitive number.)

*Carpels*.—The carpel is generally considered a leaf-like organ folded upward (ventrally) along its midrib, with its margins more or less fused,



and with ovules borne near the margins. This concept is borne out by its anatomy. The carpel has one, three, five, or several traces. The three-trace carpel is most common and the five-trace carpel is frequent, those with higher numbers infrequent. The one-trace carpel has clearly been derived by reduction from the three-trace. The median trace, which leaves the stele before (below) the other carpel traces, is known as the *dorsal trace* because it becomes the dorsal (midrib) bundle of the folded organ. (The term "trace" is applied in the flower, as it is in the leafy stem, to the strands of vascular tissue that depart from the stele as supply for appendages. The continuations of the traces within the appendages are called "bundles.") The two outermost traces are called *ventral* or *marginal traces* because they become the bundles that run along the ventral edge of the carpel—along or near the margins of the organ, if it were unfolded. Within the carpel, these bundles as compared with the dorsal bundle and the bundles of all other organs are inverted (Fig. 162). The upward and inward folding of the sides of the carpel brings about the inversion of these ventral bundles. In relation to the surfaces of the organ the bundles are normally oriented. Where there are more than three traces, the additional traces lie between the dorsal and ventral traces and are known as *lateral traces*. The orientation of the bundles that are the continuations of these traces depends upon the form of the carpel and the position of the bundle; many are half-inverted (Fig. 162*e, f*). Any or all of the bundles may be branched—and other branches commonly develop during fruit formation—but only occasional species have branching ventral bundles, and branches of these bundles running toward the margin are rare.

The vascular supply of carpels is the most complex in floral organs because of the folding of the carpels and the fusion of the margins; because the carpels constitute the uppermost organs and derive their traces at the top of the determinate receptacular stele where the vascular bundles are reduced and fade out; and because the carpels, owing to their close proximity to one another, tend to become fused and form a syncarpous ovary.

*Ovules*.—Ovule "traces" are derived, except in a few families and genera, only from the ventral bundles or from placental branches of these bundles (Fig. 163). The trace normally is a single small bundle that leads to the base of the ovule or enters it, passing as far as the chalazal region. It does not enter the nucellar region but in some genera sends branches into the integument. Where an ovule represents the surviving member of a group in which reduction has occurred, it may have "captured" the trace supply of two or more ovules, or even of two or more placentae. The ovules of angiosperms commonly have no vascular



tissue but many, especially those of more primitive groups, have strong integumentary supplies.

Because of the large number of traces departing close together to the crowded floral organs and the gaps and other breaks in the receptacular stele, the vascular skeleton of most flowers is highly complex. In many genera it has become superficially simpler—though actually still more complex—by the fusion of traces that lie near together.

#### ANATOMY OF SIMPLE FLOWERS

Examples of anatomically (and primitively) simple flowers provide a basis for the understanding of more complex types.

**Aquilegia.**—Figures 158*A, B*, and 159 show the vascular structure of the flower. In Fig. 158*A* the vascular cylinder is shown as split down one side and spread out; in Fig. 158*B* the top of the flower is shown as seen from one side. Figures 158*A* and *B* show the structure of the receptacular stele and the position and number of the traces of the appendages and their gaps. (Only two of the several rows of stamens are shown.) The stele continues in vestigial form beyond the level of departure of the uppermost appendages. Figure 159 shows the structure of the flower as shown in a series of diagrams of cross sections at successive levels from the pedicel to the top of the flower.

The pedicel has five bundles (Figs. 158*A*, 159*a*) which unite at the base of the flower, forming an unbroken cylinder. The sepal traces are then given off (Fig. 159*b*), three to each sepal, the three together leaving one gap. The traces to the petals, one to each, are next given off (Fig. 159*c*) just below the level at which the sepal gaps close. Then the stamen traces pass off, one to each organ, in several whorls (Fig. 159*d-e*). Above the uppermost whorl of stamens the vascular cylinder becomes complete again. Then the dorsal traces of the carpels are given off (Fig. 159*f*), followed by the pairs of ventral traces to each carpel. These ventral traces are derived from the sides of the gaps formed by the dorsal traces (Fig. 159*g*), and their gaps therefore merge with those of the dorsal traces. The ventral traces immediately twist, passing out inverted into the carpel. Figure 159*h* shows the condition in the receptacle just above the outward passage of the ventral carpel traces. The base of the loculus of each carpel is seen with the dorsal trace at the outside and the pair of ventrals on the inside. Internal to the ventrals the remainder of the vascular cylinder is seen as five masses of less strongly developed tissue (shown by dotted lines), Fig. 159*h*, chiefly phloem, with some weak xylem. This tissue (Fig. 159*i*, center), becomes smaller and weaker toward the rounded top of the receptacle and fades out (Fig. 158*A, B*). (This fading out of vascular tissue is similar to that often seen in the



vascular cylinder of determinate leafy stems.) Figure 159*i* shows the carpels nearly free from the receptacle, with their three-bundle supply. Figure 159*j* (above the receptacle) shows cross sections of the typical follicles with their dorsal bundles, and their pairs of inverted ventral bundles.

**Pyrola.**—Figure 158*C,D*, shows the vascular structure of the flower. *C* shows the vascular cylinder split down one side and spread out; *D* shows a side view of the vascular cylinder with departure of traces to members of

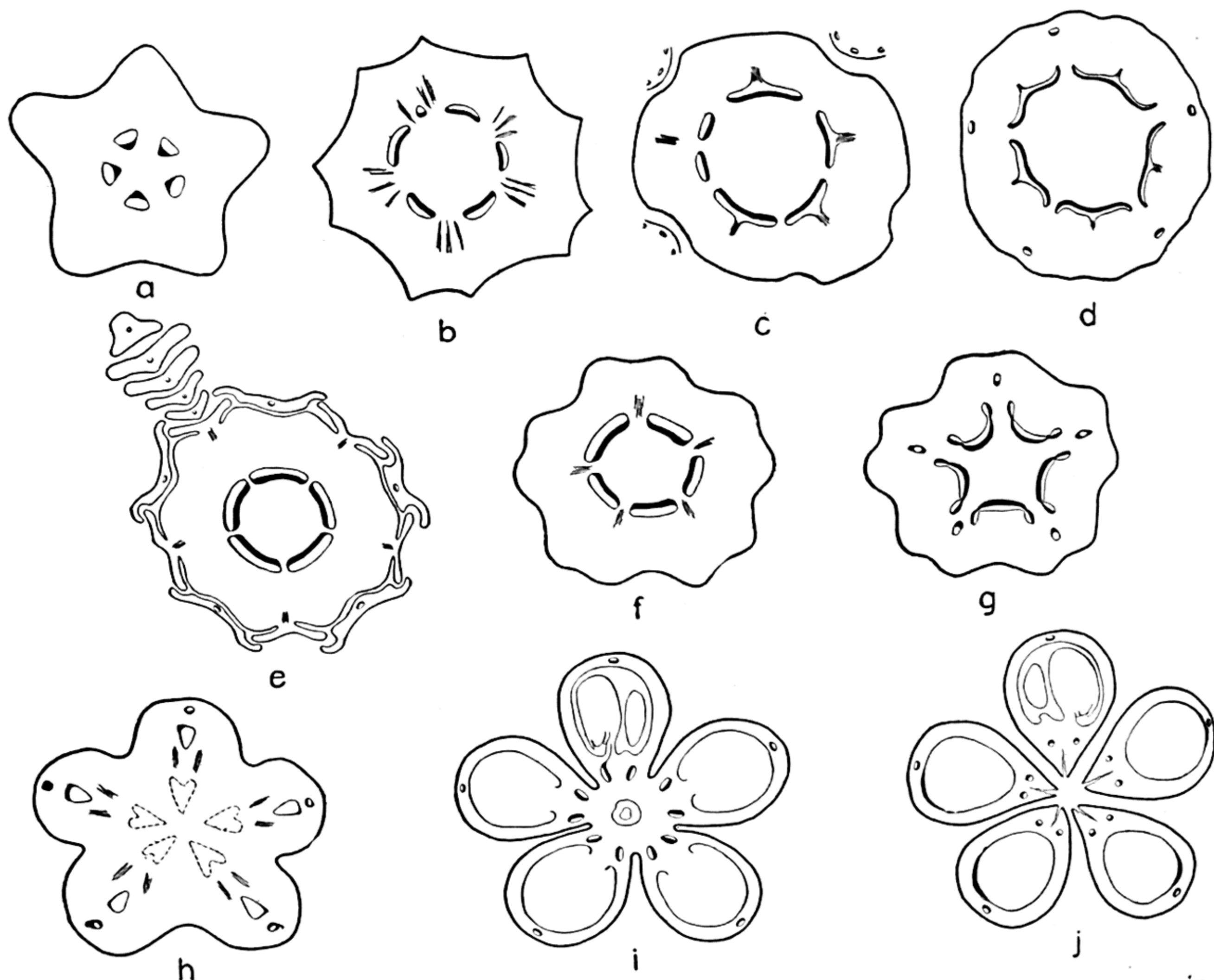


FIG. 159.—Diagrams representing vascular structure of flower of *Aquilegia* as seen in series of transverse sections from pedicel to level above top of receptacle. Detailed description in text.

all whorls of floral appendages. The receptacular stele of this flower has no vestigial part beyond the ventral traces to the carpels. The structure of the pedicel is similar to that of *Aquilegia*. In contrast with *Aquilegia* each sepal has but one trace. Petal and stamen traces are also similar to those of *Aquilegia*, although the number of stamens is less and the stamens are set in two close whorls. Above the departure of the dorsal carpellary traces the stelar bundles unite in twos to form five bundles, each representing the two ventral traces of a carpel. Into the formation of these traces goes all of the remaining vascular tissue.



## ANATOMY OF MORE COMPLEX FLOWERS

**Fusion in the Floral Skeleton.**—In the specialization of the flower, fusion and reduction of appendages have been the outstanding changes. Stages of *cohesion*—where members of the same whorl are fused to one another—and of *adnation*—where members of a whorl are fused to members of a whorl above or below—are found in many families. Evidence of reduction is to be seen in vestigial structures and through comparative study of related forms. In the evolutionary history of fusion, organs are

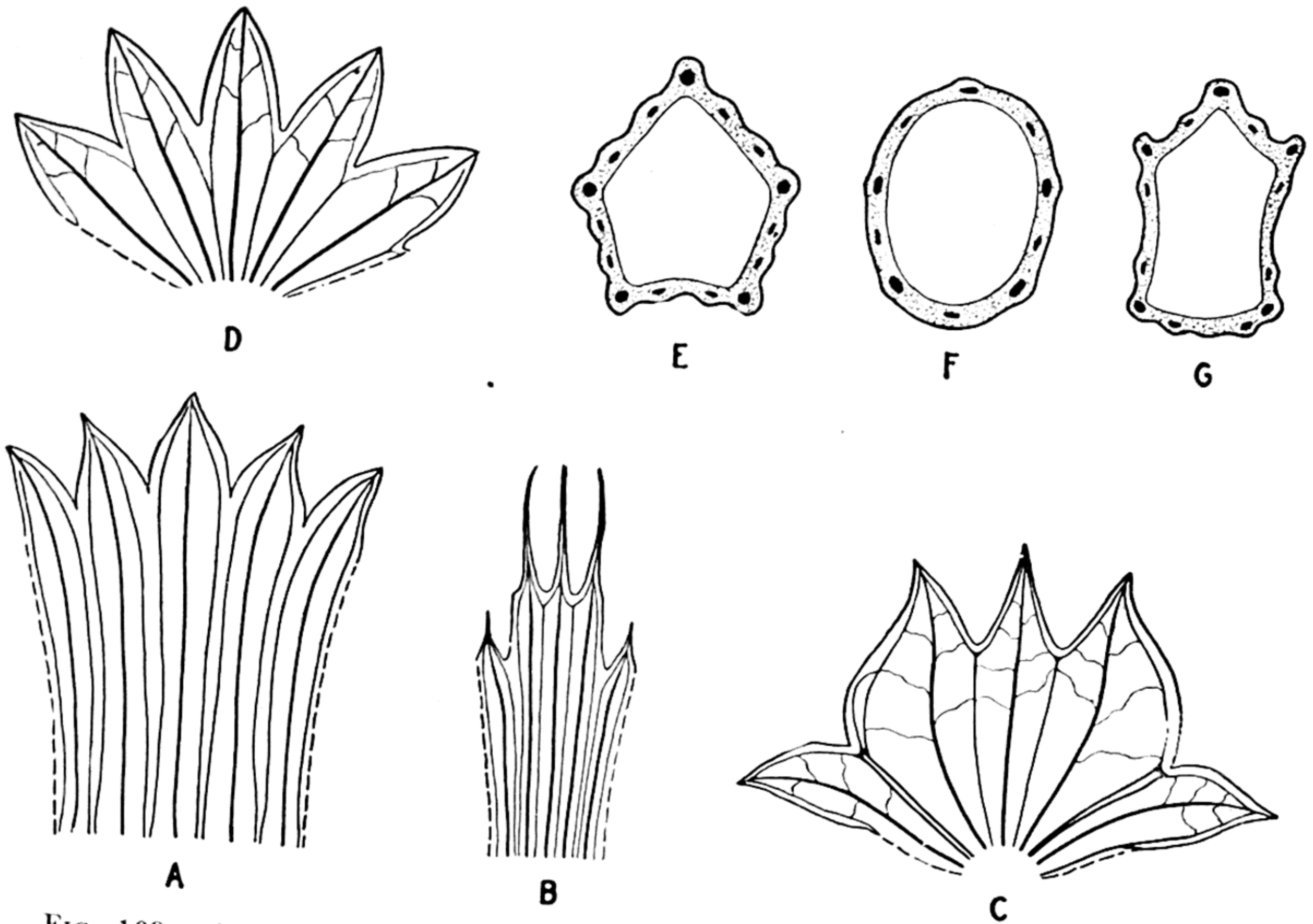


FIG. 160.—Anatomy of calyces, showing stages in fusion of lateral bundles under cohesion. A, *Nepeta veronica*; B, *Blephilia hirsuta*; C, *Trichostema dichotomum*; D, *Ajuga reptans*. E, F, G (cross sections): E, *Monarda didyma*; F, *Physostegia virginiana*; G, *Salvia patens*. Detailed description in text.

at first united externally, and internal structure is not modified. The line of fusion is histologically obscure or absent; the vascular tissues are unaffected. Ultimately the fusion becomes more intimate and, wherever the vascular bundles lie close to one another, fusion may involve them also. Fusion may be between the traces alone or between the traces and the bundles within the appendages, but it seldom extends throughout the length of the bundles. Often there is ontogenetic and histological evidence of the fusion.

**Fusion under Cohesion.**—The effect of cohesion on the vascular skeleton is chiefly upon lateral traces and bundles that are brought close



together by gamosepaly, gamopetaly, syncarpy, and the marginal fusion of the unfolded margins of the carpel. It can be simply shown by examples. The gamosepalous calyces of the mints show all stages of fusion of the vascular tissue. In *Nepeta* (Fig. 160A) each sepal has a midrib and two lateral bundles; there is no fusion. The calyx of *Ajuga* (Fig. 160D) shows the pairs of adjacent laterals fused nearly to the sinuses. The zygomorphic calyx of *Blephilia* (Fig. 160B) shows two pairs of laterals fused and three pairs free; that of *Trichostema* (Fig. 160C) a similar condition, with the free pairs fused slightly at the sinuses. A taxonomic character, number of calyx ribs, sometimes used in generic distinction in the Labiatae, is based on the extent of this fusion of lateral

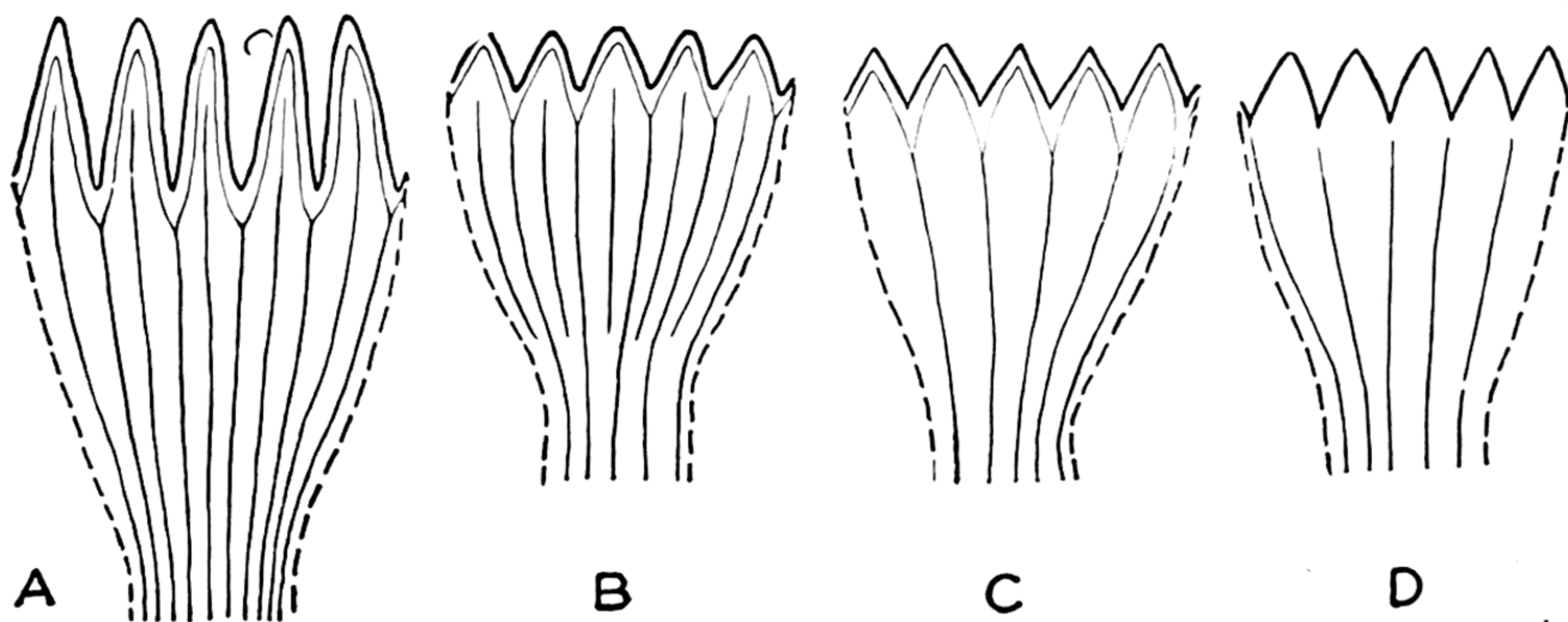


FIG. 161.—Vascular system of gamopetalous corollas showing fusion of lateral petal-bundles and loss of bundles in reduction. A, *Helianthus divaricatus*; B, *Senecio Fremontii*; C, *Chrysanthemum Leucanthemum*; D, *Xanthium orientale*. In all examples fusion of lateral bundles is complete nearly to the sinuses; in *Chrysanthemum*, the free ends of the lateral bundles have been lost. Stages in loss of median petal bundles are shown: A, bundles unreduced; B, basal parts lost; C, D, bundles absent. (After Koch.)

bundles. Examples are seen in *Monarda* (Fig. 160E), with 15 bundles, no fusion; *Physostegia* (Fig. 160F), with 10 bundles, all pairs of laterals fused; and *Salvia* (Fig. 160G), with 13 bundles, two pairs of laterals fused. In petals (Fig. 161) and carpels (Fig. 164) similar fusion is common.

The folding of the carpel presents the simplest type of fusion under cohesion in the gynoecium (Fig. 162). The two ventrals are brought close together, forming the pair of bundles characteristic of the ventral side of the primitive carpel, the follicle (Fig. 162a,b). In earliest phylogenetic stages the carpel margins merely touch or are lightly fused (Fig. 162a). (The carpel is even not completely closed in some genera.) With closer fusion, the epidermal layers on the surface of contact are lost and the two bundles form a double bundle (Fig. 162b,c); with complete fusion they become a single bundle that shows no histological or ontogenetic evidence of its doubleness (Fig. 162d).

Fusion in the vascular tissue of a carpel may be present in the ventral



bundles from an origin as one trace throughout their length, or may exist only in part of the carpel (Fig. 163); where the ventral bundles arise as separate traces, they may unite at any point in their course. A carpel with two bundles, a dorsal and a ventral that consists of two bundles, may have one or two traces. Further, in much reduced carpels, especially in achenes, all three carpel traces may arise as one and separate only at the base of the loculus (Fig. 168*f,j*). In any carpel, fusion may also occur

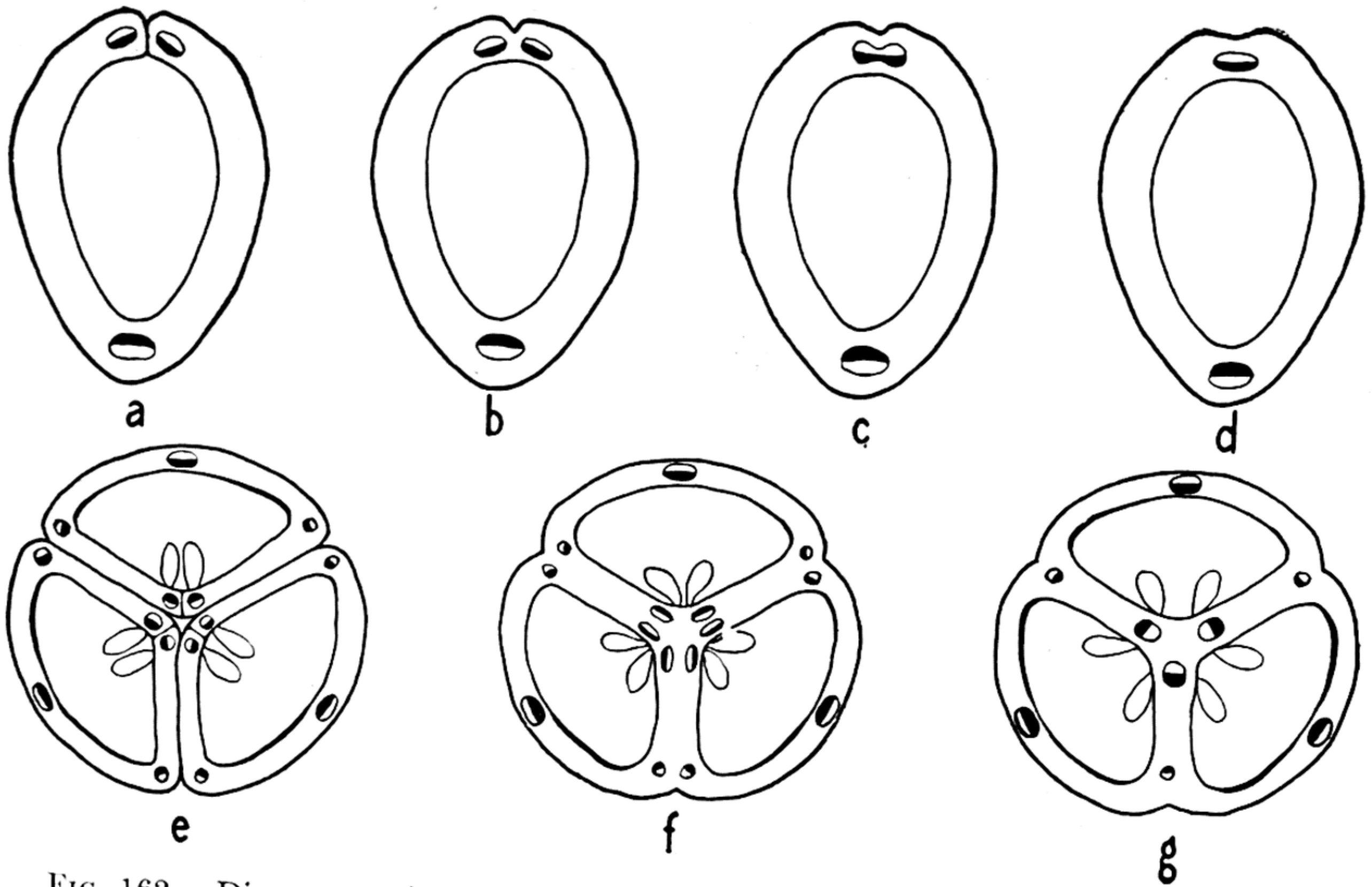


FIG. 162.—Diagrammatic cross sections of typical ovaries showing structural effects of cohesion, especially upon the vascular bundles: *a-d*, stages in the fusion of the ventral bundles of follicles; *e-g*, stages in the development of syncarpy, the fusion of carpels and of their ventral and lateral bundles. *a*, margins of carpel appressed, but unfused, epidermal layers persisting; *b*, margins fused, epidermal layers lost; *c*, the two ventral bundles slightly fused; *d*, the ventral bundles completely fused, without histological evidence of the fusion; *e*, the carpels cohering, but without structural fusion; *f*, the lateral carpel-walls fused, the ventral and lateral bundles of adjacent carpels approximated in pairs but not fused; *g*, the pairs of lateral and ventral bundles of adjacent carpels intimately fused.

among the bundles in the distal part of the ovary or in the style, when the traces and bundles are elsewhere free.

Syncarpy involves fusion changes similar to those in free carpels (Fig. 162*e-g*). The lines separating the carpels and their margins are lost (Fig. 162*f*). The ventral bundles, inverted, form a ring of bundles in the center. They usually lie in pairs, each pair consisting of the ventrals of the same carpel, or, more often, of bundles from each of two adjacent carpels. The members of a pair tend to fuse and all degrees of fusion are found. In the center of a syncarpous ovary with three carpels, there may be a ring of six or of three ventral bundles (Fig. 162)—if of three, each



bundle is morphologically double and represents either the two ventral traces of one carpel or one from one carpel plus one from the adjacent carpel. Where syncarpy arose while the carpels were still open, fusing margin to margin and enclosing a common loculus (Fig. 164)—or where the septa have been reduced or lost, and placentation is parietal—the ventrals of adjacent carpels lie in pairs, or fused, in the outer wall of the ovary (Fig. 164A). Carpel limits in such ovaries run through the placentas, which are morphologically double structures, each half belonging to a different carpel.

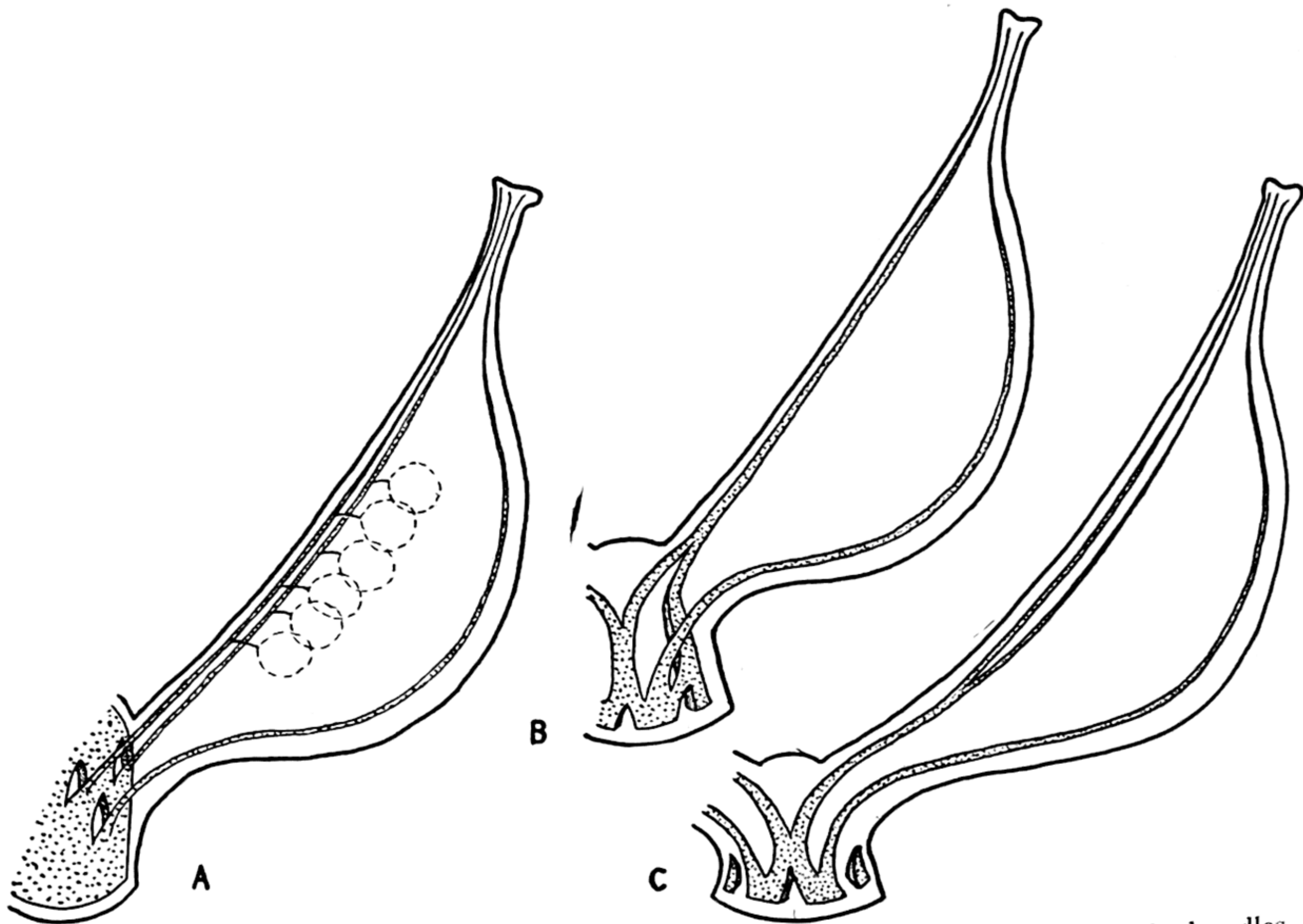


FIG. 163.—Vascular supply of the carpel. *A*, three traces from three gaps, the bundles within the carpels unfused to the stigma; *B*, three traces from a dissected stele, the ventrals soon fused, only two bundles in the carpel; *C*, the ventral traces arising fused but becoming free in base of ovary. In *B* and *C*, the top of the floral stele is used up in the formation of the ventral traces.

*Fusion under Adnation.*—Whenever members of one whorl become fused to those of other whorls—whether the whorls consist of like or of different organs—their vascular bundles tend to fuse, as under cohesion. Fusion takes place between bundles that are near together either radially or tangentially and may involve any number of bundles belonging to two or more whorls. Stages in a simple example—that of the epipetalous stamen—are shown in Fig. 165*F–J* and described in the legend. These stages can be seen in many families, the Crassulaceae, for example. Fusion involving several whorls, with union extending varying distances from the trace origin, is shown for Rosaceous flowers (Fig. 167*M–P*).



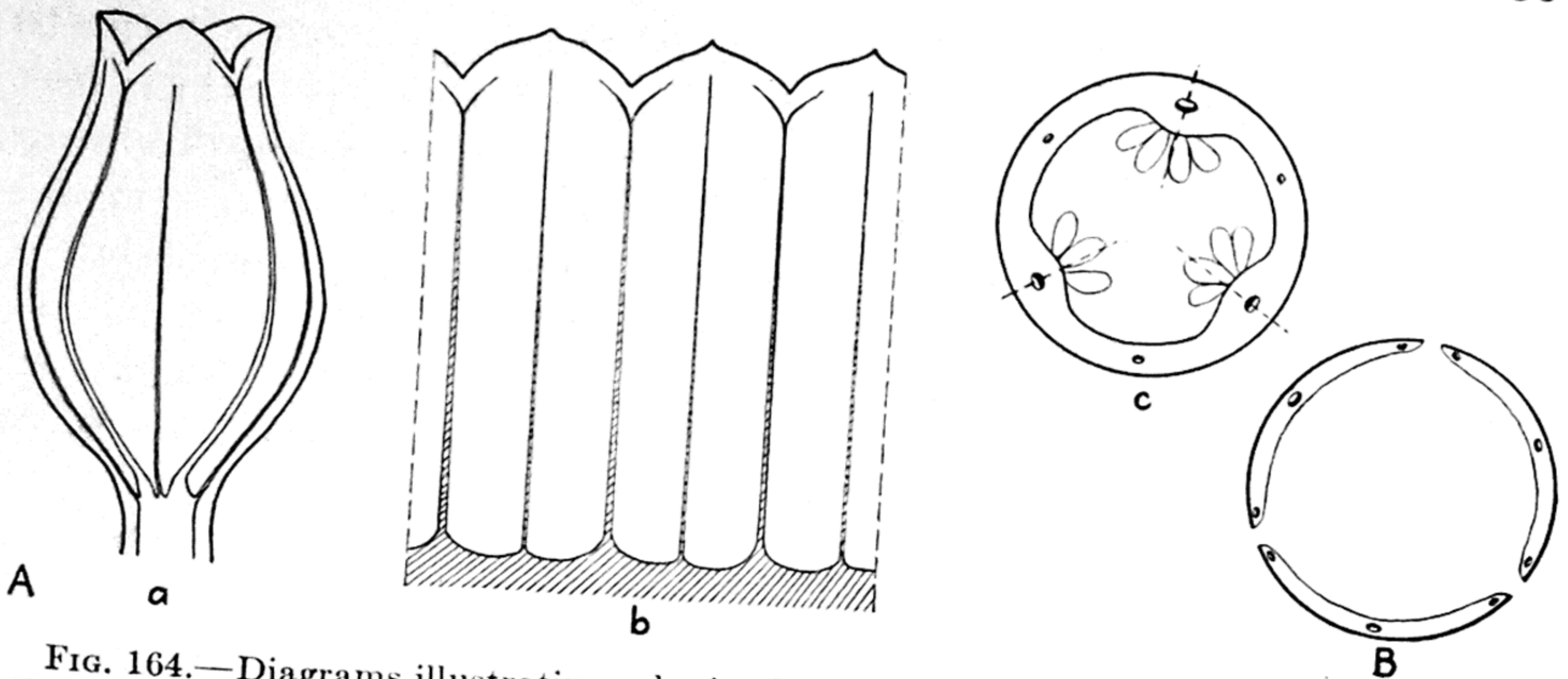


FIG. 164.—Diagrams illustrating cohesion between carpels. A based on *Reseda odorata*: a, lateral view showing origin of traces and course of bundles in ovary, the ventral bundles of adjacent carpels fused except at their tips; b, ovary wall split longitudinally and spread out; c, cross section through center of ovary, dotted lines indicating carpel limits. The ventral bundles have fused in pairs and the fused bundles and placentae lie on the line of carpellary fusion. B, illustrating theoretical position of carpels before fusion to form syncarpous ovary of the type shown in A.

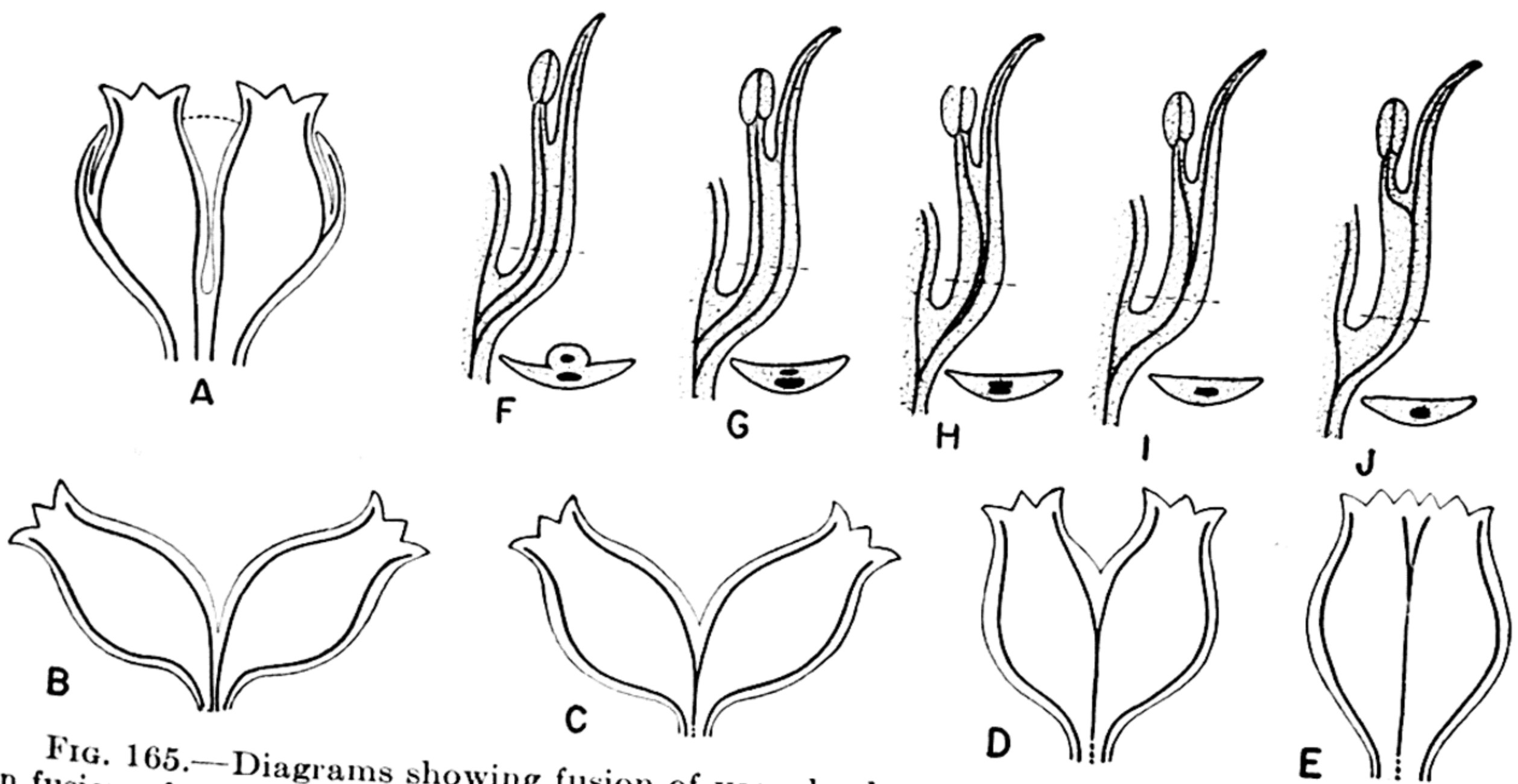


FIG. 165.—Diagrams showing fusion of vascular bundles under adnation. F–J, stages in fusion of stamen to petal, as seen in longitudinal and cross sections: F, the organs only lightly fused, externally still clearly two structures; G, fusion more complete, double nature not evident externally in the lower part, but in vascular structure clear throughout; H, I, J, the vascular bundles fused for various distances from the base, without histological evidence of double nature. A, adnation of bracts to flowers, *Lonicera caerulea*, the bracts adnate to the lower part of the inferior ovaries and the median bundle of the bract fused to one of the bundles in the ovary wall. B–E, adnation of flower to flower: B, *Lonicera canadensis*; C, *L. tatarica*; D, *L. fragrantissima*; E, *L. oblongifolia*. The four species show increasing fusion of ovaries, with similar increasing fusion of the vascular supply of the two flowers. (A–E after Wilkinson.)



**The Inferior Ovary.**—It is apparent that an inferior ovary can be formed by the adnation of the sepals, petals, and stamens to the carpels or by the sinking of the gynoecium in a hollowed receptacle, with fusion of the receptacle walls about the carpels. From anatomical evidence, it is clear that the inferior ovary in nearly all families is made up of appendages fused to the carpels. In the ovary walls of some plants, *Alstroemeria*, *Hedera*, for example, the traces of all adnate organs run free to the base of the ovary in the positions they would have if there were

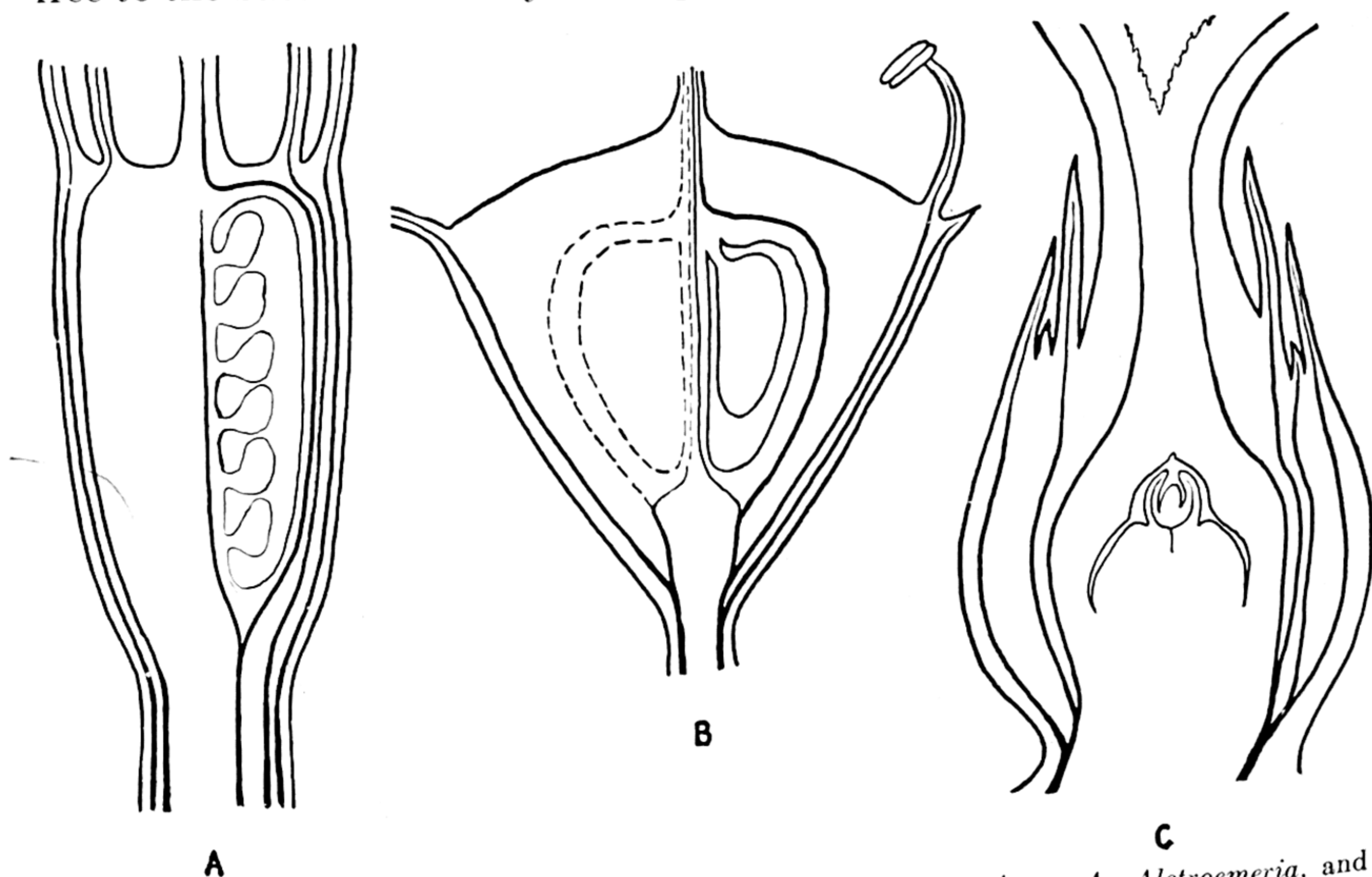


FIG. 166.—Diagrams of vascular structure in inferior ovaries. A, *Alstroemeria*, and B, *Hedera helix*, with bundles of the calyx, corolla, and stamens with no fusion with each other or with carpellary bundles in their course through the ovary wall; C, *Juglans nigra* (flower with adnate bracts and bractlets as well as sepals), bundles of the sepals, bractlets, and bracts fused with carpellary bundles for various distances from their origin. (Ventral carpellary bundles not in plane of section.) (A, after Van Tieghem; C, after Manning.)

no adnation (Fig. 166A,B). There is no fusion. In most species, however, with inferior ovaries, there is fusion within the ovary wall for various distances, as in *Juglans* (Fig. 166C) and some of the Ericaceae (Fig. 167A–F). The “ovary wall” in such forms, as is shown by the position and course of the bundles, clearly consists of the true ovary wall plus the tissues of the adnate organs.

The sinking of the gynoecium in the receptacle necessarily involves invagination of the top of the stele. An “ovary wall” so formed contains two cylinders of stelar bundles, the inner inverted. Within the cavity, the distal part of the receptacular stele, from which the carpel traces are derived, turns downward and the morphologically uppermost carpels are



the lowest. *Darbya* (Fig. 167L) shows this well for the Santalaceae, the only family in which the inferior ovary has been shown to be of receptacular nature. In a few genera the tip of the receptacle is sunken and the carpels line the cavity, as in *Rosa* (Fig. 167K) and *Calycanthus*, but the sides of the receptacular cup are not fused to the carpels and the ovaries remain superior. The fleshy fruit of the rose is, in its lower part, receptacle; in its upper part, it consists of fused appendages, as clearly shown by the course of the vascular bundles (Fig. 167K). Stages in the development of the peculiar rose-type of fruit are shown by related genera (Fig. 167I–K). It is commonly believed that the rose hip and the apple represent fleshy receptacles of similar nature. But the rose and the apple tree belong to widely separated groups within the rose family, as shown by taxonomic and cytological, as well as anatomical evidence, and their fruits are not homologous. The ovary and fruit of the apple tree and closely related genera are entirely appendicular—the traces to all the floral parts arise from a receptacle of normal form and there are no inverted stelar bundles. Adnation is extensive (Fig. 167P): in one set of radii, sepal median trace, stamen trace, and dorsal-carpellary trace are united; in radii alternate with these, the lateral traces of adjacent sepals, petal trace, and three stamen traces are united. Fusion of the traces of the various organs extends for different distances, that of the dorsal carpellary with other traces only a short distance. The ventral carpellary traces alone show no fusion with other traces. Histologically the limits of the carpels can be seen in some varieties of apple. Morphologically, the flesh of the apple consists of tissues of all parts of the flower, with the receptacle forming only an insignificant bit at the base. Genera related to the apple show stages in the evolutionary development of the ovary (Fig. 167M–P).

The inferior ovary in most families—orchids, irises, evening primroses, for example—shows extreme fusion of the bundles of all appendages so that a cross section shows only a few bundles in the outer ovary wall (Fig. 167G,H).

**Adnation of Flowers with Other Flowers and Other Organs.**—Two or more flowers borne close together on a peduncle may become anatomically fused, as in *Mitchella*, *Maclura*, some species of *Lonicera* and *Cornus*. Such fusion usually involves only the basal parts, especially the ovaries. Various species of *Lonicera* show all stages in the fusion of the ovaries of two flowers (Fig. 165B–E); *Mitchella* shows complete fusion of the ovaries of two, rarely three and four flowers. In these genera, fusion is so complete in the most intimately fused species that some of the bundles of one flower are fused to those of the other. One bundle within the double ovary may supply perianth parts of two flowers.



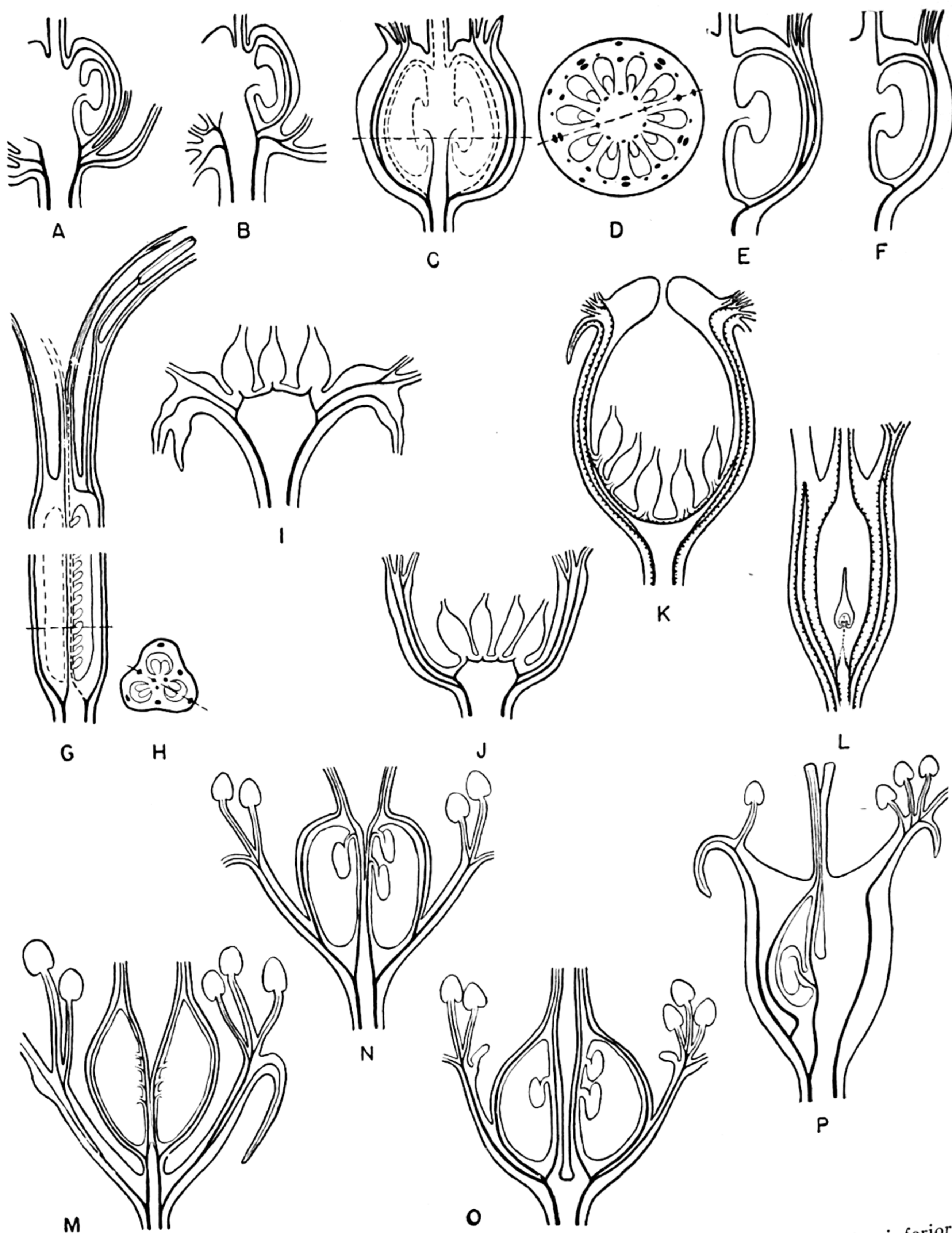


FIG. 167.—Vascular anatomy of flowers with relation to adnation and the inferior ovary. A–F, flowers of the Ericaceae showing stages in increasing adnation of appendages: A, *Pyrola secunda*, ovary superior, no adnation; B, *Andromeda glaucophylla*, ovary superior, stamens fused to petals at base, with fusion of the vascular bundles of the two organs nearly to point of separation; C, D, *Gaylussacia frondosa*, ovary inferior, calyx, corolla, and stamens adnate to carpels but vascular supply of these organs free in their course through region of adnation, except close to base, where the bundles that lie in some radii—those of sepals (For remainder of legend see page 355)



Bracts may be fused to the flowers that they subtend, as in *Juglans*, and *Lonicera* (Figs. 165A, 166C). Fusion of all the parts of an inflorescence—flowers, bracts, and axis—is illustrated by the pineapple (*Ananas comosus*). The many flowers, each subtended by a bract, are closely packed in spirals. The inferior ovary of each flower is completely sheathed by bracts, the anterior half by its own bract, the remainder by parts of three other bracts. Fusion between the ovary and the four surrounding bracts is histologically complete to the top of the ovary. This fusion extends throughout the inflorescence, uniting all ovaries, all bracts, and the axis into one structure. The bundles of the flower are wholly free from each other and from those of the bracts, but bundles of adjacent bracts are often fused and supply two bracts.

Where vegetative parts are similarly fused, for example, bract to peduncle (*Tilia*); axillary peduncles to the adjacent stem (*Sparganium*, *Streptopus*)—giving supra-axillary inflorescences—the vascular tissue may also be fused and structurally complex.

**Placental Vascular Supply.**—Because in many flowers the ventral bundles give rise directly to ovular traces, these bundles have been, incorrectly, called the “placental supply.” In follicles, achenes, and some other types of ovaries, the placenta is merely a position, and there is no placental supply as such. Where the placenta is a definite, often fleshy enlargement of an area along the margin of the carpel, it is supplied by branches from the ventrals, which branching further, give rise to the ovule traces, as in the Ericaceae and Cucurbitaceae. The ovules on a placenta in a syncarpous ovary obviously may receive their vascular supply from different carpels. Where the number of ovules has been reduced from an earlier larger number, the surviving ovules may have strong vascular traces; in extreme reduction—some types of basal and

---

and outer stamens and those that lie in alternate radii (those of petals and inner stamens)—fused; *D*, cross section through center of ovary showing position and freedom of bundles of organs adnate to carpels (dorsal carpellary bundles not fused with other bundles because lying in different radii); *E*, *F*, *Vaccinium corymbosum* and *V. macrocarpon*, showing fusion, progressively greater than in *C*, of petal and stamen bundles with dorsal carpellary bundles. *G*, *H*, *Iris versicolor*, typical inferior ovary, the bundles of the adnate organs in each radius fused throughout their length as far as the top of the ovary. *I*, *J*, *K*, *Dalibarda repens*, *Rubus triflorus*, *Rosa setigera*, respectively: *I*, *J*, showing flattening of receptacular tip; *K*, showing inversion of tip. *K*, with stelar bundles inverted at about one-third distance to top; the lower third, with its inverted stelar bundles is receptacular; the upper two-thirds, “calyx tube”—sepals united with petals and stamens—similar to and homologous with that in *I* and *J* but in-arched, and covering the sunken carpels. *L*, *Darbya*, ovary inferior, formed by inversion of top of receptacle as evidenced by inverted vascular bundles. *M–P*, series of related Rosaceous genera, showing stages in adnation of “calyx tube” to carpels: *M*, *Physocarpus opulifolius*, the carpels superior, the sepals, petals, and stamens, fused, but the “calyx tube” free from the carpels; *N*, *Sorbus sorbifolia*, the “calyx tube” fused to the base of the carpels; *O*, *Spiraea van Houttei*, the “calyx tube” adnate to carpels halfway to the top of the ovary; *P*, *Malus pumila*, the “calyx tube” adnate to the ovary to the top, bundles in some of its radii fused with the dorsal carpellary bundles. (*I–K*, *M–O*, after Jackson; *L*, after Smith.)



free-central placentation—one or two ovules may have the vascular supply of more than one carpel (Juglandaceae; Polygonaceae). (Anatomical structure demonstrates that no angiosperm ovules are cauline.)

**Vestigial Vascular Tissue.**—Evidence of the structure of ancestral floral types is frequently found in the vascular skeleton of modern flowers. The presence of vestiges of the vascular stele at the tip of the receptacle has been discussed (Figs. 158, 159). Remnants of the vascular supply of lost organs may be present in the tissues of the receptacle when all external evidence of the organs has disappeared. Only rarely does the vascular supply of a vestigial organ disappear while external remnants are still present. The vascular vestiges of lost appendages are usually stubs of traces buried in the cortex of the receptacle. The lost organs so represented may be entire whorls, especially of petals and stamens, or individual members of persisting whorls. Traces to lost petals are common in apetalous flowers: *Aristolochia*; *Rhamnus* (apetalous forms); *Salix*; *Quercus* (some species); to lost stamens, for example, in Scrophulariaceae, Labiatae, Cucurbitaceae, *Lysimachia*, *Chionanthus*, *Lychnis*, to lost carpels in Caprifoliaceae, Ericaceae, Rutaceae, Valerianaceae. In unisexual flowers there are commonly external remnants of lost organs; in those in which such vestiges have disappeared, vascular traces may be present within the receptacle: Fagaceae; Caryophyllaceae; Urticaceae.

Traces to lost ovules are among the commonest vestigial structures in the flower. They are frequent in some families, especially the Ranunculaceae, Umbelliferae, and Rosaceae (Fig. 168*B,E,N*).

**Reduction of Vascular Supply within an Organ.**—As reduction occurs in an organ in evolutionary specialization—for example, as a follicle with several ovules becomes an achene with one ovule; as a corolla becomes greatly reduced in size in the crowding together of small flowers in a head, as in the Compositae—the vascular supply of the organ is greatly reduced. In carpels either the dorsal or the ventral bundles may be shortened, the latter extending only to the ovules. In extreme reduction the entire carpellary supply consists of a small bundle running directly from the receptacular stele to the ovule. Stages and variety in this loss are shown in achenes (Fig. 168). In the stamen, the bundle, which commonly extends to the anther, may enter only the base of the filament. In the petal, either median or lateral bundles may be shortened or lost. In the gamopetalous corolla, the median bundle is more often lost (Fig. 161*B,C,D*) and the fused laterals persist; the latter may be reduced in length (Fig. 161*D*).

**The Sepal and the Petal.**—Both the sepal and the petal are commonly leaf-like in form and general appearance. Structurally also the former is like the leaf except when it is petaloid. The petal is leaf-like in grosser



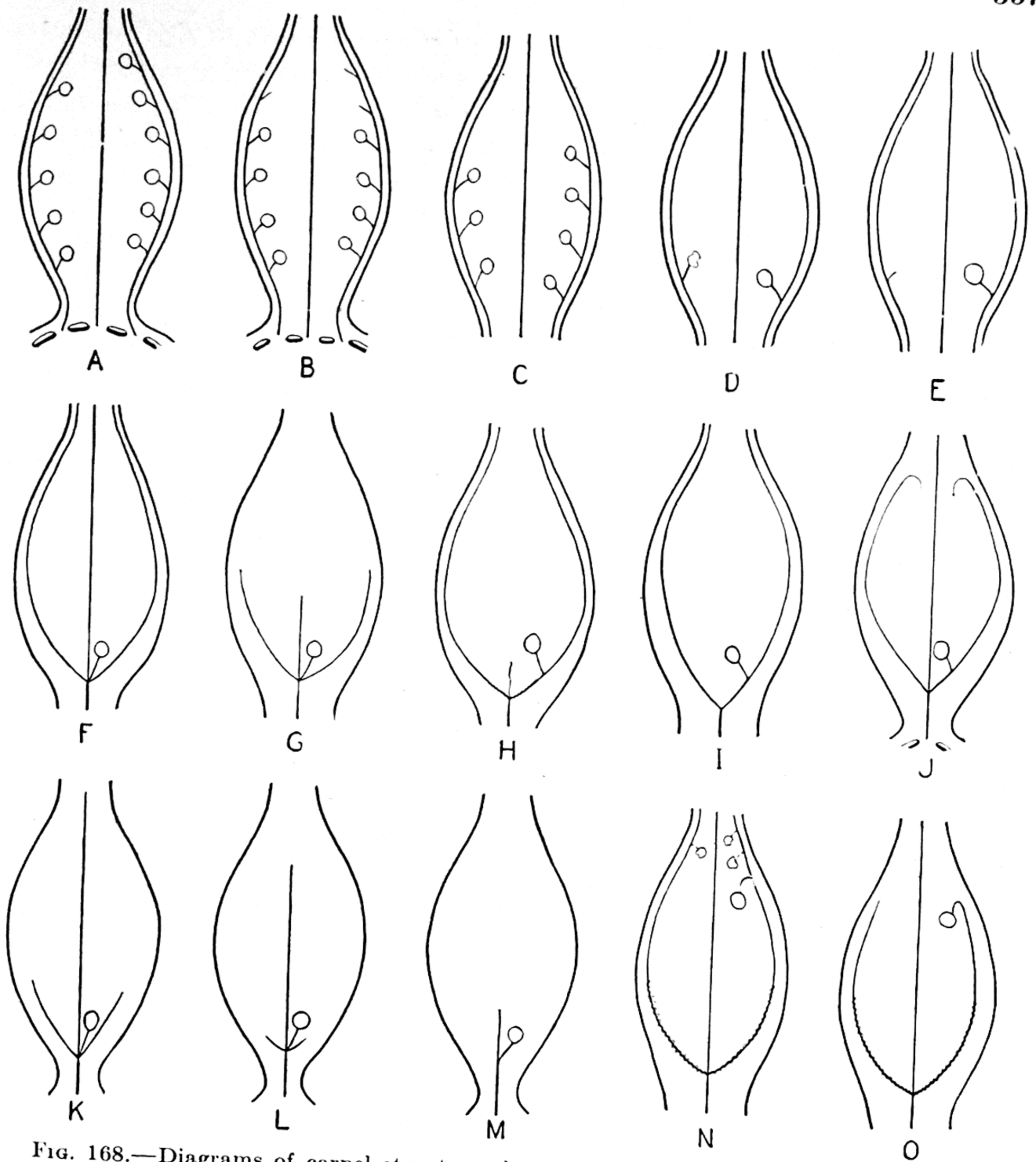


FIG. 168.—Diagrams of carpel structure showing reduction of ovules and fusion and reduction of vascular supply. A–E, follicles: A, *Helleborus viridis*, typical follicle, with many ovules and three traces; B, *Trollius laxus*, ovules reduced in number, traces to lost ovules persisting; C, *Aquilegia canadensis*, upper ovules and their traces lost; D, *Hydrastis canadensis*, all ovules but lower two lost, one of these abortive; E, *Waldsteinia fragarioides*, all ovules but one lost, trace to one other persisting. F–O, achenes: F–M with basal ovule surviving; N, O, with an upper ovule surviving. All with dorsal and ventral traces united at the base, in some as far as the ovule, which then appears to be attached to the dorsal (F, G, K, L, M). F, *Geum rivale*, with distal parts of all bundles present; G, *Duchesnea indica*, dorsal and ventral bundles greatly shortened; H, *Fragaria vesca*, with dorsal bundle greatly shortened; I, *Agrimonia striata*, with dorsal bundle lost beyond its union with the ventral bundles; J, *Ranunculus Ficaria*, the ventral bundles recurving, not entering the style; K, *R. Flammula*, the ventral bundles greatly shortened; L, *R. Cymbalaria*, only vestiges of the ventral bundles persisting, the dorsal bundle greatly shortened; M, *R. aquatilis*, the ventral bundles lost beyond the ovule, the dorsal bundle continuing hardly beyond it; N, *Potentilla recta*, one ovule surviving, others vestigial, the ventral bundles unreduced; O, *P. canadensis*, one ovule surviving, the ventrals lost beyond the ovule. (After Chute, modified in part.)



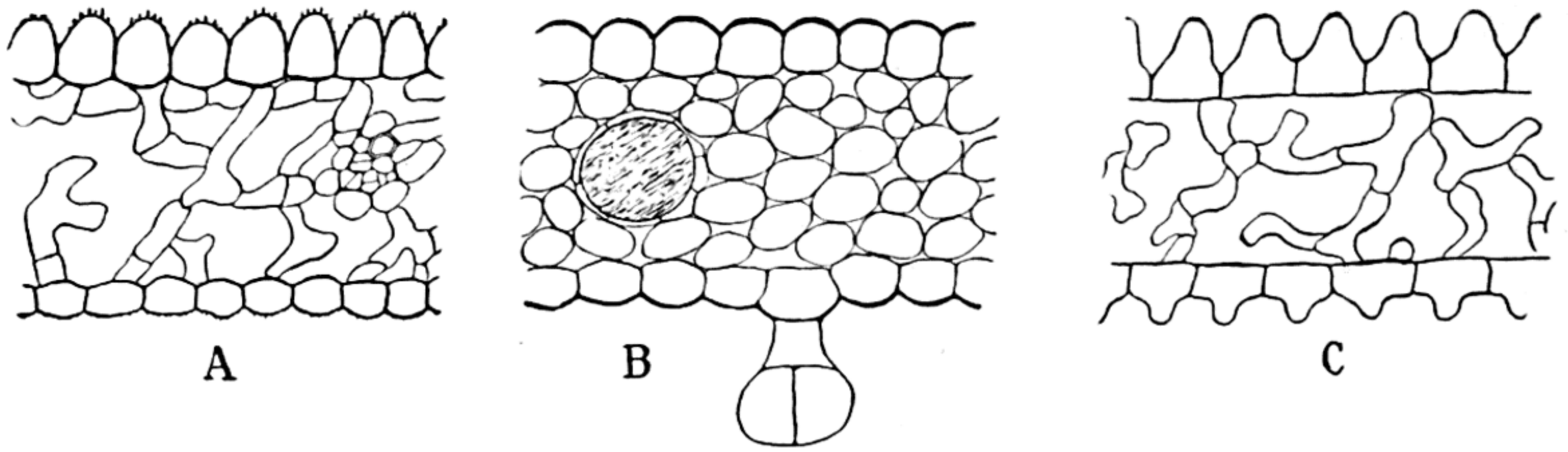
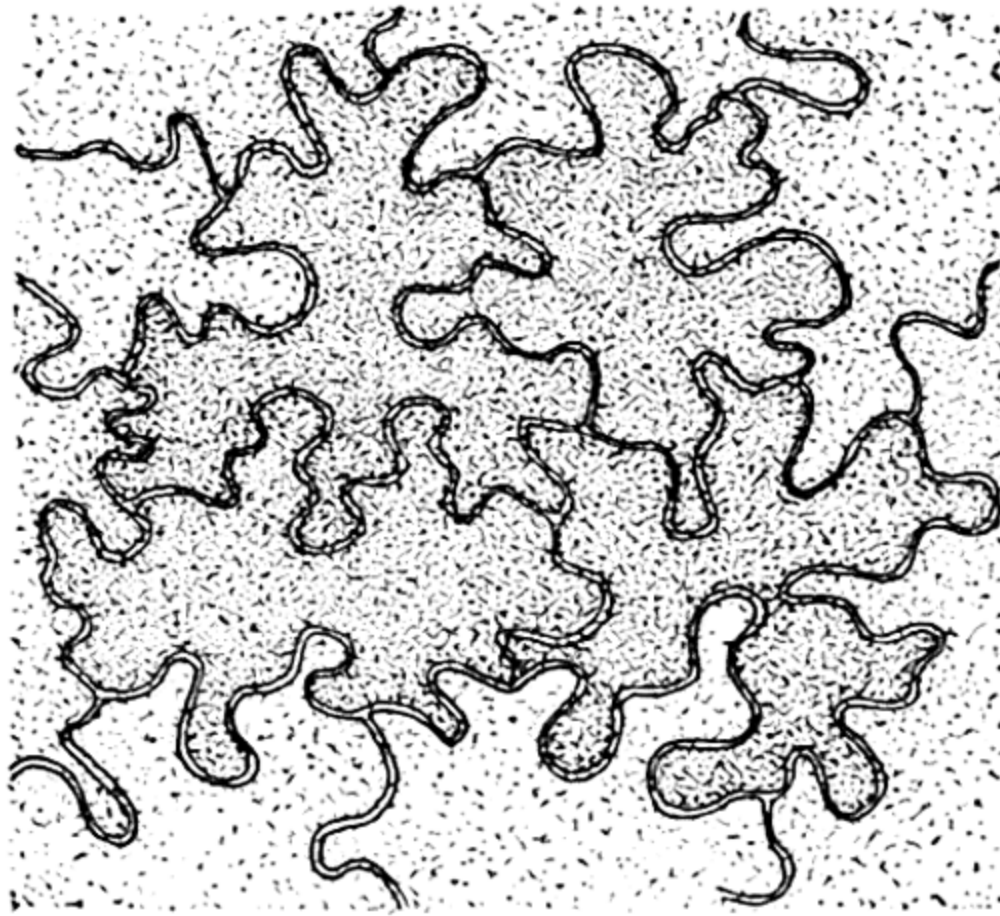
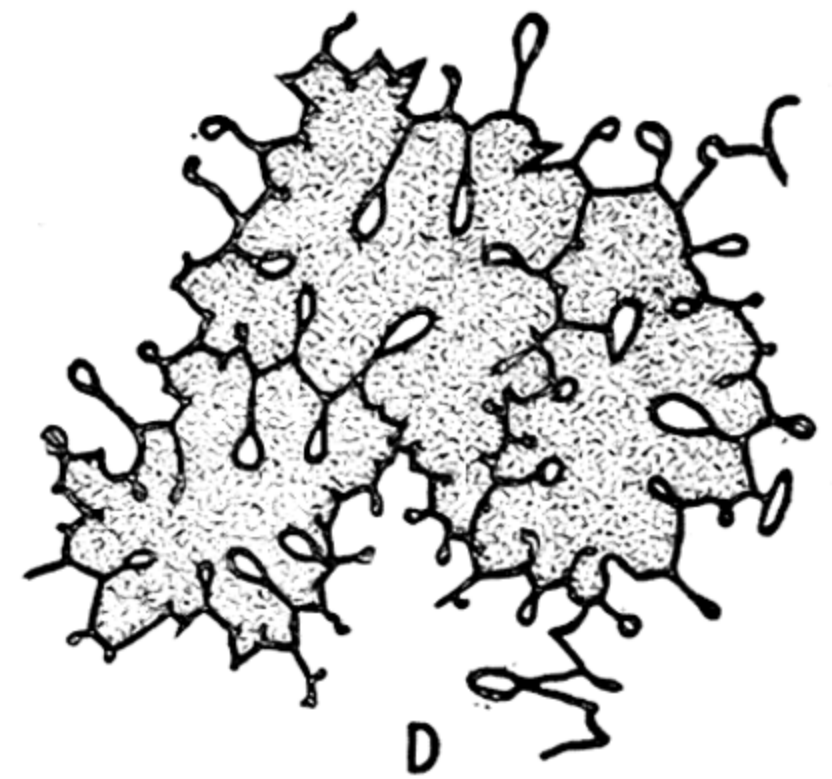


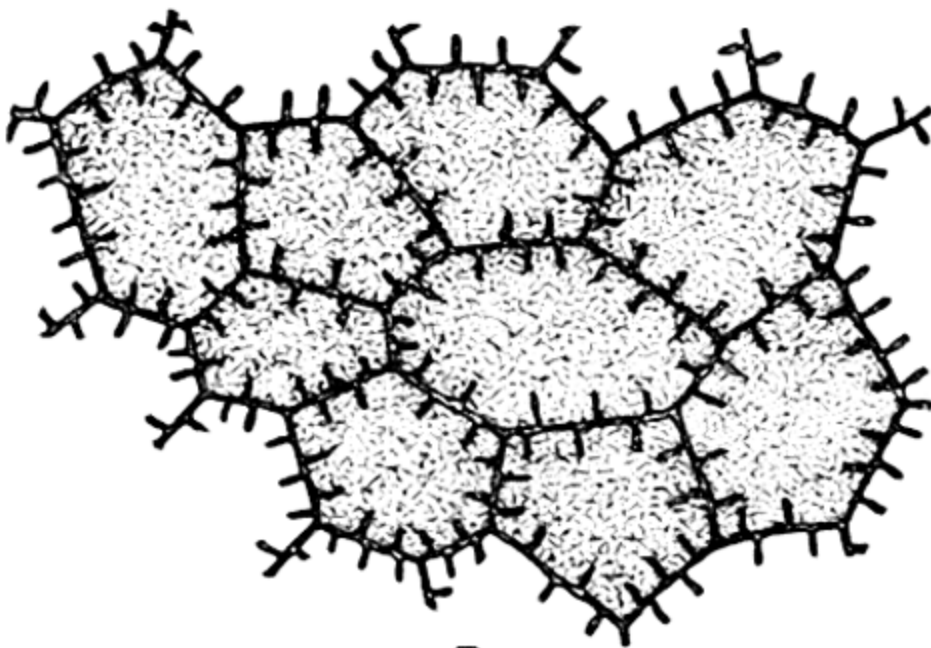
FIG. 169.—Cross sections of petals. A, *Amelanchier laevis*; B, *Lysimachia Nummularia*, showing glandular hair and secretory chamber; C, *Pinguicula vulgaris*.



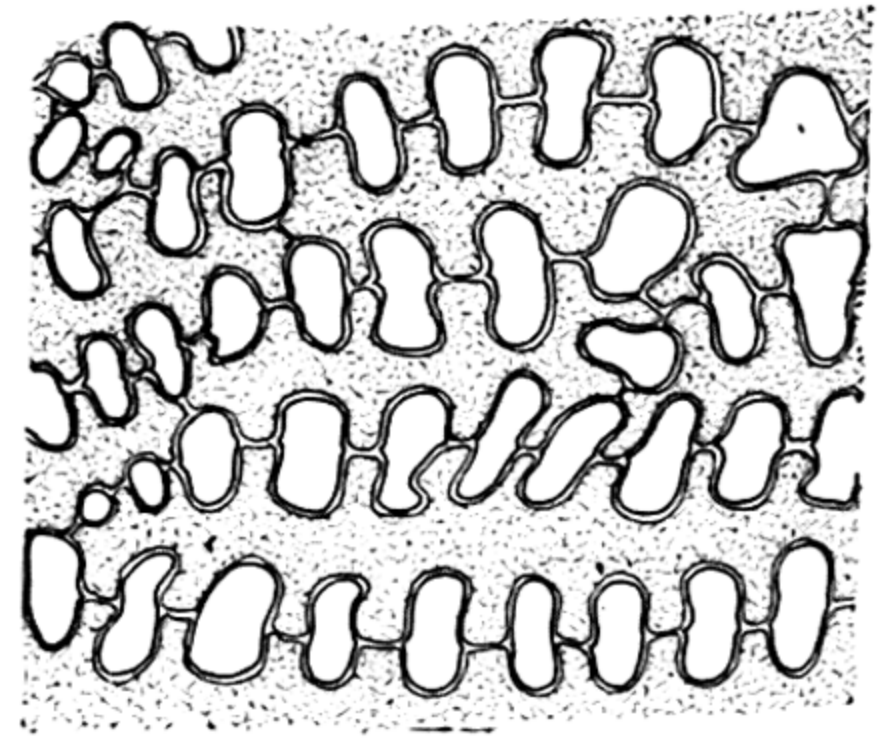
A



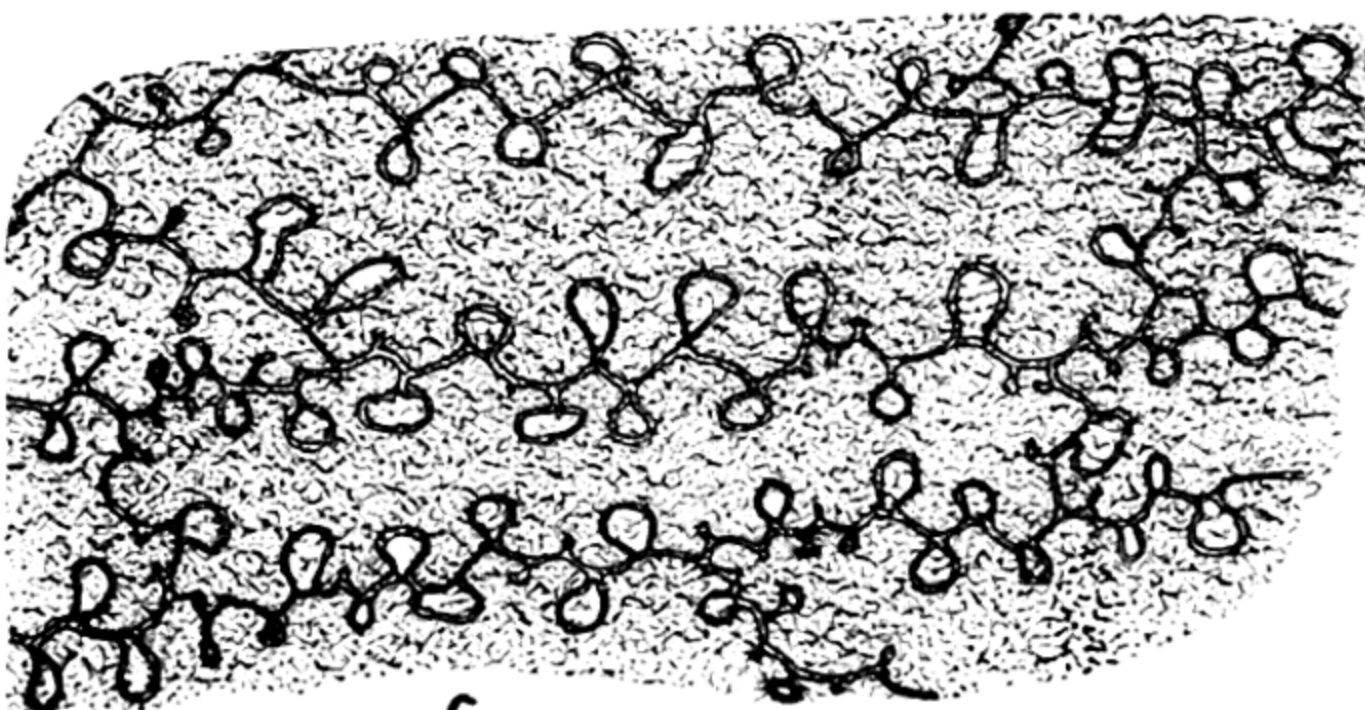
D



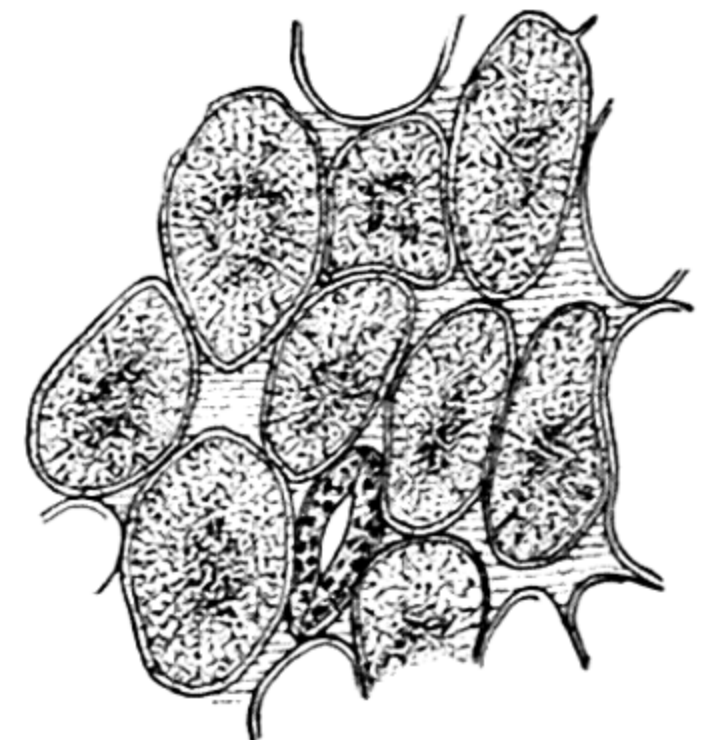
B



E



C



F

FIG. 170.—Epidermis of corolla. A, *Calceolaria*; B, *Pelargonium*; C, *Clarkia*; D, *Anchusa*; E, *Linum*; F, *Erythrina*. (After Hiller.)



structure but histologically differs in many ways from the typical leaf (Fig. 169). The vascular system is commonly reduced in amount and in supporting tissues. The mesophyll is simple in structure: there is usually no palisade layer and the spongy tissue consists of few cell layers. Chromoplasts or colored cell sap, or both, are present. The epidermis is less simple than that of leaves. Its cells are commonly weak-walled and of complex form, often undulate, stellate, or irregularly lobed in outline and dovetailed with one another. With this shape and arrangement they doubtless form a layer mechanically stronger than one consisting of cells of simpler form. The cells of one or both surfaces are usually papillose. Stomata are fewer than those on leaves and frequently nonfunctional or absent. The guard cells lack chloroplasts except when the mesophyll also has these plastids. Secretory areas and glandular hairs are common. Intercellular spaces, usually lacking in the epidermis of leaves, are frequent. They lie in the loops or lobes of the cell wall (Fig. 170C,D,E) but are always covered by cuticle. The cuticle varies greatly in thickness being very thin on delicate, ephemeral petals.

The extreme types of petals show many variations from, and exceptions to, the typical structure described above. The less highly specialized type of petal has a strong vascular supply, a weak palisade layer, chloroplasts, a nonpapillose epidermis with many stomata and often a hypodermis, and supporting tissue about the larger veins. The most highly specialized type has the vascular tissue weak, with veinlets and even most of the main bundles lost, and wholly without accompanying supporting tissue. The mesophyll consists of one to three poorly defined layers of widely spaced cells which are lacking along the margins and in distal parts, so that part of the petal consists of epidermal layers only. The epidermis is papillose, with chromoplasts or colored cell sap, and without stomata or glands.

**The Stamen and the Carpel.**—Stamens and carpels consist chiefly of unspecialized parenchyma. Their traces continue in the organs as weak or strong, often amphicribal bundles, for varying distances, and with varying amounts of branching. In the stamen, the trace or traces commonly run unbranched to the anther, but in delicate stamens may fade out anywhere in the filament. In some stout stamens, as in those of *Magnolia*, small lateral branches are present. The traces of the carpel may pass as unbranched bundles to the style or stigma, or may branch in varying degrees, some showing leaf-like venation in the branching. Within the stigma the bundles frequently branch. In reduced carpels, all branching is lost, and the main bundles are shortened by loss of the distal portions. For example, the ventral bundles may not extend beyond the placentae and all bundles may fail to enter the style. In



extreme reduction, as in small achenes, the vascular supply may be reduced to little more than a basal remnant (Fig. 168M). Vestigial bundles are frequently found. These are the weak or abortive remnants of traces or bundles representing the supply to organs lost in evolutionary modification. The most common vestigial bundles are the traces to lost petals, stamens, and carpels, represented by stubs arising from the receptacular stele as normal traces but ending blindly in the cortex of the receptacle, and ovule traces that end blindly in the placenta or the margin of the carpel (Fig. 168B,E). The epidermis is of typical structure, the cells usually with straight walls and thin cuticle. Stomata occur on stamens only when these structures are expanded and leaf-like. In carpels they occur freely on the outer surface and are even found in the epidermis lining the ovarian cavity.

### THE FRUIT

**Morphology of Fruits.**—A fruit is a developed and ripened ovary or ovaries together, often, with adjacent floral organs and other plant parts. The fruit develops directly from the flower and its structure is therefore fundamentally that of the floral parts and other structures from which it has arisen. Fruits range in complexity of morphological structure from a single carpel, such as a legume, to a fruit like the pineapple, which is an entire inflorescence including the ovaries, floral parts, bracts, and the inflorescence axis all fused into a single succulent mass.

Generally, the morphological nature of a fruit can be determined from the mature fruit alone, particularly if anatomical characters are considered. The outlines of at least some of the organs—carpels, receptacle, sepals, bracts—may be visible, and the fundamental vascular supply persists. Although these organs can often be identified, they are usually swollen and distorted. The terms used in floral description are not applicable and are supplanted by special terms. The body of the fruit developed from the ovary wall, which surrounds and encloses the seed, is known as the *pericarp*. When this is not homogenous histologically, and distinct outer, inner, and median parts are evident, these parts are known as *exocarp*, *endocarp*, and *mesocarp*, respectively. In many fruits the pericarp is more or less nearly homogeneous and not separable into parts; in other fruits only exocarp and endocarp are evident. Strictly speaking, the term “pericarp” refers only to the modified ovary wall, but in general usage it is applied to the outer tissues of fruits regardless of their morphological nature.

**Ontogeny of Fruits.**—Since the fruit is derived directly from the flower, the ontogeny of the fruit can be considered to begin with the formation of the floral parts that contribute to it. This is particularly



true of the ovary which has its basic structure determined in the flower. In some genera, for example, in *Lycopersicon* (tomato) and *Vaccinium*, cell division in the ovary ceases when the flower opens, and subsequent development of the fruit consists of the enlargement and specialization of the existing cells of the ovary, but in most fruits, the flowering period is followed by cell division in the ovary and accessory fruit parts. Fertilization and the growth of the embryo are normally necessary to set in motion the mechanism of fruit development, and in this sense the ontogeny of the fruit begins with fertilization.

Fruits normally go through a cycle of development that is constant for any one species, but differs widely among species. This consists of an early stage of cell division with the laying down of basic form and structure; a period of cell enlargement and tissue differentiation in which final form is reached; and a period of ripening. These stages may overlap somewhat and are usually related to stages in the growth of the endosperm, seed coats, and embryo.

In the ontogeny of fruits, various organs or parts of organs may be lost. For example, the flower of the coconut (*Cocos nucifera*) has a three-carpelled, three-celled ovary, but in the formation of the mature nut only one carpel develops. Remains of the abortive carpels form a part of the endocarp of the fruit.

The shape of fruits is determined by the place and rate of cell division, by the plane of cell division, and by the direction in which enlarging cells elongate. Some fruits, for example, the date, have a basal meristem which contributes to the formation of a much elongated fruit. Elongate fruit form in some of the cucurbit fruits is related to the restriction of the divisions of meristematic cells largely to the plane perpendicular to the fruit axis and to the elongation of the new cells chiefly in the direction of this axis.

### THE STRUCTURE OF FRUITS

**Vascular Skeleton of Fruits.**—A fruit possesses as its basic vascular supply that of the floral parts from which it has been derived. This vascular supply is strengthened and extended as the fruit develops; the diameter of the bundles is increased either by primary or secondary growth, or by both these methods of increase, and the bundles are extended by terminal primary growth and by the addition of branches that extend through the developing tissues. But the main vascular system of a fruit, though often obscured by branches, remains fundamentally the same as in the flower. In the apple flower, for example, there are ten principal bundles in addition to those that supply the carpels. These bundles are the vascular supply of the sepals, petals, and stamens.



In the fruit, these appear in relatively the same position as in the flower but much increased in size and with the addition of a highly developed, anastomosing branch system extending to all parts of the fleshy outer layers. The smaller branches extend throughout the fleshy tissues as the smaller bundles of a leaf spread throughout the mesophyll. The ultimate branches, like those in a leaf, are very slender and consist of only a few elements which are chiefly protoxylem cells accompanied by a very few elongate parenchyma cells. In the pericarp of fleshy fruits, these finer bundles are more numerous than in the pericarp of dry fruits.

**Epidermis of Fruits.**—The cells of the epidermis on both the inner and the outer surfaces of the carpels resemble the epidermal cells of stems

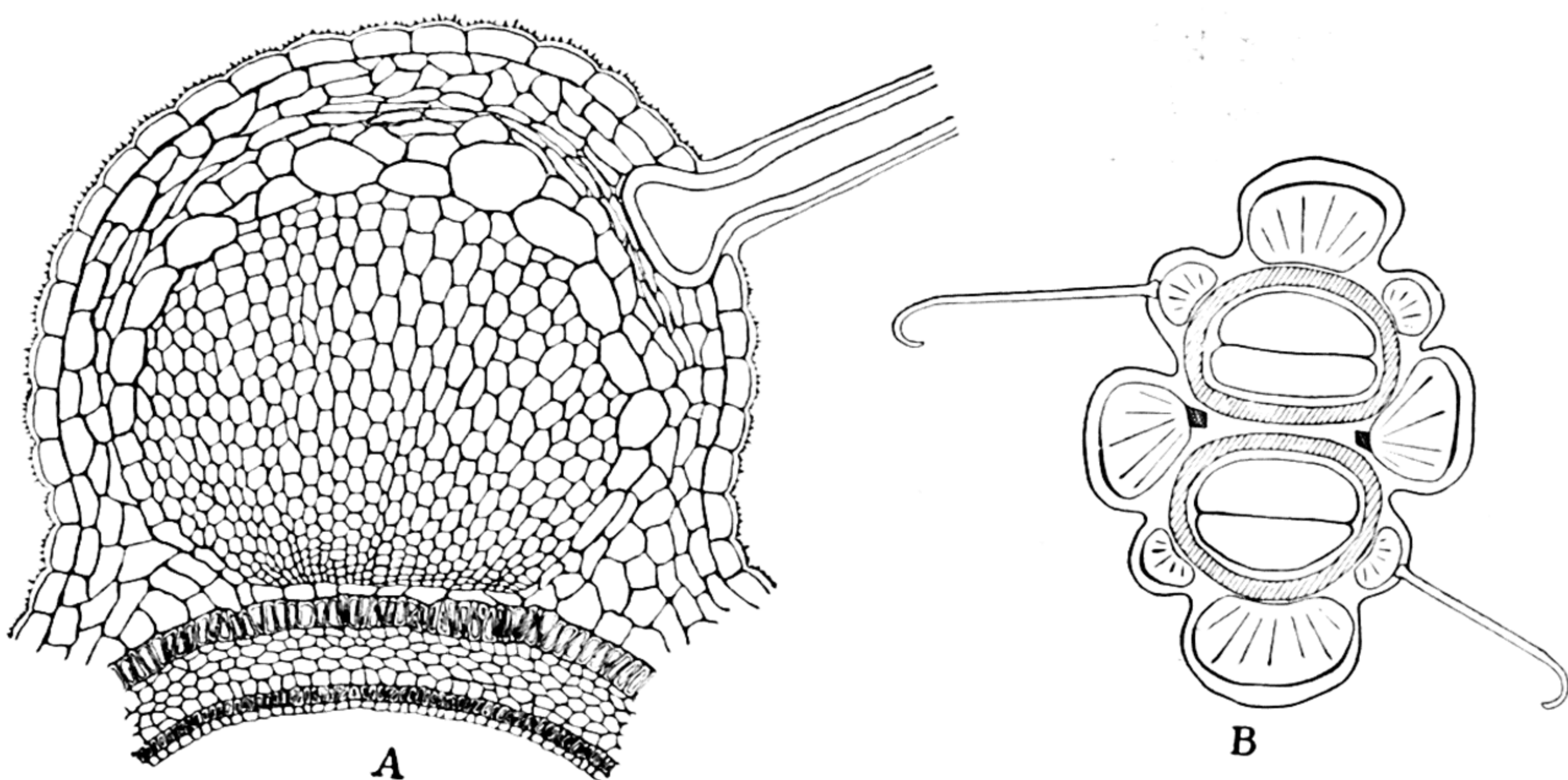


FIG. 171.—Dry fruit of *Circaea latifolia*. A, detail of portion of the cross section (B) of entire fruit, showing the pericarp with its various layers, the ridge of corky secondary tissue, and the large, rigid hairs.

and leaves in form, in wall structure, and in the presence of cuticle and stomata. The inner epidermis is more delicate than the outer, but usually has a thin cuticle and may have stomata. The cells of the epidermis are most commonly isodiametric, polygonal cells, as in the Rosaceae and Liliaceae. In the Ranunculaceae, some Scrophulariaceae, and other families, the cells are sinuous in outline, lobed and dovetailed with one another, as in the epidermis of many petals and some leaves. In berries and some drupes, and probably in other fleshy fruits, for example, in *Rubus* and *Vitis*, the epidermal cells are polygonal and very small with rather thin walls. In many other fruits, the epidermal cells are thick-walled with a heavy cuticle and in early stages of development may contain tannin. The number of stomata in the epidermis of fruits varies from many as in *Pyrus* to none as in *Vitis* and *Vaccinium*.



**Periderm in Fruits.**—In a few fruits of the “russet” type, such as russet apples and pears and *Achras* and *Calocarpum*, a periderm layer arises in or close beneath the epidermis and is apparent on the surface of ripe fruit as a rough, brownish layer. In the form of lenticels, restricted periderm occurs in apples and pears where it forms the “dots” on the fruit. Corky ridges and nodules, which represent restricted periderm, are common on dry fruits, as in *Circaea* (Fig. 171).

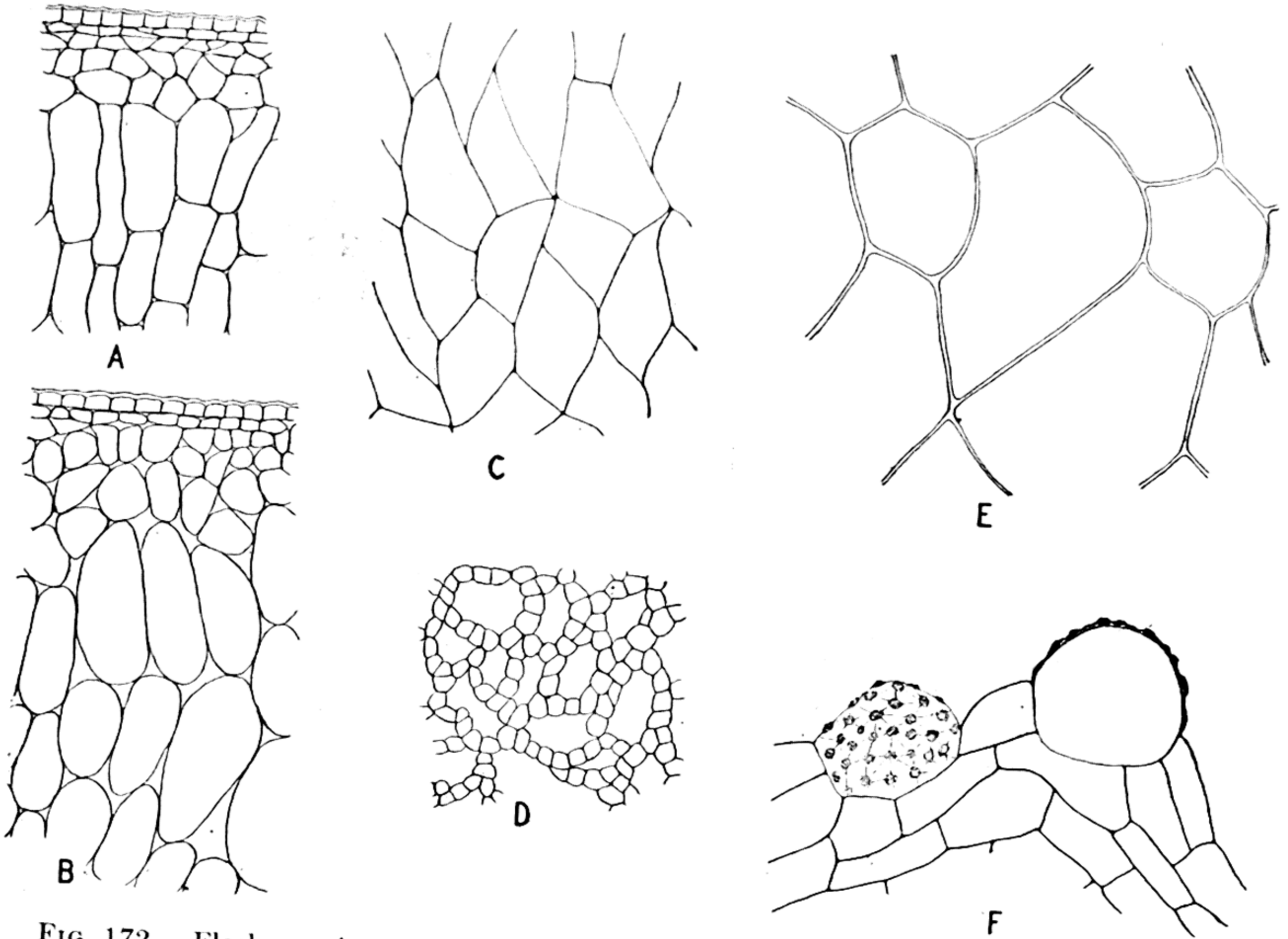


FIG. 172.—Fleshy pericarp. A, B, ripening and ripe outer pericarp of *Prunus Cerasus* (var. Montmorency); C, ripe, fleshy pericarp of *P. Cerasus* (var. Morello); D, “dry,” fleshy pericarp of *Zizyphus* (jujube); E, fleshy pericarp of *Citrullus*; F, outer pericarp and epidermis of fruit of *Floerkia*; the walls of some epidermal cells with prominent centripetal thickenings.

**Fleshy Fruits.**—Fleshy fruits consist in some considerable part of succulent parenchyma, whereas dry fruits consist of sclerenchyma and nonsucculent parenchyma in varying amounts. In fleshy fruits, the pericarp (here referring to the tissues enclosing the seed cavities, regardless of their morphological nature) may be succulent throughout, or the outer layers may be succulent and the inner layers dry and stony. The fleshy layer may be homogeneous, as in the apple, peach, and cherry (Fig. 172A,B), or the pericarp may consist of mingled succulent parenchyma and sclereids in varying proportions, as in the pear, quince, and black walnut. The fleshy tissues are usually thin-walled parenchyma,



more or less turgid with fluids. Some cells may contain tannin, as in *Diospyros*, or raphides, as in some species of *Vitis*. Mucilage-bearing cells are found in some fruits as in the rind of *Musa*. Lysigenous glands are characteristic of the rinds of *Citrus* and laticiferous ducts are abundant in *Carica*.

Sclereids in the fleshy layers frequently occur in groups or clusters and give the flesh a gritty or sandy texture. From these aggregates as a center, elongate parenchyma cells may radiate, as in *Pyrus serotina*. The individual sclereids may be isodiametric or very irregular in outline.

The pulp of citrus fruits is of different nature from that of most fruits. It consists of numerous multicellular emergences developed from the inner

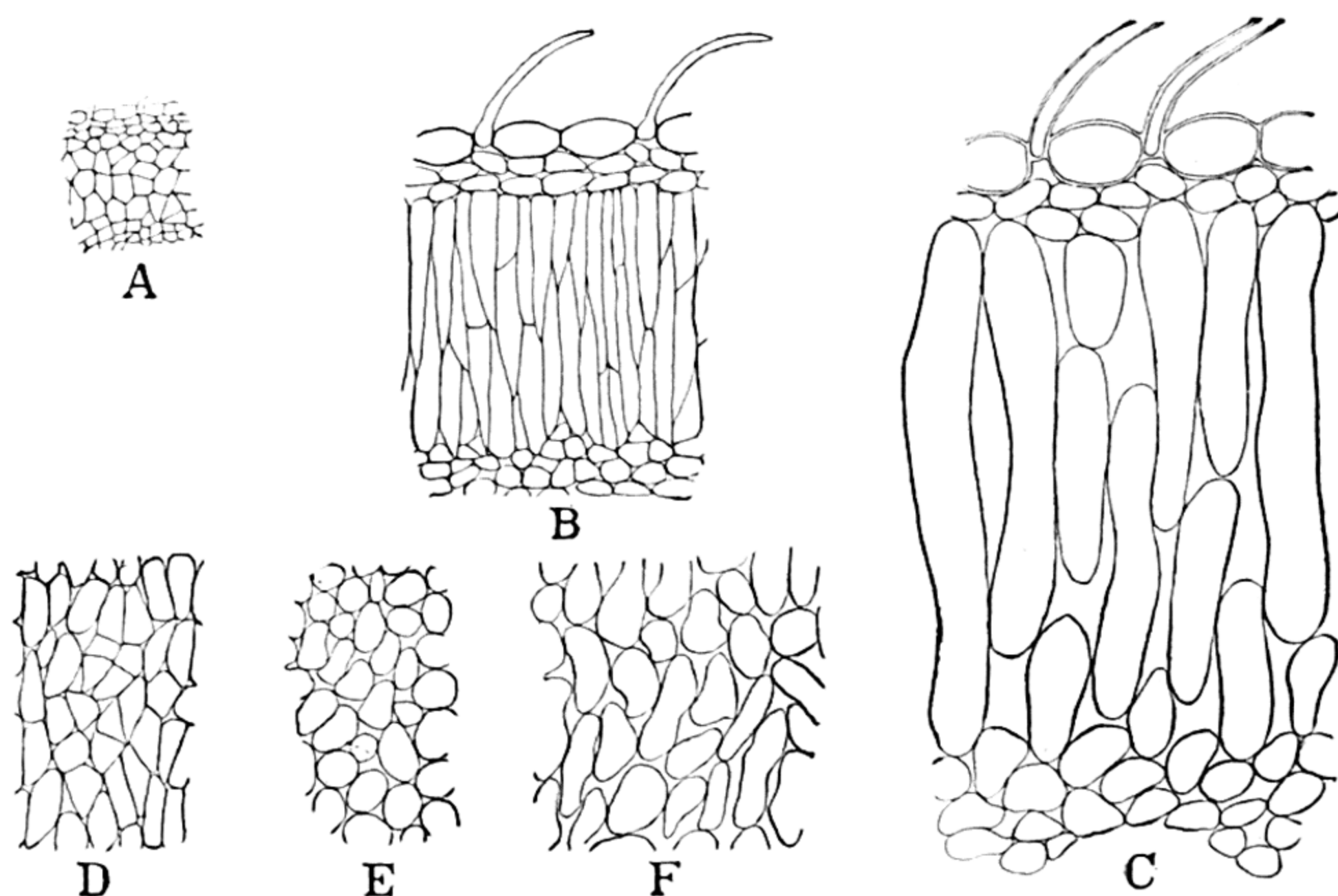


FIG. 173.—Fleshy pericarp. A, B, C, successive stages in the development of the exocarp of *Rubus strigosus*: A, green fruit soon after fertilization; B, half-ripe fruit; C, ripe fruit, all sections radial and drawn to same scale. D, E, F, fleshy receptacle of *Fragaria*: D, half-ripe fruit, radial section; E, F, ripe fruit, tangential and radial sections, respectively.

surface layers of the carpels. The cells of these projecting structures become turgid with fluid and the emergences fill the carpel cavities.

Whether the fleshy pericarp is strictly homogeneous in texture or contains more than one cell type, there are usually several more or less distinct layers. Only the outer and inner epidermis and the fleshy layers are distinct in some berries such as fruits of the Solanaceae (tomato, ground cherry). More often a hypodermis, several layers of cells thick, underlies the outer epidermis. This may consist of simple parenchyma, as in *Rubus* (Fig. 173B); collenchyma, as in *Prunus cerasus* and *Persea*; sclereids, as in *Pyrus communis*; or other cell types and combinations of types. The size and shape of the cells in the different layers varies greatly. Usually the cells of the epidermis and hypodermis are small compared with those of the middle fleshy layer.



The ripening process in fleshy fruits involves changes in structure and in chemical composition. Chemically, stored starch is changed to sugar, or in some species to fat; tannin is reduced in amount or disappears; acids are usually reduced in amount and various esters are produced. Histologically, ripening may involve increase in cell size and change in cell shape, the cells becoming turgid with fluid and the walls often excessively thin and delicate; it may also involve, to a greater or less extent, the separation of the cells from one another. In some plants the cells are already freed in part while the fruit is still immature (Fig. 173D,E) with resulting increase in intercellular spaces. These air spaces in the apple fruit may make up as much as twenty-five per cent of the volume of the fruit at the "firm ripe" stage. The dissolution of the middle lamella and outer wall layers (which in some plants, as in *Crataegus*, are very thick) sets the cells free. The fluid filling the cells of the flesh is said to come in part from the formation of more soluble substances, from organic acids, and from the breaking down of various substances such as starch, pectic acid, and cellulosic materials. Probably in almost all fruits, fluids formed within the fruit or brought in during ripening, are retained within the cells of the flesh, even when the fruit is very ripe. A small amount of free fluid coming from the dissolved middle lamellae may be present between the cells, but the apparently free fluid found on the opening of soft fruits is probably mostly intracellular fluid set free by the rupture of the tenuous walls of turgid cells. Very slight pressure is sufficient to break such cells, possibly even the changes in tissue tension brought about by the breaking of the epidermis.

Fruits fall roughly into two groups on the basis or rate of increase in size in the final stages of ripening. In one group, including the cherry, blueberry, and raspberry, growth is extremely rapid at the end of development, with great enlargement in a few days or even hours. This rapid growth consists mostly of the radial enlargement of cells and of the formation of intercellular spaces between separated cells. In partly grown fruit, the cells of the developing flesh, which were at first isodiametric, have often become tangentially elongated; when ripe, these same cells become isodiametric again or even, as in most fruits with very rapid growth at the last, radially elongated (Fig. 173A,B,C).

In the other group, the fruits reach full size before they are ripe and may even shrink slightly through loss of water during the ripening process. This is true of apples, pears, plums, and many other fruits that are considered mature when they are harvested but may require days or even months before they are ripe in the sense that they are ready to eat. During the interval between firm-ripe and edible-ripe stages, changes take place in the middle lamella and cell wall which result in easier



separation of the cells. The fruit industry is based on the practice of harvesting fruits when they are mature but still firm and transporting them to markets before they ripen and become soft.

The ripening process eventually leads to the breakdown and disintegration of fruits. In the apple and pear the cells are freed from one another and the fruit becomes mealy or mushy. In some of the soft fruits the cell walls disintegrate releasing the juices. Early stages of breakdown are followed in most fruits by fungous or bacterial decay which destroys the fruit.

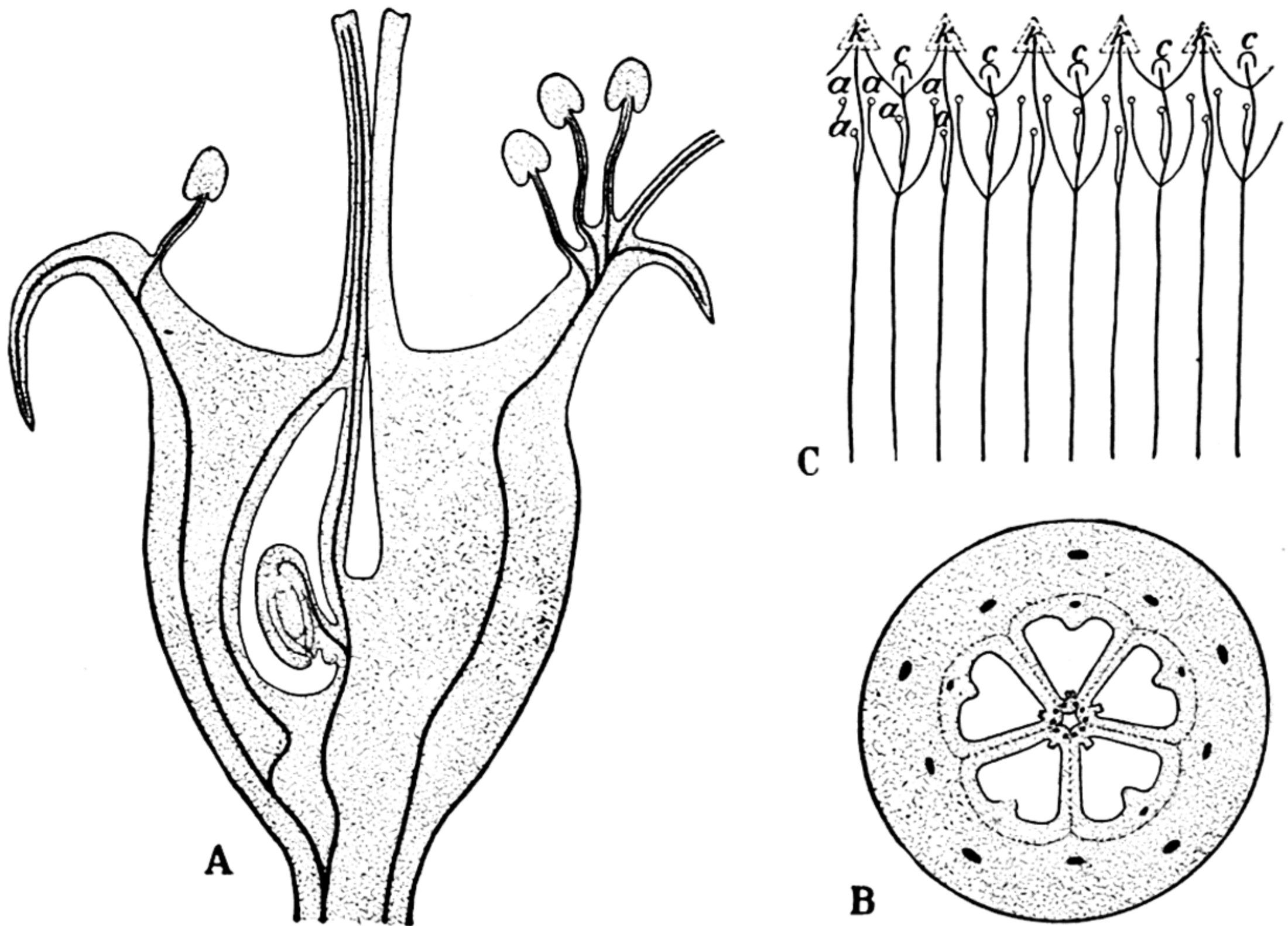


FIG. 174.—The vascular system of the flower of *Malus pumila*. A, vertical section; B, median cross section; C, vascular system, exclusive of carpellary supply, spread out in one plane—*k*, *c*, *a*, bundles to sepals, petals, and stamens respectively. (C, after Kraus and Ralston.)

Variety in texture of fleshy fruits is related to structure. Thus the crispness of an apple depends upon the turgor of rather firm cells. In the peach and high quality pears, large thin-walled cells that break easily and release their contents give soft flesh and abundant juice. In some fruits that have buttery or custard-like consistency, as for example, in *Asimina* and *Diospyros*, the cells of the flesh disintegrate when the fruit becomes edible. Aggregates of sclereids next to the epidermis or scattered in the pulp give the granular texture characteristic of some pears. Masses of sclerenchyma in the outer layers give a hard rind as in species of *Cucurbita*. Heavy cuticle combined with collenchyma gives toughness to the outer layers of some types of *Persea* fruits. The flesh of some fruits, such as those of *Gaultheria* and *Zizyphus*, has a rather tough, dry consistency



resulting from the presence of many air chambers in the flesh and low water content (Fig. 172D).

**Stony Layer of Fruits.**—In many fruits, particularly drupes, the fleshy outer layers enclose a hard or stony layer. In simple drupes like the plum and cherry, the fleshy and stony layers make up the ovary wall or pericarp. In other fruits, floral organs other than the ovary may enter into the formation of the pericarp. Because the stony layer is usually next to the seed cavities, it is in most drupes derived from the carpels. The hard layer usually consists of sclereids and fibers, but it may be cartilaginous, as in the apple and pear, or tough and leathery, as in the mango. The outer surface of this layer may be smooth, as in species of *Prunus*, or may extend in prongs of hard tissue into the soft pulp, as in *Spondias*, or in tough, hair-like processes, as in *Mangifera*.

The stony layer develops during the early stages of enlargement of the fruit and usually attains full size and becomes lignified before the embryo starts rapid growth. In *Juglans*, *Carya*, and *Prunus*, embryo enlargement is delayed for weeks until the stony layers are fully developed. Obviously, after lignification of this tissue, no further change in size of this part of the fruit is possible. The stony layer commonly consists of the inner epidermis of the pericarp and the inner pericarp. Usually, it is itself differentiated into two or more layers of sclerenchyma differing from each other in cell shape and orientation. In *Prunus cerasus*, the inner layer next to the seed coats has its cells elongated at right angles to the fruit axis; in the outer layer, the cells are elongated parallel with this axis. The type and arrangement of cells and the number of layers in the stony endocarp of different species apparently vary considerably.

**Dry Fruits.**—Dry fruits are of essentially the same structure as fleshy fruits during early stages of development in that all meristematic tissues consist of soft parenchyma. The basic structural pattern and particularly the vascular system are the same in both. The fruits of the almond are essentially identical with those of the peach through all early stages of growth, but in the final ripening period the exocarp of the almond becomes dry instead of fleshy as in the peach and splits along the suture to free the nut which is the stony endocarp and its enclosed seed. The difference between these fruits lies chiefly in the changes which occur during the later stages of cell differentiation and particularly in the final ripening period.

In dry fruits, a large proportion of the cells mature as sclerenchyma of various kinds. In the ripening process the parenchyma cells lose their protoplasts and become dry; their walls often become lignified or suberized.



The three characteristic layers of the pericarp are more commonly present in dry fruits, where sclerenchyma and 'dry' parenchyma are abundant, than in fleshy fruits. These three layers vary in nature and in extent in different fruits, being either sclerenchymatous or parenchymatous, and ranging from one layer to many layers in thickness. The parenchyma cells may be closely appressed to one another, or loosely arranged with prominent intercellular spaces. The sclerenchyma cells are fibers of many types and sclereids. Often an exocarp is highly complex, consisting of successive layers of different types of sclerenchyma, sometimes including layers of parenchyma of different cell shapes, types, and orientation. Such a structural unit is apparently very strong mechanically. An essentially four-layered pericarp is formed in many fruits, such as the achenes of the Compositae, where the mesocarp consists of two parts.

In many dry fruits, the thin-walled parenchyma collapses to a greater or less extent as the fruit dries in maturing. When the fruit is a firm, thin-walled capsule, as in the Caryophyllaceae, the pericarp is made up largely of closely packed, firm-walled parenchyma that does not collapse on drying.

Dry fruits show a great variety of "accessory structures" such as corky ridges, spines, hooks, hairs, and various kinds of "ornamentation." Hairs of the internal epidermis of the fruit of *Ceiba* constitute the kapok of commerce. In winged fruits, for example those of *Acer* and *Ailanthus*, the part of the pericarp constituting the wing is usually of firm but light structure. In these fruits, the supporting cells are chiefly those of vascular bundles with their fibrous sheaths. Between these bundles, the tissue is usually loose, with intercellular spaces.

**The Placenta.**—In many fruits, especially those of the fleshy type, such as tomato and watermelon, enlarged placentae form a considerable, even a large, part of the fruit. Even in some dry fruits, such as the capsule of *Epigaea*, the trailing arbutus, the placenta is large, fleshy, and berry-like. (The placenta is, of course, a part of the carpel and not usually considered a part of the pericarp.) Fleshy placentae consist of masses of soft, thin-walled parenchyma and vascular bundles. The parenchyma cells are large and, as in the watermelon (Fig. 172E), can often be seen with the naked eye.

**Accessory Fruit Parts.**—Fleshy fruits that consist in part of structures other than the carpel have the same general histological structure as simple fleshy fruits. The accessory structures are morphologically diverse but some flower parts are found frequently. In many fruits, such as those of *Pyrus*, *Vaccinium*, and the Cucurbitaceae, developed from an inferior ovary, the "calyx tube" is adherent to the carpels and



forms a part of the fruit. (The "calyx tube" consists morphologically, of the fused bases of calyx, corolla, and stamens.) A soft, fleshy receptacle makes up a large part of some fruits, for example the blackberry and the strawberry. The pulp of the strawberry is said to be developed in large part by a cortical, phellogen-like meristem, which forms many cells centripetally. Inside this, there is the vascular cylinder and the enlarged pith. In multiple fruits arising from an entire inflorescence, such as those of *Ananas*, *Artocarpus*, and *Morus*, the receptacle forms a considerable part of the fruit and becomes fleshy together with the fused calyx lobes and the bracts subtending the flowers. The fruit of *Ficus* is an inflorescence with its flower-bearing branches fused around a central cavity; the flesh of the fruit consists mostly of the cortical tissues of the branches.

**Dehiscence of Fruits.**—The place and manner of dehiscence in dry fruits differ widely but are constant and characteristic for a species. In many plants there seems to be no elaborate histological structure associated with dehiscence; the opening takes place along "sutures," which are lines of structural weakness. These lines of dehiscence are often those of marginal contact of carpels where there is incomplete fusion. In other plants a line of separation is formed by the development of rows of special cells weakly held together. Separation occurs later between these rows by the tearing apart of the tissues during changes in tension due to drying. The development and specialization of these "opening cells" accompanies that of the cells of the rest of the fruit and does not follow at a much later period as does the development of separation layers in leaves and stems. Dehiscence is apparently not commonly the result of the separation of individual cells, as is abscission, or of the disintegration of tissue. In some semifleshy fruits that are dehiscent, for example, those of *Carya*, the middle lamellae along pre-formed suture lines appear to dissolve. Along these lines, the fruit opens as it dries. The stresses brought about by unequal growth or by unequal drying out of the pericarp may cause sudden and even explosive rupture of the fruit along lines of weakness.

### THE SEED

The enlarged and matured ovule with its enclosed embryo constitutes the seed. Before fertilization, the ovule consists morphologically of the embryo sac, nucellus, and one or two integuments. Histologically, it is simple, made up of parenchyma, with the exception sometimes of a few procambium or vascular cells. After fertilization the endosperm, and later, the embryo develop rapidly within the enlarging ovule, and the integuments enlarge and their tissues become complex. The nucellus



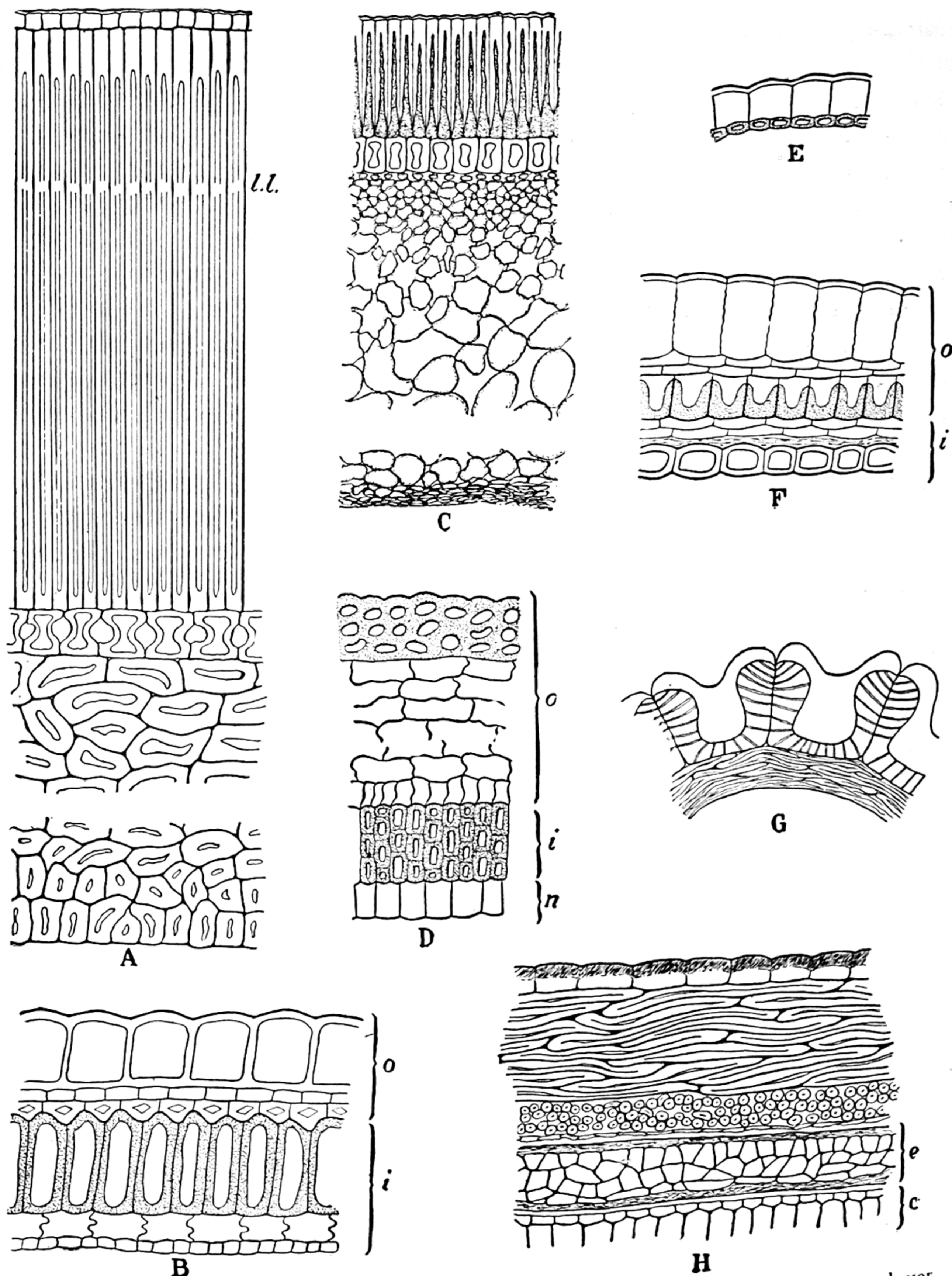


FIG. 175.—Seed coats. *A*, *Gymnocladus dioica* (only one-fifth of the stony inner layer shown); *B*, *Viola tricolor*; *C*, *Phaseolus multiflorus* (only one-third of the soft inner layer shown); *D*, *Magnolia macrophylla*, only part of the fleshy layer shown; *E*, *Plantago lanceolata*; *F*, *Lepidium sativum*; *G*, *Vaccinium corymbosum*, the epidermal cells very large, with heavy inner, and delicate outer walls; *H*, *Malus pumila*. *c*, cotyledon; *e*, endosperm; *i*, inner integument; *l. l.*, "light line"; *n*, nucellus; *o*, outer integument. (*B*, *D*, *E*, *F*, after Brandza.)



may persist and increase in volume becoming a prominent part of the seed, as in the beet, but it usually fails to increase and is soon destroyed by other tissues. In many plants the endosperm forms a considerable part of the mature seed, but frequently it is partially or wholly absorbed by the growing embryo. (Many seeds described as "exalbuminous" have small amounts of endosperm.) In general, the histological simplicity of the ovule is continued in the endosperm and embryo, but the histological structure of the seed coats is complex.

**Seed Coats. Morphology.**—Throughout the different groups of seed plants the ovule has either one or two integuments. In the dicotyledons the majority of the Gamopetalae and Apetalae and some Polypetalae have but one integument, as do part of the monocotyledons; other angiosperms have two integuments. Sometimes all of the integument, or integuments, enters into the composition of the seed coat (Fig. 175B), but more often the seed coats are developed from a part only of the integuments and the other parts are absorbed as the seed develops. When such absorption takes place, it is the innermost or sometimes the median layers of an integument that are removed. Further, whether the integuments develop as a whole or in part, the nucellus may contribute to the seed coats, becoming distinguishable only with difficulty from the adjacent inner layers of the integument (Fig. 175D). In probably the majority of seeds, however, the nucellus is wholly absorbed and is not represented in the seed. The reduction of the tegumentary tissues goes very far in some seeds, chiefly in indehiscent fruits where only the two or three outermost layers—sometimes only the outer epidermis—of the outer integument persist in the ripe seed, as in the Umbelliferae. In some of the Compositae, extreme reduction has occurred: in the mature achene all of the integuments except a thin layer of crushed disorganized tissue (Fig. 177B) and also the inner layers of the pericarp have disappeared so that the fruit is an achene in which the seed and the fruit tissues are intimately associated and not readily separable. In the seeds of some monocotyledons, for example *Zea*, the integuments are entirely absorbed.

Where the ovule has two integuments, various conditions exist in the seed. Both integuments may be present in the seed coat—the inner, represented by all its cell layers, the outer, by all or by only the outermost two or three layers. In these seeds, the inner integument forms the important part of the seed coat; its outer part forms a protective layer (Fig. 175B)—a condition found in the Malvaceae, Tiliaceae, Violaceae, Hypericaceae, and other families.

Again, where both integuments are present in the seed, the outer is strongly developed with protective layers, and the inner, though several-layered, is rather unspecialized (Fig. 175F). Of such structure are the



seed coats of the Cruciferae, Berberidaceae, Papaveraceae, and certain lilies, irises, and aroids. In the Onagraceae, Lythraceae, Aristolochiaceae, and other families, both integuments form lignified protective layers and at least the outer layers of the nucellus contribute to the seed coats. In the Magnoliaceae, the inner integument becomes the protective seed coat with a part of the nucellus attached to it; the outer integument often becomes fleshy (Fig. 175D). Complete absorption of the inner integu-

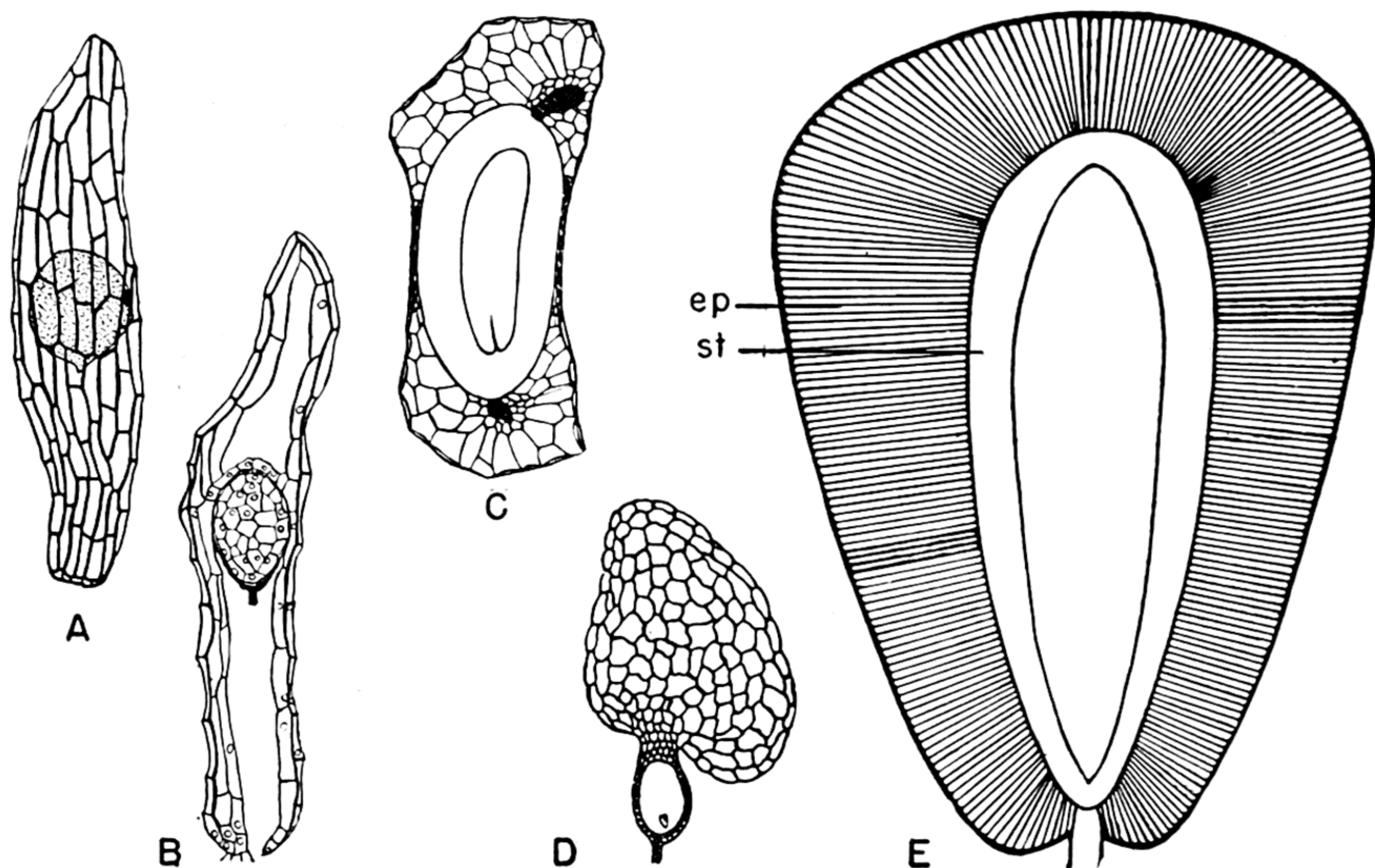


FIG. 176.—Types of seeds. *A, B, Cyripedium parviflorum*: *A*, seed showing transparent seed coat enclosing embryo (stippled) suspended in pocket of air; *B*, longitudinal section of seed showing seed coat consisting of funiculus and outer integument, shriveled inner integument forming envelope around embryo, suspended embryo a mass of undifferentiated cells. *C, Clethra alnifolia*, longitudinal section showing embryo more highly differentiated than in *B*, and integument several cells thick but not differentiated into layers; *D, Pterospora andromedea*, seed showing wing developed from integument; *E, Punica granatum*, seed showing outer integument consisting of a stony layer (*st*) and a fleshy epidermal layer (*ep*) of greatly elongated cells; the inner integument is membranous and is not shown. (*A, B*, after Carlson; *C, D*, from Netolitsky; *C*, after Peltriset; *D*, after Baillon; *E*, after Tung.)

ment and of the nucellus occurs in the Ranunculaceae, Leguminosae, and in certain lilies and amaryllises.

In ovules with one integument, only rarely does the entire structure become seed coat. A larger or smaller inner or median part is usually absorbed and the outer layers, together with the inner epidermis, form the seed coat, as in the Polemoniaceae, Plantaginaceae (Fig. 175E), Balsaminaceae, and other families. So various and obscure is the morphological nature of seed coats that in most plants this can be determined only by ontogenetic studies.



**Histological Structure.**—Seed coats show variation in histological complexity quite unrelated to their morphological nature. In some dry, indehiscent fruits, seed coats are lacking; the embryo is surrounded by

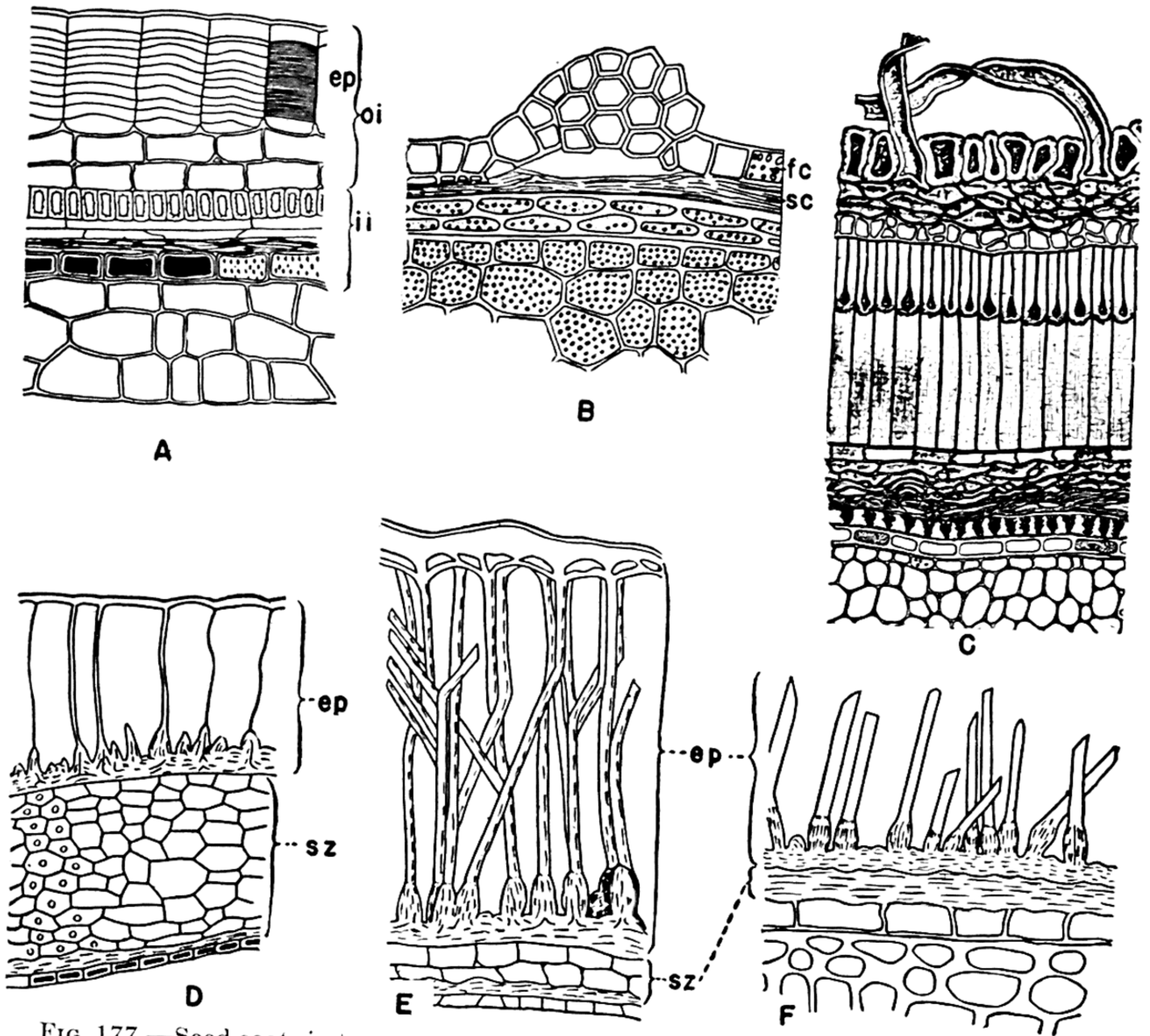


FIG. 177.—Seed coats in transverse section. A, *Linum usitatissimum*, showing stratified layers of mucilage in epidermal cells (ep), outer integument (oi) and inner integument (ii); B, *Lactuca sativa*, showing fruit coat (ovary wall) (fc), and crushed, disorganized seed coat (sc); C, *Gossypium*, showing epidermal hairs (cotton "fibers"). D–F, *Lycopersicon esculentum*, showing stages in development of seed coat: D, showing thickening of inner tangential walls of epidermal cells and beginning of thickening in bands on radial walls, numerous cells in subepidermal zone; E, showing epidermal cells much elongated, thickening of bands on radial walls greatly increased and extending over parts of outer tangential walls, subepidermal zone mostly absorbed; F, showing epidermal "hairs"—the thickened bands remaining after disintegration of outer tangential walls and thin parts of radial walls, the absorption and disorganization of the cells of the subepidermal zone resulting in a membranous layer; the seed coat consisting, therefore, of the epidermal "hairs," a non-cellular membranous layer and cellular inner layer one cell in thickness. (A, after Tschirch and Oesterle; B, after Kondo; C, after Winton; D–F after Souèges.)

ovarian tissues. Extreme simplicity is found in the seeds of orchids in which an almost undifferentiated embryo is enclosed in a flimsy, transparent sheath of thin-walled cells (Fig. 176A,B). Great complexity is



characteristic of the seed coats of certain types of seeds: very hard seeds, seeds with "ornamented" coats (Fig. 178A-E), and seeds with fleshy coats (Figs. 175D, 177D).

The seed coats of many species, for example, those of some Leguminosae and *Canna*, are highly impervious to water and gases. Such seed coats have a thick cuticle that is so impervious to water that germination is prevented unless the cuticle is ruptured. The scarification of seeds and treatment with sulfuric acid to increase the percentage of germination are based in large part upon the necessity of rupture or destruction of the cuticle to permit the entrance of water and oxygen.

In many hard seeds there is a characteristic protective layer beneath the epidermis made up of close-packed, radially placed, columnar

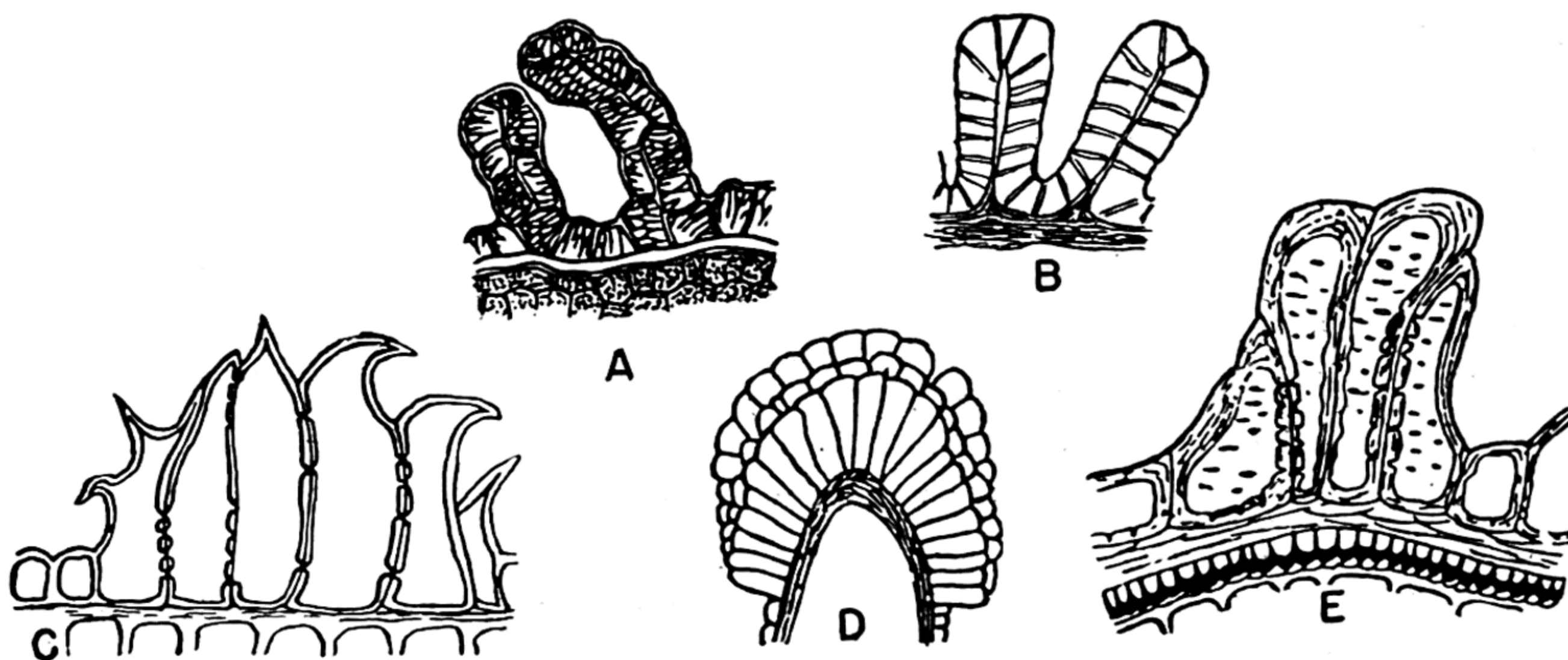


FIG. 178.—"Ornamentation" on seeds. A, *Gentiana stylophora*; B, *Wrightia Barteri*; C, *Dicliptera resupinata*; D, *Ruellia squarrosa*; E, *Delphinium*. (All from Netolitsky; A, after Guérin; B, after Wahl; C, D, after Schaffnit; E, after Mitlacher.)

cells (Fig. 175A). This layer is often called the palisade layer, and its peculiar cells are sometimes referred to as "Malpighian cells" (because first described by Malpighi). This palisade layer somewhat resembles the palisade layer of leaves but it is a sclerenchymatous layer without intercellular spaces. The walls are commonly unevenly thickened (Fig. 175C,F,G); they may be of cellulose or be heavily cutinized or lignified. They doubtless give protection against mechanical injury and against changes in water content in the seed. The palisade layer nearly always shows a "light line," a band-like region running transversely to the long axis of the cells—and hence tangentially in the seed (Fig. 175A)—where light refraction is different from that in the rest of the cells. In some species this "light line" is formed by the deposition of wax globules in the cells. Within the heavy-walled protective layer, or rarely external to it, are other layers of various thicknesses, and of many kinds of cells.



Among these are sclereids of many types; fibers; parenchyma cells of the greatest variety, both in size and shape, in content, and in nature of the wall. The successive layers are typically made up of cells of very different kinds: often the cells of adjacent layers, though similar, are differently oriented, lying with long axes at right angles to the surface in one layer and parallel with it in another, or with the long axes parallel with the long axis of the seed in one layer, and at right angles to it in the other (Fig. 175H). Cells with peculiarly and irregularly thickened walls (Fig. 175F,G), and also those of remarkable shape and unusual relation to adjacent cells are common.

The outer layers of the seed coats of some seeds are fleshy. In genera such as *Magnolia*, *Caulophyllum*, and *Ginkgo*, that have seeds exposed at maturity, the seed coats are histologically similar to the outer layers of fleshy fruits. In species in which the seeds are not exposed, the histological structure is less complex. For example, in *Punica* (pomegranate), the edible fleshy layer is derived from the epidermis, the cells of which elongate radially to many times their original diameter and become turgid (Fig. 176E). In the tomato (*Lycopersicon*), the fleshy pulp surrounding the seed is in part derived from the epidermis of the seed coat. The epidermal cells as they develop elongate radially to several times their original diameter, the inner tangential wall thickens greatly, and parallel rod-like thickenings are deposited on the thin radial walls. The enlarged cells become fleshy and turgid. When the seed is mature, the outer and the radial walls break down between the rods which then appear as hair-like projections of the seed coat (Fig. 177D,E). In the dry seed, the hair-like structures are free except at the base (Fig. 177F). The mature fleshy seed is surrounded by a fleshy, aril-like upgrowth of the placenta.

Mucilaginous seed coats are found in some genera. In the seeds of *Linum*, the radially elongate epidermal cells are filled with mucilaginous material deposited in stratified layers (Fig. 177A). When the dry seeds are moistened, the contents of the cells swell, rupturing the outer walls and cuticle.

The surface of seed coats shows structural markings of great diversity. These are characteristic and constant for a species and furnish means of identification in seed analysis. Ridges, rods, folds, hooks, and other structures are usually modifications of the epidermal cells, but subepidermal layers of the seed coat may also take part in their formation. Expansions of the seed coat consisting of thin-walled, air-filled cells form wings and other buoyant structures (Fig. 176C,D). Of special interest are the epidermal hairs ("fibers") of the seed coats of *Gossypium* (Fig. 177C).



**Vascular Bundles of Seeds.**—The bundles of seeds are confined to the raphe and the outer integument. In general the integuments of small seeds lack vascular tissue, but the presence or absence of bundles is to some extent a family character. Strands in the raphe represent the ovule supply in an adnate funiculus. Where the seed is large and the seed coat of complex structure a network of bundles may be present.

**Embryo and Endosperm.**—The embryos of different families show great diversity in stage of differentiation in the mature seed. In the orchid seed the embryo consists of relatively few undifferentiated meristematic cells with no indication of radicle, plumule, and cotyledons (Fig. 176A,B). In others, mostly large seeds, for example, those of *Persea* (avocado), the well-developed embryo has radicle, massive cotyledons, and a well-developed plumule. Vascular bundles are present in the procambium stage. Between these extremes are many intergrading forms.

In thick cotyledons that do not expand on germination the tissues are mature, consisting of rounded or polyhedral cells packed with starch or aleurone. Intercellular spaces are present. In such cotyledons the vascular system is much simplified and stomata are lacking. In cotyledons that expand on germination, the tissues are immature, but the mesophyll may be differentiated into spongy and palisade tissue. Stomata may be present in the epidermis. The vascular system in all embryos is usually in the procambium stage; only rarely are protoxylem and protophloem elements mature, as in *Castanea* and *Aesculus*.

The endosperm consists always of polyhedral parenchyma cells more or less isodiametric in shape. The walls are largely cellulose and commonly thin, but in some plants, such as the date (*Phoenix*) and the persimmon (*Diospyros*), (Fig. 21E,B), they are greatly thickened. The additional cellulose is reserve food. This very hard endosperm is commonly known as "horny" endosperm. In the large seeds of some palms, for example, *Phytelephas*, endosperm of this type finds commercial use in the manufacture of buttons. The storage materials in typical endosperm are starch, aleurone, and oils; starch and aleurone are said not to occur in the same cell.

### References

#### THE FLOWER

- ARBER, A.: Floral anatomy and its morphological interpretation, *New Phyt.*, **32**, 231–242, 1933.
- BECHTEL, A. R.: The floral anatomy of the Urticales, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **8**, 386–410, 1921.
- BONNE, G.: "Recherches sur le pédicelle et la fleur des Rosacées," Paris, 1928.
- BROOKS, R. M.: Comparative histogenesis of vegetative and floral apices in *Amygdalus communis*, with special reference to the carpel, *Hilgardia*, **13**, 249–306, 1940.



- CHESTER, G. D.: Bau und Function der Spaltöffnungen auf Blumenblättern und Antheren, *Ber. Deut. Bot. Ges.*, **15**, 420-431, 1897.
- CHUTE, H. M.: The morphology and anatomy of the achene, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **17**, 703-723, 1930.
- DOUGLAS, G. E.: Studies in the vascular anatomy of the Primulaceae, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **23**, 199-212, 1936.
- : The inferior ovary, *Bot. Rev.*, **10**, 125-186, 1944.
- EAMES, A. J.: The vascular anatomy of the flower with refutation of the theory of carpel polymorphism, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **18**, 147-188, 1931.
- GRÉGOIRE, V.: La valeur morphologique des carpels dans les Angiospermes, *Bull. Acad. Roy. Belg.*, **17**, 1286-1302, 1931.
- GUMPPENBERG, O. VON: Beiträge zur Entwicklungsgeschichte der Blumenblätter mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der Nervatur, *Bot. Arch.*, **7**, 448-491, 1924.
- HANCY, A. J.: The vascular anatomy of certain ericaceous flowers, Thesis, Cornell University, 1916.
- HENSLOW, G.: On the vascular systems of floral organs, and their importance in the interpretation of the morphology of flowers, *Jour. Linn. Soc. Bot. London*, **28**, 151-197, 1891.
- : "The Origin of Floral Structures through Insect and other Agencies," New York, 1888. (Vascular anatomy.)
- HILLER, G. H.: Untersuchungen über die Epidermis der Blütenblätter, *Jahrb. Wiss. Bot.*, **15**, 411-451, 1884.
- JACKSON, G.: The morphology of the flowers of *Rosa* and certain closely related genera, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **21**, 453-466, 1934.
- KOCH, M. F.: Studies in the anatomy and morphology of the Composite flower, I. The corolla, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **17**, 938-952, 1930.
- KRAUS, E. J., and G. S. RALSTON: The pollination of the pomaceous fruits: III. Gross vascular anatomy of the apple, *Ore. Agr. Coll. Exp. Sta. Bull.*, **138**, 1916.
- KUHN, G.: Beiträge zur Kenntnis der intraseminal Leitbündel bei den Angiospermen, *Bot. Jahrb.*, **61**, 325-379, 1928.
- MCCOY, RALPH W.: Floral organo-genesis in *Frasera carolinensis*, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **27**, 600-609, 1940.
- MANNING, W. E.: The morphology of the flowers of the Juglandaceae, II. The pistillate flowers and fruit, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **27**, 839-852, 1940.
- MULLER, L.: Grundzüge einer vergleichenden Anatomie der Blumenblätter, Nova Acta K. L.-C., *Deutsch. Akad. Naturforscher*, **59**, 1-356, 1893.
- NEWMAN, I. V.: Studies in the Australian Acacias, VI. The meristematic activity of the floral apex of *Acacia longifolia* and *Acacia suaveolens* as a histogenic study of the ontogeny of the carpel, *Proc. Linn. Soc. N.S.W.*, **61**, 56-88, 1936.
- SATINA, S., and A. F. BLAKESLEE: Periclinal chimaeras in *Datura stramonium* in relation to development of leaf and flower, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **28**, 862-871, 1941.
- SMITH, F. H., and E. C. SMITH: Anatomy of the inferior ovary of *Darbya*, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **29**, 464-471, 1942.
- and ———: Floral Anatomy of the Santalaceae and related forms, *Oregon State Monographs. Studies in Botany*, **5**, 1942.
- TILLSON, A. H.: The floral anatomy of the Kalanchoideae, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **27**, 595-600, 1940.
- TSCHSCH, K.: Der Gewebebau grüner Kelchblätter, *Oesterreich. Bot. Zeitschr.*, **88**(3), 187-199, 1939.
- VAN TIEGHEM, P.: Recherches sur la structure du pistil et sur l'anatomie comparée de la fleur, *Mém. Acad. Sci. Inst. Imp. France*, **21**, 1-262, 1875.



WILKINSON, A. M.: The floral anatomy and morphology of some species of *Cornus* and of the Caprifoliaceae, Thesis, Cornell University, 1945.

### THE FRUIT

BARBER, K. G.: Comparative histology of fruits and seeds of certain species of Cucurbitaceae, *Bot. Gaz.*, **47**, 263–310, 1909.

DU SABLON, L.: Recherches sur la déhiscence des fruits à péricarpe sec, Thesis, Paris, 1884.

FARMER, J. B.: Contributions to the morphology and physiology of pulpy fruits, *Ann. Bot.*, **3**, 393–414, 1889.

GARCIN, A. G.: Recherches sur l'histogénèse des péricarpes, Thesis, Paris, 1890.

HOUGHTALING, H. B.: A developmental analysis of size and shape in tomato fruits, *Bull. Torr. Bot. Club*, **62**, 243–252, 1935.

JULIANO, J. B.: Origin, development and nature of the stony layer of the coconut, *Phil. Jour. Sci.*, **30**, 187–197, 1926.

KRAUS, G.: Ueber den Bau trockner Pericarpium, *Jahrb. Wiss. Bot.*, **5**, 83–126, 1866.

LAMPE, P.: Zur Kenntnis des Baues und der Entwicklung saftiger Früchte, *Zeitsch. Naturwiss.*, **59**, 295–323, 1886.

LONG, E. M.: Developmental anatomy of the fruit of the Deglet Noor date, *Bot. Gaz.*, **104**, 426–436, 1943.

MACDANIELS, L. H.: The morphology of the apple and other pome fruits, *Mem. Cornell Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta.*, 230, 1940.

OKIMOTO, M. C.: Morphology and anatomy of the pineapple inflorescence and fruit, Thesis, Cornell University, 1943.

SINNOTT, E. W.: A developmental analysis of the relation between cell size and fruit size in cucurbits, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **26**, 179–189, 1939.

TUKEY, H. B., and J. O. YOUNG: Histological study of the developing fruit of the sour cherry, *Bot. Gaz.*, **100**, 723–749, 1939.

———: Gross morphology and histology of developing fruit of the apple, *Bot. Gaz.*, **104**, 3–25, 1942.

WAHL, VON, C.: Vergleichende Untersuchungen über den anatomischen Bau der geflügelten Früchte und Samen, *Bibl. Bot.*, **40**, 1–25, 1897.

WINTON, A. L.: The anatomy of edible berries, *Conn. Agr. Exp. Sta. Rept.*, **26**, 288–325, 1902.

### THE SEED

BRANDZA, M.: Développement des téguments de la graine, *Rév. Gén. Bot.*, **3**, 1–32, 105–117, 150–165, 229–240, 1891.

CARLSON, M. C.: Formation of the seed of *Cypripedium parviflorum* Salisb., *Bot. Gaz.*, **102**, 295–301, 1940.

GODFRIN, J.: Étude histologique sur les téguments seminaux des angiospermes, *Bull. Soc. Sci. Nancy*, **5**, 109–219, 1880.

———: Recherches sur l'anatomie comparée des cotylédons et de l'albumen, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 6 sér., **19**, 5–158, 1884.

GUIGNARD, L.: Recherches sur le développement de la graine et en particulier du tégument séminal, *Jour. Bot.*, **7**, 1–14, 21–34, 57–66, 97–106, 141–153, 205–214, 241–250, 282–296, 303–311, 1893.

HAUSS, H.: Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Entwicklungsgeschichte von Flügeleinrichtungen bei höheren Samen. *Bot. Arch.*, **20**, 74–108, 1927.



- JUMELLE, H.: Sur la constitution du fruit des Graminées, *Compt. Rend. Acad. Sci., Paris*, **107**, 285–287, 1888.
- KAYSER, G.: Beiträge zur Kenntnis der Entwicklungsgeschichte der Samen mit besonderer Berücksichtigung des histogenetischen Aufbaues der Samenschalen, *Jahrb. Wiss. Bot.*, **25**, 79–148, 1893.
- KONDO, M.: Über die in der Landwirtschaft Japans gebrauchten Samen, *Ber. Ohara Inst. f. Landw. Forsch.*, **1**, 399–450, 1919.
- NETOLITSKY, F.: Anatomie der Angiospermen Samen, In K. Linsbauer: "Handbuch der Pflanzenanatomie," X, 1926.
- PAMMEL, L. H.: Anatomical characters of the seed of Leguminosae, chiefly genera of Gray's Manual, *Trans. Acad. Sci. St. Louis*, **9**, 91–273, 1899.
- SCHNARF, K.: Anatomie der Gymnospermen Samen, In K. Linsbauer: "Handbuch der Pflanzenanatomie," 1937.
- SOUÈGES, M. R.: Développement et structure du tégument séminal chez les Solanacées, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 9 sér., **6**, 1–124, 1907.
- TSCHIRCH, A., and O. OESTERLE: "Anatomischer Atlas der Pharmakognosie und Nahrungsmittelkunde," Leipzig, 1900.
- TUNG, C.: Development and vascular anatomy of the flower of *Punica granatum* L., *Bull. Chinese Bot. Soc.*, **1**, 108–128, 1935.
- WINTON, A. L.: The anatomy of certain oil seeds with especial reference to the microscopic examination of cattle foods, *Conn. Agr. Exp. Sta. Rpt.*, **27**, 175–198, 1903.

S-M-S HAF:



## CHAPTER XIV

### ECOLOGICAL ANATOMY

In the foregoing chapters, emphasis has been placed upon normal plant structure as it develops in regions of average or optimum water supply. Such an environment is called *mesophytic* and is that which obtains generally in the important agricultural districts of the temperate zone and also in parts of the tropics, especially at median altitudes. The plants that live in this environment are known as *mesophytes*, and include the majority of the best known wild and cultivated plants of temperate regions.

There are also many plants living under extremes of available water supply. There is an extensive flora of vascular plants, known as *hydrophytes*, living on the surface of bodies of water or submersed at various depths down to those where diminished light intensity and other conditions become limiting factors for existence of plants of this type. Much greater in number of species and more diversified in structural complexity is the great group of plants that live in regions where the supply of available water is deficient, that is, in a so-called *xerophytic* environment. This group, known as *xerophytes*, includes species from many families in no way closely related phylogenetically, which, in this environment, have come to resemble each other more or less closely in vegetative structure. Between the extreme xerophytes and the hydrophytes, all gradations in form and all degrees of structural variation occur in plants whose natural habitat is intermediate between mesophytic and xerophytic on the one hand and mesophytic and hydrophytic on the other.

**Types of Xerophytic Environment.**—The structural modifications common to xerophytes occur under many different environmental conditions. The most common of these is that found in deserts or semiarid places where there is a deficiency of rainfall during either a large part or all of the year. Here are found many plants, not typically xerophytic in structure, that grow only during a short rainy season and pass the dry season as seeds, or as dormant bulbs, corms, or roots beneath the surface of the ground. In such locations, with the exception of extreme deserts where no higher plants can grow, there are also a considerable number of species which maintain stems and leaves, or only stems, above ground



during the whole year. In addition to these habitats, which are characterized by actual lack of water, are those environments where water is apparently abundant, but for some reason is physiologically unavailable to the plant. Thus there is recognized a group of plants, known as *halophytes*, which grow in salt marshes or in certain types of alkaline soil that are only slightly toxic. These plants, although frequently standing in water, have elaborate structural modifications that prevent water loss, much like those found in plants of the desert flora. The water, though present, is of such high osmotic concentration that it cannot be readily absorbed by the plant; a somewhat similar condition is found in the peat bogs of the colder temperate and the subarctic regions where the water is not absorbed, not because its concentration is osmotically too high, but probably because of a toxic effect upon the roots of the plant which hinders their development or because of the very low temperature of the soil.

Another set of physiologically xerophytic conditions is that found in regions where there is no actual lack of water, but which are cold for a part of the year. Here low temperatures greatly cut down the rate of absorption by the roots and reduce conduction generally, so that even if transpiration is also reduced, there is a physiological shortage of water. This situation is more extreme where the soil freezes to a considerable depth. 2. Plants that hold their leaves under such conditions—for example, the many species of needle-leaved gymnosperms which are generally distributed in the temperate and subarctic zones—show typical xerophytic structure.

Exposure to persistent winds of high velocity and to intense light and heat also produce xerophytic conditions. Many xerophytic situations are the result of a combination of the environmental factors described 3. above; in a desert situation, lack of moisture, both in soil and atmosphere, intense light and heat, and winds of high velocity may be operative.

**Xerophytes.**—Xerophytes differ from mesophytes both physiologically and structurally. In some plants the normal mesophytic organs and tissues are not changed in structure, but have become physiologically more effective, for example, plants growing in dry situations, such as the olive tree, develop an extraordinarily large and deeply penetrating root system capable of efficient absorption. Other examples of this kind of modification are those salt-marsh plants that have a higher osmotic concentration within the plant than is found in common mesophytes; this concentration makes possible the absorption of water from the salt-marsh soil. With this high osmotic concentration is coupled the ability of these plant cells to resist the toxic action of the salt solution, which would undoubtedly be injurious to many other plants with normal osmotic



concentration. Along with physiological, are also commonly found structural modifications that reduce the loss of absorbed water. Some of the specialized structures are highly complex and may involve nearly all of the tissues of the plant.

*Lignification and Cutinization.*—Heavy cuticularization and extreme cutinization of the epidermis and even of subepidermal cells are common in xerophytes. All gradations are found in the thickness of the cuticle from a thickness only slightly greater than normal, like that of plants

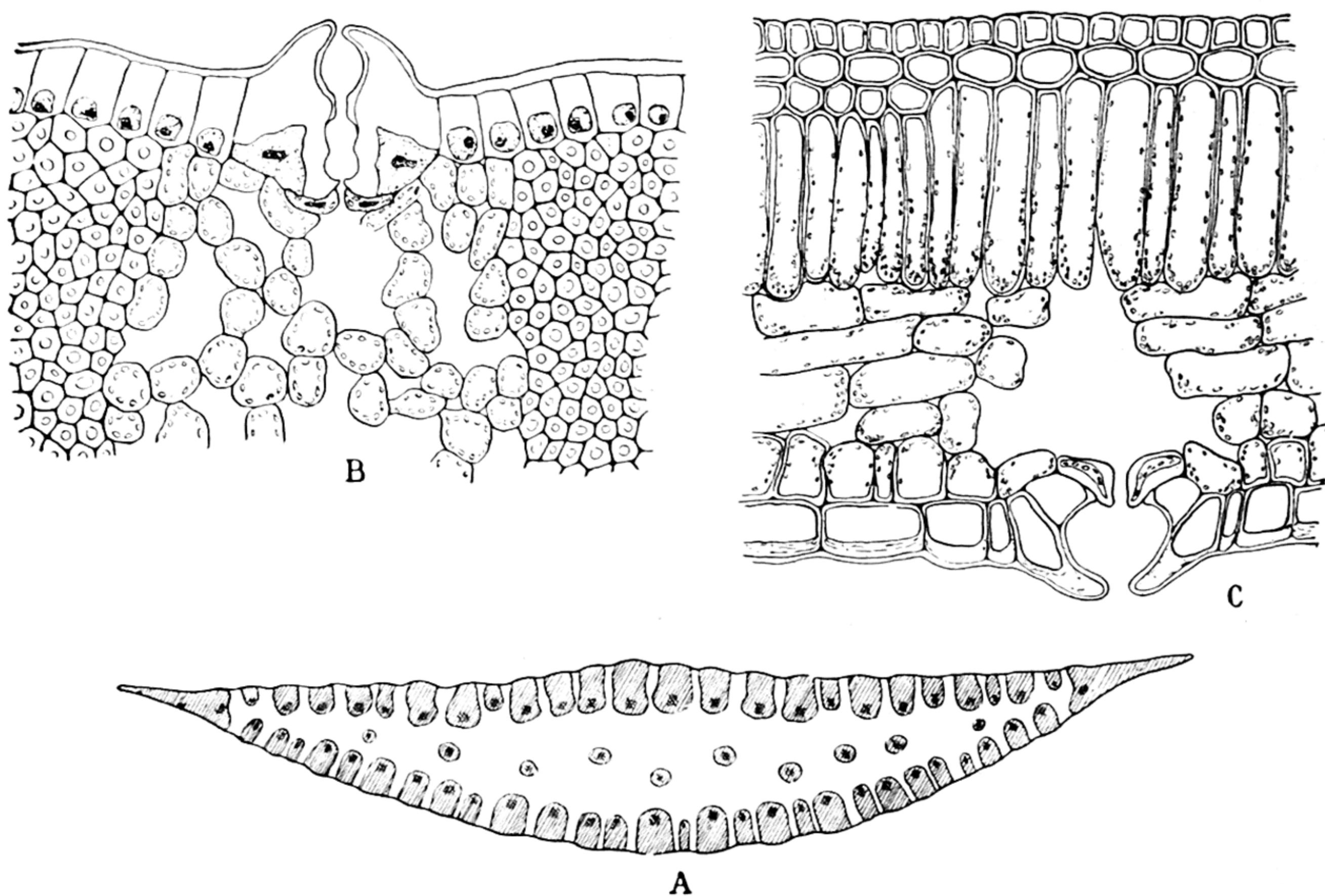


FIG. 179.—Structure of xerophytic leaves. A, diagram of cross section, *Dasylirion serratifolium*, sclerenchyma singly cross-hatched, vascular tissue doubly cross-hatched; B, detail of small marginal portion; C, cross section, *Cycas*, showing lignified hypodermis and partly lignified palisade tissue.

of semixerophytic habitats, to the elaborate thickenings of extreme xerophytes in which the cuticle may be as thick as, or thicker than, the diameter of the epidermal cells. In addition to increased thickness of the cuticle, the walls of the epidermal cells themselves are frequently cutinized, and sometimes also those of the underlying cells. Along with well-developed cutinized layers there are frequently found different degrees of lignification of the epidermal and subepidermal cells. In some organs, for example, the leaves of *Cycas*, lignification may extend even to parts of the palisade parenchyma cells (Fig. 179C). Similar to cuticularization is the formation of wax as a covering on the epidermis. Many plants secrete wax externally in small amounts, but certain



genera, for example, *Copernicia* and *Ceroxylon*, the sources of carnauba wax, produce this substance in quantities sufficient to be commercially valuable. (Wax is sometimes produced by plants not growing under xerophytic conditions.)

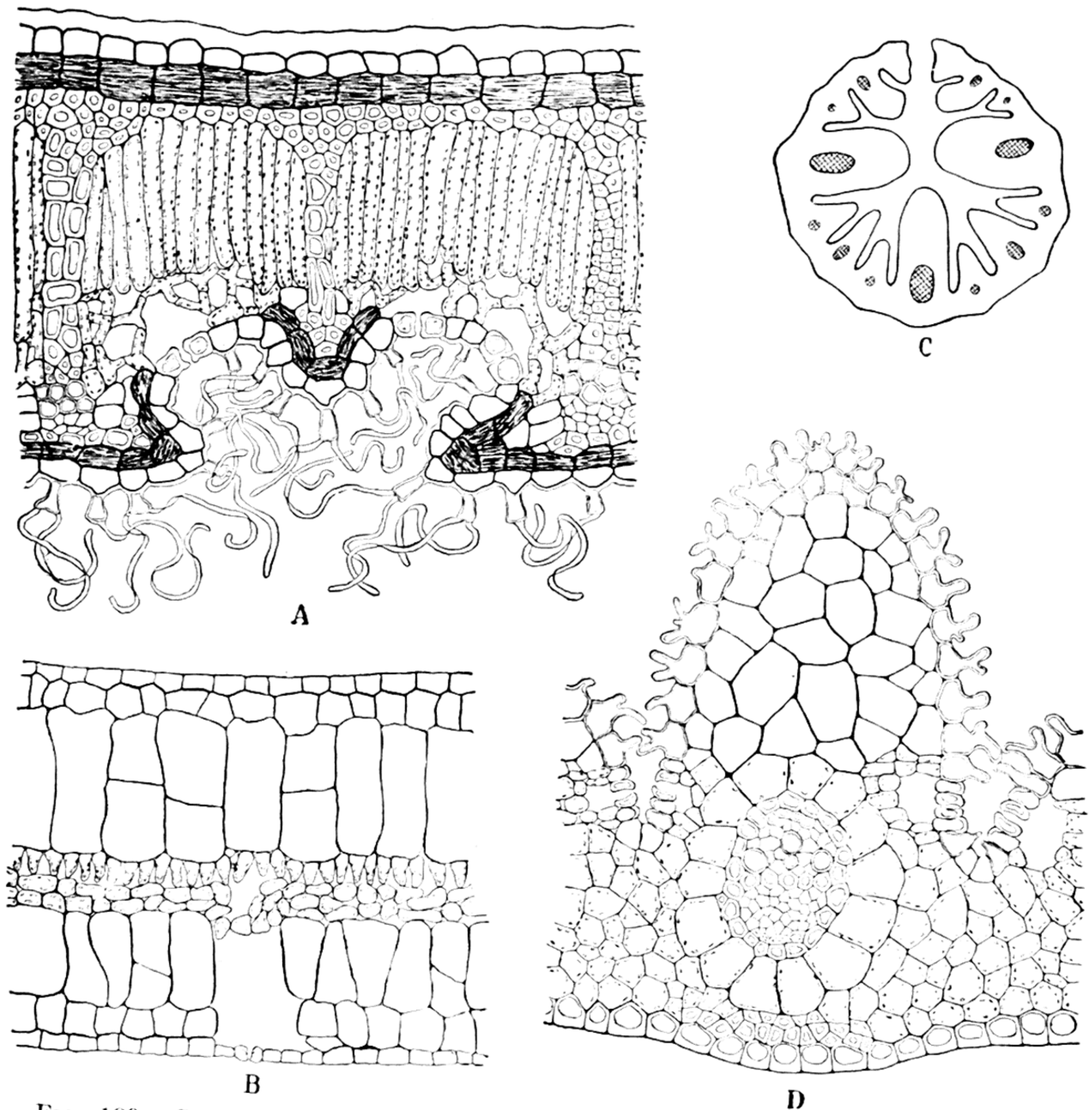


FIG. 180.—Structure of xerophytic leaves. A, a sclerophyllous type, *Banksia*; B, a malacophyllous type, *Begonia*; C, D, a rolling type, *Spartina*. A, an extreme type with pockets enclosed in sclerenchyma, stomata in hair-filled pockets, spongy parenchyma sparse; B, mesophyll thin, protected by layers of mucilage-containing cells, stomata unprotected; C, diagram of cross section of leaf in rolled condition; D, detail of portion of same; stomata in furrows nearly closed by interlocking epidermal cells.

In addition to a cutinized epidermis, many xerophytic plants possess one to several layers of cells immediately beneath the epidermis that form a *hypodermis* (Figs. 179C, 182B,D). Its cells are often much like the epidermal cells in structure and are sometimes derived in ontogeny



from the young epidermis, but in most plants, the hypodermis of leaves is morphologically mesophyll and may be in the form of a layer of sclereids or a sheet of fibrous tissue. The hypodermis of stems belongs to the outer cortex. The hypodermis of stems and leaves may be cutinized to some extent or, more frequently, lignified. Gums and tannins are common in this layer (Fig. 180A).

*Sclerenchyma*.—In addition to the hypodermis, xerophytes generally have a larger proportion of sclerenchyma in their leaf structure than is found normally in mesophytes. This tissue, as masses either of fibers or sclereids, is usually arranged in more or less regular layers between the mesophyll of the leaf and the epidermis or hypodermis. In some plants, as in *Banksia* (Fig. 180A), there is a continuous, rather thin sheet of sclerenchyma between the hypodermis and the mesophyll. In other forms, for example, in *Dasylirion* (Fig. 179A,B), there are heavy, parallel strands of fibers below the epidermis. These strands cover the mesophyll except for small openings leading from the stomata to the interior of the leaf. Such sclerenchyma layers prevent water loss as well as aid in the support of the organ, and may also act as a partial screen against intense light. Xerophytes that have increased cutinization and sclerification of the leaves are commonly called *sclerophyllous*.

*Hairs*.—The modifications so far described prevent water loss from the plant by the formation of layers which are themselves more or less impervious to water. Moreover, the cutting down of the circulation of air over the leaf surface prevents rapid evaporation through the stomata. In many plants, especially those of alpine regions exposed to strong winds, a covering of matted epidermal hairs on the under side of the leaves, or wherever stomata are abundant prevents water loss. Hairs may also be abundant over the entire aerial part of the plant. Hairs form dead-air spaces next to the epidermis where air remains at a relative humidity approaching that on the inside of the leaf. Xerophytes that have a hairy covering on the leaves and stems are known as *trichophyllous*.

*Rolling of Leaves*.—The leaves of some xerophytes, of which the xerophytic grasses are the outstanding example, roll tightly under dry conditions. In such leaves the stomata are located on the upper or ventral surface only, so that when the edges of the leaf roll inward until the edges touch or overlap, the stomata are effectively shut away from the outside air. An extreme example of this kind is seen in *Spartina*, a salt-marsh grass, in which the tight upward folding of the leaf and also the sheltered location of the stomata in furrows (Fig. 180C,D) greatly reduce air movement over stomatal areas. As described in Chap. XII, in the leaves of many grasses special motor cells on the upper surface form a rolling device. In the xerophytic grasses, these cells are par-



ticularly well developed. The linear leaves of other plants, for example, species of *Dasyllirion*, and those of some broad-leaved genera, such as *Rhododendron*, have leaves that fold or roll when the water supply is deficient.

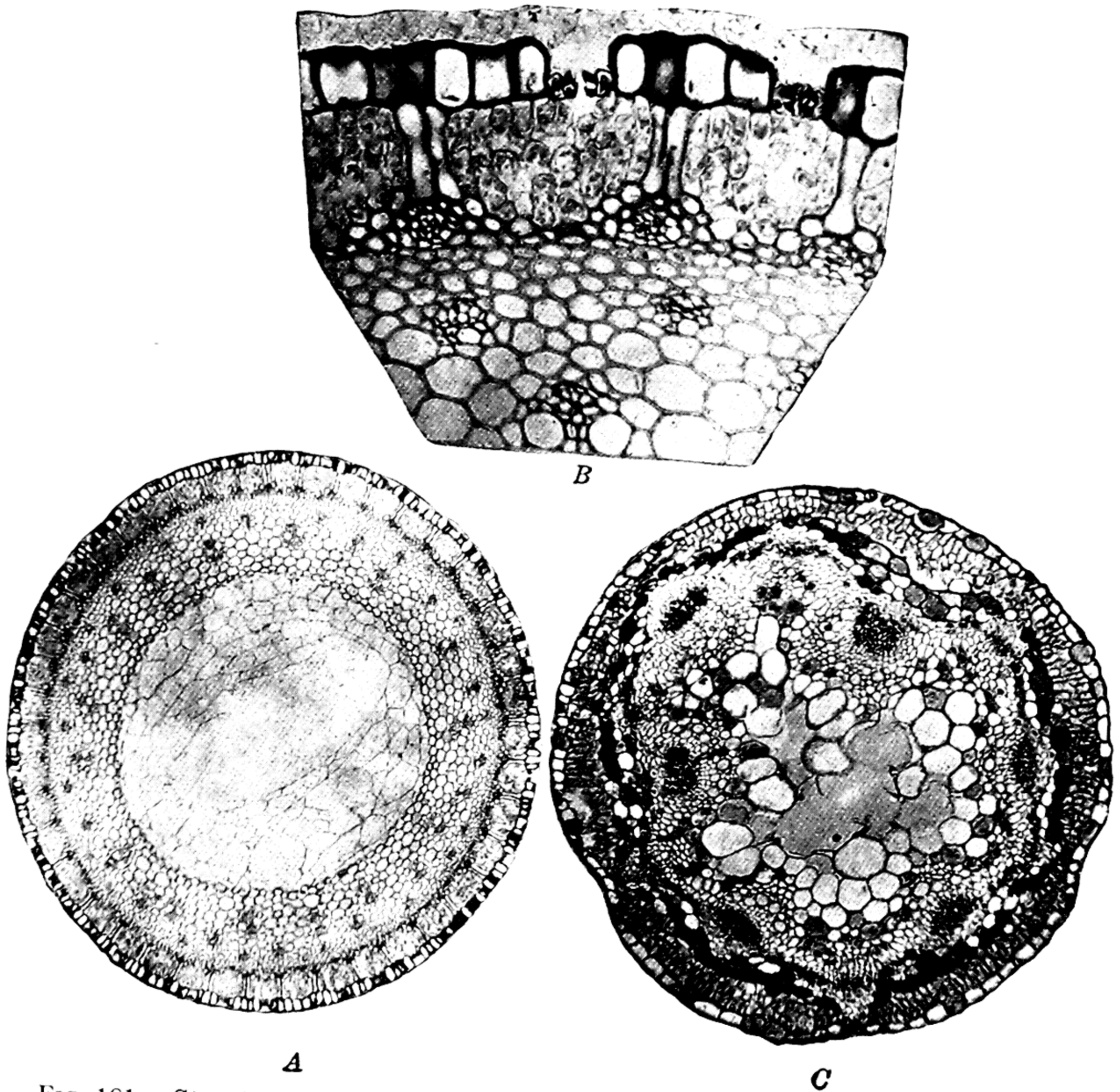


FIG. 181.—Structure of stems of microphyllous xerophytes. *A, B, Leptocarpus*, monocotyledon: *A*, cross section of stem; *B*, small portion of *A*, showing specialized cortical photosynthetic tissue, sunken stomata, lignified epidermis, the leaves, nonfunctioning scales, appearing in section outside epidermis in *B*; *C, Polygonella*, cross section of stem, showing similar condition in dicotyledon.

*Stomatal Structure.*—Stomatal openings are essential for the intake of carbon dioxide and oxygen and possibly for the passage inward and outward of other gases. When the stomata are open, water escapes even when water loss is harmful to the plant as a whole. For this reason the reduction of transpiration is of the utmost importance in xerophytes, and reduction in number of stomata—either by reduction of leaf surface or of stomatal number per unit area—and elaborate modification of the



structure of the stomatal apparatus both reduce transpiration. Water loss in xerophytes is reduced not only by hairy coverings and by the rolling or folding of leaves, but also by the position of the stomata sunken below the level of the other epidermal cells. In these stomata the accessory cells may be of such shape and arrangement that they

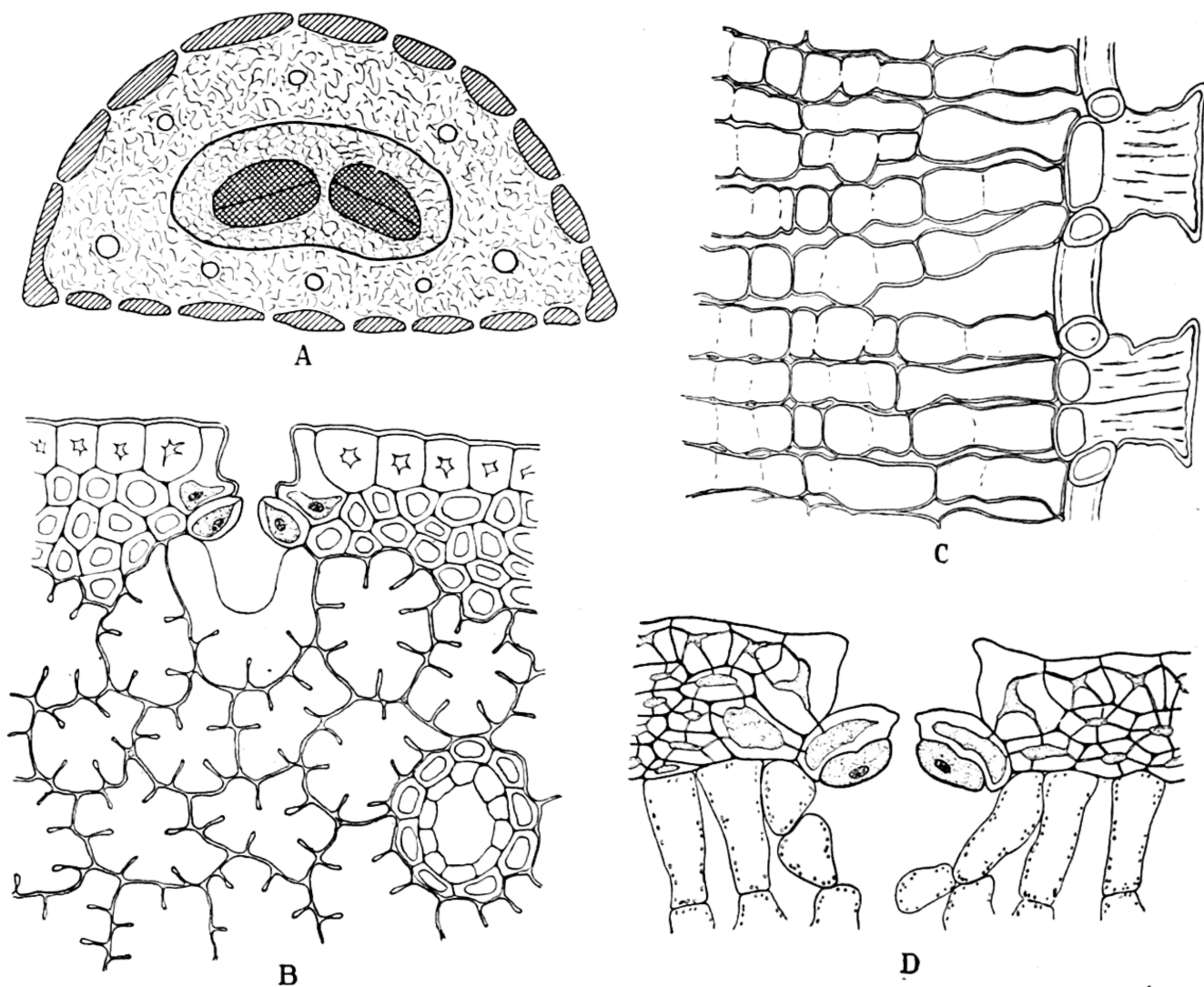


FIG. 182.—Structure of microphyllous xerophytes. A, B, C, leaf of *Pinus nigra*, diagram of cross section, detail of small part of same, and of small part of longitudinal section through stomatal furrow, respectively. A, the two vascular bundles, doubly cross-hatched, surrounded by parenchyma sheath and endodermis, the mesophyll with resin canals, protected by external sclerenchyma, singly cross-hatched, broken by stomatal furrows; B, C, the mesophyll uniform, dense, with infolded cell walls; D, cross section through stomatal region in stem, *Equisetum hyemale*, showing cortical photosynthetic tissue, sunken stoma, heavily silicified epidermis and hypodermis.

form one or more outer chambers connected by narrow openings with the stoma itself. In this way the opening between the guard cells is shut off from the outside air with its low humidity. Stomata of this type are common in extreme xerophytes, for example, in *Pinus* (Fig. 182B,C), *Equisetum* (Fig. 182D), *Cycas* (Fig. 179C), and *Leptocarpus* (Fig. 181B). The walls of the accessory cells of such stomata are ordinarily very thick and heavily lignified or cutinized, as are frequently also parts of the walls



of the guard cells. Sunken stomata, as in *Casuarina* and *Banksia* (Fig. 180A), may have the further protection of hairs.

*Reduced Leaf Surface.*—*Microphyllous* plants form one of the larger groups of xerophytes. In this group the reduction of the leaf surface partly prevents water loss because the total exposed surface of the plant body is relatively small as compared with that of normal mesophytes. Abundant illustrations of this type of xerophyte occur in all groups of plants, for example, *Equisetum*, *Pinus*, *Casuarina*, *Asparagus*, the cacti, *Polygonella* (Fig. 181C). In these forms the leaves, if normal in function, are very small; often they are wanting in the mature plant or persist as small scales or bracts which for the most part do not function as leaves. In some genera, for example, *Equisetum*, *Leptocarpus*, and *Polygonella*, photosynthesis takes place in the stem where photosynthetic tissues are well developed. The reduction of leaf surface is commonly accompanied by increased sclerenchyma, sunken stomata, and water storage.

*Needle Leaves of the Gymnosperms.*—The needle leaves of the gymnosperms are an important microphyllous type. Many species of *Pinus*, *Picea*, and other coniferous genera are exposed to xerophytic conditions only during the winter when low soil and air temperatures prevent water absorption and conduction and do not prevent water loss from the leaves. In the leaves of these plants, in addition to reduced leaf surface there are heavy cutinization and sunken stomata. A characteristic needle leaf is the leaf of *Pinus* (Fig. 182A–C). In this leaf the vascular tissue consists of two collateral bundles each made up of about equal amounts of xylem and phloem, which are largely secondary in origin. Immediately surrounding the vascular tissues is a zone of so-called “transfusion” tissue (Chap. IV) limited by a well-defined endodermis. Some of the cells of the transfusion tissue, which is in the pericyclic position, show bordered pits even though the tissue has otherwise the appearance of parenchyma. Exterior to the endodermis is the photosynthetic tissue, which is made up of a special type of mesophyll cells. In these cells the inward projections of the wall greatly increase the wall surface along which the chloroplasts are distributed. The outer walls of the epidermal cells are cutinized, and the cutinization extends along the middle lamellae between and around the cells. The wall is thickened to such an extent that the lumen of the cells is nearly occluded. Beneath the epidermis is a well-developed hypodermis several layers thick, consisting of elongate sclerenchyma cells extending parallel with the long axis of the leaf. The stomata are somewhat sunken and arranged in definite longitudinal rows. Their structure as seen in transverse and longitudinal sections of the leaf is shown in Fig. 182B, C. The needle leaves of other gymnosperms,



though differing from those of *Pinus* are for the most part similar in general features.

**Fleshy Xerophytes.**—A fourth large group of xerophytes, those possessing fleshy leaves or stems, are described as *malacophyllous*. In these plants, tissues that store water and mucilaginous substances are prominent. In leaves these tissues are located beneath the upper or the lower epidermis, upon both sides of the leaf, or, in extreme types, on both sides of the leaf and in the center. The storage cells are usually large and often thin-walled, as in *Begonia* (Fig. 180B). Frequently, the walls are reinforced in a manner that prevents collapse when turgor is reduced. Such storage tissue apparently may actually serve as a source of reserve water during drought, or may screen the underlying tissues from excessive light. In some species the thickened leaves are terete with the vascular bundles arranged in a stele-like cylinder. The mesophyll, consisting frequently of a large proportion of palisade tissue, is more compact than in mesophytes, and the amount of photosynthetic tissues is greater relative to the amount of leaf surface exposed. The leaf surface is, therefore, proportionately reduced. Water-storage tissue is abundant in many microphyllous xerophytes, especially the cacti and plants of similar habit, and some salt-marsh genera, such as *Salicornia*.

**Epiphytes.**—The structure of epiphytes varies with the environment. Many are xerophytic in their general structure, for example, *Tillandsia* and many orchids; the former has a hairy covering and the latter heavily cutinized epidermis and relatively small leaf surface. The root system of epiphytes may consist, in part, of holdfasts, which anchor the plant; in part, of absorbing roots, which are in contact with the substratum, and in some genera, of aerial roots. Some epiphytes live in habitats that are always moist and have no xerophytic structure.

✓ **Hydrophytes.**—The number of species of vascular plants that grow submersed in water, or floating, is much smaller than the number of xerophytes and they show much less variety in structure than xerophytes; the uniformity of aquatic environments is in contrast with the variety of xerophytic environments. The factors affecting aquatic plants are chiefly those of temperature, osmotic concentration, and toxicity—the last two dependent upon the amount and the nature of the substances in solution. The structural characteristics in aquatic plants are mainly those of reduction of the protecting, supporting, and conducting tissues, and the presence of air chambers. (The effectiveness of xerophytic structure against drying out can be seen when a xerophyte, such as *Sedum*, and a hydrophyte, such as *Potamogeton*, are exposed to drying conditions; the former will remain alive for many days, whereas the latter will dry out in a very few hours.)



*Epidermis in Hydrophytes.*—The difference in the structure and function of the epidermis in hydrophytes as compared with that of plants in an aerial habitat is outstanding. In aquatics, the epidermis is not protective but absorbs gases and nutrients directly from the water. This layer in

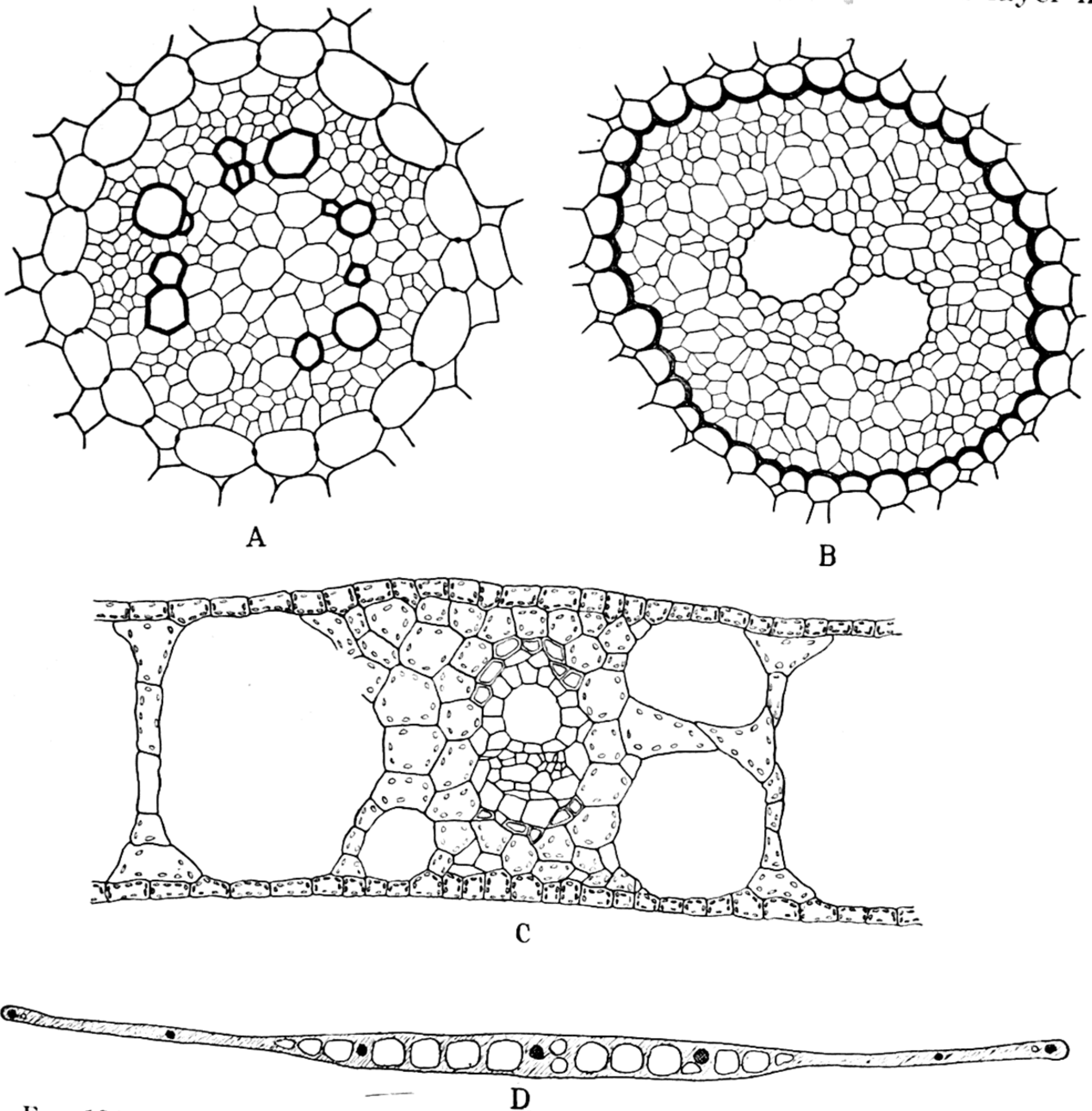


FIG. 183.—Structure of hydrophytes. A, B, cross section of stele of stems, *Elatine Alsinastrum* and *Potamogeton pectinatus*, respectively: A, xylem cylinder greatly reduced, phloem cylinder complete; B, xylem lacking, its position occupied by lacunae, phloem well developed and surrounding the lacunae, inner wall of endodermis much thickened. C, D, cross sections of submersed leaf of *Potamogeton epihydrus*: D, diagram, showing air chambers and bundles; C, detail of central portion of D, showing reduced bundle with the xylem lacking, sclerenchyma reduced, all other cells thin-walled, epidermis with chloroplasts, stomata lacking. (A, B, after Schenck.)

the typical hydrophyte has an extremely thin cuticle, and the thin cellulose walls permit ready absorption from the surrounding water. Commonly in aquatics, the epidermis contains chloroplasts and may thus form a considerable part of the photosynthetic tissue, especially



where the leaves are very thin. Stomata are wanting in submersed hydrophytes (though sometimes vestigial); the gaseous interchange takes place directly through the cell walls. The floating leaves of aquatic plants have abundant stomata on the upper surface.

*Dissected Leaves.*—In many species of aquatic plants the submersed leaves are finely divided so that there is, proportionately, a much increased leaf surface in contact with the water. The slender terete segments of such leaves permit close contact between photosynthetic tissues and the water. Such genera as *Myriophyllum* and *Utricularia* are examples of aquatics with divided leaves of this type. Some species with divided, submersed leaves have floating or aerial leaves which are entire, toothed, or lobed.

*Air Chambers.*—Chambers and passages filled with gases are common in the leaves and stems of submersed plants. Water-storage cavities are structurally single cells, but air chambers are large, usually regular, intercellular spaces extending through the leaf and often for long distances through the stem. Good examples of this type of structure are found in the leaves of *Potamogeton* (Fig. 183D,C) and *Pontederia* (Fig. 184A). Such spaces are usually separated by partitions of photosynthetic tissue only one or two cells thick. The chambers provide a sort of internal atmosphere for the plant. In these spaces the oxygen given off in photosynthesis is apparently stored and used again in respiration, and the carbon dioxide from respiration is held and used in photosynthesis. The cross partitions of air passages, known as diaphragms, perhaps prevent flooding. The diaphragms are perforated with minute openings (Fig. 184B) through which gases but not water may supposedly pass. Air chambers also give buoyancy to the organs in which they occur. Another type of specialized tissue frequent in aquatic plants that gives buoyancy to the plant parts on which it occurs is *aerenchyma*. It is characteristic of species of *Decodon* and *Lythrum*, for example. Structurally, it is a very delicate tissue in which thin partitions enclose air spaces (Fig. 184C). Aerenchyma is phellem formed by a typical phellogen of epidermal or cortical origin. The phellem cells are small and thin-walled, and a very delicate tissue is built up as the young phellem cells mature. At regular intervals individual cells of each layer elongate greatly in the radial direction while the other cells of this layer remain small. The elongation of these cells pushes outward all the cells of the last-formed layer and forms many elongate air chambers that lie parallel with the plant axis on which they are borne. The radially elongated cells form the radial walls of the chambers and the nonelongate cells which have become separated from the adjacent tangential rows of cells, the tangential walls. In a physiological sense, the term “aerenchyma”



is applied to any tissue with many large intercellular spaces. Such tissues may be morphologically a part of the cortex or pith, and hence quite distinct from the typical aerenchyma described above which is of secondary origin.

*Absence of Sclerenchyma.*—Submersed plants usually have few or no sclerenchymatous tissues and cells; the water itself supports the plant

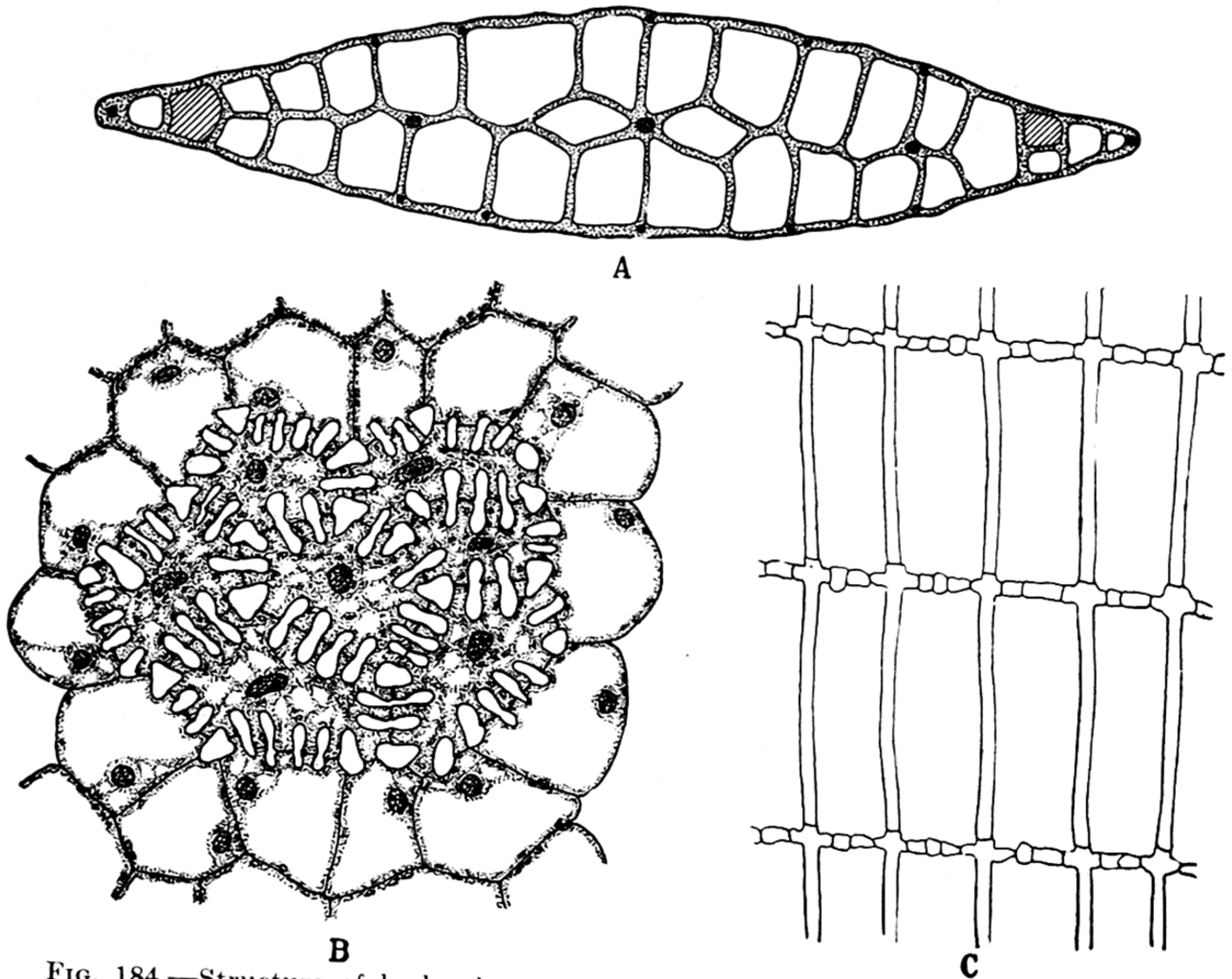


FIG. 184.—Structure of hydrophytes. A, B, *Pontederia cordata*: A, cross section of submersed leaf, showing air chambers and reduced vascular bundles (doubly cross-hatched), diaphragms in air chambers singly cross-hatched. B, diaphragm in detail showing perforations (unshaded). C, aerenchyma in *Decodon*, cross section, showing air spaces formed by elongation of certain cells of each phellem layer.

and protects it in part from injury. Density of tissues, thick walls, and in some plants collenchyma, give some rigidity, but submersed plants, especially the leaves and smaller stems, are usually flaccid and collapse when removed from the water. Sclerenchyma strands occasionally occur, especially along the margins of leaves; here they apparently increase tensile strength.

*Reduction of Vascular and Absorbing Tissues.*—An aquatic plant is, in reality, submersed in or floating upon a nutrient solution. Those structures that in land plants absorb mineral nutrients and water from the



soil and conduct these substances through the plant are greatly reduced or absent in aquatic plants. The root system is often greatly reduced, functioning chiefly as holdfasts or anchors, and a considerable part of the absorption takes place through the leaves and stems. All degrees of reduction of the root system are found. Even where reduction of roots is not extensive, root hairs are usually lacking, and the roots probably do not absorb water to any extent. In the vascular tissues, the xylem shows the greatest reduction and in many species consists of only a few elements, even in the stele and main vascular bundles (Fig. 183A). Less commonly in the stele and large bundles, and frequently in the small

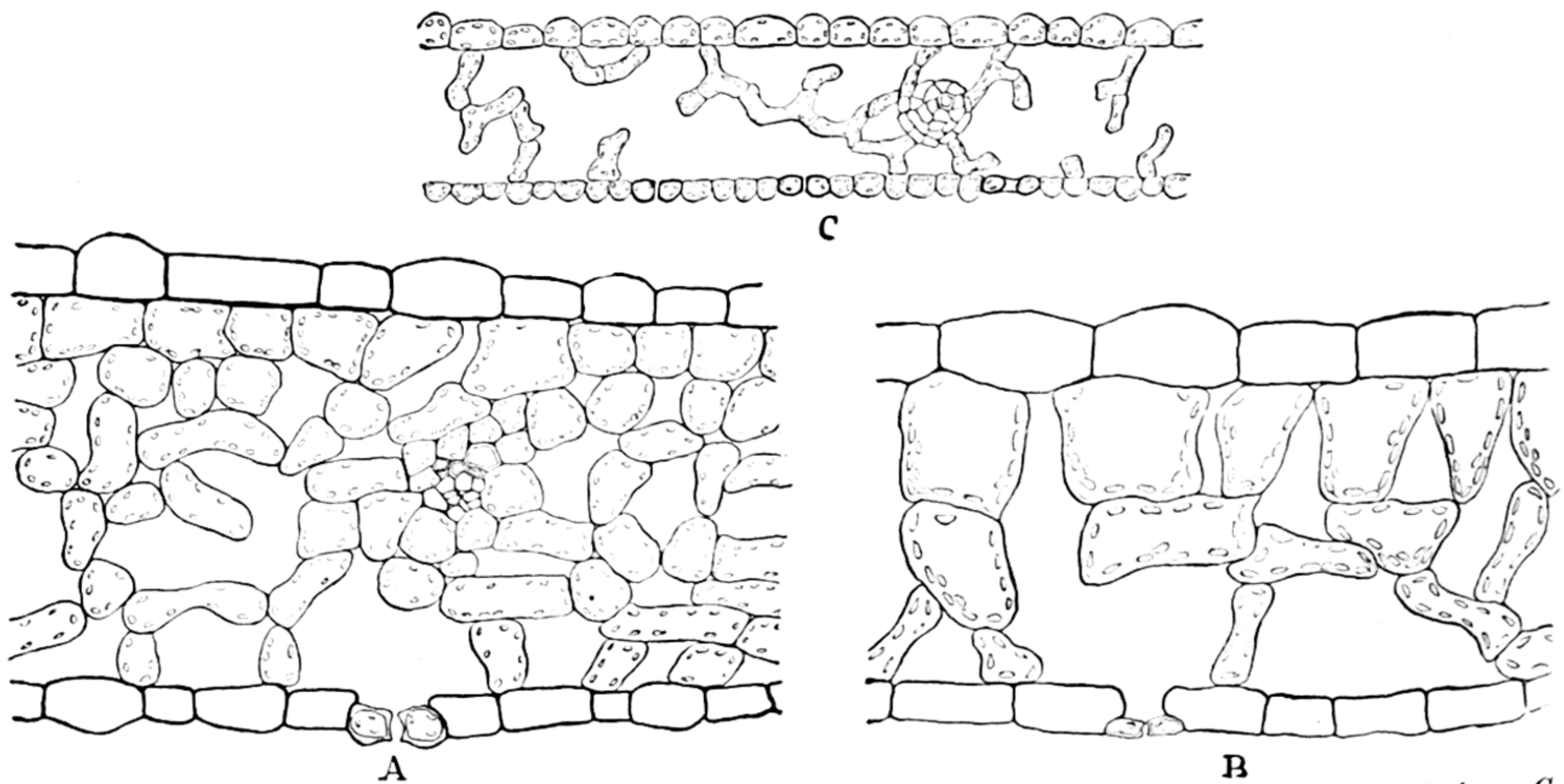


FIG. 185.—Structure of shade leaves. A, *Jeffersonia diphylla*; B, *Circaea alpina*; C, *Cryptogramma Stelleri*. Showing mesophyll loose, palisade layer weak or lacking, and epidermis weakly cutinized—C, extreme form, suggesting hydrophytic condition, with chloroplasts in epidermis.

bundles, xylem elements are lacking. In these plants there is usually a well-defined xylem lacuna in the position of the xylem (Fig. 183B,C). Such spaces resemble typical air-chambers. The phloem of aquatics, though reduced in amount as compared with that of mesophytes, is in most species fairly well developed as compared with the xylem. It resembles the phloem of reduced herbaceous plants, in that the sieve tubes are smaller than those of the woody plants. These reduced bundles are illustrated in the leaf of *Potamogeton* (Fig. 183C,D). In aquatics an endodermis is commonly present, though often weakly developed.

**Shade Leaves.**—The leaves of deeply shaded habitats have weakly developed palisade layers. This type of leaf structure is found in many mesophytic plants such as low-growing woodland plants, for example, *Jeffersonia* (Fig. 185A). The more extreme plant types in such habitats, such as *Cryptogramma* (Fig. 185C), a fern of moist, shaded cliffs, lack



palisade layers and may possess an epidermis that contains chloroplasts and becomes a part of the photosynthetic tissue. Hydathodes, where water is exuded, are frequently found in plants growing in a saturated atmosphere.

**Parasites.**—In parasitic, saprophytic, and insectivorous vascular plants in which the plant is dependent, wholly or in part, upon other organisms, there are prominent structural modifications. In parasitic vascular plants there are commonly no roots except in the seedling stage before connection with the host is made. Such plants as *Cuscuta* and *Conopholis* are familiar examples in which, early in the life of the seedling, the parasite establishes direct connection by means of its haustoria with the conducting system of the host. In the region of this connection, the xylem and phloem of the parasite join directly with the same tissues of the host, supplying the parasite with water, mineral nutrients, and elaborated plant foods. The xylem and phloem of the parasite come in direct contact with the xylem and phloem of the host through a dissolution of the outer tissues of the host by enzymes secreted by the parasite at the points of contact where haustoria are formed (Fig. 186B). New secondary vascular tissues are then formed by the parasite, and these continue the union with the newly formed tissues of the host.

In true parasites, all photosynthetic tissues are greatly reduced, exist as vestigial structures, or are wanting. In such plants as *Cuscuta* and *Arceuthobium*, the leaves are reduced to scales, and chlorophyll is usually absent throughout the plant. *Cuscuta* may form a large number of host connections. Other plants, for example, *Conopholis* and *Orobanche*, make only one host connection but penetrate deeply into the root of the host. In such species the parasite may form a flowering axis only. Besides these complete parasites, which depend wholly upon the host for food and water, there are many so-called "half-parasites," which, although connected directly with the vascular tissues of the host, apparently manufacture some part of their own food supply. The mistletoes, *Viscum* and *Phoradendron*, are familiar examples. Here water and mineral nutrients are obtained entirely from the host. Carbohydrates are probably, at least in part, formed by the parasite. The vascular tissues of parasites are usually much reduced. Sclerenchyma often supplies nearly all the support of the stems.

"**Saprophytes.**"—The term *saprophytes*, as commonly applied to vascular plants, refers to a group of chlorophyll-lacking forms that have been said to secure their food supply from decaying organic matter, much as do many fungi. Many and probably all such plants are associated more or less closely with fungi in their underground parts. The method by which such plants obtain food materials is apparently bound



up in some way, not well understood, with the physiological activities of these fungi. But clearly such plants are not strictly saprophytes—they are, to a certain extent, at least, symbiotic with or parasitic upon the lower forms, or are associated in nutrition with them. It is undesirable to call such plants “saprophytes” until their methods of nutrition are fully understood. Plants of this type are usually greatly reduced in structure—the leaves are scale-like and the stems are reduced largely to inflorescence axes. Internally, there is also great reduction and simplification. The xylem and the phloem are small in amount and the cells of

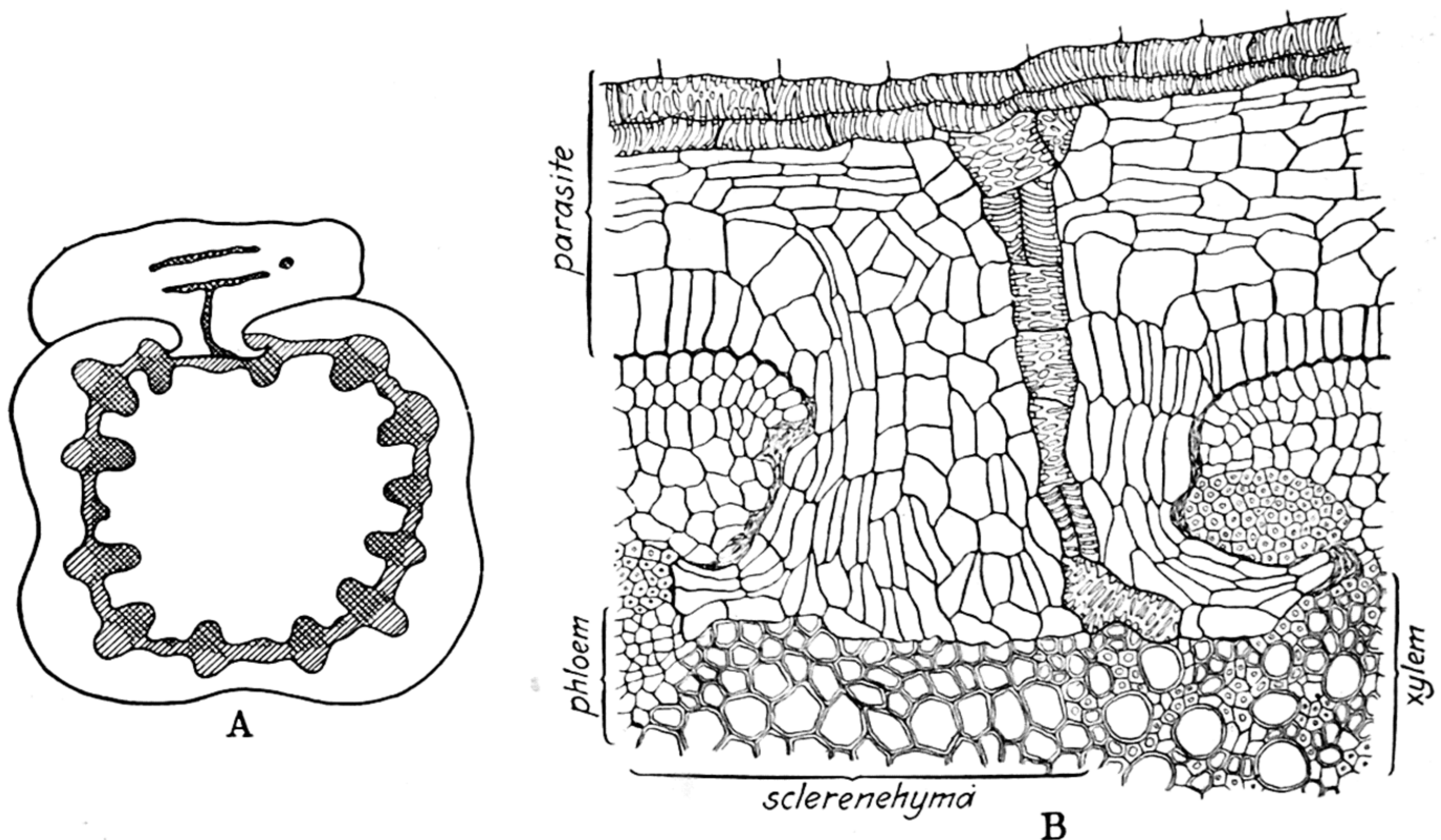


FIG. 186.—Haustorial connection of parasite with host—*Cuscuta* on *Bidens*. A, diagram, showing cross section of stem of host, oblique section of stem of parasite, and longitudinal section of haustorium penetrating host as far as the vascular tissues; B, detail of haustorium and surrounding tissues. The vascular tissues of parasite connected with those of host.

these tissues often abortive, and sclerenchyma is scarce. The roots may be well developed and abundant in proportion to the aerial parts, as in *Monotropa*, or may be lacking, with rhizomes taking their place, as in *Corallorrhiza*. Where roots are present, they are usually of peculiar structure. Roots of unusual form, together with the fungus hyphae associated with them, form *mycorrhizae*.

Two types of such roots are recognized: *ectotrophic*, those in which the mycelium forms a more or less superficial layer or coating about the roots, and *endotrophic*, those in which the hyphae lie within or between the root cells themselves. In ectotrophic forms the fungus hyphae form a tissue-like web about the root, enclosing it like a glove about a finger. The mycelium is closely appressed to the root, and some of the hyphae



penetrate between and around the epidermal and subepidermal cells. In some forms there is little penetration between the outer cells, in others the cells of the epidermis and of several outer layers of the cortex may be surrounded by hyphae. Rootlets invested by fungus hyphae in this way are of unusual structure—they have neither root cap nor root hairs, have limited growth in length, and are fleshy, with their conducting tissues greatly reduced. In endotrophic forms also, the roots may be enlarged and fleshy, but there is less reduction of vascular tissues. The hyphae are usually restricted to a special part of the cortex where a definite layer of infected cells may occur. In nongreen plants the interrelationship of the two plants is obscure.

Mycorrhizae occur on many green plants also; they are known in many genera of forest trees and in many members of the heath family. The relationship of the fungus and the green vascular plant is not understood but is possibly parasitism of basidiomycetous fungi upon the green plant. In some endotrophic forms, symbiosis may exist.

The above discussion is only a brief statement of some structural modifications of plants. The details of such modifications are almost infinite in number and variety. All can be structurally interpreted by comparison with mesophytic plants.

### References

- CLEMENTS, E. S.: The relation of leaf structure to physical factors, *Trans. Amer. Micro. Soc.*, **26**, 19–102, 1905.
- CONSTANTIN, J.: Études sur les feuilles de plantes aquatiques, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 7 sér., **3**, 94–162, 1886.
- DUFOUR, L.: Influence de la lumière sur la forme et la structure des feuilles, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 7 sér., **5**, 311–413, 1887.
- HABERLANDT, G.: Anatomisch-physiologische Untersuchungen über das tropische Laubblatt, II. Ueber wassersecernirende und -absorbirende Organe, *Sitzungsb. Math. Naturwiss. Classe Kais. Akad. Wiss. Wien.*, **103**, 489–538, 1894. **104**, 55–116, 1895.
- HANSON, H. C.: Leaf structure as related to environment, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **4**, 533–560, 1917.
- HAYDEN, A.: The ecologic foliar anatomy of some plants of a prairie province in central Iowa, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **6**, 69–85, 1919.
- LECLERC DU SABLON: Recherches sur les organes d'absorption des plantes parasites (Rhinanthées et Santalacées), *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 7 sér., **6**, 90–117, 1887.
- MCDUGALL, W. B.: On the mycorrhizas of forest trees, *Amer. Jour. Bot.*, **1**, 51–74, 1914.
- SAUVAGEAU, C.: Sur les feuilles de quelques monocotylédones aquatiques, *Ann. Sci. Nat. Bot.*, 7 sér., **13**, 103–296, 1891.
- SCHENCK, H.: Ueber das Aërenchym, in dem Kork homologes Gewebe bei Sumpfpflanzen, *Jahrb. Wiss. Bot.*, **20**, 526–574, 1889.
- : Vergleichende Anatomie der submersen Gewächse, *Bibl. Bot.*, **1**, 1–67, 1886.

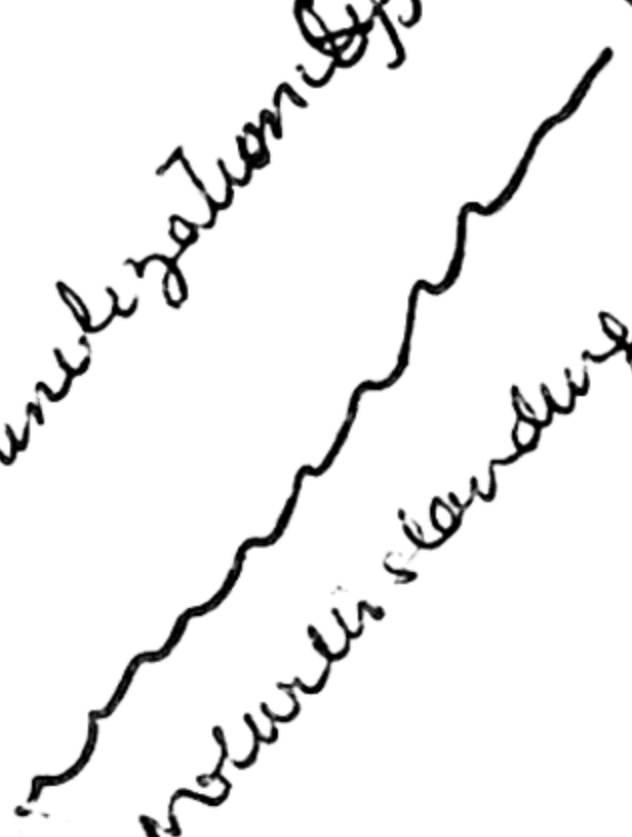


SCHIMPER, A. F. W.: "Plant Geography upon a Physiological Basis," Engl. trans., Oxford, 1903.

STARR, A. M.: Comparative anatomy of dune plants, *Bot. Gaz.*, **54**, 265-305, 1912.

WARMING, E.: "Ecology of Plants," Engl. trans., Oxford, 1909. (Extensive bibliography.)

WOODHEAD, T. W.: Ecology of woodland plants in the neighborhood of Huddersfield, England, *Jour. Linn. Soc. Bot. London*, **37**, 333-406, 1906.

nominalization  
?   
mountains standing in fact.



# INDEX

(Figures in boldface indicate pages on which illustrations occur)

## A

- Abies*, stem apex of, **71**, **72**
  - trabeculae of, **48**
  - wood of, 215, 216, 225
- Abscission, 266–275
  - of floral parts, 270–271
  - of leaves, 267–268, **269**, 270
  - of phloem, 231
  - of stems, 271, **272**
  - zone of, 267, 275
- Absorption, by root hairs, 277, 285
  - through epidermis, 277
- Abutilon*, collenchyma in, **84**
- Acacia*, wood of, 225, 229
- Acer*, bark of, 258, 259
  - cuticle of, **51**, 54
  - fruit of, 368
  - leaf abscission in, 268
  - root-stem transition in, 296
  - wood of, 214, 215, 225, 226
    - grain of, 227
    - parenchyma in, 216
    - pith-ray flecks in, 228
    - pit-pairs in, **43**
    - rays in, 218
    - vessel element in, **96**
- Aceraceae, leaf traces in, 148
- Achene, bundles in, 360
  - pericarp in, 368
  - reduction in, 356, **357**
  - seed coat in, 371
- Achras*, latex, source of chicle, 118
  - periderm in fruit of, 261, 363
- Acorus*, vascular bundles in, **306**
  - vascular system in, **150**
- Adlumia*, stem of, 303
- Adnation (see Fusion)
- Aerenchyma, 390, **391**
- Aeschynomene*, wood of, 225
- Aesculus*, plasmodesmata in endosperm of, 35
  - seed of, 376
- Agathis*, abscised branches of, **272**
  - heartwood in, 223
  - kauri gum, 246
  - leaf-trace cambium in, 185
  - pit-pairs in tracheid of, **43**
  - resin of, 118
- Agave*, fibers in, 88
- Agrimonia*, achene of, **357**
  - phloem-ray cells of, 242
  - stem of, 299
  - vestigial interfascicular cambium in, 178
- Agrostis*, sclerenchyma in leaf of, **336**
- Ailanthus*, abscission of leaves of, 268
  - abscission of stems of, 271
  - fruits of, 368
  - starch in, **21**
- Air chambers, 8, 367, **389**, 390, **391**
- Ajuga*, fusion in calyx of, **347**, 348
- Alburnum, 223
- Aleurone grains, 19, 22, **23**, 376
- Alkaloids, 19
- Allium*, intercalary meristem in, 323
  - leaf of, 335
- Almond (see *Amygdalus*)
- Alnus*, aggregate xylem rays in, 217
  - leaf trace and pith form of, **153**, 154
- Aloe*, bundle development in secondary growth of, **301**
  - cambium in, 201
  - periderm in, 260
  - secondary growth in, 302
- Alsinastrum*, stem of, **389**
- Alstroemeria*, inferior ovary of, **352**
- Amaranthaceae, accessory cambium in, 312
  - medullary bundles in, 314
- Amaryllis*, seed coat of, 372



- Amelanchier*, petal of, **358**  
 Amentiferae, leaf traces in, 147  
*Amygdalus*, fruit of, 367  
*Ananas*, adnation in, 355  
   fruit of, 360, 369  
 Anastomosis, 152, 301  
*Anchusa*, epidermis of corolla of, **358**  
*Andromeda*, ovary of, **353**  
*Anemarrhena*, root-stem transition in, 296  
*Angelica*, oil canal in, **115**  
   petiole bundles in, **329**  
 Angiosperms, anomalous structure in, 315  
   collateral bundles of, 139  
   companion cells in, 109, 239  
   endodermis in, 161  
   fibers, gelatinous in, 49  
     size of, 9  
   leaf gaps in, 145  
   leaf traces in, 147  
   marginal ray cells in, 220  
   origin of lateral roots in, **287**  
   persistence of leaves in, 338  
   phloem in, 104, 105, 232, 239  
     internal, 304  
     primary, in roots, 285  
   pits in tracheids of, 92  
   protoxylem in, 133  
   root apex of, 77  
   stelar types in, 142  
   stem apex of, 72  
   tyloses in, 222  
   vascular bundle in, 307  
     (See also Dicotyledons; Monocotyledons)  
 Annual rings (see Growth rings)  
 "Annual rings," of cork, 256, **257**  
 Anomalous structure, in stems, 309, **310**,  
   **311**, 312, **313**, **314**, 315  
 Anther wall, 48  
 Anthocyanins, 18  
 Apical-cell theory, 67  
 Apical cells, 65-67, **75**, **76**  
   of axis, 124  
   of floral apex, 74  
   of leaf, 319  
   of root, **75**, **76**  
   of stems, **70**, **71**, 72, 73  
     (See also Initials; Meristem)  
 Apical meristems, **64**, 123  
   initials of, 61, 65  
 Apical meristems, mature cells of proto-  
   phloem in, 131  
   in monocot leaf, **334**  
   origin of cambium from, 63, 175  
*Apios*, crystals in endodermis of, 158  
   stem of, 303  
*Apium*, collenchyma in, 87, 88, **330**  
*Aplectrum*, stomata in, **168**  
 Apocynaceae, internal phloem in, 305  
   intrusive growth in, 12  
   nonarticulate latex ducts in, 119, 120  
*Aponogeton*, chloroplasts in, **15**  
 Appendages, 1, 123, 126, 341  
 Apple (see *Malus pumila*)  
 Apposition, 34  
 Aquatic plants, endodermis in, 161  
   stomata in, 333  
   vessels lost in, 98  
     (See also Hydrophytes)  
*Aquilegia*, flower of, **343**, 345, **346**  
   follicle of, **357**  
 Araceae, roots in, 291  
   seed coats of, 372  
   venation in, 334  
*Aralia*, leaf traces in, 148  
*Araucaria*, absence of wood parenchyma  
   in, 102  
   compression wood in, 228  
   extension of leaf trace in, 185  
   leaf-trace cambium in, 185  
   persistent leaves of, 339  
*Arceuthobium*, 393  
*Arctium*, venation in, 334  
*Arisaema*, chromoplasts in fruit of, **16**  
   protoxylem in fruit of, **135**  
*Aristolochia*, anomalous stem of, 302,  
   **310**, 311  
   crushing of pith in, 156  
   traces to lost petals in, 356  
 Aristolochiaceae, seed coats of, 372  
 Aroids (see Araceae)  
*Artemisia*, stem of, **299**  
*Artocarpus*, fruit of, 369  
*Asarum*, collenchyma in, **84**  
   petiole bundles in, **329**  
   tyloses in, 222  
 Asclepiadaceae, internal phloem in, 305  
   intrusive growth in, 12  
   nonarticulate latex ducts in, 119  
*Asclepias*, collenchyma in, **84**



- Asclepias*, parenchyma in, **83**  
     primary vascular system of, 154  
     vascular bundles in, 308  
*Asimina*, fruit of, 366  
*Asparagus*, leaf of, 387  
*Aspidium*, vascular skeleton of leaf of, **318**  
*Aster*, collenchyma in, 85  
     compression of outer tissues in, 182  
*Aubrietia*, hairs on, **170**  
*Avena*, hairs on, **170**  
     leaf of, **328**  
     stem apex of, 73  
 Avocado (*see Persea*)  
 Axis, aerial and subterranean, 1  
     ontogeny of, 124, **125**  
     parts of, 1, 123, 277, 293  
     structure of, **3**

## B

- Balsaminaceae, seed coats in, 372  
 Banana (*see Musa*)  
*Banksia*, leaf of, **383**, 384  
     stomata of, 387  
 Bark, 258  
     exfoliation of, 259, 260  
     inner, 231  
     "ring," 260  
     scale, **259**  
     uses of term, 254  
 Bars of Sanio, 49  
 Basswood (*see Tilia*)  
 Bast, of commerce, 246  
     definition of, 111, 112, 231  
     fibers, 112, 246  
*Bauhinia*, anomalous stem in, **310**  
 Beet (*see Beta*)  
*Begonia*, anomalous stem in, **310**  
     leaf of, **383**, 388  
     leaf-trace bundles in, 314  
     root germs in, 290  
 Berberidaceae, derivation of woody stems of, 300  
     medullary bundles in, 314  
     seed coats of, 372  
 Berries, epidermal cells of, 362  
*Beta*, anomalous structure in, 313, **314**  
     collenchyma in, 87  
     seed of, 371  
*Betula*, abscission of leaves in, **269**, 270  
     periderm of, 255  
     "annual rings" of cork in, **251**, 256  
     "bark" of, 254, 258  
     cork cells in, 250  
     lenticels in, 265, 266  
     phellem in, **251**  
     wood of, clustered vessels in, 215  
     curly grain in, 227  
     diffuse-porous, 214  
     heartwood in, 223  
     pith-ray flecks in, 228  
     vessel element in, **96**  
*Bidens*, host to *Cuscuta*, **394**  
*Bignonia*, anomalous stem in, **310**  
 Binucleate cells, 27  
 Birch "bark" (*see Betula*)  
 Black walnut (*see Juglans*)  
 Blackberry (*see Rubus*)  
*Blephilia*, fusion in calyx of, **347**, 348  
 Blueberry (*see Vaccinium*)  
 Boraginaceae, medullary sheath of, 156  
 Bordered pit-pair (*see Pit-pairs*)  
 Branch, abscission of leafy, 267, **272-274**  
     scar periderm of, **274**  
     shedding of leafy, 275  
 Branch bases, burial of, 197, **198-200**  
     stripping of phloem at, 197  
 Branch gap, **143**, 144, **145**, 146  
     relation of secondary growth to, 186  
     in woody stem, 297  
 Branch traces, **143-145**, **149**, **183**  
     burial of, 185  
 Brazilian rubber tree (*see Hevea*)  
*Bryophyllum*, rooting in, 290  
 Bryophytes, apical cell in, 66, 67  
 Bud scales, cork layers on, 261  
     secretory cell in, **115**  
 Budding, cambium in, 201  
 Buds, meristems of adventitious, 63, 163  
 Bundle ends in leaf, **322**, **326**, 327  
 Bundle sheath, **320**, **326**, 328-330, 336  
 Burial, of branch bases, 197, **198-200**, 275  
     of branch traces, 185  
     of leaf-trace bases, **181**, **184**  
     of wound, 201  
 Burls, formation of, 201

## C

- Cactaceae, fleshy xerophytes, 388  
     leaf of, 387



- Cactaceae, leaf traces in, 314  
     stem apex of, 73  
*Calceolaria*, epidermis of corolla in, **358**  
 Callus, 200–201  
     definitive, 108  
     development in sieve elements, 107–109, 245  
     formation of, 200–201  
*Calocarpum*, periderm in fruit of, 261, 363  
 Calycanthaceae, cortical bundles in, 314  
*Calycanthus*, flower of, 353  
 Calyptrogen, 75  
 Calyx, anatomy of, **347**  
     hairs on, 170  
 “Calyx tube,” 368, 369  
 Cambium, 60–67, 175–202, **188, 189, 193, 195**  
     accessory, 63, 312–314  
     in budding and grafting, 201  
     cylinder, **177, 179**  
     duration of, 180  
     effect on primary body of, 180–182  
     fascicular, **177, 178**  
     formation of xylem and phloem by, **186, 196**  
     growth about wounds, 200–201  
     initials of, 61, **99, 176, 187–190, 192, 194**  
         cell division in, **26, 191**  
         primary pit-fields in, 28  
     interfascicular, **177, 178**  
     in monocots, 201, **202, 302**  
     position in axis of, **3, 4**  
     in roots, 119, 176, 179  
     in stems, 164, 178–179  
     storied, 190  
     structure of, 187, **193**  
     time of activity of, 195–197  
 “Cambium-miners,” 228  
 Campanulaceae, internal phloem in, 305  
 Canal-like cavities, of septal nectaries, 117  
     of simple pits, 39  
 Canals, 8  
     oil, **115**  
     in pericycle, 158  
     resin, **115**  
*Canna*, seed coat of, 374  
     tyloses in, 222  
*Cannabis*, compression of outer tissues in, 182  
     fibers in, **86, 111, 157**  
         development of, 88  
 Caprifoliaceae, sieve-tubes in, 107  
     traces to lost carpels in, 356  
     vestured pits in, 48  
*Carica*, druse in cell of, **20**  
     latex, 118, 364  
 Caricaceae, articulate latex ducts in, 120  
     lignification in wood of, 225  
 Carnivorous plants, 117  
 Carotenes, 18  
 Carotinoids, 18  
 Carotins, 18  
 Carpels, 359–360  
     bundle fusion in, **350, 357**  
     fusion of, **349, 351**  
     reduction of bundles in, 356, **357**  
     syncarpy, **349**  
     traces of, 344, 359  
     traces to lost, 356, 360  
     vascular structure of, **350, 357**  
*Carpinus*, aggregate rays in, 217  
     periderm in, 255  
 Carrot (*see Daucus*)  
*Carya*, bark of, 258, 259  
     bundle sheath in, 328  
     crystals in nutshell of, **20**  
     fruit of, 367, 369  
     phloem of, 232, **233, 235, 237, 239–241**  
     root cuttings of, 290  
     wood, cell arrangement in, 328  
         crystals in, 20  
         durability of, 225  
         libriform fibers in, **94**  
         parenchyma in, 102  
 Caryophyllaceae, fruit of, 368  
     leaf traces in, 148  
     vestigial traces in flower of, 356  
 Casparian dots, 158, **159**  
 Casparian strips, 48, 158, **159**  
*Castanea*, curly grain in wood of, 227  
     durability of wood of, 226  
     embryo in seed of, 376  
     inflorescence, abscission in, 275  
     leaf abscission in, 268, **269**  
     parenchyma in, **83**  
     phellogen in, 253  
     secondary phloem in, 241, 243



- Castilloa*, abscised branches in, 272  
*Casuarina*, leaf-trace bundles in, 314  
 stomata of, 387  
*Catalpa*, abscission of leaves of, 268, 269  
 wood of, durability of, 222, 226  
 ring-porous, 214  
 tyloses in, 221  
 vasicentric parenchyma in, 216  
*Caulophyllum*, seed coats of, 375  
*Ceiba*, fruit of, 368  
*Celastrus*, stem of, 302  
*Celery* (see *Apium*)  
 Cell, 7  
 albuminous, 110, 242  
 annular, 133, 134  
 arrangement of, 7, 136, 214, 215  
 cambiform, 240  
 color in, 18  
 definition of, 6  
 development of, 9, 17  
 division, 9, 24, 25, 26, 119, 191, 192  
 enlargement in fruit, 361, 363, 364, 365  
 inclusions, 13  
 passage, 158  
 plate, 24, 25, 26  
 sap, 7, 13, 17, 359  
 shape of, 8  
 size of, 9  
 transfusion, 158  
 (See also Cell wall; Cells)  
 Cell wall, 6, 7, 23  
 calcium carbonate in, 50  
 calcium oxalate in, 50  
 centrifugal thickening of, 49  
 checking in, 44  
 chemical nature of, 49  
 of collenchyma, 84  
 "dentations" of, 45, 48  
 of fibers, 87  
 formation of, 24-26, 29  
 gelatinous, 34, 49, 87, 93, 94, 95, 215, 268  
 gross structure of, 27-29, 30  
 method of building of, 34  
 mineralization of, in grasses, 50  
 minute structure of, 30-34, 31, 33, 34  
 origin of, 24  
 of parenchyma, 83  
 in phloem fibers, 111  
 of sclereids, 89  
 Cell wall, sculpture and modification of, 37, 38-41, 43-48  
 septa in fiber-tracheids, 95  
 silica in, 50  
 tyloses in, 220, 221  
 in wood, 224  
 (See also Primary cell wall; Secondary cell wall)  
 Cells, of abscission zone, 267-268  
 cambium, 187-191, 194  
 endodermal, 163  
 epidermal, 165, 166, 167  
 grit, 88  
 of lenticels, 263  
 meristematic, 61  
 of periderm, 249, 250, 251, 252  
 permanent, 61, 82, 124  
 phloem mother, 186, 188  
 phloem ray, 242  
 tyloses in, 220, 221  
 xylem mother, 186  
 (See also Cell; Cell wall)  
 Cellulose, in cell wall, 30, 31  
 in endosperm, 376  
 in fruit, 365  
 orientation of fibrils in cell wall, 33  
 in wood, 224  
 Central cylinder, 1, 68, 123  
 ontogeny of, 127  
 of root, 281  
 Centrospermae, roots of, 291  
*Cephalanthus*, petiole of, 329  
 secondary phloem in, 233, 237, 241, 242  
*Ceroxylon*, wax on leaves of, 383  
*Chaenomeles*, fruit of, 363  
 Chenopodiaceae, accessory cambium in, 312  
 medullary sheath in, 156  
*Chenopodium*, anomalous stem structure in, 313  
 collenchyma in, 85  
 pit-pairs in cells of, 44  
 primary vascular system of, 150  
 Cherry (see *Prunus*)  
 Chestnut (see *Castanea*)  
 Chicle, latex, source of, 118  
 (See also *Achras*)  
 Chimaeras, periclinal, plasmodesmata in, 37



- Chionanthus*, traces to lost stamens in, 356
- Chlorophyll, 18
- Chloroplasts, in *Aponogeton*, 15  
in epidermis, 389, 392  
in guard cells, 169  
of mesophyll cell, 7, 332  
structure of, 15  
in *Todea*, 15  
type of plastid, 14, 15  
in *Zea*, 14
- Chondriosomes, 17
- Chromoplasts, 14, 15, 16  
in petal, 359
- Chrysanthemum*, fusion in corolla of, 348
- Cinnamon, 246
- Circaea*, fruit of, 362, 363  
leaf of, 392
- Citrullus*, fruit of, 363, 368  
pit-pairs in, 44
- Citrus*, lysigenous glands in, 364  
oil cavity in, 115
- Citrus fruits, chloroplasts in seeds of, 17  
cuticle on, 51  
oil cavity in, 115, 118  
pulp of, 364
- Clarkia*, epidermis of corolla in, 358
- Clematis*, dormant phloem in, 245  
interfascicular cambium in, 178  
parenchyma in, 83  
pit-pairs in pith of, 44  
vascular rays absent in, 208, 241  
woody stems of, 298, 302, 303
- Clethra*, seed of, 372
- Closing membrane (see Pit membrane; Pit-pairs)
- Club mosses, absence of leaf gaps in, 145  
exarch xylem in, 129  
pits in tracheids of, 92  
protostele in, 142
- Coconut (see *Cocos*)
- Cocos*, fruit of, 361  
rhytidome-like layer in, 260  
sclerenchyma in, 86
- Cohesion (see Fusion)
- Coleus*, abscission of leaves in, 270  
tyloses in, 222
- Collenchyma, cell wall in, 33  
in cortex, 163, 164  
in fruit, 364, 366
- Collenchyma, in hydrophytes, 391  
in leaves, 330  
simple tissue, 82, 84, 85
- Color, autumn, 18  
in cells, 18
- Columella, 279
- Combretum*, interxylary phloem in, 311
- Commelinaceae, secondary root hairs in, 280
- Companion cells, 104, 106, 109–110, 238, 239  
ontogeny of, 109, 195
- Compositae, articulate latex ducts in, 120  
flower of, reduction in, 356  
leaf traces in, 148  
lignification in phloem of, 246  
medullary sheath in, 156  
pericarp of, 368  
phloem in, internal, 305  
secondary, 239  
root hairs in, 166  
seed coats of, 371  
stem of, 298
- Conduction, horizontal and vertical in  
phloem, 243, 244  
in roots, 277  
in secondary xylem, 204  
in trees, 209  
in xylem rays, 217
- Conifers, bordered pit-pairs in tracheids of, 40  
compression wood in, 228  
perforations in pit membrane in, 41  
trabeculae in tracheids of, 48  
tylosoids in, 221  
(See also Gymnosperms; listed genera of conifers)
- Conjunctive tissue, 301, 312, 313
- Conopholis*, 393
- Convolvulaceae, internal phloem in, 305
- Convolvulus*, tyloses in, 222
- Copernicia*, wax on leaves of, 383
- Corallorrhiza*, 394
- Cordyline*, secondary growth in, 302  
storied cork in, 260, 261
- Coreopsis*, hairs on leaf of, 170
- Cork, commercial, 250, 251, 256, 257, 258  
lenticels in, 266  
secondary tissue, 123  
(See also Phellem)



- Cork cambium, 63, 65, 67  
     (See also Phellogen)  
 Cork oak (see *Quercus suber*)  
*Cornus*, adnation in, 353  
     cuticle on stem of, 51, 54  
     phloem parenchyma in, 236, 239, 240, 244  
     ray cells in, 243  
 Corolla, epidermis of, 358  
     fusion in, 348  
     hairs on, 170  
     reduction in, 356  
 Corpus, 69, 70, 73  
 Cortex, 1, 3, 68, 77, 123, 163, 164, 165  
     bundles of, 314  
     crystals in, 20  
     effect of cambial activity on, 181-182  
     in fruit, 369  
     latex cells in, 115  
     meristem in, 369  
     of monocot stem, 301  
     origin of aerenchyma in, 390  
     parenchyma in, 83  
     photosynthetic, 385, 386  
     primary, 163  
     of root, 280, 281, 283  
     suberization of primary cells of, 260  
     tannin in, 22  
*Corylus*, petiole bundles in, 329  
*Cotoneaster*, root germs in, 290  
 Cotton "fibers," 373  
 Cotyledons, plasmodesmata in, 35  
 Crassulaceae, fusion in flower of, 351  
 Crassulae, 40, 49  
*Crataegus*, fruit of, ripening in, 365  
     sclerenchyma in, 86  
 Crotch angles, distortion of tissues in, 190, 198, 200  
     phloem in, 197, 198  
     wood parenchyma in, 198  
     zone of weakness in, 199  
 Cruciferae, seed coats of, 372  
     vestured pits in, 48  
 Crushing, of cortex, 182  
     of endodermis, 163, 181  
     of outer stem tissues, 300  
     of pericycle, 182  
     of phloem, 125, 131, 132, 181, 182, 196, 232, 238, 244, 285  
     of pith, 156  
*Cryptogramma*, leaf of, 392  
*Cryptomeria*, stem apex of, 72  
*Cryptostegia*, nonarticulate latex ducts in, 119  
 Crystal sand, 19  
 Crystalloids, 22  
 Crystals, 13, 19, 20, 83  
     in cell wall, 50  
     in endodermis, 158  
     in epidermis, 165  
     in phloem parenchyma, 110, 113, 244, 246  
     protein, 22  
     in tyloses, 220  
     in xylem, 103  
*Cucumis*, hairs in, 170  
     stomata in, 168  
*Cucurbita*, cambiform cells in, 240  
     development of secondary vascular tissue in, 196  
     fruit of, 366  
     phloem of, companion cells in, 239  
         internal, 304  
         primary, 132  
     primary skeleton in, 149  
     root-stem transition in, 296  
     tyloses in, 222  
     vessel elements in, 100  
 Cucurbitaceae, bundles in, bicollateral, 139, 305  
     medullary, 314  
     placental, 355  
     fruits of, 361, 368  
     traces to lost stamens in, 356  
*Curcuma*, storied cork in, 260, 261  
*Cuscuta*, 393, 394  
 Cuticle, 51, 52-54, 260  
     on fruits, 362, 366  
     on petals, 359  
     on seeds, 374  
 Cuticular pegs, 52, 53  
 Cuticularization, 53, 382  
 Cutin, in cell wall, 32, 49  
 Cutinization, of cell wall, 34, 49, 53  
     in herbaceous monocots, 260  
     in roots of pteridophytes, 291  
     in xerophytes, 382, 384, 387  
 Cycads, anomalous structure in, 315  
     girdling traces in, 148  
     stem apex of, 72



*Cycas*, leaf of, **382**, 386  
*Cyperus*, leaf of, 337  
*Cypripedium*, seed of, 372  
 Cystoliths, 19, 50  
 Cytoplasm, **7**, 10, 13, **17**, **24**, **25**

## D

*Dalibarda*, ovary of, **354**  
 Dandelion (see *Compositae*; *Taraxacum*)  
*Darbya*, ovary of, 353, **354**  
*Dasylirion*, leaf of, **51**, **382**, 384, 385  
 Date (see *Phoenix*)  
*Daucus*, chromoplasts in, 15, **16**  
     lenticels in root of, 263  
 Deciduous plants, rupture of leaf trace in, **184**  
*Decodon*, aerenchyma of, 8, 390, **391**  
 Defoliation, growth-ring formation after, 208  
 Dehiscence, 369  
*Delphinium*, seed coat of, **374**  
 Dermatogen, **68**, **76**, **125**  
*Dianthera*, bundle arrangement in, 152  
 Diaphragms, 390, **391**  
*Dicliptera*, seed coat of, **374**  
 Dicotyledons, bundle arrangement in, 152, 307, **308**  
     bundle ends in, 327  
     endodermis in, 161  
     leaf in, 317, 319, 330  
     leaf abscission in, **269**  
     medullary bundles in, 314  
     primary type endodermis in, 159  
     root apex of, **77**, 78  
     secondary phloem in twigs of, 239  
     seed coats of, 371  
     stems of, **289**, **299**  
     venation in, 334  
     xerophytic stem of, **385**  
     (See also *Angiosperms*)  
 "Dictyostele," **141**, 142  
 Differentiation, in meristems, 60, 65, 67, **71**  
     in time and space, 124  
     of tissues in fruits, 361, **363**, **364**  
     of tissues in leaf, **324**  
     of xylem and phloem in leaf, 323  
*Digitalis*, primary vascular cylinder in, 154  
     stem of, **299**

*Dionaea*, digestive glands of, 117  
*Dioscoreae*, secondary growth in, 302  
*Diospyros*, fruit of, 364, 366  
     fusiform cambium cells in, 190  
     plasmodesmata in endosperm of, 35, **36**  
     seed of, 376  
     wood of, **213**, 218, 223, 225  
         cell arrangement in, 215  
         pit-pairs in, **44**  
*Dipsacus*, root-stem transition in, 295  
*Dirca*, abscission of stems in, 274  
     phloem of, fibers in, 111, 241  
     secondary, 237  
 Distortion, of secondary vascular tissue, **195**, **196**, **308**  
     of tissue in crotch angle, **198**  
     of tracheid, **91**  
*Dracaena*, cambial growth in, 201, **202**  
     cuticle on stem of, **51**  
     sclerenchyma in, **86**  
     secondary growth in stem of, 302  
     storied cork in, 260  
*Drosera*, digestive glands of, 117  
 Drupes, epidermal cells of, 362  
     stony layer of, 367  
 Druses, 19, **20**  
     in phloem parenchyma and sclerenchyma, 246  
 Dry fruits, **362**, 367–368  
     pericarp of, **362**  
*Duabanga*, vested pit-pairs in, **47**  
*Duchesnea*, achene of, **357**  
*Dulichium*, primary vascular system in, **150**  
 Duramen, 223

## E

Ebony (see *Diospyros*)  
 Ecological anatomy, 380–396  
     epiphytes, 388  
     hydrophytes, 388, **389**, 390, **391**, 392  
     parasites, 393, **394**, 395  
     saprophytes, 394  
     shade leaves, **392**  
     xerophytes, 380–381, **382**, **383**, 384, **385**, **386**, 387, 388  
*Elatine*, stem of, **389**



- Elongation, of cells in xylem maturation, **195**  
   of protophloem and protoxylem, 134  
   in protoxylem, **135, 136**  
   in roots, 285  
*Elymus*, sclerenchyma in leaf of, **336**  
 Embryo, 361, **372, 376**  
   chloroplasts in, 16  
 Emergence, 1, **2**  
 Endocarp, 360  
   sclerenchyma in, **86**  
 Endodermis, 158, **159, 160, 161–163**  
   in axis, **3, 123, 125**  
   effect of cambial activity on, 181–182  
   function as diffusion layer, 161–162  
   in hydrophytes, 392  
   inner, **159, 160, 161, 304**  
   in leaf, **386, 387**  
   origin of some meristems, 163  
   outer, **159**  
   primary, 158, 159  
   in root, **77, 277, 282, 287**  
   in stems, 157, **389**  
 Endosperm, 361, 369, **370, 376**  
   exalbuminous, 371  
   “horny,” 376  
   plasmodesmata in, 35, **36**  
   plastids in, **16, 17**  
*Entada*, interxylary phloem in, 311  
 Entomophilous plants, 117  
 Environment, 380  
   aquatic, 380  
   mesophytic, 380  
   xerophytic, 380–381  
 Enzyme, activity of, causing gummosis, **228**  
   activity in parasites, 393, **394**  
   protein-digesting, 117  
   secretion, 117  
*Ephedra*, primary vascular system of, **150**  
 Epidermis, 1, **3, 68, 123, 164, 165–171**  
   biseriate, multiseriate, 165  
   of corolla, **358, 359**  
   cuticle on, **51**  
   effect of cambial activity on, 181  
   of fruits, 362, **363**  
   function of, 166  
   of hydrophytes, **389**  
   of leaves, 331–333, **337**  
   lignification of, 382, **385**  
   Epidermis, in monocots, 260  
     origin of aerenchyma in, 390  
     of root tip, **77**  
     of seed coats, **373**  
     of xerophytic leaves, **383, 384, 386**  
*Epigaea*, fruit of, 368  
   hairs on corolla of, **170**  
 Epiphytes, 388  
*Equisetum*, apical cells of, 65, 67, 76  
   endodermis in stem of, **159**  
   intercalary meristem in, 66  
   leaf of, 387  
   leaf gaps absent in, 145  
   mineralization of cell wall in, 50  
   stem of, **386, 387**  
     protoxylem in, **135**  
   stomata of, **386**  
   vascular bundles in, 307, 326  
 Ergastic substances, 13, 19  
 Ericaceae, anatomy of ovary in, **354**  
   chloroplasts in, 17  
   leaf traces in, 148  
   placental bundles in, 355  
   traces to lost carpels in, 356  
*Erythrina*, epidermis of corolla of, **358**  
*Eucalyptus*, wood of, **45, 225**  
*Euonymus*, corky-winged stem of, 250  
*Eupatorium*, persistent root hairs of, 280  
*Euphorbia*, latex cells in cortex of, **115**  
   secretory cells in nectary of, **115**  
 Euphorbiaceae, medullary sheath in, 156  
   multinucleate stages of vessel elements  
     in, 101  
   nectaries in, 117  
   nonarticulate latex ducts in, 119  
 Evergreen trees, time of cambial activity  
   in, 195  
   (See also Leaf, evergreen)  
 Exfoliation, of bark, 259, 260  
 Exocarp, 360, **364, 367**  
 Exodermis, 291  
 Expansion theory, 142

## F

- Fagaceae, sieve tubes in, 107  
   vestigial traces in flower of, 356  
*Fagus*, sclereids in secondary phloem of,  
   241, 246  
   periderm in, 255



- Fats, in fruits, 365
- Ferns, anomalous structure in, 315
  - apical cells in, 65, 67, 76
  - bundles in, amphicribal, 140
    - arrangement of, 152
  - leaf in, 317, 325, 339
  - leaf gaps in, 145
  - mesarch xylem in, 129
  - mucilage in cells of, 116
  - pits in tracheids of, 92
  - stellar types in, 142, 304
- Festuca*, sclerenchyma in leaf of, **336**
- Fiber-tracheid, 93, **94**, 95
  - in angiosperm wood, 216
  - in gymnosperm wood, 216
  - pits in, 93
  - septate, **94**, 95
  - wall, minute structure of, **31**
    - fibrils in, 32
- Fibers, **86**, 87, 88, 93, **94**, 95
  - in angiosperm wood, 216
  - bast, 112, 246
  - cortical, 112, 163
  - cotton, 171
  - development of, 88
  - in fruits, 367
  - gelatinous wall in, 49, 87, 93, **94**, 215
  - in gymnosperm wood, 216
  - in leaf, 331
  - libriform wood, 93, **94**, 215
  - multinucleate, 87
  - pericyclic, 131, 157, 331
  - phloem, 112
  - pit-pairs in, **43**, **44**, 87, 93
  - sheaths of, around vascular bundles, 138, 308, 309
  - size of, 9
    - (See also Phloem, fibers of,)
- Fibrils, 32
  - orientation, in fiber-tracheids and wood fibers, 32
    - in latewood tracheids, **33**
- Fibrovascular bundle, 138, 308
- Ficus*, cork layers on petiole of, 261
  - fruit of, 369
  - latex, source of rubber in, 118
- Flavones, 18
- Flax (see *Linum*)
- Fleshy fruits, 363–367
  - epidermal cells of, 362
  - Fleshy fruits, pericarp of, 362, **363**, **364**
    - ripening of, 365–366
    - stony layer of, 367
    - texture of, 366
  - Floerkia*, fleshy pericarp of, **363**
  - Floral apex, **71**, 74
  - Floral appendages, abscission of, 270–271
    - in fruit formation, 367
    - fusion of, 355
    - traces of, 342, 356
      - (See also Carpels; Petal; Sepal; Stamen)
  - Flower, 341–360
    - apetalous, unisexual, 356
    - chromoplasts in, 17
    - cuticle on, 53
    - epidermis of, 166
    - hairs on, **170**, 171
    - nectaries of, 117
    - ontogeny of, 341, 342
    - organs of, 356, **357**, **358**, 359–360
    - stele in, 342
    - traces of floral appendages, 342
    - vascular skeleton of, 342–360
    - vascular structure of, **343**, 345–360
  - Foliar traces (see Leaf traces)
  - Follicle, reduction of, 356, **357**
  - Food storage, by phelloderm, 252
    - in roots, 277, 278
    - by secondary phloem, 244
    - by secondary xylem, 204, 217
  - Forsythia*, chromoplasts in petal of, **16**
  - Fossil plants, polysteles in, 142
    - protosteles in, 142
  - Fragaria*, achene of, **357**
    - fruit of, **364**, 369
    - tannin in, **21**
  - Fraxinus*, cambial initials in, 191
    - leaf traces in, 148
    - sieve tubes in, 107
    - vessels in, 98
    - wood of, 214, 223, 225
      - parenchyma in, 216
      - pit-pairs in, **44**
  - Freesia*, bundle end in petal of, **326**
  - Frost as a factor, in autumn color, 18
    - in fall of leaves, 268
  - Fruits, 360, 361, **362–364**, 365–369
    - abscission of, 267, 275
    - accessory structures, 368



Fruits, cuticle on, **51, 54**

dehiscence of, 369

dry, 362, 367-368

epidermis of, 34, 166, 362

fleshy, 363-367

hairs on, **170, 171**

morphology of, 360

multiple, 369

oil canal in, **115**

ontogeny of, 360-361

parenchyma in pulp of, 83

periderm in, 249, 261, 363

placenta in, 368

ripening, 361, **364, 365, 366**

sclerenchyma in, **86, 88, 89**

shape of, 361

stony layer in, 367

texture of, 366

vascular skeleton of, 361, 362

wax on, 54

winged, 368

*Fumaria*, root-stem transition in, 295

Fundamental tissue, 67

Fungus, erosion in cell wall, **44**

in formation of mycorrhizae, 394, 395

Fusion, under adnation, **351, 353, 354, 355**

under cohesion, **347-351**

in floral vascular skeleton, 347

## G

Galls, 201

*Gaultheria*, fruit of, 366

*Gaylussacia*, glandular hair of, **116**

ovary of, **354**

*Gentiana*, seed coat of, **374**

Gentianaceae, internal phloem in, 305

roots in, 291

*Geum*, achene of, **357**

stem of, 299

vestigial interfascicular cambium in, **178**

*Ginkgo*, lenticels in, 265

seed coats of, 375

Glands, 116

digestive, 117

hydathodes, 117-118

laticiferous ducts, 118

nectaries, 117

Glands, resin, oil, and gum ducts, 118

*Gleditsia*, persistent root hairs in, 280

root lenticels in, 290

Gliding growth (*see* Growth)

Gnetales, vessels in, 98, 216

*Gossypium*, seed coats of, **373, 375**

Graft hybrids, plasmodesmata in, **37**

Grafting, cambium in, 201

Grain in wood, 227

bird's-eye, 227

curly, 190, 227

silver, 227

spiral, 190

Gramineae, secondary suberization in, 260

Grasses, anastomoses at nodes of, 301

leaf of, 335-338

bundle sheaths in, 336

epidermis of, 337

hydathodes on, 118, 327

intercalary meristem in, 323

mesophyll in, 337

mestome sheath in, 161

sclerenchyma in, 338

stomata in, 338

meristem in, 66, 69, **73, 75**

mineralization of cell wall in, 50

Ground cherry (*see* Solanaceae)

Growth, 60

apical, of axis, 123

cellular adjustment during, 10

centripetal and centrifugal, 128, 129

gliding (or sliding), 10, 191, 194

intrusive, 11, 194

plasmodesmata changes during, **37**

primary, 3, 123, 175

in root, 75

secondary, 3, 175

burial of leaf-trace bases by, **181, 182**

in monocots, 301, 302

relation to leaf and branch gaps of, **186**

in roots, **285, 286**

symplastic, 12, 194

plasmodesmata distribution during, **37**

time of cambial activity, 195-197

Growth layer (*see* Growth rings)

Growth rings, **198, 208**

double (or multiple), 214

false, 214



- Guaiacum*, libriform fiber in, **94**  
 Guard cells, **52**, 167, **168**, 169  
 Gummosis, 49, 228–229  
 Gums, 19, 50, 118  
   formation of, in gummosis, 228  
   in heartwood, 223  
   in phloem parenchyma, 246  
   in tyloses, 220  
   in xerophytic leaves, 384  
   in xylem, 103  
*Gymnocladus*, seed coat of, **370**  
 Gymnosperms, albuminous cells of, 242  
   anomalous, 323  
   cambium in, 190, 191  
   collateral bundles in, 139  
   ectophloic siphonostele in, 142  
   endodermis in, 161  
   leaf of, 387  
   leaf gaps in, 145  
   leaf traces in, 147  
   ontogeny of vascular tissue in, 194  
   origin of lateral roots in, **287**  
   perforated pit-membrane in, 39, 92  
   persistence of leaves in, 338  
   phloem in, 104, 105, 232, 239, 241  
   plasmodesmata in, 35  
   protoxylem in, 133  
   root apex in, 76, 78  
   size of fibers in, 9  
   transfusion tissue in, 113  
   xylem rays in, 205, **206**, 218  
   (See also listed genera of gymnosperms)

## H

- Hairs, 1, **2**, 170, 171  
   on fruit, **362**, 368  
   glandular, **116**, 171, **358**  
   on leaves, 338  
   multicellular, 171  
   root, 166, **167**, 277, 279, 280  
   on seed coat, **373**, 375  
   stinging, **116**, 171  
   on xerophytes, **383**, 384  
 Halophytes, 381  
 Haustoria, of parasite, **394**  
*Hedera*, inferior ovary of, **352**  
*Helianthus*, fusion of corolla of, **348**  
*Heliotropium*, hairs on calyx of, **170**

- Helleborus*, follicle of, **357**  
 Hemicellulose, in cell wall, 32  
 Hemlock (see *Tsuga*)  
 Hemp (see *Cannabis*)  
 Herbaceous plants, abscission in, leaf, 270  
   stem, 271  
   cambium initials in, 190, 191  
   leaf development in, 323  
   medullary rays in, 205, 208  
   primary phloem of, 232, 240  
   root germs in, 290  
   secondary phloem of, 231, 237, **238**,  
     239, 240  
   stomata of, 169  
   tyloses in vessels of, 222  
   vascular bundles in, 307, 309  
*Hevea*, articulate latex ducts in, 120  
   latex, source of rubber, 118, 246  
*Hibiscus*, secondary phloem in, **238**  
 Hilum, 22  
 Histogen, **68**, 75  
 Histogen theory, 68, 75  
 Horsetails (see *Equisetum*)  
*Humulus*, stem of, 302  
 Hydathodes, 393  
*Hydrastis*, follicle of, **357**  
*Hydrocharis*, root apex of, 78  
 Hydrophytes, 380, 388, **389**, 390, **391**, 392  
   sclereids in, 89  
   vessels absent in some, 216  
 Hypericaceae, seed coats of, 371  
*Hypericum*, lateral root in, **287**  
   primary vascular cylinder in, 154  
 Hypodermis, 163, **281**, 364, **382**, **383**, 384,  
   **386**, 387

## I

- I-beam structure, in leaf, 331, **336**  
 Ice crystals, in separation layer, 268  
*Impatiens*, collenchyma in, 85  
   discrete vascular bundles in, 177  
   primary skeleton of, 149  
 Impregnation of wood (see Wood, im-  
   pregnation of)  
 Inclusions, nitrogenous, 22  
   of protoplast, 13, 19  
 Inflorescences, abscission of, 275  
   in fruit formation, 360, 369  
   supra-axillary, 355



- Initials, of cambium, 61, 99, 176, 192**  
 of endodermis, 163  
 of floral apex, 71, 74  
 fusiform, 187, 192  
 of leaf, 324  
 of ray, 187  
 of root, 75  
 of stem, 69-71, 72-74  
 (See also Apical cells; Cambium; Meristem)  
**Insectivorous plants, 117, 393**  
**Integuments, 369, 370, 371, 372, 373**  
**Intercellular layer, 24, 28**  
**Intercellular spaces, in collenchyma, 85**  
 in epidermis of petals, 358, 359  
 formation of, 29  
 in fruit, 365, 368  
 in hydrophytes, 390  
 kinds of, 8  
 in palisade mesophyll, 320  
 in parenchyma, 83, 100  
 in root cortex, 281  
 in seed, 376  
 (See also Air chambers)  
**Intercellular substance, 24, 28**  
**Internode, meristem in, 66**  
 telescoping in floral apex, 74, 341  
 vascular structure of, 151  
**Interxylary phloem (see Phloem)**  
**Intracellular fluid, 365**  
**Intraxylary phloem (see Phloem)**  
**Intrusive growth (see Growth)**  
**Intussusception, 35, 220**  
**Invasion theory, 142**  
***Ipomoea*, leaf of, 330**  
***Iresine*, primary vascular system of, 150**  
**Iridaceae, seed coats of, 372**  
***Iris*, intercalary meristem in, 66, 323**  
 inverted bundles in leaf of, 335  
 ovary of, 354  
***Isoëtes*, stem apex of, 72**

## J

- Jeffersonia*, leaf of, 392**  
**Juglandaceae, placental bundles in, 356**  
***Juglans*, adnation in, 355**  
 cambium in, 189, 190, 191  
 crystals in, 20  
 diaphragmed pith in, 155

- Juglans*, fruit of, 363, 367**  
 inferior ovary in, 352  
 leaf traces in, 148  
 phellogen in, 253  
 phloem in, 105, 106, 233, 237, 239, 246  
 tyloses in, 221  
 wood of, 214  
 durability of, 222  
**Jujube (see *Zizyphus*)**  
**Juncaceae, secondary suberization of cells in, 260**  
***Juniperus*, phloem fibers in, 241**  
 wood parenchyma in, 216

## K

- Kapok, 368**  
**Kauri gum (see *Agathis*)**  
***Kerria*, cuticle on twigs of, 54**  
**Kinoplasm, 27**  
**Kinoplasmasomes, 25, 27**  
**Knots, in lumber, 197**  
***Krugiodendron*, wood of, 225**

## L

- Labiatae, intercalary meristem in, 66**  
 leaf traces in, 148  
 stem of, 298  
 traces to lost stamens in, 356  
***Lactuca*, collenchyma in, 85**  
 seed coat of, 373  
 stomata in, 168  
**Lacunae, 8, 389, 392**  
***Larix*, cambial cells in, 90, 190**  
 orientation of cellulose in cell wall of, 33  
 pit-membrane perforations in, 41  
 wood of, 215, 216  
 terminal parenchyma in, 216  
**Latex, articulate ducts of, 119, 120**  
 cells and vessels of, 9, 115  
 in fruit, 364  
 inclusion of protoplast, 19  
 intrusive growth in cells of, 12  
 nonarticulate ducts of, 119  
 in pericycle, 158  
 in phloem parenchyma, 110, 246  
***Lathyrus*, root-stem transition in, 296**  
**Lattices, 105, 106, 108, 236, 237**



- Lauraceae, leaf traces in, 148  
   traces to stamen in, 343  
 Leaf, 1, 2, 317-339  
   abscission of, 267-270, 269  
   collenchyma in, 330  
   cuticle on, 51, 52, 53  
   cystoliths in, 50  
   endodermis in, 159, 161  
   epidermis of, 332-333  
   evergreen, extension of traces in, 185  
   of grasses, 335-338  
   hairs on, 116, 170  
   hydathodes in, 117  
   of hydrophytes, 389, 390, 391  
   meristem in, 66, 67, 319  
   mesophyll of, 331, 332  
   of monocots, 333-338  
     bundles in, 335  
     ontogeny of, 334  
   ontogeny of, 319, 320, 321, 323, 324  
   of parasites, 393  
   persistence of, 338, 339  
   phyllotaxy of, 318  
   primordia of, 63  
   of saprophytes, 394  
   sclerenchyma in, 89, 330, 331  
   shade, 392  
   stomata in, 168, 169, 333  
   structure of, 325, 328, 329  
   tip, 131  
   transfusion tissue in, 113  
   vascular structure of, 128, 139, 318, 322, 324-330  
   wax on, 54  
   of xerophytes, 382, 383, 384, 386, 387  
     (See also Grasses, leaf of; Mesophyll)  
 Leaf gap, 143, 144, 145, 146, 149, 183  
   relation of secondary growth to, 186  
   in woody stem, 297  
 Leaf-scar periderm, 268, 269  
 Leaf traces, 142, 143-145, 147, 148, 149, 152, 153, 183, 314  
   burial of bases of, 181, 182, 184  
   extension of, 185  
   in ferns, 325  
   girdling, 147, 148  
   in monocots, 301  
   in petiole, 325  
   rupture of, 183, 184  
   tyloses in, after fall of leaf, 222  
   Leaf traces, in woody stems, 297  
   *Leersia*, hairs on leaf of, 338  
   Legumes (see Leguminosae)  
   Leguminosae, cell division in cambium of, 192  
     seed coat of, 374  
     sieve tubes in, 107  
     stems of, 298  
     vestured pits in, 48  
 Lenticels, 262-266  
   closing cells and layers of, 263-265  
   complementary cells and tissue of, 263-265  
   in cork, 257  
   distribution of, 262  
   duration of, 266  
   formation of, 263  
   in fruits, 363  
   origin of, 263-264  
   of roots, 290  
   structure of, 264-266  
 Lenticular scale, 255  
*Lepidium*, seed coats of, 370  
*Leptocarpus*, stem of, 385, 386, 387  
 Leucoplasts, 14, 15, 16  
   amyloplast, 16  
   elaioplast, 16  
   in epidermal cells, 165  
   in sieve elements, 104  
 Lianas, 310, 312  
 "Light line," 370, 374  
 Lignification, in abscission, 269  
   in cell wall, 34, 49  
   in fruit, 367  
   of phloem parenchyma and ray cells, 246  
   in root of pteridophytes, 291  
   in xerophytes, 382, 384  
 Lignin, in cell wall, 31, 32  
   in wood, 224  
 Lignocellulose, in wood, 224  
 Lignosuberin, 158  
   in abscission, 268, 269  
 Lignum vitae (see *Guaiaecum*)  
 Ligule, 335  
 Lilac (see *Syringa*)  
 Liliaceae, fruit of, 362  
   roots in, 291  
   seed coats of, 372  
 Lilies (see *Liliaceae*)



- Liliiflorae*, secondary growth in, 302  
*Linum*, compression in outer tissues of, 182  
     epidermis of corolla of, 358  
     fibers in, 88, 111, 157  
     procambium in, 126  
     seed coat of, 373, 375  
*Liquidambar*, stem of, 250, 298  
*Liriodendron*, buried branch base of, 200  
     cambial cells in, 190  
     diaphragmed pith in, 155  
     fiber-tracheid in, 94  
     oils in bud scales of, 115  
     phloem cells of, 104, 106, 110  
     pit-pairs in vessel of, 43  
     secondary phloem in, 234, 237, 240, 241  
     tyloses in, 221  
     vessel element of, 96  
     winter buds in, 321  
     wood of, 215  
*Lobelia*, endodermis in, 159  
     primary xylem in, 130, 136  
     vessel element of, 96  
*Lonicera*, adnation in, 351, 353  
     root germs in, 290  
     woody stem of, 298  
 Lumen of the cell, 6  
*Lychnis*, traces to lost stamens in, 356  
*Lycopersicon*, fruit of, 361, 368  
     chromoplasts in, 16  
     seed coats of, 373, 375  
*Lycopodium*, bundles in leaves of, 326  
     stem apex of, 70, 72  
*Lycopsidea*, absence of leaf gaps in, 145  
*Lysigenous* cavities, 8, 115, 118  
*Lysigenous* ducts, in fruit, 364  
*Lysimachia*, petal of, 358  
     traces to lost stamens in, 356  
*Lythraceae*, seed coats, 372  
*Lythrum*, aerenchyma in, 390
- M
- Maclura*, adnation in, 353  
     durability of wood of, 222, 226  
     "multicellular" tyloses in, 221  
     sieve plate in, 237  
*Magnolia*, bark of, 258  
     bundles in stamen of, 359  
     cortex of, 164  
*Magnolia*, phellogen in, 253  
     pit-pairs in, 43, 44  
     seed coats of, 370, 375  
*Magnoliaceae*, seed coats of, 372  
*Mahogany* (see *Swietenia*)  
 "Malpighian cell," 374  
*Malus pumila*, crystals in phloem of, 20  
     development of xylem and phloem from cambium in, 193  
     fruit of, 362-363, 365-367  
         abscission of, 275  
         cuticle on, 51  
         periderm in, 249  
     leaf of, bundle ends in, 326, 327  
         bundle sheaths in, 328  
         ontogeny and structure of, 320, 325, 328  
         stomata in, 168, 333  
         vascular skeleton of, 318, 322  
     leaf and branch traces in, 183  
     ovary of, 354  
     phellogen in, 253  
     phloem of, parenchyma in, 110  
         fibers in, 111  
         rays in, 241  
         sieve element in, 106  
     rootings of, 290  
     secretory tissue in nectary of, 115  
     seed coat of, 370  
     vascular floral skeleton of, 361, 366  
     wood of, diffuse-porous, 212  
         heavy, 212, 225  
         pit-pairs in fiber of, 43  
         starch and tannin in, 21  
         wet heartwood, 223  
     xylem of, 212  
         fiber-tracheid in, 94  
         parenchyma in, 102, 212  
         vessel element in, 96  
*Malvaceae*, seed coat of, 371  
     source of "bast," 246  
*Mangifera*, fruit of, 367  
*Mango* (see *Mangifera*)  
*Manila* hemp, development of fibers in, 88  
*Marattia*, plasmodesmata in, 36  
*Maturation*, acropetal, of meristem, 66  
     basipetal, 66  
     in leaf, 323  
     order of, in xylem and phloem 128



- Maturation, physical and chemical changes in cell wall during, 34  
 of procambial cells, 176  
 of xylem, 128, 323
- Medeola*, stomata in, 168
- Medicago*, root-stem transition in, 296
- "Medullary" bundles, 313, 314
- Medullary ray, 205, 208  
 of vines and herbs, 303, 304
- Medullary sheath, 156
- Medullary spots, 228
- Melastomaceae, cortical bundles in, 314
- Melilotus*, collenchyma in, 85
- Menispermum*, stem of, 302
- Meristem, 60-78  
 classification of, 61  
 function, 67  
 history of initiating cells, 63  
 position in plant body, 64  
 stage or method of development, 61  
 development from promeristem, 124, 125  
 "embryonic," 62  
 file, 62  
 in fruit, 369  
 ground-tissue, 67  
 intercalary, 64, 66  
   in leaves, 323, 334  
 lateral, 64, 65, 67, 248  
 marginal, 67, 319, 320  
 mass, 62  
 plate, 62  
 primary, 63  
 "primordial," 61, 124  
 rib, 62  
 theories of structural development and differentiation of, 67-74  
   apical cell, 67  
   histogen, 68  
   tunica-corpus, 69-74  
 "Urmeristem," 61  
   (See also Apical meristems; Maturation)
- Meristematic tissues, 60, 61, 82  
 mature protophloem in, 131
- Mesocarp, 360, 368
- Mesophyll, 331-332  
 cell of, 7, 14  
 in cotyledon, 376  
 in grass leaf, 337
- Mesophyll, ontogeny of, 319, 323  
 of petal, 358, 359  
 in shade leaves, 392  
 spongy and palisade parenchyma in mesophytic leaves, 320, 325, 328, 331-332  
 in xerophytic leaves, 382, 383, 384, 386, 387, 388
- Mesophytes, 380
- Mestome sheath, 161, 337
- Methods of study, 4
- Micellae, structure of fibril, 32
- Middle lamella, chemical changes in, 34  
 formation of, 24, 28, 29, 34  
 loose use of the term, 33
- Mineralization of cell wall, 50
- Mints (see Labiatae)
- Mirabilis*, root-stem transition in, 295
- Mitchella*, adnation in, 353
- Mitochondria, 17
- Monarda*, fusion in calyx of, 347, 348
- Monocotyledons, endodermis in, 159, 161  
 fibers in, size of, 9  
 intercalary meristems in, 66  
 leaf in, 317, 333-338  
   bundles in, 335  
   grass, 335-338  
   ontogeny of, 334  
   persistence of, 339  
 primary phloem in, 132, 232  
   companion cells in, 109  
 protective layers in, 260, 261  
 root in, 291  
   apex of, 77, 78  
   phloem in, 285  
   secondary root hairs on, 280  
 root cap in, 74  
 root-stem transition in, 296  
 secondary growth in, 175, 201, 202, 217, 301, 302  
 seed coats of, 371  
 septal nectaries in, 117  
 stem of, 299, 301, 302  
   xerophytic, 385  
 storied cork in, 260, 261  
 vascular bundles in, 140, 306, 307, 309  
   arrangement of, 152  
 vessels in, 98
- Monostele, 141
- Monotropa*, 394



- Moraceae, cystoliths in, 50
  - sieve tubes in, 107
  - source of "bast," 246
- "Morphological roots," 289
- Morus*, abscission of stems in, 271
  - durability of wood of, 222
  - fruit of, 369
  - lenticels in root of, 262, 265, 266, 290
- Motor cell, 338, 384
- Mucilages, in cell wall, 34
  - in endodermis, 158
  - in epidermis, 165
  - in fruit, 364
  - in phloem parenchyma, 110
  - in protoplast, 19
  - in secretory cells, 115
  - in seed coat, **373**, 375
  - in xerophytic leaf, **383**, 388
- Musa*, cuticle on leaf of, **52**, 53
  - endodermis in root of, **160**
  - fruit of, 364
  - leaf of, 335
  - starch in pericarp of, **21**
  - vascular bundles in, 308
- Musaceae, articulate latex ducts in, 120
  - traces to stamen in, 343
- Mycorrhizae, 394, 395
- Myrica*, wax on fruit of, 54
- Myriophyllum*, leaf of, 390
- Myrtaceae, internal phloem in, 305
  - vestured pits in, 48

## N

- Narcissus*, leaf of, 335
- Nectary, secretory tissue of, **115**, 117
  - septal, 117
- Nepenthes*, digestive glands of, 117
- Nepeta*, collenchyma in, 85
  - fusion in calyx of, **347**, 348
- Nettles (*see Urtica*)
- New Zealand flax, 88
- Nicotiana*, ontogeny of leaf of, **323**
  - root apex of, **77**
- Nitrogen, in soil, 197
- Node, in monocot stems, 301
  - vascular structure of, **151**
- Nucellus, 369, **370**, 372
- Nucleus, 13
  - in cell development, 10

- Nucleus, division of, **24**, **25**, **26**
  - of mesophyll cell, 7
- Nyssa*, diaphragmed pith in, 155
  - marginal ray cells in, 220, 242
  - phloem ray cells in, 243

## O

- Oak (*see Quercus*)
- Obliteration, of phloem, 232
  - of sieve tubes, 245
- Ochroma*, wood of, **213**, 225
- Oil ducts, 118
  - globules, 13, 19
- Oils, 50
  - in bud scale, **115**
  - in endosperm, 376
  - in fruit, **115**
  - in heartwood, 223
  - in marginal ray cells, 220
  - in phloem parenchyma, 110
  - in xylem, 103
- Onagraceae, internal phloem in, 305
  - seed coats of, 372
- Onopordum*, hairs on stem of, **170**
- Ontogeny, of axis, 124, **125**
  - of collenchyma, 85
  - of epidermis, 166
  - of flower, 341
  - of fruit, 360-361
  - of leaf, 319, **320**, 321, 323, 324
  - of parenchyma, 83
  - of phellogen, 250
  - of phloem, **189**, 240, 304
  - of pith, 155
  - of procambium cylinder, 127
  - of protoxylem elements, 136
  - of root, 279
  - of root tip, **77**
  - of secondary vascular tissue, 194, **195**
  - of stem tip, **69**
  - of stoma, 169
  - of vascular cylinder, 152
  - of vessel, 98, **99**, **100**, 101
- Ophioglossum*, plasmodesmata in cortex of, **36**
- Orchids, 388
  - seeds of, **373**, **376**
- Organs of plant, 4



- Orientation, of bundles in leaf, 324–326, **329**  
 of bundles in monocot leaves, **335**  
 of carpel bundles, 344  
 of chloroplasts, 332  
 “Ornamentation,” of fruits, 368  
 of seeds, **374**  
*Orobanche*, 393  
*Osmunda*, pit-pairs in tracheid of, **45**  
*Ostrya*, strength and pliability of wood of, **226**  
 Ovary, development of fruit from, 360  
 glandular hair of, **116**  
 inferior, **352**, 353, **354**, 355  
 superior, **354**  
 syncarpous, **349**, 355  
 vascular structure of, **349**  
 Ovules, reduction of, **357**  
 trace of, 344  
 traces to lost, 356  
 vascular supply of, 355, 356

## P

- Palms, “horny” endosperm in, 376  
 leaf of, 335, 339  
 secondary growth in, 302  
 Papaveraceae, articulate latex ducts in, **120**  
 seed coats of, 372  
 Papaya (*see Carica*)  
 Parasites, 393, **394**, 395  
 vessels lost in, 98  
 Parenchyma, **17**, 82, **83**, 86  
 in cortex, 163, 164  
 crystals in, **20**  
 in fruits, **363**, 364, 367, 368  
 palisade, 331  
 pit-pairs in, 42, **44**  
 in primary xylem, **130**, 132, **136**  
 in seed coats, 375  
 size of cells in, 9  
 spongy, 331  
 tannin in, **22**  
 wood, **102**, 103, **216**  
 (*See also* Mesophyll; Phloem, parenchyma)  
 Peach (*see Prunus*)  
 Pectin, in cell wall, 32, 84

- Pectin, in fruits, 365  
 in middle lamella, 34  
 Pedicel, abscission zone in, 275  
*Pelargonium*, collenchyma in, 85  
 epidermis of corolla in, **358**  
 Perforation, bars, 97  
 multiple, 97  
 plate, 97, **100**  
 reticulate, 98  
 rim, 97, **100**, 101  
 scalariform 97, 102  
 simple, 97, 102  
 of vessel element, **96**, 97, **99**, **100**  
 (*See also* Pit membrane)  
 Periblem, **68**, **76**  
 Pericambium, 157  
 Pericarp, 360, **362**, **363**, 368  
 bundles in, 362  
 of dry fruit, **362**, 368  
 fleshy, **363**, **364**  
 pit-pairs in, **44**  
 sclerenchyma in, **86**  
 stony, 367  
 Pericycle, **3**, 123, 131, 157  
 effect of cambial growth on, 181–182  
 in monocot stem, 301  
 origin of accessory cambia in, 312  
 origin of lateral roots in, 277, **287**  
 origin of phellogen in, 254  
 parenchyma in, **83**  
 of root, **77**, 283  
 Periderm, **164**, 248–266, **249**, **252**  
 in abscission zone, 267  
 in branch scar, **274**  
 commercial cork, **257**  
 duration of, 255–256  
 extent of, 255  
 formation, **253**, 254, 255  
 in fruits, 363  
 layering in, **265**  
 in leaf scar, 268, **269**  
 lenticels in, 262–266  
 in monocots, 260, **261**  
 morphology of, 258–260  
 origin of, 253–255  
 of roots, 290–291  
 scaling of, **259**  
 structure of, 248–253, **253**  
 wound, 262  
 Perimedullary zone, 156



- Persea*, fruits of, 364, 366  
seed of, 376
- Persimmon (see *Diospyros*)
- Petal, 356, **358**, 359  
bundle end in, **326**  
reduction of bundles in, 356  
traces of, 342  
traces to lost, 356, 360
- Petiole, 317  
bundles in, 325, **329**  
cork layer on, 261  
cuticle on, 53  
ontogeny of, 321  
structure of, **329**
- Phaseolus*, root-stem transition in, 296  
seed coat of, **370**  
starch in cotyledon of, 21
- Phellem, 248, **249**, 250, **251**, **252**, **257**, **274**,  
390  
(See also Cork)
- Phelloderm, 248, **249**, 252
- Phellogen, 248, **249**, 250, **252**, 253  
(See also Cork cambium)
- Philadelphus*, lenticels absent in, 262
- Phloem, 2, 82, 103–113  
crushing of, **125**, 131, 132  
definition of, 113  
fibers of, 104, 110, **111**, 157, **164**, 241,  
331  
ontogeny of, 131  
gelatinous cell walls in, 49  
internal (or intraxylary), 139, 304, **305**  
interxylary, 311–312  
mature, **119**  
metaphloem, 130, 131  
mother cell, 186, 196  
orientation in leaf of, 324  
parenchyma, 83, 104, **110**, 239–240  
crystals in, **20**, 246  
formation of, **189**  
gums in, 246  
lignification of, 246  
ontogeny of, 131  
resins in, 246  
sieve-plate-like pits in, **236**  
storage in, **119**  
tannin in, **21**, 246  
primary, **3**, 123, **125**  
in dicots, 132, **164**  
effect of cambial activity on, 181–182
- Phloem, primary, in leaves, 326  
metaphloem, 131  
in monocots, 132  
ontogeny of, **127**  
order of maturation in, **128**, 130–132  
in roots, **282**, 283, **285**  
pit-pairs in, **45**  
secondary, **3**, **125**, 132, **164**, **193**, 231–  
246  
extent and amount of, 231  
formation of, **186**, 187, **196**, 197  
ontogeny of, **189**, **195**  
periderm in, **249**, 254  
“pockets” of, incrotch angle, **198**, 199  
rays in, 205, 241–242  
in roots, **285**  
seasonal rings in, 243  
structure of, **232–236**, **238**  
(See also Companion cells; Proto-  
phloem; Sieve element)
- Phloëotermia, 159
- Phlox*, floral apex of, **71**  
leaf and branch traces in, **144**
- Phoenix*, fruit of, 361  
plasmodesmata in endosperm of, 35, **36**  
root-stem transition in, 296  
seed of, 376
- Phoradendron*, 393
- Photosynthesis, 169, 332  
in leaf, 317  
in phelloderm 252  
in stem, **385**, **386**, 387
- Phragmoplast, 24, **25**, 27, **119**  
rings, **25**, **26**
- Phragmosphere, 27
- Phryma*, hairs on corolla of, **170**
- Phyllocladus*, leaf-like branchlets in, 317
- Phyllode, 317, 333
- Phyllotaxy, 318–319  
leaf traces showing, **153**  
shape of pith showing, 154
- Phylogeny, of cambial cell types, **192**  
of fiber, 93  
of herbaceous stem in angiosperms, 300  
of parenchyma, 82  
of phloem, 103  
of sieve tubes, 107  
of siphonostele, 142  
of venation, 334  
of vessel, 95, 98



- Phylogeny, of vessel perforation, 102  
 of xylem, 92, 93, 129  
*Physocarpus*, ovary of, **354**  
*Physostegia*, fusion in calyx of, **347, 348**  
*Phytelephas*, "horny" endosperm in, 376  
*Phytolacca*, lignified vessels in, 225  
*Picea*, leaf of, 387  
 spruce gum from, 246  
 wood of, **206, 213, 215, 217, 223**  
*Pilea*, collenchyma in, 85  
 primary vascular system in, **149**  
 Pineapple (*see Ananas*)  
*Pinguicula*, glandular hairs on leaf of, **116, 117**  
 petal of, **358**  
*Pinus*, absence of wood parenchyma in, 102  
 buried branch bases in, **199**  
 cambial cells of, 190  
 cell division in, **26**  
 checking of cell wall in, **44**  
 compression wood in, 228  
 dormant phloem in, 245  
 endodermis in, **159**  
 intercalary meristem in, 66, 323  
 leaf of, **386, 387**  
 pit-pairs in, **41, 45**  
 resin canal in, 8, **115, 118**  
 rhytidome of, 256  
 secondary phloem of, **235, 240, 241**  
 secondary xylem of, 218, 219, 225  
 stem apex of, 72  
 tannin in, **21**  
 tracheids in, **91**  
*Piper*, anomalous stem in, **310**  
 endodermis in, 161  
 Piperaceae, medullary bundles in, 314  
*Pistia*, root apex of, 78  
*Pisum*, phloem in, **238**  
 starch in cotyledon of, **21**  
 stem of, 302, 303  
 stipules in, 317  
 vascular bundles in, **308**  
 Pit aperture, 38, **40**  
 inner and outer, 39, **47**  
 Pit canal, 39, **47**  
 Pit cavity, 38, **40**  
 Pit chamber, 39, **47**  
 Pit-fields, in sieve elements, 107  
 primary, 28, **188**  
 Pit membrane, 38, 39, 41  
 formation of tyloses by, 220, 221  
 penetrability of, 226, 227  
 perforations in, 39, **41, 90, 92**  
 Pit-pairs, 38–48  
 parts of, 38, **47**  
 types of, 38  
 bordered, **38, 39, 40, 41**  
 variations in size and structure of, 42, **43–47**  
 half-bordered, **38, 39, 45**  
 simple, **38, 39, 42, 45**  
 clustered, **44**  
 vestured, **44**  
 (*See also* Pits; Pitting)  
 Pith, 2, **3, 68, 123, 125, 155–157**  
 crystals in, **20**  
 diaphragmed, 155–156  
 duration of, 156  
 effect of cambial activity on, 180  
 extrastelar *versus* stelar, 142  
 form of, **153, 154**  
 in fruit, 369  
 hollow, 156  
 in monocot stem, **299, 301**  
 ontogeny of, 155  
 parenchyma in, **83**  
 of roots, 156, **282**  
 structure of, 155  
 tannin in, **21**  
 Pith ray (*see* Xylem, rays)  
 Pith-ray flecks, 228  
 Pits, 37–48  
 blind, 12, 42  
 cribriform, 48  
 in fibers, 87  
 formation of, 28  
 fused, **86, 89**  
 in phloem, 111, 112  
 in primary and secondary walls, 42  
 primordial, 28  
 in sclereids, 89  
 in vessels, 95  
 simple and bordered, 38, 39  
 vestigial, in libriform wood fibers, 47  
 (*See also* Pit-pairs)  
 Pitted cell, in abscission zone, **273**  
 of metaxylem, 133  
 of phelloderm, 252  
 (*See also* Pit-pairs; Pits)



- Pitting, reticulate, 273  
     scalariform, 92, 273  
     unilateral compound, 42  
     (See also Pit-pairs; Pits)  
 Placenta, in fruits, 368  
     vascular supply of, 355  
 Placentation, 356  
 Plant body, cellular complexity of, 7  
     constitution of, 4  
     fundamental parts of, 1, 2, 123  
     meristems in, 64  
     primary, 3, 123, 175  
     primary *versus* secondary, 137*n*, 175  
     secondary, 204  
 Plantaginaceae, seed coat in, 372  
*Plantago*, endodermis in leaf of, 161  
     intercalary meristem in, 66  
     seed coats of, 370  
 Plasma membrane, 6, 13, 24  
 Plasmodesmata, 6, 28, 35, 36, 37  
 Plastids, 10, 13, 14, 16  
*Platanus*, bark of, 260  
     hairs on leaf of, 170  
     pit-pairs in, 45  
     sclereids in, 241, 246  
     stem of, 298  
     wood of, 226  
 Plerome, 68, 76  
*Podocarpus*, fungus erosion in cell wall of, 44  
     wood parenchyma in, 216  
*Podophyllum*, primary phloem in, 132  
 Polemoniaceae, seed coat of, 372  
 Pollen grain, wall of, 49  
 Polygonaceae, placental bundles in, 356  
*Polygonatum*, root of, 282  
     stomata in, 168  
*Polygonella*, leaf of, 387  
     stem of, 385, 387  
*Polypodium*, endodermis in, 159  
     vascular bundles in, 306  
 Pomegranate (see *Punica*)  
*Pontederia*, air chambers in, 390, 391  
 Poppy (see *Papaveraceae*)  
*Populus*, abscission in, leaf, 269, 270  
     stem, 271, 272, 273, 274  
     cambial initials in, 191  
     crystals in, 20  
     periderm of, 249, 255  
     petiole of, 329  
     *Populus*, phellogen in, 253  
     phloem of, dormant, 245  
         fibers in, 241  
         lattices in, 105, 236, 237  
         secondary, 232  
         sieve plates in, 105, 236  
     pith of, 154  
     primary vascular cylinder of, 149, 153  
     root of, 281, 284  
     root germs in, 290  
     wood of, 210, 225, 226  
         durability of, 226  
         heartwood in, 223  
         pit-pairs in, 43  
         rays in, 210, 217  
         secondary, 210, 225, 226  
         specific gravity of, 225  
         tyloses in, 210, 220  
*Portulaca*, tyloses in, 222  
*Potamogeton*, hydrophyte, 388  
     leaf of, 389, 390, 392  
     stem of, 389  
 Potato (see *Solanum tuberosum*)  
*Potentilla*, achenes of, 357  
     phloem-ray cells of, 242  
 Primary body, 123, 175  
     effect of cambial activity on, 180  
     *versus* secondary body, 137*n*  
 Primary cell wall, chemical changes in, 34  
     formation of, 24  
     pits in, 42  
     structure of, 28, 29, 30, 34  
     (See also Cell wall)  
 Primary protective layer, 267, 269  
 Primary tissues, 123, 127  
     cell arrangement in, 136, 137  
     effect of cambial activity on, 180–181  
     vascular, 68, 126–127, 128, 129–140, 296  
 Primulaceae, roots in, 291  
 Procambium, 62, 67, 125, 126, 127, 131, 175–176  
 Promeristem, 61, 68, 124, 125, 127  
 Proplastids, 14, 15  
 Prosenchyma, 83  
 Protective layers, of abscission zone, 267, 268, 269  
     in monocots, 260  
 Protein granules, 13  
 Protoderm, 67



Protophloem, 129, 131  
     elongation of, 134  
     fibers in, 111, 131  
     in meristematic regions, 66, **77**, **125**  
 Protoplast, 12, 13, 19  
 Protoxylem, 129, **130**, 132, **135**, **136**, **143**  
     annular element in, **130**, 133, 134, **135**,  
         **136**  
     rings of, 48, 132  
     elongation of, 134  
     lacunae in, **135**, **136**  
     in meristematic regions, 66, **77**, **125**  
     ontogeny of, 136  
     reticulations in, 48  
     scalariform elements in, **119**, **130**, 133  
     spirals in, 30, 48, 132, 136  
     vessels in, 134  
 Provascular meristem, 126<sub>n</sub>  
 Provascular tissue, 126<sub>n</sub>  
 Pruning, 199, 200, 208  
*Prunus*, abscission of leaves in, 268  
     “annual rings” in, 256  
     fruit of, **363**, 364–367  
     gummosis in, 228, 229  
     periderm of, cork cells in, 250  
         formation of, 255  
         lenticels in, **264**, **265**, 266  
     sieve tubes in, 107  
     wood of, 227, 228  
*Pseudotsuga*, compression wood in, 228  
 Psilotaceae, apical cells in, 67  
*Pteridium*, bundle arrangement in, 152  
     medullary bundles in, 314  
     sieve element in, **106**  
     vessels in, 98  
 Pteridophytes, apical cell in, 65, 67  
     leaf traces in, 147  
     origin of lateral roots in, 287  
     phloem in, 104  
         sieve areas in, 105  
     primary body only in, 175  
     primary type of endodermis in, 159,  
         161  
     protoxylem in, 133  
     roots in, 291  
     vascular supply of leaves in, 326  
*Pteris*, root apex of, **76**  
 Pteropsida, leaf gaps in, 145  
*Pterospora*, seed of, **372**  
 Pulvinar band (or swelling), 53

*Punica*, seed of, **372**, 375  
*Pyrola*, flower of, **343**, 346  
     ovary of, **354**  
*Pyrus*, cambium in, **189**, 190, 191  
     fruit of, 362–368  
     obliteration of sieve tubes in, 245  
     rootings of, 290  
     scale bark of, **259**  
     sclerenchyma in, **86**, 364

## Q

*Quercus*, abscission in, inflorescence, 275  
     stem, 271, 274  
     bark of, 258  
     cambial cells in, 194  
     leaf in, **328**  
     leaf traces in, **153**, 154  
     phloem of, fibers in, 246  
         obliteration of sieve tubes in, 245  
         parenchyma in, 110  
         sclereids in, 110, 246  
         tannin in, 22  
     traces to lost petals in, 356  
     wood of, **211**, 214, 215  
         durability of, 222  
         gelatinous fibers in, **94**  
         libriform fibers in, **94**  
         parenchyma in, **102**, **211**  
         rays in, **211**, 217, 218  
         silver grain in, 227  
         specific gravity of, 225  
         tracheids in, **91**  
         tyloses in, **211**, 220  
         vessels in, **96**, 98  
*Quercus suber*, cork of, “annual rings”  
     in, 256  
     commercial use of, **257**, 258  
     elasticity of, 252  
     formation of, 250, **251**  
     lenticels in, 266  
     phellogen in, 253  
 Quince (*see Chaenomeles*)  
 Quinine, 246

## R

Radial bundles, **139**  
 Radial dots, 158, **159**  
 Ramular traces (*see* Branch traces)



- Ranales*, secondary phloem in, 237  
     traces to stamens, 343  
     vessels lacking in, 216  
*Ranunculaceae*, floral organs of, 342  
     fruit of, 362  
     medullary bundles in, 314  
     seed coat of, 372  
     traces of lost ovules in, 356  
     vascular bundles in, 307  
*Ranunculus*, achenes of, 357  
     companion cells in, 239  
     medullary ray in, 205, 208  
     primary phloem in, 132  
     primary skeleton in, 149, 177  
     root of, 281, 282  
*Raphides*, 19, 20, 364  
*Raspberry* (see *Rubus*)  
*Ray cells*, "dentations" in, 45  
     initials of vascular, 187, 191  
     marginal, 220  
         conterminous and interspersed, 220  
     pit-pairs in, 44, 45  
*Rays*, interfascicular, 149  
     vascular, 191, 195  
         absence of, 208  
         aggregate, 217  
         compound, 217  
         formation of, 205  
         (See also Xylem, rays)  
*Receptacles*, in flower, 345, 346, 354  
     in fruit, 369  
*Reduction of vascular supply*, 356  
     in flowers, 348, 356, 357  
     in hydrophytes, 391, 392  
     in parasites, 393  
     in saprophytes, 394  
     in xerophytes, 387  
*Redwood*, 228  
*Reseda*, cohesion of carpels, 350  
*Resin*, 19, 50  
     in buried branch bases, 199  
     canal, 115, 386  
     ducts, 118  
     in gymnosperms, 216  
     in heartwood, 223  
     in phloem parenchyma, 246  
     in tyloses, 220  
     in xylem, 103  
*Rhamnus*, traces to lost petals in, 356  
*Rheum*, petiole of, 330  
*Rhizomes*, endodermis in, 159, 161  
     metaxylem in, 130  
     in saprophytes, 394  
*Rhododendron*, xerophytic leaves of, 385  
*Rhus*, tyloses in, 221  
*Rhytidome*, 256  
     formation of, 253, 254  
     in monocots, 261  
     in roots, 291  
*Ribes*, phellogen in pericycle of, 254  
     root germs in, and rooting of, 290  
*Rims of Sanio*, 49  
*Rings*, in protoxylem, 135  
*Rise of sap*, 103  
*Robinia*, cambium in, 188, 190, 194  
     ontogeny, of secondary vascular tissue in, 195  
         of vessel element in, 99  
     phloem of, fibers in, 111  
     parenchyma in, 110  
     secondary, 235, 236, 239-241, 245  
     sieve element in, 106  
     simple sieve plate in, 237  
     wood of, clustered vessels in, 215  
         durability of, 222, 226  
         "multicellular" tyloses in, 221  
*Root*, 1, 2, 123, 277-283, 284, 285-291  
     adventitious, meristem of, 123  
         origin of, 157, 289  
     annular element in, 284  
     anomalous structure in, 313, 314, 315  
     apex, 63, 65, 74, 75-77, 78, 131  
     cambium in, 119, 176, 179  
         monocot, 201  
         time of activity of, 195  
     cortex of, 280, 283  
     endodermis of, 160, 161  
     epidermis of, 166, 167  
     lateral, formation of, 286, 287, 288, 289  
         initials of, 163  
         pericyclic origin of, 277, 287  
     lenticels in, 263, 265  
     morphology of, 278  
     ontogeny of, 279  
     pericycle in, 157  
     periderm in, 255, 281, 290, 291  
     phloem in, first-formed, 128  
     pith in, 156  
     primary, 278  
     primary vascular tissues of, 140, 283



- Root, in saprophytes, 394  
     secondary, 278  
     secondary growth in, **285**, 286  
     stele of, 142, **282**  
     *versus* stem, 277, 293  
     structure of, **281**  
     xylem in, exarch, 129, 277  
         first-formed, 128  
         metaxylem in, 130  
 Root cap, **74**, **75**, **77**, 78, 277, 279  
 Root germs, 289, 290  
 Root hairs (*see* Hairs)  
 Rootings, 290  
*Rosa*, ovary of, 353, **354**  
 Rosaceae, flower of, fusion in, 351  
     organs of, 342  
     traces to lost ovules in, 356  
     fruit of, epidermis in, 362  
     leaf traces in, 148  
     sieve tube in, 107  
     wood of, chloroplasts in, 16  
         pith-ray flecks in, 228  
 Royal palm (*see* *Roystonea*)  
*Roystonea*, persistent periderm in, 260  
 Rubber, 19  
     in secondary phloem, 246  
     latex, a source of, 118  
*Rubus*, fruit of, 362, **364**, 365, 369  
     hairs on fruit of, **170**  
     ovary of, **354**  
     rootings of, 290  
*Ruellia*, seed coat of, **374**  
*Rumex*, collenchyma in, 85  
     cuticle on stem of, 53  
     tyloses in, 222  
 Rupture, of endodermis in lateral root  
     formation, 287  
     of epidermis after periderm formation,  
         253  
     of leaf traces, **184**  
     of outer tissues after periderm forma-  
         tion, 254  
 Russian dandelion (*see* *Taraxacum kok-*  
     *saghyz*)  
 Rutaceae, traces to lost carpels in, 356
- S
- Sabal Palmetto*, vascular bundles in, **306**  
*Sagittaria*, petiole bundles in, **329**  
*Saintpaulia*, rootings of, 290  
*Salicornia*, fleshy xerophyte, 388  
*Salix*, abscission in, inflorescence, 275  
     leaf, 270  
     twig, 275  
     cambial initials in, 191  
     leaf traces in, 148  
     periderm of, **249**  
         lenticels in, 265  
     phloem of, crystals in, **20**  
         fibers in, **111**  
         parenchyma in, **110**  
         secondary, **235**, 241, 242  
         sieve plates and lattices in, 107  
     root of, **282**  
         lateral, **288**  
     root germs and rooting, 290  
     traces to lost petals in, 356  
     wood of, marginal ray cells in, 220  
         pith-ray flecks in, 228  
         pit-pairs in, **45**  
*Salvia*, fusion of calyx of, **347**, 348  
*Sambucus*, collenchyma in, 85  
     phloem parenchyma in, 240  
*Sansevieria*, development of fibers in, 88  
 Santalaceae, ovary in, 353  
*Sapodilla* (*see* *Achras*)  
*Sapote* (*see* *Calocarpum*)  
 Saprophytes, 393, 394  
*Sarracenia*, digestive glands of, 117  
*Sassafras*, oils in secretory cells of, 115  
     wood of, fusiform parenchyma cell in,  
         **94**  
         marginal ray cells in, 220  
         tyloses in, 221  
 Scale bark, 254, **259**  
*Schizaea*, persistent root hairs in, 280  
 Schizogenous ducts, 116  
 Schizogenous spaces 8  
 Schizolysigenous spaces, 8  
*Scirpus*, primary vascular system in, **150**  
     vascular bundles in, **306**  
 Sclereids, **86**, 88, 89, 110, 111  
     conversion from parenchyma, 51, 110,  
         112, 258  
     in cortex, 163  
     in fruits, 364, 366, 367  
     in leaves, 331  
     in phelloderm, 252  
     pit-pairs in, 42, **45**, 89  
     in secondary phloem, 241



- Sclereids, types of, astrosclereids, 89  
     brachysclereids, 89  
     macrosclereids, 89  
     osteosclereids, 89  
     trichosclereids, 89  
 Sclerenchyma, 82, **86**, 87-89  
     crystals in, 246  
     in fruits, 363, 364, 366-368  
     in gymnosperms, 241  
     in hydrophytes, 391  
     in leaves, 330, 331, **336**  
     in parasites, 393  
     in roots, **282**  
     in saprophytes, 394  
     seasonal bands of, 243  
     in seed coats, 374, 375  
     sheath, **306**  
     in xerophytic leaves, **382, 383**, 384, **386**,  
         **387**  
         (See also Fibers; Sclereids)  
 Sclerification, of secondary phloem, 246  
     of secondary phloem and cortex, 258  
 Sclerotic cells, 88  
 Scrophulariaceae, fruit of, 362  
     traces to lost stamens in, 356  
 Seasonal rings in secondary phloem, 243  
 Secondary body, 123  
     origin and development of, 175-202  
     *versus* primary body, 137*n*  
 Secondary cell wall, chemical changes in,  
     34  
     erosion by fungus hyphae in, **44**  
     formation of, **24**, 29  
     microscopic checking of, **44**  
     minute structure of, **31, 33, 34**  
     pits in, 42  
     protoxylem-like thickenings in, 48  
     with tertiary spirals, **30**  
 Secondary cortex, 163, 252  
 Secondary endodermis, 158, 159  
 Secondary growth (see Growth)  
 Secondary meristems, 63, 248, 312  
 Secondary phloem (see Phloem)  
 Secondary tissues, 123, 175  
     cell arrangement in, 136, 137  
     cork, 123, 175  
     in monocot stem, **202**  
     ontogeny of, 194, **195**  
     in roots, **281, 285**, 286  
     in stems, 297  
     Secondary tissues, vascular, 175  
     Secondary xylem (see Xylem)  
     Secretory cells, 114, 115, **116**  
         mucilage in, 116  
         oils in, 115  
         in pericycle, 158  
     Secretory chamber, 358  
     Secretory tissue, 114, **115**, 116-118, **119**,  
         120  
     Section, planes of, **4, 5**  
     *Securidaca*, anomalous stem in, **310**  
     Sedges, mineralization of cell wall in, 50  
     *Sedum*, 388  
     Seed coats, 361-369, **370**, 371, **372-374**, 375  
     Seedlings, endodermis in, 161  
         secondary xylem of, 239  
     Seeds, 369-376  
         aleurone grains in, 22  
         embryo and endosperm, **370**, 376  
         gelatinous cell wall in, 49  
         macrosclereids in, 89  
         nitrogenous inclusions in, 22  
         osteosclereids in, 89  
         plasmodesmata in endosperm of, 35  
         vascular bundles in, **372**, 376  
         wall of epidermal cells of, 34  
     Segmentation of apex, 67  
     *Selaginella*, apical cells in, 67, 76  
         stem apex of, 72  
         vessels in, 98  
     *Senecio*, fusion in corolla of, **348**  
     Sepal, 356, 359  
         trace, 342  
     Separation layer, 267, **269**  
         gelatinous cell wall in, 268  
     *Sequoia*, inclusions in heartwood cells of,  
         19  
         microscopic checking of tracheid wall  
             in, **44**  
         perforated pit membranes in, 90  
         stem apex of, **70, 71, 72**  
         wood of, **207**, 216  
             durability of, 226  
             specific gravity of, 225  
     *Serjania*, anomalous stem in, **310**  
     Shagbark hickory (see *Carya*)  
     Shell bark, 254  
     Sieve areas, 105  
     Sieve cell, 104, 109, 232, 237  
         (See also Sieve element)



- Sieve element, 103, 104, **106**  
     functioning life of, 245  
     ontogeny of, 107-108, 127, 131  
     (See also Sieve cell; Sieve tube)
- Sieve field, 107
- Sieve plate, 105, **106**, 232, **236**, 237
- Sieve tube, 103, 104, 107, 232, **236**, 237, **238**  
     duration of, 108  
     formation of, **189**, **195**  
     obliteration of, 108, 109  
     ontogeny of, in root tip, **77**  
     phylogeny of, 107  
     in root, **119**  
     (See also Sieve element)
- Silica, in cell wall, 50
- Sinocalamus*, stem apex of, **70**, **73**
- Siparuna*, wall of fiber-tracheid in, **31**
- Sisal, 88
- Skunk cabbage (see *Symplocarpus*)
- Slime plugs, 104, **236**
- Smilacina*, raphides in fruit cell, **20**
- Smilax*, endodermis in, **160**  
     root of, **282**
- Solanaceae, fruit of, 364  
     internal phloem in, 305
- Solanum Dulcamara*, periderm in, **249**  
     phellogen in, 253  
     stem of, 302
- Solanum tuberosum*, cambial initials in, 191  
     collenchyma in, **84**, 85  
     nitrogenous inclusions in tuber of, 22  
     periderm of tuber in, **252**, 261  
     phellogen of tuber in, 253  
     phloem of, companion cells in, 239  
         internal, **305**  
         primary, 232  
         sieve elements in, **106**  
     primary vascular system in, **151**  
     starch in tuber of, 22  
     stomata in, **168**
- Solidago*, collenchyma in, 85
- Sorbus*, ovary of, **354**
- Sparganium*, adnation in, 355
- Spartina*, leaf of, **383**, 384
- Spiraea*, ovary of, **354**  
     petiole bundles in, **329**  
     stomata in, 333
- Spiral elements, in primary xylem, **130**, **133**  
     of roots, **284**
- Spiral thickenings, 30
- Spondias*, fruit of, 367
- Spores, wall of, 49
- Stalace, 279
- Stamen, 359  
     reduction of bundles in, 356  
     trace of, 343  
     trace to lost, 356, 360
- Starch, 13, **21**, **22**, **83**  
     in endodermis, 158, 162  
     in fruits, 365  
     in guard cells, 169  
     in phelloderm, 252  
     in phloem parenchyma, 110, 113, 244  
     in roots, 278  
     in seeds, 376  
     in tyloses, 220  
     in xylem, 103
- **Stele**, 1, 140-142  
     in flower, 342  
     in herbaceous stems, 154, **299**  
     in hydrophytes, **389**  
     monocot, **299**, 301  
     in roots, **282**, **284**  
     types of, monostele, 141  
         polystele, 141  
         protostele, 140, **141**, 142, **281**, **284**  
         siphonostele (or solenostele), 140, **141**, 142  
             amphiphloic, 141, 142, 304  
             ectophloic, 141, 142  
     in vine stems, 302, 303  
     in woody stems, **298**
- Stellaria*, stem of, 299
- Stem, 1, **2**, 123, 293-315  
     abscission of, 271-275  
     adventitious, 123, 157  
     anomalous structure in, 309, **310**, 311, **312**, **313**, **314**, 315  
     apex, 60, 63, 65, **69-71**, 72, **126**, 131  
     cambium in, 178, 195  
     cortex of woody, **164**  
     cuticle on, **51**, 53, 54  
     endodermis in, 157, **159**, 161  
     epidermis of, 166  
     hairs on, **170**  
     of hydrophytes, **389**, 390



- Stem, intercalary meristem in, 66  
   of microphyllous xerophytes, **385, 387**  
   origin of, 293  
   pericycle in, 157  
   periderm of, **249**  
     formation in woody, 253  
     lenticels in, 262, **264, 265**  
   phloem of, fibers in, 111  
     first-formed, 128  
     internal, **305**  
     secondary, **238**  
   primary vascular system in, 139, 142, **151, 153**  
   root-stem transition, 293-296  
   of saprophytes, 394  
   sclereids in, 89  
   stomata on, 169  
   types of, 296-302  
     herbaceous, 297, 298, **299, 300, 303, 304**  
     monocot, **299, 301, 302**  
     vine, 302, 303  
     woody, 297, **298**  
   *versus* roots, 277, 293  
   xylem of, 129  
     first-formed, 128  
     protoxylem in, **135**  
     (See also Cortex; Periderm; Phloem; Primary body; Xylem)  
 Stem bundles, 152  
 Stigma, bundles in, 359  
 Stipules, 317  
   ontogeny of, 321  
   vascular supply of, 144, **147, 326**  
 Stomata, 166-167, **168, 169, 333, 338**  
   accessory cells of, 167, 170, 386  
   on fruits, 362  
   on petals, 359  
   on stamens and carpels, 360  
   on xerophytic leaf, **383, 384, 386, 387**  
   on xerophytic stem, **385, 386, 387**  
 Stomatal opening (or aperture), 167  
 Stone cells (see Sclereids)  
 Storied cambium, 190, 202  
 Storied cork, 260, **261**  
 Strawberry (see *Fragaria*)  
*Streptopus*, adnation in, 355  
 Stretching, of cork cells, 252  
   of phloem, 244  
   of protoxylem cells, 129, **135**  
     (See also Elongation)  
 Striations, of cell wall, 3  
*Strychnos*, interxylary phloem in, 311  
 Suberin, in cell wall, 32, 49  
 Suberin lamella, in monocots, 260  
   in phellem, 252  
 Suberization, of cell wall, 34, 49, 252, 260  
 Substitute fiber, 94  
 Sumach (see *Rhus*)  
 Sun scald, 196  
*Swietenia*, heartwood in, 223  
   inclusions in cells of, 19  
   septate fiber-tracheid in, **94**  
 Symbiosis, 394, 395  
*Symplocarpus*, venation of, 334  
 Syncarpy, stages in, **394**  
*Syringa*, inflorescences lost by weathering, 275
- T
- Tannins, 19, **21, 32, 50**  
   in autumn color, 18  
   in endodermis, 158  
   in epidermis, 165  
   in fruit, 362, 363, 365  
   in heartwood, 223  
   in phloem parenchyma, 110, 246  
   in xerophytic leaf, **383, 384**  
*Taraxacum*, chromoplasts in corolla of, 16  
   collenchyma in, 85  
   intercalary meristem in, 66  
*Taraxacum kok-saghyz*, cambium region in, **119**  
*Taxodium*, stem apex of, 72  
*Taxus*, absence of wood parenchyma in, 102  
   wall of tracheid in, **30**  
*Tecoma*, absence of lenticels in, 262  
   internal phloem in, 304  
*Tephrosia*, stele of root in, 284  
 Tertiary spirals, 30  
 Tetracentraceae, absence of vessels in, 98  
*Thinouia*, anomalous stem in, **310**  
*Thuja*, diffuse wood parenchyma in, 216  
   phellogen in, 254  
   phloem fibers in, 241  
   phloem rays in, 242  
   primary vascular system of, **150**



- Thuja*, woody stem of, 297  
*Tilia*, adnation in, 355  
 crystals in, 20  
 fibers of, 112  
 secondary phloem in, 237, 240, 242, 245  
 vessel of, 30  
 wood of, 216, 225, 226  
*Tiliaceae*, "bast" in, 246  
 seed coats of, 371  
*Tillandsia*, hairs of, 388  
 Timber, durability of heartwood, 223  
 penetrability of green and seasoned, 226, 227  
 structure of, 204  
 value of sapwood as, 224  
 (See also Wood)  
 Tissue initiation, 60  
 Tissue systems, absorbing, 113  
 epidermal or tegumentary, 114  
 fundamental or ground, 114  
 mechanical, 113  
 storage, 113  
 vascular, 114  
 Tissues, 3, 4  
 classification of, 81  
 kind of constituent cells, 82  
 stage of development, 81  
 complex, 82, 89-113  
 interfascicular, 312  
 intermediate, 312  
 permanent, 61, 82, 124  
 secretory, 114  
 simple, 82-89  
 (See also Primary tissues; Secondary tissues)  
 Tobacco (see *Nicotiana*)  
*Todea superba*, chloroplasts in, 15  
 Tomato (see *Lycopersicon*)  
 Torus, 38, 39, 40, 41  
 Trabeculae, 48  
 Traces (see Branch traces; Leaf traces)  
 Trachea, 97, 134  
 Tracheid, 90-93, 91  
 erosion by fungus hyphae in wall of, 44  
 first-formed, 127  
 gelatinous wall in, 95  
 microscopic checking in wall of, 44  
 pit-pairs in, 40, 43, 45, 90, 92  
 in protoxylem, 132, 133  
 scalariform-pitted, 92  
 Tracheid, in secondary xylem, 194, 216, 219  
 tertiary spirals in, 30  
 trabeculae in, 48  
*Tradescantia*, primary vascular system of, 150  
 stamen hair in, 17  
*Tragopogon*, latex vessel of, 115  
 Trailing arbutus (see *Epigaea*)  
 Transfusion cells, of endodermis, 158  
 Transfusion tissue, 113, 387  
 Transition cell, 327  
 Transition region, 278, 293-296, 294  
 Traumatic tissue (see Wound tissue)  
 Trichomes, 170  
*Trichostema*, fusion in calyx of, 347, 348  
*Trifolium*, stem of, 299  
 vascular bundles in, 308, 318  
*Trillium*, stem of, 299  
*Triticum*, stem of, 299  
 stem apex of, 73  
 Trochodendraceae, absence of vessels in, 98, 216  
*Trollius*, follicle of, 357  
*Tropaeolum*, root-stem transition in, 296  
*Tsuga*, sclereids in, 241  
 sclerenchyma in, 86  
 sieve element of, 106  
 tannin in phloem of, 22  
 terminal wood parenchyma in, 216  
 Tunica, 69, 70, 73, 74  
 Tunica-corpus theory, 69-74  
 Tyloses, 220, 221, 222  
 Tylosoids, 221  
 Typhaceae, secondary suberization of cortical cells in, 260
- U
- Ulmaceae*, sieve tubes in, 107  
*Ulmus*, bark of, 258  
 cambium of, 188, 189, 190, 191  
 phellogen in, 253  
 phloem of, lattice in, 237  
 simple sieve plate in, 236, 237  
 slime plugs in, 236, 237  
 phyllotaxy of, 154  
 pith of, 154  
 stem of, 250  
 abscission in, 271, 274  
 wood of, clustered vessels in, 215



- Ulmus*, wood of, ring-porous, frontis-piece  
 strength and pliability of, 226  
 wet heartwood in, 223
- Umbelliferae, leaf traces in, 148  
 medullary sheath in, 156  
 oil ducts in, 118  
 seed of, 371  
 traces to lost ovules in, 356
- Unisexual flowers, vestiges of lost organs in, 356
- Urtica*, stinging hair of, 116
- Urticaceae, cystoliths in, 50  
 fibers, size of, 9  
 nonarticulate latex ducts in, 120  
 vestigial floral traces in, 356
- Utricularia*, leaf of, 390

## V

- Vaccinium*, cuticle on stem of, 51  
 fruit of, 361, 362, 365, 368  
 ovary of, 354  
 seed coats of, 370
- Vacuoles, 7, 10, 17, 25, 61
- Vacuome, 17
- Valerianaceae, traces to lost carpels in, 356
- Vascular bundles, 305-309, 306, 308  
 definition of, 138, 309  
 of flowers, fusion in, 347-351  
 in organs, 357, 359-361, 366  
 in placenta, 355  
 in stigma, 359  
 vestigial, 360
- in hydrophytes, 389, 392  
 in pericarp, 362  
 of leaf, 322, 327  
 inversion of, 335  
 xerophytic, 386, 387, 388
- protoxylem in, 130
- secondary growth in monocots, 301
- of seeds, 376
- types of, amphi-cribral, 139, 140, 306, 325, 359  
 amphivasal, 139, 140, 306  
 bicollateral, 139  
 cauline, 151, 152, 153  
 collateral, 139, 306, 307, 308, 325  
 common, 151, 152

- Vascular bundles, types of, concentric, 139  
 cortical, 314  
 occurrence of, 139  
 (See also Branch traces; Leaf traces; "Medullary" bundles)
- Vascular cylinder, primary, 143, 145, 146, 148, 149, 150, 152, 153, 154, 177, 296  
 secondary, 177, 297
- Vascular floral skeleton, 342-360, 366  
 fusion in, 347-351, 354, 355  
 inferior ovary, 352, 353, 354  
 in organs, 357, 359, 360  
 placental supply, 355  
 reduction of, 356, 357  
 vestigial vascular tissue in, 356
- Vascular skeleton, primary, 140-142, 143, 144-148, 149-151, 152-154  
 (See also Vascular floral skeleton)
- Vascular system, primary, 150, 151  
 of monocots, 301  
 of root, 284
- Vascular tissues, 1  
 in leaf, 323, 324, 326-327, 329  
 in parasite and host, 394  
 primary, cell arrangement in, 136  
 in roots, 282, 283  
 in root, 277  
 secondary, ontogeny of, 194, 195  
 in roots, 286
- Vein islets, 318, 322
- Veins, 320, 322, 326, 327
- Velamen, 48, 291
- Venation, 318, 334
- Veratrum*, cambium in, 201  
 secondary growth in, 302
- Verbascum*, color in corolla of, 18
- Veronica*, stem of, 299
- Vessel, 95-102, 96, 99, 100  
 clustered, 215  
 element, member, or unit, 97  
 in Gnetales, 216  
 ontogeny of, 99, 100, 101-102, 194, 195  
 perforations in, 97, 99, 100  
 pit-pairs in, 43, 44  
 in primary xylem, 127, 132, 133  
 in secondary xylem, 216, 217  
 segment, 97  
 tertiary spirals in, 30



*Viburnum*, druse in, **20**  
 phellogen in, **253**  
*Vicia*, plasmodesmata in root of, **36**  
*Vinca*, stem apex of, **71, 73**  
 Vines, "medullary rays" of, **303, 304**  
 stem type, **302, 303**  
 woody stem of, **298**  
*Viola*, seed coat of, **370**  
 Violaceae, seed coats of, **371**  
*Viscum*, half parasite, **393**  
*Vitis*, absence of lenticels in, **262**  
 fruit of, **362, 364**  
 periderm in, **255, 256**  
 "ring bark" of, **260**  
 stem of, **302**  
 veins in leaf of, **322**

## W

*Waldsteinia*, follicle of, **357**  
 Water pores, **117**  
 Water stomata, **117**  
 Watermelon (*see Citrullus*)  
 Wax, **54, 374, 382, 383**  
 Wax palms, **54, 383**  
 Weathering, inflorescences lost by, **275**  
 leaves lost by, **339**  
 of outer tissues, **253**  
 phloem lost by, **231, 244, 256**  
*Welwitschia*, intercalary meristem in, **323**  
 Willow (*see Salix*)  
 Winteraceae, absence of vessels in, **98**  
 Wood, of angiosperms, **216**  
 of commerce, **204**  
 compression, **228**  
 diffuse-porous, **210, 212, 214**  
 durability of, **222, 225-226**  
 early, **209**  
 fall, **209**  
 fibers, **94**  
 fibrils in wall of, **32**  
 libriform, pits in, **47**  
 pit-pairs in, **43, 45**  
 wall structure of, **34**  
 of gymnosperms, **216**  
 heartwood, **200, 223-224**  
 durability of, **223**  
 penetrability of, **227**  
 tyloses in, **222**

Wood, impregnation of, **41, 224**  
 late, **209**  
 light and heavy, **213, 224, 225**  
 parenchyma, **102, 103**  
 in crotch angle, **198**  
 crystals in, **20**  
 distribution of, **215**  
 fusiform, **94**  
 in gymnosperms and angiosperms, **216**  
 metatracheal, **216**  
 ontogeny of secondary, **194**  
 paratracheal, **216**  
 simple pit-pairs in, **44**  
 terminal, **215, 216**  
 vasicentric, **215, 216**  
 wood-ray, **102**  
 penetrability of, **226-227**  
 properties and uses in relation to  
 microscopic structure, **224**  
 ring-porous, Frontispiece, **211, 214**  
 sapwood, **200, 223, 224**  
 penetrability of, **227**  
 tyloses in, **222**  
 specific gravity of, **225**  
 spring, **209**  
 strength of, **225**  
 summer, **209**  
 (*See also* Grain in wood; Timber;  
 Xylem)  
*Woodwardia*, tracheid of, **91**  
 Woody plants, abscission of stems in,  
**271-275**  
 gummosis in, **229**  
 periderm in, **255**  
 roots of, **281, 284**  
 secondary phloem in, **231**  
 stomata in, **169**  
 Woody stems, **297, 298**  
 Wound cork, **262**  
 Wound roots, **289**  
 Wound tissue, adventitious roots and  
 stems from meristem in, **123**  
 cambium growth about wounds, **200-201**  
 meristems in, **63**  
 pith-ray flecks in, **228**  
 tyloses in, **222**  
*Wrightia*, seed coat of, **374**



## X

- Xanthium*, fusion in corolla of, **348**  
*Xanthophyll*, 18  
*Xerophytes*, 380-381, **382, 383, 385, 386, 387-388**  
     accessory cells in, 167  
     endodermis in leaves of, 161  
     fleshy, **383, 388**  
     leaves of, 337, **382, 383, 384, 386, 387**  
     lignification and cutinization in, 382  
     malacophyllous, **383, 388**  
     microphyllous, **385, 386, 387**  
     sclerophyllous, **383, 384**  
     stem of, **385**  
     stomata in, 333  
     trichophyllous, 384  
     vessels lacking in, 98, 216  
*Xylem*, 2, 82, 90-103  
     in abscission zone, **273**  
     centrifugal development in, **128, 129**  
     centripetal development in, **128, 129**  
     elements, 133  
     endarch, **128, 129, 131, 137**  
     exarch, **128, 129, 131, 137, 277**  
     in leaf, 324, 326-327  
     mesarch, **128, 129, 131, 137**  
     metaxylem, **130, 131, 133**  
     mother cell, 186, 194  
     ontogeny of, **127**  
         in root, **77**  
     parenchyma in, 83  
     primary, **3, 123, 125, 127**  
         effect of cambial activity on, 180  
         order of maturation in, **128, 130, 131-140**  
         types of, 137  
     rays, 205  
         heterogeneous, 217

- Xylem*, rays, homogeneous, 217  
     multiseriate, 217  
     pit-pairs in, **45, 204, 205, 217-220, 219**  
     tracheids in, 218-220  
     uniseriate, 217  
     secondary, 3, 125, **164, 204-205, 206, 207, 210-213, 219, 220-229**  
     developing and mature, **186, 187, 193, 196**  
     gross structure of, 204-214  
     histological structure of, 214-224  
     in roots, **284, 285**  
     tyloses, in, 220-222  
     (See also Protoxylem; Tracheid; Vessel; Wood)

## Y

- Yucca*, cambium in, 201  
     secondary growth in, 302

## Z

- Zamia*, stem apex of, **70**  
*Zea*, aleurone grains in endosperm of, **23**  
     leaf of, **328**  
     leucoplasts in, 16  
     parenchyma in, **83**  
     proplastids in, 14  
     protoxylem in, **136**  
     seed coat in, 371  
     stem of, **299**  
     stomata in, 168  
     vascular bundles in, 307  
     vessel elements in, 98, **100**  
*Zingiber*, oils in secretory cells of, 115  
*Zizyphus*, fruit of, **363, 366**  
     Zonation in meristems, 71



ALLAMA IQBAL LIBRARY



15731